This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

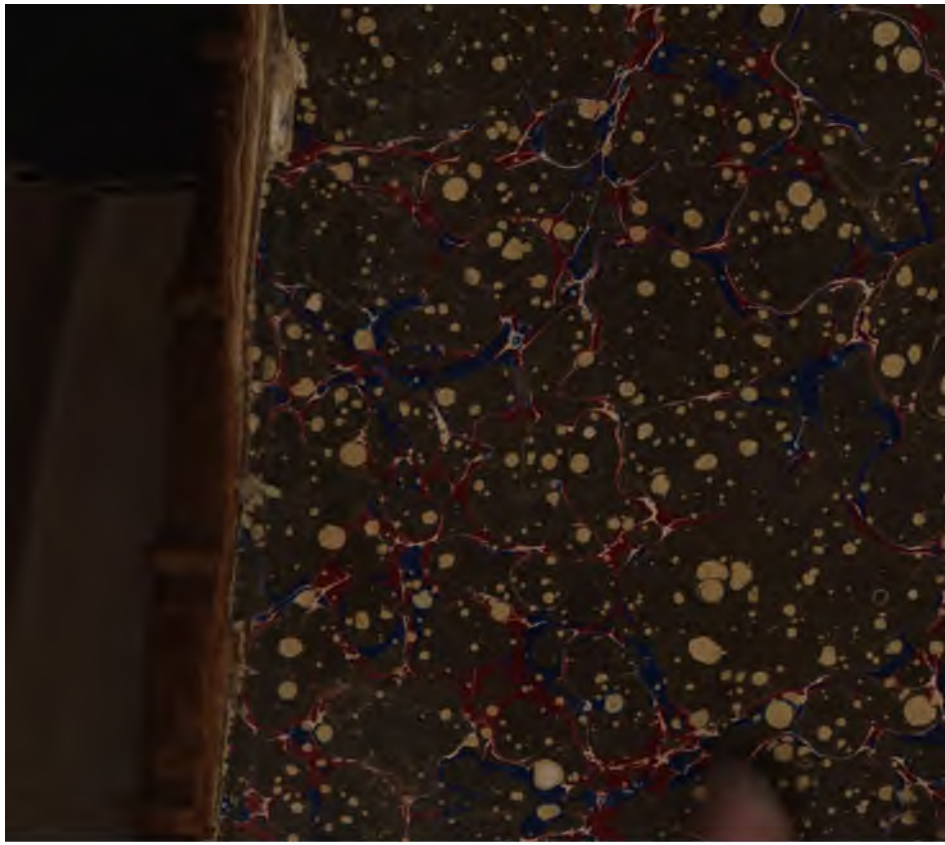
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

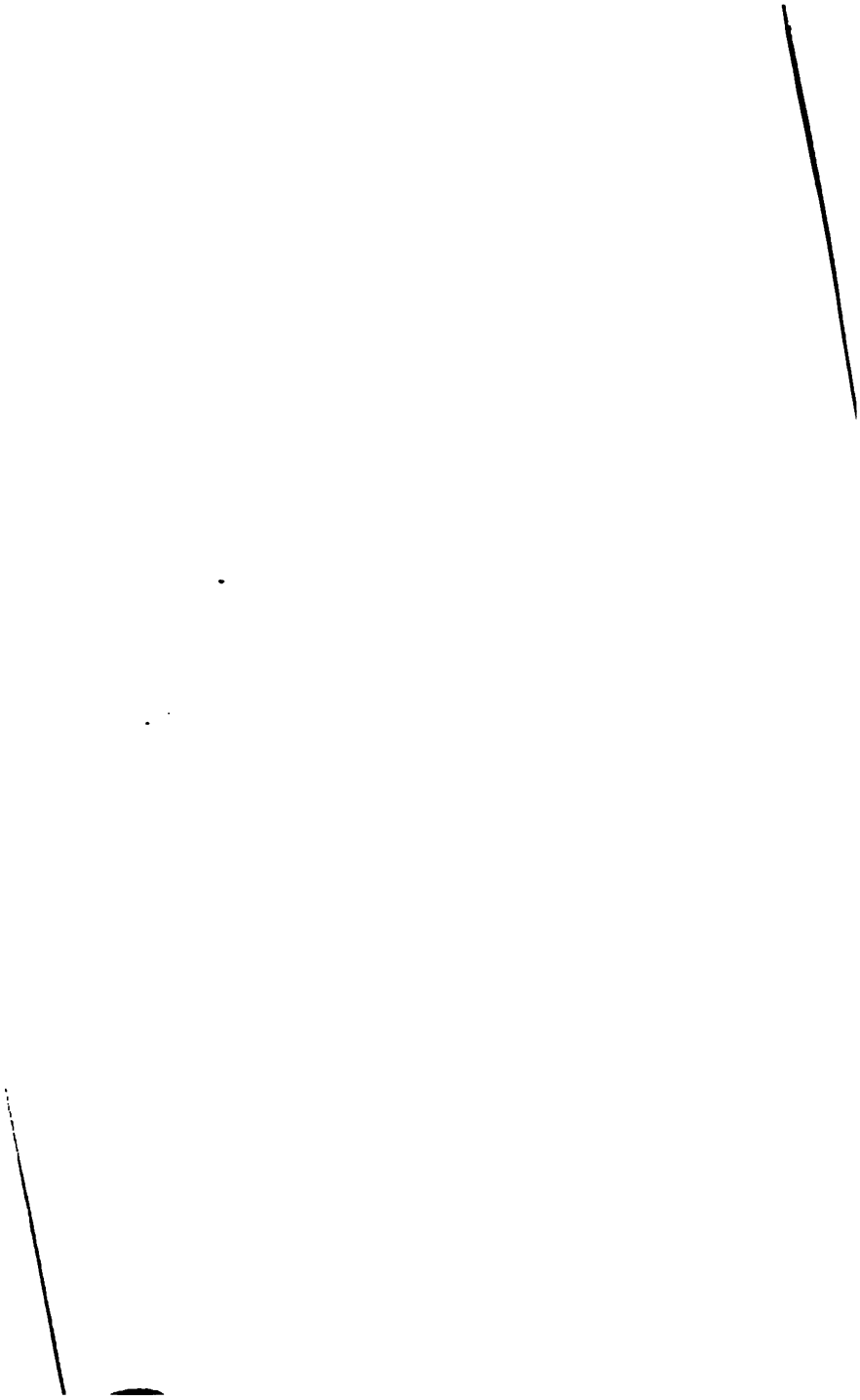
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`





Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.
Murmych, 225.
Myrabel, 192.

Nantes, 73.
Nerbonne, 335.
Neufmoustier, Abbey of, 322.
Northomberland, 14, 306.
Northweghe, 242, Norway.
Nuenmarghe, 223 (? Nurenburg).
Nyort, 299.

Parpynen, 336, Perpignan.
Partenay, 6, 103.
Penbrough, 355, Pembroke.
Penycence, 65.
Poiters, 118; Poyters, 19; Poytiers.
Pons, 103.
Poterne Tower, 321.
Pourreneru, 346, (?) Porentruy, near Freiburg.
Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo, 41; Ponthieu, 293 (*Ponthiëne*).
Praghe, 215, Prague.

Quercyn, 356.
Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.

Regnault, Castel, 355.
Rochelle, 103.
Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.
Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.

Saint Hylary of Poyters, church, 40.
Salesbury, 1.
Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.
Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.
St. John of Rhodes, 269.
Sassymon, 98.
Soyf, Fontayne of, 37.
Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak, 15.
Storyon, 73.
Surye, 160, ? Syria.
Syon Castle, 247.

Tallemondois, 104.
Tallemounte, 104.
Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.
Thoulouse, 335.
Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.
Tupple, 160 (*Tupple*), ? Tripoli, Syria.
Turcke, 145; Turckye, 265.

Valbruyant Castle, 255.
Vannes, 98.
Vernon, 318.
Vertone, 195.
Vouant, 103.
Vtreyght, 242, Utrecht.

Xaintes, 103.

Ycrys, 12.

Zeland, 242, Zealand.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

~~2~~
~~165~~

870.1
F 12e

820.6
E12e

39870

Melusine.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, LXVIII.

1895.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Comment guion et ſes gens
deſconfirent les galees des
ſarrazins ſur mer et com

J.K.

Melusine.

COMPILED (1382-1394 A.D.) BY

JEAN D'ARRAS

ENGLISHT ABOUT 1500.

EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT

IN

THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM

BY

A. K. DONALD.

PART I.

TEXT, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

LONDON:

PUBLISHT FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,

PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING-CROSS ROAD.

1895.

LIBRARY OF THE
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY.

A 38648

FEB 19 1900

Extra Series, LXVIII.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE

PROEM 1

Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst / ... 2

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to comme to the Feste that he made of hys sone / 18

Cap. III. How a forester came to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore / 19

Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn with hym 21

Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vncle 25

Cap. VI. How Raymondyn came to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her 28

Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers 34

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttere 35

Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before / ... 37

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong' Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym / 40

Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it / ... 42

Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned came and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte / 44

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady / 46

Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land 51

PAGE

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider / 52

Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner / 54

Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted 54

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye 56

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of Melusyne / 58

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of þem ... 107

Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theire moder Melusyne and entred theire ship / 114

Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce 143

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beying in his bed syke 151

Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre 157

Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kynge of Anssay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take 201

Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne 204

Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourgh to Counseylle 211

Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh / 214

Cap. XXIX. How the kyng' of behayne sent a messager toward the king' of Anssay his brother / 215

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost 218

Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do take the body of kynge Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent 227

Cap. XXXII. How the king' of Craco was slayn in batayll e 232

Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius & the other saracyns were brent and bruyled 233

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kynge Federyk of behayne 235

PAGE

Cap XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne / 240

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers jousted after dyner 241

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion 296

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande 302

Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder 304

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray 307

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete toeth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent bothe thabbot & al the monkes there 309

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her 314

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn 315

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoune 317

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament / ... 317

Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe 319

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble 321

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children 322

Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete toeth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouerthrew hym with hys spere / 324

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray folowed hym ... 326

Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoH for to fyght with the geaunt / 327

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn ... 327

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in pryson 330

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott 330

PAGE

Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncle 331

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen toward hys fader and prayed hym of mercy 332

Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys synnes to hym 334

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope 340

Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Mayl-leses 346

Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhauk 364

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away 366

Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrawen and knew not of whom 367

NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS 373

LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF MELUSINE 387

GLOSSARY 389

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PERSONS) 401

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES (PLACES) 407

Melusine.

[A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe. compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and translated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe.[1]]

IN the begynnyng of all werkes / men oughten first of alle to calle the name of the creatour of all Creatures, whiche is very & trew maister of alle thinges made & to be made, that oughten somwhat to entende to perfection of wele. Therfore att the begynnynge of this present historye / though that I ne be not worthy for to requyre hym / beseche ryght deuoutly his right highe & worthy mageste / that this present history he wyl helpe me to bring vnto a good ende / & to fuldoo it att hys glorye & praysyng. And to the plaisire of my right high, mighti, and doubtid lord Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry & of Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after the veray & true Cronykles, whiche I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to accomplysshe hit. And bycause that his noble sustir Marye, doughtir to the kyng Iohanne of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had requyred my said lord for to haue the said historye / the whiche in fauour of her hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to serche the very

May the Creator help me to bring this book to a good end!

This History was compiled (in French)

for the Duchess of Bar,

[2] fol. 1 b.

[1] This title is added in xviith cent. handwriting.

at the command of her brother John, Duke of Berry and Auvergne,

trouth & true historye / and hath commanded me for to do drawe alle alonge thystory whiche heraftir foloweth /. And I as of herte dyligent / of my pouere witt & connyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth of hys gracyous commandement. Wherfore I humbly & deuoutly beseche & pray to my Creatour, that my said lord wil take it in gree / and also all them that schall rede or here it / that they wil pardonne me yf I haue said eny thinges that ben not to theire good gree.

and was commenced on St. Clement's Day, Nov. 23, 1387.

Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the Wensday, saynt Clementis day in Wynter, the yere of our lord Ml. ccc. lxxx. vij. beseching alle them that shall rede, or here it redde, that they wil pardonne me my fawte, yf their be eny. ffor certaynly I haue composed it the moost justly that I coude or haue mowe, aftir the Cronykles whiche I suppose certaynly to be trew.

* * * * * * *

Cap. I. How Melusyne & her two sustirs shewid them to Raymondyn at the fontayne of Soyf or thurst /.

[1] fol. 2.

David said that the judgments of God are unfathomable.

It is foolish, therefore, not to believe that marvellous things are true,

for the Creature cannot comprehend the designs of God.

DAuid [1] the prophete saith, that the Iuggements and the punysshinges of god ben as abysmes without bottom & without ryuage. And he is not wyse that suche thinges supposeth to comprehende in his wit / & weneth that the meruaylles that ben thrugh the vniuersal world, may nat be true, as it is said of the thinges that men calle ffayrees / and as it is of many other thinges wherof we may not haue the knowleche of alle them. Now thenne the Creature ought nat therfore for to traueille, by outrageous presumyng to knowe & to comprehende in his wit & vnderstanding the Iugements of god / but men oughten / thinkynge / to be meruaylled of hym / and meruaylling / to considere / how they may

worthily & deuoutly prayse and glorify hym that Iugith so, and ordeynith suche thinges after hys plaisure & wille without eny gaynseying./

Men should rather think how worthily to praise him.

4 The creature of god that is raisonable, oughte moche besily to vnderstande aftir the sayeng of Aristote, that the þynges which he hath made & creatid here bynethe, by the presence þat they haue in themself, 8 certyfyen to be suche as they are / As saynct paule seyth in thepistle that he made to the Rommains / sayeng in this manere / that the thinges that he hath doon, shalbe knowen & seen by the Creatures of the 12 world / that is to wete, by the men that can rede & adiousten feyth to þactoures whiche haue ben byfore vs / as to wete & knowe the landes, the prouinces & the straunge Countrees. and to haue ouerseen & vysyted 16 the dyuerse Royaumes / haue founde so many of dyuerse meruaylles aftir common exstimacion, that thumayn vnderstanding is constrayned of god / that soo as he is without ryuage & without bottom / soo are the thinges 20 meruayllous & wounderfull in many dyuerse landes. aftir their dyuerse nature / that saaf theire Iuggement. I suppose that neuer no man / but only Adam. hadd parfytt knowlege of the thinges Inuysible or that may 24 not be seen. Wherfore I me bethink fro day to day to proufytte in science, & to here & see many thinges / which men suposen not to be true. the which, yf they be trew / I putte them fourth into this termes byfore 28 you / to thende that the grette meruaylles that ben conteyned in this present hystory may be byleued. Wherfore I [1]think to treate to the playsure of god / and after the commandement of my said right mighty 32 and noble lord./

Reasonable creatures should believe what is seen,

and should give credence to travellers

who see many marvels.

Adam alone had perfect knowledge;

but the author daily learns more and more,

and tells what he has seen, that his history may be believed.

[1] fol. 2 b.

LAte vs now leve the Auctoures with peas / and retourne we to that we haue herde say and telle of our auncyent and olde tyme / and that this day we 36 haue herde sey what in the lande of Poitow was seen in

Leaving the Authors, let us turn to what has been seen in Poitou.

dede / for to couloure[1] *our* hystory to be trew / as we hold hit soo / and for to shew & publysshe it thrugh the true Cronykles / as we suppose to doo /.

In ancient times fairies and goblins often appeared in Poitou,

We haue thenne herd say and telle of our auncyents, that in many partes of the sayd lande of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon right famylerly many manyeres of thinges / the whiche somme called Gobelyns / the other ffayrees, and the other 'bonnes dames' or good ladyes / and they goo by nyght tyme and entre within the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore /

and played many pranks.

and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of theire cradelles. and somtyme they tourne them out of theyre wit / and somtyme they brenne & roste them before þe fyre / and whan they departe fro them, they leue hem as hoole as they were byfore / and somme gyue grette happe & ffortune in this world. And yet haue I herd say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipfull & of credence, that somme other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body /

Gervaise tells of other fairies,

which performed menial duties.

whiche dide scoure pannes & potts, and dide suche thinges as a mayde or seruaunt oughte to doo / lyberaly & without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith for certayn, that in his tyme he hadd a frend that was auncyent & old, whiche recounted for trouth / that in hys dayes he hadd seen many tymes suche thinges.

He also says that the fairies sometimes took the form of beautiful women,

and saith yet the said Geruayse, that the sayd fayrees toke somtyme the fourme & the fygure of fayre & yonge wymen / of whiche many men haue hadd som doughtirs, and haue take to theire wyues by meanes of

whom men have married on certain conditions:

som couenauntes or promysses that they made them to swere vnto them / the som / that they shuld neuer see eche other / on the satirday / and that by no maner wyse they shuld nat enquyre where they were bycomme / the other / that yf they had eny children /

[1] Fr. *colourer.*

that theire husbandes shuld neuer see them in theyr childe bedde / And as longe as they kept theyre covenauntes they had good fortune and were euer in prosperyte / but assoone as they faylled of theyr promysses or couenauntes they fell doun fro[1] theyr good happ & fortune / and aftir these thinges so happed to haue broken theyr couenauntes / the other were conuerted & tourned into serpentes. And yet more sayth the [2]said Geruayse, that he byleueth this to be permytted & doon for som mysdedes that were doon ayenst the playsure of god / wherfore he punysshed them so secretly & so wounderly wherof none hath parfytte knowlege / but alonely he / and they may be therefore called the secrets of god, abysmes without ryuage and without bottom / For none knoweth nothing perfyttly to the regarde of hym / how be it that sometyme of his prouysion ben many thinges knowen / not only of oon / but of many other. It is seen often whan a man hath yssued out of hys countree / and hath seen many awounder & meruayllous thynges whiche he neuer wold haue byleued hit by here sayenge, without he had hadd the sight of hit / but as for me that haue nat walked ferre, I haue seen somme thinges that many oon shuld nat byleue without they sawe it. With this seyth the said Geruayse, & setteth fourth an ensaumple of a knyght, named Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel of the prouince of Asy / the whiche knight by auenture on an euen founde oon of the fayree in a medowe / and wold haue had her to his wyf / and in dede she assentid to hit / by suche couenaunce that neuer he shuld see her naked / and were longe togider / and the knight grew & wexed prosperous fro day to day. It happed longe tyme after that / that he wold haue seen the said Nymphe naked / as he dede / in so moche that the said nymphe putte her heed in to a watre and was

and so long as the conditions were kept, they were prosperous and happy; but when they were broken, they became poor, and their wives were turned into serpents.

[2] fol. 3.

Gervaise thinks this is because of some misdeeds, for which God has punished them.

Travellers often see marvellous things;

but even I, who have not been far, have seen some marvels.

Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel found a fairy in a meadow,

and was married to her on condition that he should never see her naked.

For a long time he was prosperous;

but one day he broke his promise,

[1] MS. has 'for.'

and his wife was changed into a serpent, whilst he himself grew poor.

tourned in to a serpent, whiche was neuer seen after that / And the knyght fro day to day wexed pouere and declyned from his prosperyte. As for prouerbes & exemples I wil none bryng' more vnto you / and that / that I haue doon / it was bycause þat I suppose

I have to tell how the Castle of Lusignen was built by a fairy,

to treate how the noble ffortresse or Castell of Lusygnen was bylded & made of a woman of the fayree, and the manyere how / after the juste & true cronykle / *with*out to applye ne adiouste to it no*ne*thing / but that it be approuued Iuste & trew, and of the propre or owne matere / And ye shall here me spek & say of the noble

and how from the same woman a noble race descended, which shall reign for ever.

lynee whiche yssued of the said woman / that shall regne for euer vnto thend of the world / aftir that it appiereth that it hath euer regned vnto this tyme present. But bycause that I brganne first to treate of

First I will tell you whence she came.

the fayree / I shall telle you how & of whens cam the said woman whiche bilded the noble [1]ffortress of Lusygnen, beforsayd.

[1] fol. 3 b.

The children of Melusine and Raymondin were

Hereafter folowen the names of the estates of the children whiche yssued of Melusyne, and were bygoten of Raymondyn in wedlok. And first yssued

Uryan, King of Cyprus; Guyon, King of Armenia; Raymold, King of Behayne; Anthony, Duke of Luxembourg; Raymond, Earl of Forest;

kyng Uryan, whiche regned in Cypre. Aftir hym cam King Guyon, which regned myghtily in Armenye. Item, King Regnald, whiche regned right mightily in Behaygne. Item, Anthony that was duc of Lucembourgh. Item, Raymond that was Erle of fforest.

Geoffrey, of Lusignen; Theodoric, of Partenay;

Item, Geffray with the grette toth, that was lord of Lusygnen. Item, there yssued also theoderyk, which was lord of Partenay. Item, ffroymonde, that was

Froment, of Mailleres.

monke into thabbey of Mailleses[2] the whiche Geffray *with* the grette toth brent the said Abbey, & thabbot also *with* an hundred religyous or monkes.

Once upon a time, in Albany, lived a brave King

It is true that there was somtyme in Albany[3] a kynge that was moche worthy & valyaunt / And as sayth thystory he had hys wyf many children /

[2] Fr. *Maillieres.* [3] Fr. *Albanie.*

& that Mathas whiche was fader to fflorymond was hys first sone / and this kinge had to name Elynas, and was right worthy & mighty knight of his land./ named Elynas.

And it happed that after the decess of his first wyf / as he chaced in a fforest nighe to the see, in the which forest was a moche fayre fontayn*ne* / that sodaynly he had so grett athurst / that as constreyned[1] he tourned & yede toward the said fontayn*ne*. And whan he approuched to the said fontayne / he herde a voyce that song so melodyously & so swetly / that he suposed none other / but it had the voyce of an Angel / but soone aftir he knewe that hit was the voyce of a woman. Thenne descendid he & alyghted fro hys hors to thende he shulde not make gret affray / and walked fayre & softly toward the fontayn in the most coue*r*ed wyse that he coude. And whan he cam*me* nygh to the fontayne / he sawe there the fayrest lady that eu*er* he the dayes of hys lyf had seen to his aduys or semynge. Thenne he stode styl al abasshed of the grett beaulte that he perceyued in the same ladye, which eu*er* songe so melodyously and so swetly. And thus he stood styl / asmoche for the bewte of the lady / as for to here her swette & playsaunt voyce / and hyd hym in the best wyse that he coude vnder the leevis of the trees / to [2]thende that the said lady shuld not perceyue hym / & forgate all the chasse and grett thurst that he had afore. And byganne to think on the songe & on the beaulte of the lady. In so moche that he was as rauysshed & knew nat yf it was daylight or nyght, ne yf he slept or wakked./

After his first wife's death he was hunting,

and being thirsty, went towards a fountain.

When he approached, he heard beautiful singing, which he thought must be of some angel;

but, walking towards the fountain, he sees a beautiful lady (Pressyne).

He hides himself to listen to her,

[2] fol. 4.

and to look upon her beauty: by both he is entranced.

Thus as ye shall now here was kynge helynas so abused / aswel of the right swete songe / as of the bewte of the said lady that he ne wyst whether he slept or waked, For eu*er* styl she songe so melodyously that it was a swete & melodyo*us* thing to here / Thenne

As he stands there,

[1] 'honstreyned' in MS.

the kynge Elynas was so rauysshed & abused[1] that he remembred of nothinge worldly but alonely that he herd & sawe the said lady, and abode there long tyme. Thanne cam*me* rannyng toward him two of hys houndis whiche made to hym grett feste,[2] and he lept & meryd hym as a man wakynge from slep / and thenne he remembred of the chasse, and had of new so grett athurst / that without hauyng aduys ne mesure he yede fourth vpon the ryuage of the fountayn*ne*, and toke the basyn which heng therby & drank of the watre. And thenne he beheld the said lady whiche had lefte her songe & salued[3] her right humbly / beryng vnto her the gretest honour & reuerence that he might. Thanne she that coude & wyst moche of wele & of honour, rendred to hym his salutacion right gracyously, 'Lady,' said Elynas, the kinge / 'of your curtoysye be nat you dyspleased yf I requyre of you to knowe of your estate / of your beyng & what ye are / For the cause that moueth me therto is suche / as now I shall reherse to you. Right dere lady vouche ye saaf to wete & knowe that I can & know[4] so moche of the beyng of this countree, that there nys w*it*hin this foure or fyue myle neyther Castel ne ffortres, but þat I knowe / except that same fro whens I departed this day by the mornyng, whiche is two myle hens or theraboute. Nor there nys neyther lord ne lady within this Countrey but that I knowe them wel, and therfore gretly I meruaylle & wounderly am abasshed, fro whens may be suche a fayr and so gent a lady as ye be / so exempt & vnpurveyed of felawship. and for godis loue pardonne me / For grette outrage is to me to demande of you therof / but the grette desire & good wylle that my herte bereth toward your gracyous personne, hath caused hardynes w*it*hin me for to doo it.'

he remembers nothing;

but two hounds at last disturb him.

He goes to the fountain to drink,

and humbly salutes the lady,

who returns his salutation.

He asks her who she is.

He knows all the lords and ladies of the neighbourhood,

and is surprised that she is without retinue.

He asks her pardon for his rudeness in questioning her.

[1] Fr. *abusé*. [2] Fr. *feste*. [3] Fr. *salua*.
[4] Fr. *sçay et congnois*.

[1] fol. 4 b.

[1]'Sire Knight,' said the lady / 'there is none outrage / but it comm*e*th to you of grette curtoysye & hono*u*r. And knowe you, sire knight, that I shall nat be longe alone whan it shal playse me / but from me I haue sent my seru*au*nts, while þat I dysported me.' Thenne cam fourth to[2] that word oon of her seruaunts, wel arayed, whiche rode on a fayre Courcer, and att his right hand ledd a palfroy so richely enharnashed[3] that the kyng Elynas was moche abasshed of[4] the grette richesse & noble aray that was about the said palfray. Thanne said the seru*au*nt to his lady: 'Madame, it is tyme whan it shall playse you to com*me*.' And she fourthwith said to the kinge: 'Sire knight, god be with you, and gram*e*rcy of yo*u*r curtoisye.' thenne she went toward the palfray / and the kinge lyed hym, & helped to sette her on horsbak moche prately.[5] And she thanked hym moche of hit, and departid /. And the kyng yede to his hors, and lept on his bake. thanne cam*me* hys meney, whiche sought hym, and sayd that they had taken the herte. And the king said to them / 'that playseth me.' Thenne he bygan*n*e to thinke on the beaulte of the said lady, and so moche he was surprysed of her loue, that he ne wyst what conten*au*nce or manyere he shuld hold / and said to his meyne / 'goo you alle before / and I shall folow you soone.' They yede at hys com*m*andement theire way / and wel they perceyued & knew that he hadd found som thinge / And the king hastly tourned his hors, & toke the way that the said lady had ytaken / & folowed her.

Her servants have retired whilst she amused herself.

A servant then brings a palfrey, richly caparisoned,

and the lady, bidding the King farewell,

mounts and rides away.

The King also mounts, but his attendants arrive, having killed the deer.

Being enamoured of the lady, the King dismisses his retinue,

and rides after her.

Thystory recounteth to vs, that so long folowed the kinge Elynas the lady, that he found her in a fforest, where as were many trees high & strayt / and [it] was in the season that the tyme[6] is swete &

He overtakes her in the forest.

[2] Fr. *à*. [3] Fr. *enharnaché*. [4] Fr. *de*.
[5] Fr. *doulcement*. [6] Fr. *temps*.

gracyous, & the place within the forest was moche delectable.[1] And whan the lady herde the noyse of the hors of the kynge Elynas, that rode fast, she said to her seruaunt: 'Stand we styl, and late vs abyde this knight, For I byleue that he cometh vnto vs for to telle to vs a part of his wille, wherof he was nat as tofore aduysed, For we sawe hym lepe on his hors all thoughtfuH.' 'Madame,' said the seruaunt / 'at your plaisure.' Thanne camme the kinge nigh vnto the lady / and as he had neuer seen her before, he salewed her, moche affrayenge, For he was so surpryse[2] of her loue that he coude nat holde contenaunce. Thanne the lady, that knew ynoughe as it was, and that [3]she shuld comme to her entrepryse / said to hym: 'Kynge Elynas, what goost thou sechyng aftir so hastly / haue I oughte borne away of thyn owne?' / And whan the king herde hym named, he was moche abasshed, For he knew nat what she was that spak with hym / and neuertheles he ansuerde to her: 'My dere lady, nought of myn owne ye withbere / but only that ye passe & goo thrugh my land / and it is grett shame to me / sith that ye be astraunger,[4] that I ne doo you to be conueyed worshipfully thrugh my land / whiche I wold moche gladly doo yf I were in place, & had tyme & space for to doo it.' Thenne ansuerde the lady: 'Kynge Elynas, I hold you for escused, & pray you yf ye wyl of vs none other thinge / that ye leue ne lette nat your retourne for that cause.' And Elynas ansuerde / 'wel other thing I seke, lady' / 'And what is it?' said she / 'telle it to me hardyly.' 'My right dere lady, sith that it is your wille & plaisir for to knowe it / I shall telle it to you. I desire moche more than eny other thing in the world forto haue your good loue & your good grace.' 'By my feith,' said she, 'kyng Elynas, to that haue ye

The lady, hearing the noise of his horse, waits for him;

but when he comes up,

King Elynas is much abashed.

[3] fol. 5.

The lady asks him why he follows her,

to which he replies that he is ashamed to let her go unaccompanied through his land.

She excuses him, and begs him not to delay his return merely for that,

upon which he declares his love for her,

[1] Fr. *delectable.* [2] Fr. *surpris.* [4] Fr. *estrangière.*

not faylled / yf that ye think theron but wele & honour, For neuer man shal haue my loue in hys auauntynge.' 'Ha, my dere lady, I ne think on my lyf on none cas dyshoneste.' Thenne perceyued the lady þat he was esprised[1] of her loue, & said to hym / 'yf ye wil take me as your wyf by mariage, and be sworne vnto me that ye shal nat see me duryng my childbed, nor to peyne your self in no manere of way for to loke on me att that tyme / And yf this ye wil doo & swere / I am she that shal obey to you as a wyf ought to obey her husband.' Thanne þe kinge anoone, and with good wille, sware & promysed to hold that byfore is said. Without longe rehercyng they were spoused, & ledd longe a good lyf togidre. But al the land of the kinge Elynas was moche abasshed who was this lady / how be it that she gouerned her wel right wysly & valiauntly. But Nathas, that was sone to the kynge Elynas, hated her ouermoche. and [it] happed that she was at her childbed of thre doughtirs / the whiche she had bornne[2] ryght gracyously alle her tyme, & was deliuered of them thre at ende of ix. monethis / the first borne was named Melusigne, the second Melyor, and the iij^de^ Palatyne. The kynge Elynas was nat thanne present at that place, but kynge Nathas his sone was there, and beheld hys thre sustirs, that were so fayre that it was meruaylle. and thanne he went toward the kinge his fader / and thus he said to hym: 'Sire / Madame, the quene Pressyne your wyf, hath made & is delyuered of thre doughtirs, the most fayre that euer were seen / comme & see them.' Thenne kinge Helynas, that remembred nat of the promysse that he had made to Pressyne his wyf / sayd / 'ffayre sone / so wyl I doo.' And yede apertly[3] & entred anoon within the chambre wheras Pressyne bathed her thre doughtirs. and whan he saw them / he said in

avowing the honesty of his passion.

She will marry him, if he will promise never to see her in childbed;

to which condition he assents.

They are married, and live long together;

but Nathas, the son of King Elynas, dislikes her (Pressyne); and when she is in childbed of three daughters,

[2] fol. 55.

Melusine, Melior, and Palatyne,

persuades the King to visit her.

He, forgetting his promise, enters her chamber,

[1] *empris.* [3] Fr. *apertement.*

and greets her joyfully.

She reproaches him for breaking his promise, saying he has lost her for evermore,

but that she knows Nathas is the cause of all;

whereupon she disappears with her three daughters, and is never seen again.

this manere: 'god blesse the moder & the doughters,' & toke of them grette Ioye. And whan pressyne herde hym, she answerde to hym, 'Fals kinge, thou hast faylled thy couen*aunt*, wherof grett euyl shal comme vnto the / and hast lost me for eu*er*more. And wel I wot that thy sone Nathas is cause therof, & departe I must fro the lightly.[1] but yet I shalbe auenged me on thy sone by my sustir & felow, my lady of the yle lost.' And these thinges said / [she] toke her thre doughtirs & had them withher / and neu*er* aftir she was seen in the land /

King Elynas is much afflicted at the loss of his wife Pressyne and his daughters,

and laments for seven years.

Thystorye saith to vs, that whan the kinge had lost pressyne his wyf, and his thre doughters, he was so wofull & so abasshed that he wyst not what he shuld doo or say. but he was by the space of seuen yere that he dede none other thinge, but compleyned & sighed, & made grette playntes & piteo*us* lamentacions for loue of Pressyne his wyf, whiche he louyd of lawfull[2] loue. and the peuple in hys land said that he was assoted.[3] and in dede they gaue & betoke the gouernement ouer them & of alle the lande to Nathas his sone. Which gouerned valiauntly, and held hys fader in grette charyte. And thenne the barons of Albanye gaf to hym vnto hys wyf agentyl woman,

His people think him mad, and make Nathas their king.

whom they marry to the Lady of Yerys;

whiche was lady of Yerys. And of these [4]two yssued Florymond, whiche afterward toke moche of peyne & traueyll. Neuertheles, oure hystory is not enterprysed ne begonne for hym and therfore we shall hold oure peas of hym, and we shall retourne to oure hystorye.

[4] fol. 6.

and from the two is born Florymond,

with whom the history is not concerned.

Thhistorye saith, that whan Pressyne departed & yede with her thre doughtirs, she went in to Aualon, that was named the yle lost, bycause that all had a man ben there many tymes[5] yet shuld not he conne retourne thither hymself alone but byhapp &

Pressyne goes with her daughters to Avalon, or the Isle Lost,

[1] Fr. *soudainement.* [2] Fr. *leal.* [3] Fr. *assoté.*
[5] Fr. *tant y ent este de fois.*

grett auenture. And there she nourysshed her thre doughtirs vnto the tyme that they were xv. yere of age / and ledd them euery mornyng on a high mountaynne whiche was named, as thystory saith & recounteth, Elyneos, whiche is asmoche for to say in englissh as ffloryssshed hyH.[1] For from thens she sawe ynough the land of Albany.[2] and often said to her thre doughtirs, waymentyng & sore wepyng: 'See, my fayre doughters, yonder is the land wher ye were born / and ye shuld haue had your wele & honour, ne had be the dommage of your fader, that bothe you & me hath putte in grett myserye without ende vnto the day of dome, whan god shal punysshe the euyl folk / and the good he shall enhaunse in theire vertues.'

where she brings up her daughters.

She takes them every morning to a high mountain,

called Elyneos,

and shows them the land in which they were born.

Melusyne, tholdest doughtir, demanded of her moder Pressyne: 'What falshed[3] hath doon oure fader, wherby we must endure so longe this greef & sorow?' Thanne the lady, theyre moder, byganne to telle & shew vnto them all the manere of the faytte, so as ye haue herd tofore. And thenne whan Melusyne had herde her moder, and that she vnderstode all the faitte or dede, She tourned the talke of her moder,[4] & demanded of her the commodytees of the land / the name of the Cites, tounes, & Castels of Albanye / and rehercyng these thinges they al descendid doun fro the hyH, & retourned to the yle of Aualon. And thanne Melusyne had & drew [5]apart her two sustirs, that is to wete Melyor & Palatyne, & said to them in this manyere: 'My dere sustirs, now loke & byhold we the myserye wherin oure fader hath putt both oure moder & vs all, that shuld haue be so wel att ease & in so grette worship in oure lyues. what think you good of your best aduys for to doo / For as for

Melusine asks what was their father's wrong doing,

and Pressyne tells them the whole story.

[5] fol. 6 b.

Melusine then conspires with her sister

[1] Fr. *montaigne florie.* [2] Fr. *Ybernie.*
[3] Fr. *faulceté.*
[4] Fr. *remist sa mère en aultres parolles.*

to punish King Elynas for the sorrow he has brought upon them and their mother,

my parte I think to auenge me therof / and as lytel myrthe & solas that he hath Impetred[1] to oure moder by hys falshed / as lytel joye I think to purchasse vnto hym /.' Thenne her two sustirs ansuerde to her in this manere: 'Ye be our oldest sustir, we shall folowe & obey you in all that ye wil doo & shall ordonne theirof.' And Melusyne said to them / 'ye shew good loue, & to be good & lawfull[2] to oure moder, For by my feyth ye haue said right wel. and I haue

by imprisoning him in a mountain of Northumberland,

aduysed yf it semeth you good that we shall close or shett hym on the high mountayne of Northomberland, named Brombelyoys / and in myserye he shalbe there all[3] his lyf.' 'My sustir,' said either of bothe sustirs / 'lette now hye vs for to doo this / For we haue grette desyre to see that oure moder be auenged of the vnlawfulnes that our fader dede shew vnto her.'

This they accordingly do;

Thanne the thre doughtirs dide so moch, that by theyre false condycion they toke theyr fader, & closed or shett hym on the said mountayne. And after that they had so doon, they retourned to theire moder,

but when they tell their mother Pressyne,

and to her they said in this manere: 'Moder, ye ne oughte to retche[4] ne care more of the vnlawfulness[5] & falshed of our fader / For therof he hath receyued hys payment, For[6] neuer he shal yssue ne departe fro the mounteyne of Brombelyoys, wheron he is closed & shett by vs / and þere he shall waste hys lyf & his tyme with grett dolour and woo.' / 'Ha / ha / alas!'

she is very grieved and angry at their unfilial conduct.

said theire moder Pressyne to them / 'how durst you so doo / euyl herted doughters, & without pyte / ye haue not doon wel, whan he that begat you on my body ye haue so shamfully punysshed[7] by your proude courage. For it was he of whom I toke all the playsaunce that I had in this mortall world,

[7] fol. 7.

[1] Fr. *impetré*. [2] Fr. *leal*. [3] MS. has 'as.' Fr. *toute*.
[4] Fr. *challoir*. [5] Fr. *desleaulté*.
[6] MS. has 'ffro.'. Fr. *car*.

whiche ye haue taken fro me. therfore, knowe ye wel that I shall punyssh you of the meryte aftir youre descrte. thou, Melusyne, that art tholdest, & that oughtest to haue be the moost knowyng / all this is comme & doon thrughe thy counseyH, For wel I wot that this pryson hath be gyuen to thy fader by the / and therfore thou shalt be she that shalbe first punysshed therof. For notwithstandyng the vnlawfulness of thy fader / bothe thou & thy sustirs he shuld haue drawen to hym, and ye shuld shortly haue ben out of the handes of the Nymphes[1] & of the fairees, without to retourne eny more. And fro hens fourthon I gyue to the / the gyfte that thou shalt be euery satirday tourned vnto a serpent fro the nauyll dounward / but yf thou fynd ony man þat wil take the to hys wyf / and that he wil promytte to the that neuer on the Satirday he shall see the, ne þat shall declare ne reherce thy faytt or dede to ne personne / thou shalt lyue thy cours naturell, and shall dey as a naturel & humayn woman / and out of thy body shall yssue a fayre lynee, whiche shalbe gret & of highe proesse. but yf by hap or som auenture / thou shuldest be seen & deceyued[2] of thyn husband / knowe thou for certayn that thou shuldest retourne to the tourment & peyne wher as thou were in afore / and euer thou shalt abyde therinne vnto the tyme that the right highe Iugge shal hold his jugement. And thou shalt appiere by thre dayes byfore the fortresse or Castel whiche thou shalt make, and thou shalt name it aftir thy name / at euery tyme whan it shall haue a new lord, and lykwyse also whan a man of thy lynee shal dey. And thou, Melyor, to the I gyue a Castel in the grette Armenye, whiche is fayre & riche, wher thou shalt kepe a [3]Sperohak vnto the tyme that the grett maister shall hold his Iugement. And al

For punishment she condemns Melusine, the eldest and the most in fault,

to be turned into a serpent every Saturday, until she finds some one who will marry her, and promise never to see her on that day.

If he break his promise,

she must return to her punishment until the Day of Judgment,

appearing before her castle for three days, whenever it shall have a new lord, or when one of her descendants is about to die.

Melior is condemned to keep a sparrowhawk in a castle in Armenia, until the judgment day;

[3] fol. 75 b.

[1] Fr. *japhes*. [2] Fr. *decellée*.

and all knights who shall watch there a certain time without sleep,

noble and worthy knightes descended & comme of noble lynee, that wil goo watche there the day byfore the euen, and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx. day of Iung,[1] without eny slep,

shall have any gift they desire,

shal haue a yeft of the of suche thinges that men may haue. corporelly / that is to wete, of erthly þinges

except herself in marriage.

without to demande thy body ne thy loue by maryage nor other wyse. And al thoo that shal demande the

Those that persist in this last request shall be unfortunate to the ninth generation.

without cesse, and that wyl not forbere & absteynne them þerof / shalbe infortunate vnto the ix. lynee, and

Palatyne is to be imprisoned on Mount Guygo, with the treasure of King Elynas, until one of their lineage shall deliver her, and obtain the treasure.

shul be putt from theire prosperytees /. And thou shalt be closed, palatyne, & shette on the mountayn of Guygo, with al the tresoure of thy fader, vnto the tyme that a knight shal comme of our lynee whiche shal haue al that tresoure to help therwith for to gete & conquyre the land of promyssion / & shal delyure the from thens /.' Thenne were the thre sustirs full heuy of herte & sorowfull, & departed fro theire moder. And Melusyne went & toke her way al alone

The sisters then go their several ways.

thrughe the forest & thikk busshes. Melyor also departed, & yede toward the Sperhaak Castel in the grette Armenye. And Palatyne also went to the mounteyne of Guygo, wher many a man hath seen her /. And I myself herd it say of the kinge of Arragon and of many other of hys royaume. And

Be not displeased that I tell you these things.

be nat you displesed yf I haue recounted vnto you this auenture, For it is for to adiouste more of feyth & for to veryfy thistory, And fro hens fourthon I

I will now proceed to the history itself,

wil entre into the matere of the very & true hystory,

but will first tell you how King Elynas ended his days.

but first I shall telle to you how the king Elynas fynysshed his dayes in this world / and how Pressyne his wyf buryed hym within the said mountayn in a moche noble tombe, as ye shal here heraftir. /

After living a long time upon the mountain, he died.

LOnge tyme was the Kyng Elynas on the said mountayne in so moch, that deth which bringeth [2]euery

[2] fol. 8.

[1] Fr. *juing*.

personne to an ende toke hym. Thanne cam*me* ther Pressyne his wyf and buryed hym there / and on hym made to be sette oon so noble & so riche a tombe, þ*at* neu*er* byfore ne syn that tyme was seen non*e* suche ne so riche. For on the tombe were riches *with*out comparacion as of precyo*us* stones and other Jewellis / and about it were grett & highe Candelstyk*es* of fyn gold, and lampes & torches whiche brennen both day & nyght continuelly. And on the said tombe stood vp right a Statue or ymage of Alabaster, kerued & made aftir the lengthe, lyknes, & fourme of Kinge Elynas / and the said ymage held in her hand*es* a table[1] of gold, whereon was writon the forsaid auenture. And there the lady Pressyne stablysshed a stronge geaunt to the sauegarde of the tresoure byfore said / the whiche Geaunt was wounder fyers & horryble, and al the Countre therabout he held vnder his subgection. And also aftir hym many other geaunts kept it vnto the tyme & com*m*yng of Geffray *with* the grett toth / of the whiche ye shall more here herafter. Now haue ye herde of the King' Elynas and of Pressyne his wyf. And from hens fourthon I wil bigynne & shew the trouth of thystory of the meruaylles of the noble Castel of Lusignen in Poitow. And why & by what manere hit was bilded & made./

and Pressyne buries him, and erects a rich tomb to his memory,

bearing a statue of the King.

She places a giant to guard the tomb and the treasure,

who was succeeded by many others, until Geoffrey with the Great Tooth came.

Now I will tell you of the marvellous Castle of Lusignen.

Thystory recounteth to vs that there was somtyme in the Brut Brytayne[2] a noble man whiche fell at debate with the nevew of the king' of Bretons. and in dede he durst therfore nomore dwelle *with*in the land / but toke *with* hym al his fynaun*ce* & good*es*, and went out of the land by the high mountaynes. And as telleth thistorye he founde on a day nighe by a fontayn*e* a fayr lady to whom he told al his Fortune & aduenture / so that fynally they enamoured[3] eche other,

A noble man of Brut Britain, falling out with the nephew of the King,

leaves the land;

and meeting a beautiful lady near a fountain,

[1] Fr. *tablier*. [2] Fr. *la brute bretaigne*.
[3] Fr. *s'amouérent*.

he marries her, and in her land builds many towns and castles;

and the lady shewed to hym grett loue, & dide vnto hym moch̄ comfort. and he began *with*in her land, that was wast & deserte for to byld̄ & make fayre tounes & strong Castels. and was the land *with*in

[1] fol. 8 b.

and the country is called Forests.

[1]short tyme peupled raisonably / And they dede calle the land forestz, bycause that they founde it full of grett wod*es* & thikk bushes, And yet at this day it is called Forestz. It haped that this knight & this lady

The knight, quarrelling with the lady,

she suddenly disappears.

fel at debate togidre. I ne wot not goodly how ne wherfore / but that right sodaynly departed the lady fro the knight, wherfore he was woful & heuy. and not*with*standinge he grew & encreaced e*uer* in worship and in prosperite. The noble men thanne of this land / seeyng that they were w*ith*out a lady purveyed hym of

He afterwards marries the sister of the Earl of Poitiers,

oon to hys wyf, a moche gentil & fayre woman, sustir to the Erle of Poiters, which̄ regned at that tyme, &

and has many children by her, of whom the third born was named Raymondin.

he begate on her many children males. emonge the whiche was oon / that is to wete the iijde borne, whiche was named Raymondyn, and was fayre, goodly & gracyous, moche subtyl & wyty in all thinges. And that same tyme[2] the said Raymondin might be xiiij yere of age./

Cap. II. How the Erle of Poytiers prayde the Erle of Forests for to com*m*e to the Feste that he made of[3] hys sone./

[4] fol. 9.

The Earl of Poitiers holds a great feast

[4]The Erle of Poyters held a grett feste of a sone that he had, and wold haue made hym to be dowbed a knight. And no more children he had, but only a fayre mayde that was called Blanche / and the sone had to name Bertrand. [Thanne the Erle Emery][5]

in honour of his son Bertrand,

manded & desyred a moch̄ fayre company for loue of the knighthode of his sone / and amonge*s* other he bode

[2] Fr. *icelluy temps*.
[3] Fr. *pour*. [5] omitted by the translator.

& prayed the Erle of Forests to comme to the feste, & that he shuld bring with him thre of his sones, the oldest, For he wold see them. Thanne the Erle of Forestz went at his mandement in the moost honourable wyse that he coude, and with hym he led thre of his sones. The feste was grette, and there were made and dowbed many a knight for loue of Bertrand, sone to the Erle of Poyters, that was þat day proferred to thonourable & worshipfull ordere of knighthod. And also was ther made and dowbed to a knight, theldest sone of the Erle of Forestz, for he jousted moche wel & fayre. And was the fest contynued and holden the space of viij dayes. And the Erle of Poyters made & gaf many & moche fayre & grett yeftes. [1]And at the departyng of the feste the Erle of Poyters demanded of the Erle of Forestz, & prayed hym to leue with hym Raymondin his nevew, and that he shuld neuer care for hym For he wold purney for him wel. And the erle of Forestz graunted it / and thus dwelled the said Raymondyn with the Erle of Poyters his vncle, that loued hym wel. And after toke the feste an ende moche honourably & frendly. And as now cesseth thistory to spek of the Erle of Forests, whiche returned with his two sones & al his fellowship vnto his Countre. And begynneth oure hystory to procede fourth / and to spek of the Erle Emery, and of Raymondyn./

to which the Earl of Forestz and his sons are invited.

At the feast many are knighted.

When it is over, the Earl of Poitiers asks the Earl of Forestz to leave Raymondin in his charge,

which is done.

Cap. III. How a forester camme to denounce to the Erle Emery how there was within the Forest of Coulombyers the moost meruayllous wildbore that euer was sen byfore./

Thystorye certyffyeth to vs and also the veray Cronykles that this Erle Emery was grauntfader

The grandfather of Earl Emery was St. William.

[1] In French version Cap. III. begins from this point.

to saynt William that was Erle, and left al worldly pocessyons for to serue oure Creatour, and toke on hym the ordre & Religion of the whit maumtelles, an ordre or Religion so called. And therof I wil not make grett locucion or talking; But I will procede fourth on our matere, and to spek of the Erle Emery.

The Earl was worthy, and learned in astronomy,

Thistory thanne telleth to vs that this Erle was moche worthy & valyaunt a knight / and that loued euer noblesse, And was the most wyse in the science of Astronomye that was in hys dayes, ne byfore syn that Aristotles regned. That tyme that the Erle Emery regned / thistory sheweth to vs that [he] coude many a science,[1] & specially he was parfytte in the science of Astromy, as I haue said tofore. And knowe ye that

and devoted to his nephew Raymondin.

he loued so moche his nevew Raymondin that he might no more. and so dide the child his vncle, and peyned hym moche to playse & to serue hym at gree, and to doo hym playsir in all maners. It is wel trouth [2]that

[2] fol. 10.

He had hounds and hawks,

this Erle had many houndes and many haakes of al maneres. and [it] befell as thystory recounteth that oon of the Foresters camme vnto the Erlis Court, & demanded[3] or told that in the Forest of Coulombiers was

and one day went to hunt a wild boar in the Forest of Coulombiers.

the moost meruayllous wildbore that had be seen of longe tyme byfore, and that at hym shuld be the best & fayrest dysport that eny gentylman shuld euer haue. 'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'these tydynges plaise me wel. late the hunters & houndes be redy to morow by tymes. & we shall goo to the chasse.' 'My lord,' said the Forester, 'at your playsire.' And al thus he departed fro the Erle / and made redy al that aparteyned to the chasse for to hunte at thoure that he had apoynted./

[1] Fr. *que de moult de sciences estoit plain.*
[3] Fr. *denoncier.*

Cap. IV. How the Erle went to the chace and Raymondyn *with* hym.

AND whan the day was comme that Erle Emery with grette foyson of barons and knightes departed out of the Cite of Poyters / and Raymondyn rode euer byside hym on a gret Courser the swerde girded about hym and the shelde [1] hehge ouer hys sholder. And whan they were comme to the Forest they byganne fourthwith to hunte, And the wildbore was founde that was fel & proude, & deuoured & kyld many houndes and toke his cours thrugh the Forest, For he was strongly chaffed, and they byganne for to folowe hym waloping a good paas, but the wildbore doubted nothinge / but meuyd & wered hym in suche a manere that there ne was so hardy a dogge ne hound that durst abyde hym, ne so hardy a hunter that durst hold the spere styl anenst hym for to hit & broche hym. And thanne camme bothe knightes and esquyers / but neuer oon was there so hardy that he durst sette foot on the grounde for to withstande & haue launched at hym. Thenne camme the Erle that cryed with a highe voyce. sayeng'. 'shal this swyne[2] abasshe us all.' And whan Raymondyn herde thus spek hys vncle, he was in hymself vergoynouse[3] and shamed / and alighted from his courser and sette feet on grounde / and holding the swerde naked, yede courageously toward the said bore, and gaf to hym a strok with grette anger / And the bore dressed toward hym and made hym to fall on hys knees, but soone he stood up, And as preu[4] hardy and valyaunt wold haue broched and threst hys swyrde within the booris heest / but the bore fledd, and so fast he ranne that there was neyther man ne hound but that he lost the sight of hym, but alonely Raymondyn that was on horsbak, and so fast he folowed

Earl Emery, his nephew Raymondin, and many knights

[1] fol. 108.

go to the forest.

They come upon the boar,

but the dogs and the knights are afraid of him.

Earl Emery cries, 'Shall this swine abasshe us all?'

Raymondin, ashamed, dismounts,

and attacks the boar,

which runs away;

Raymondin follows on horseback,

[2] Fr. *filz de truye.* [3] Fr. *vergongne.* [4] Fr. *preus.*

leaving all the hunters behind.

the bore that he outranne al thoo that were at the chace, & lefte them behinde and founde hym self alone.

His uncle, afraid, gallops to him, and bids him give up the chase,

Wherof the Erle, his vncle, was aferd / les that the bore shuld distroye hym. Wherfore the Erle waloped aftir hys nevew Raymondin and *with* a high voyce escryed hym. 'Fayre nevew, leve this chasse, and cursed be he that anounced it to vs, For yf this swyne hurt you I shall neu*er* haue joye in my herte.' But Ray-

but Raymondin heeds not;

mondyn, whiche was chaffed,[1] doubted not of hys lyf, ne toke heede to none euyl Fortune that might befall

[2] fol. 11.

[2]to hym therof / but eu*er* *with*oute cesse folowed the

and the hunt continues.

said bore, For he was well horsed. And the erle folowed eu*er* hys nevew. What shuld auayll yf herof I shuld

The horses fag, leaving Earl Emery and his nephew alone on the track.

make a longe tale. Alle theire horses byganne to be chaffed and wery, & abode fer behinde, saaf only the Erle and Raymondyn, whiche chaced the bore so longe that the nyght fell on them./ Thanne the Erle & his

They rest under a tree,

nevew stode styl and rested þem vnder a grette tree. And the Erle gan to sey to Raymondin, 'Fayre nevew here shall we abyde tyl it be mone shyn.' And Raymondyn said to hym, 'Sire, aftir yo*ur* wille shall I doo.' And soone aftir roos the moone fayre and bright./ Thenne the Erle that knew moche of the

from which the Earl studies the sky,

science of Astronomy dide loke & behelde the skye and sawe the sterres full bright & clere, and the moone that was moche fayre without tache or spot, ne none obscurte or darknes was seen about it /. he ganne sore to wepe. And aftir grette & deep sighynge*s* said in this

and praises God,

manere. 'Ha / ha / right mighty and veray god, how grette ben the me*r*uaylles that thou haste lefte here bynethe / as to knowe parfytly bothe the vertues & the nature of many wounder and dyuerse condycions of thinges, and of theire significacions or betoknynge*s*. This might not be perfightly knowen, yf thou shadd nat vpon the men somwhat of thy full & deuyne grace,

[1] Fr. *eschauffé*.

And specyally of this meruayllous aduenture, the whiche I now see by the sterres whiche thou hast created & sitte by ordre on the firmament or skye / and that I knowe by the high science of astronomye / of the whiche by thy grace þou hast lente to me oon braunche of knowlege wherof I oughte to preyse / to thanke and to regracy[1] the hertily in thy highe mageste, wher to none may be compared. O veray & highe sire, how might this be raisonably as to knowlege humayne *with*out it were by thy terrible jugement, For no man shuld not mowe haue & receyue wel for to do eu*er* euyl. And not*with*standyng I see & perceyue wel by [2]the highe science of Astronomy / of whiche som*me* vnderstandyng I haue / to me leued[3] of thy pure grace what hit segnyfyeth or betokneth, wherof moche m*er*uailled I am.' These word*es* said / the Erle byganne to wepe and to sighe more strongly than he dide byfore. Thanne Raymondin whiche hadd kyndled the fyre with hys fyreyron and that had herde the moost part of all that the Erle Emery had sayd / said to hym in this manere / 'My lord, the fyre is wel kyndled, com*me* and warme you. and I byleue that within a while we shall haue som*me* tydyng*es* of your meyne, For as my thought ryght now I herd barking of dogges.' 'By my feith,' said the Erle. 'of the chace I gyue nomore force / but of that I see' / And thanne he behelde vpward vnto the sky and wept ful sore / And Raymondyn þat so moche loued hym, said to hym / 'Ha / ha / my lord, for godis loue lette that thing be. For it apparteyneth not to so highe a prince as ye be, For to putte or sette hys herte therto / ne for to enquyre of suche artes, ne of suche thynges. but wel it behouyth to you, and that shalbe wel doon to regracye, and to thanke god of that he hath purueyed you and promoted vnto so highe and so noble a lordship as

[2] fol. 11 b.

and weeps.

Raymondin kindles a fire,

and asks the Earl to warm himself,

and says he hears the dogs barking.

The Earl being still in tears,

Raymondin tries to divert his attention,

[1] Fr. *gracier*. [3] Fr. *presté*.

youre is. And as me semeth it is grette symplenes to take ony sorowe or heuynes of suche thinges that may not helpe / hyndre ne lette' / 'Ha / ha / fole,' said the Erle, 'yf thou wyst and knew the grette *merueylles* & wounderfull auentures that I see, thou shuldest be al abasshed.' Thanne Raymondyn, that thought none euyl, answeryd in this manere. 'My right dere & doubted lord, I pray you to telle it to me / yf it is thinge that I may knowe.' 'By god,' said the Erle, 'thou shalt knowe it / and I wold that neyther god ne the world shuld demande of the nothinge of it / and that thadauenture shuld befall to the, on myn owne self / For from hens fourth I am old and haue frendes ynoughe for to hold my lordshipes. but yet I loue the so moche that I would that so grett a worship were haped to thee / And the auenture is suche / that yf at the same coure a subget dide [1]slee hys lord he shuld become the moost mighty and moost worshiped that euer came out of hys lynage or kynrede, And of hym shuld procede and yssue so subtle a lynee / that of it shuld be mencioun and remembraunce made vnto thende of the world. And know thou for certayn that this is trouth which I telle to the.' Thanne ansuerde Raymondyn that neuer he shuld mowe byleue that it were trouth / and that it were ayenst al right and reason / that a man shuld haue wele for to doo euyl, and for to doo suche a mortal treson. 'Now byleue thou it surely,' said the Erle to Raymondyn, 'For it is as I tell to the.' 'By my feith,' said Raymondin 'yet shall I nat byleue it.' And as the Erle Emerye and Raymondin spak of the said auenture togidre, they herd al alonge the wod a grette affray / and Raymondyn toke thanne hys swerd that lay on the erthe. and lyke wyse dede the erle, And abode longe thus thinkinge for to knowe what it was, and stode byfore the fyre / on that syde as them semyd that the stryf was. And longe in suche

but he says he sees wonderful adventures in the sky.

Raymondin asks what they are.

The Earl says, that if a subject [1] fol. 12. were to slay his lord, then

that subject would found a noble line.

Raymondin answers, that he cannot believe it,

because it is against right and reason.

While they speak they hear a great affray;

they stop and listen;

a state they abode tyl that they sawe a wounder grette & horryble bore moche chaffed commynge toward them. Thanne gan sey Raymondyn, 'My lord, clemme you vpon som tree lest that this wyld bore hurte you, and lette me dele with hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle / 'god forbede that I leue the in suche auenture al alone.' And whan Raymondyn herde this, he went & stode byfore the bore hauyng hys swerd on his feet,[1] and wilfull[2] for to dystroye & slee hym / and the wild bore tourned hym and went toward the Erle. Thenne byganne the dolour of Raymondyn / and the grette hape that therof camme aftirward to hym, As the very & trew history recounteth to vs.

soon the boar approaches them.

Raymondin goes to slay him.

Cap. V. How Raymondyn slew the Erle of Poyters, his vncle.

[3]IN this part recounteth thystory, that whan Raymondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he shuld not hurte his lord / the bore anoone hurted to hym, & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche seeyng the wyld bore comme / lefte his swerd, and toke a short spere, and strayght held it dounward before hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the chasse, broched the bore thrughe the brest / but the Erle fell doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn, holdyng hys swerde in his hand, camme toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure[4] legges, For he leye vpsodounne the bely vpward. and suche a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of hys swerde brake / so that the poynte of it sprang ayenst the Erlis stomak, & wounded hym sore / in so moche that he deyed therof. And Raymondyn, which was sore chaffed / seeyng hys wepen broken, and not

[3] fol. 12 a.

The boar comes near the Earl,

who pierces him.

Raymondin strikes also, but his sword breaks and wounds the Earl, so that he dies.

[1] Fr. *l'espée au poing*, mistranslation for 'in his fist.'
[2] Fr. *par bonne voulenté de la destruire.*
[4] Fr. *quatre.*

[1] fol. 12.

Raymondin kills the boar,

yet percey[1]uyng his mortal werk / toke the spere, & so strongly broched it thrughe the bore, that he slew hym. But whan he dide loke toward his vncle, and that he sawe hym all bloody / he went, and wold haue had hym to stand vpon his feet, but it was for nought.

and then sees that his uncle is dead.

he thenne pulled out of hys brest the piece of the swerd, and knew that it was hys dede /. Moche meruayllously thanne byganne Raymondin to sighe & to complayne, & wept and lamented piteously, sayeng in this manere: 'Ha / ha / false fortune, how moche art thou peruerse & euyl, that hath doon to be slayn by me hym that loued me so moche, and that had doon to me so moche good? Ha / god fader almighty / wher shal now be the land where this harde & false synner shal mowe abyde / For in certayn all they that shall here spek of this grett mysdede shal juge me / & with good right, to dey of a shamfull deth, For a more false ne more euyl treson dide neuer no synner. / Ha / erthe cleue & open the / & deuoure thou me fourthwith, and lete me fall with the moost obscure & derk angel within helle, þat somtyme was the fayrest of all other in heuen, For wel I haue deserued it.' In this dolour & woo was Raymondyn a longe space of tyme, & was moche þoughtfull & wroth / and bethought hym self, & said in this manere / 'My lord & vncle, that lyeth deed yonder, sayd to me / that yf suche an auenture shuld comme to me, that I shuld be worshiped more than ony man of my lynage. but I now see wel al the contrary / For truly I shalbe þe moost vnhappy & dyshonoured man that euer was borne of woman / and by my feyth I haue wel deserued it / it is wel raison & right. But notwithstanding [2]syth that now it may none oþerwyse be / I shal dystourne me out of this land, and shal goo som wher for to purchasse myn aduenture, suche as god wil send to me in to somme good place, where as I may take & do penitence for my

He weeps and laments piteously,

and remembers that such an adventure would make a man famous.

[2] fol. 13 b.

synne.' And thanne Raymondyn cam*me* to hys lord / and sore wepyng, kyssed hym with so heuy & wooful herte / that thenne he had nat mow say one only word for all the gold in the world /. And soone aftir that he had kyssed hym, he layed his foot on the sterop and lepe vpon his hors / and departed, holding his way thrugh the myddel of the Forest, moche dyscomforted, & rode apas vnknowing the way, ne whether he went / but only by hap & att auenture, And made suche a sorowe that there nys no personne in the world that coude thinke ne sey the vth. part of hys dolour /.

Raymondin sadly kisses his dead lord,

leaps on his horse, and rides through the forest

Whan Raymondyn departed fro his lord, and that he had lefte hym deed beside the fyre, and the wild bore also / he rode so longe thrugh the Forest, euer wepyng and complaynyng so sore that it was gret pite for to see & here hym / that about mydnyght he aprouched nygh to a fontayne of fayerye, named þe fontayne of soyf / And many one of the Countre þer about called hit the fontayne of fayerye, bycause that many a m*er*uaylle fell & happed there many tymes in tyme passed. And was this fontayn*ne* in a wounderfull & m*er*uayll*ous* place / and ou*er* it was a roch of m*er*uayll*ous* height / and al alonge the said Fontayn*ne* was a fayre medowe, nygh to the high Forest. And wel trouth it is that the moone dide shyn*ne* at that tyme ryght clere & bright, And the hors ledd Raymo*n*dyn whiche way that he wold, For no heede nor [1]aduys he had of nothing, for cause of the gret dysplaysaunce that he had w*ith*in hym self. And notwithstanding that he slept, hys hors ledd hym in this state so longe that he was com*me* wel nygh to the fontayne. And at that same tyme were there [thre] ladyes, that played & dysported them / amongis the whiche oon was auctorised of the other as maistresse & lady ou*er* them, Of the whiche lady I wil now spek aftir that thistory telleth.

till he comes nigh to the fairy Fountain of Soif.

He falls asleep on his horse,

[1] fol. 14.

which journeys on to the fountain,

where three ladies disport themselves.

Cap. VI. How Raymondyn cam*me* to the Fontayne of soyf, wher he founde Melusyne, and two other ladyes with her.

Unknown to himself Raymondin is carried by his horse

THystory saith, that so longe bare the hors Raymondyn thus pensefull[1] & heuy of herte of the myshap that was comme to hym, that he ne wyst where he was, no whither he went / ne in no manere he ledd hys hors / but his hors ledd hym where that he wold, For Raymondin touched [2]not the brydell / and herd no saw nought / so sore was hys wit troubled. And thus he passed byfore the fontayn*ne* where the ladyes were, without hauyng eny sight of them. but the hors that sawe them, was sodaynly afrayed, and fledd thens, runnyng moche fast. And thanne she that was the grotest lady of them thre, sayd in this manere: 'By my feyth, he that rode now & passed byfore vs, semyth to be a moche gentyl man / and, neu*er*theles, he maketh of it no semblaunt / but he sheweth the semblaunt of a vylayne or kerle, that hath passed so before ladyes without to haue salewed them.' And all this said she feynyngly to thende that the other shuld not perceyue to what thinge she tendeth. For she wyst & knew wel how it was with hym, as ye shal here say in thystory herafter. And thanne she gan say to the other: 'I go to make hym speke. For he semyth to be asleep.' She departed fro the other two ladyes and rode to Raymondyn, and toke the hors by the bryde & made hym to stand styl, and

[1] fol. 14 b.

just the Fairy Fountain.

The chief lady there feignedly complaining of Raymondin and scorning them.

ansuerd her not. And she, as angry & wroth, sayd ones ayen to hym: 'And how, sire musarde, are ye so dyspytous that ye dayne nat ansuere to me?' And yet he ansuered neuer a word. 'By my feith,' sayd she within her self, 'I byleue nonne other / but that this yong man slepeth vpon his hors / or ellis he is eyther dombe or def / but as I trow I shal make hym wel to spek, yf he euer spak byfore.' And thenne she toke and pulled strongly hys hand, sayeng in this manere: 'Sire vassal, ye slep.' Thanne Raymondyn was astonyed [1] and affrayed, as one is whan another awaketh hym fro slepe / and toke hys swerd, wenyng to hym that it had be hys vnclis meyne, that wold haue take and slayn hym. And the lady thanne perceyued wel that he yet had not seen her, and, al lawghing, bygan to say to hym, 'Sire vassal, with whom wyl you bigynne the bataille? / your enemys ben not here, And knowe you, fayre sire, that I am of your party or syde?' And whan Raymondyn herd her spek, he beheld her, and perceyued the gret beaulte that was in her, and toke of hit grett meruayll, For it semed to hym that neuer byfore he had not seen none so fayre. And thenne Raymondyn descendid from hys hors, and bowed hys knees, and made reuerence vnto her, and said: 'My dere lady, pardonne to me myn Ignoraunce & vylonny that I haue doo toward you, For certaynly I haue mystaken ouermoche anenst your noble person. And neuertheles, I ne sawe ne herd neuer what ye haue said tyl that ye toke me by the hand. and knowe ye, that I thoughte moche at that tyme on a thinge that sore lyeth nygh to my herte / and vnto god I pray deuoutly that amendes I may make vnto you / and that of hys grace I may at myn honour be out of this peyne, whiche hurteth myn herte sore.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the lady / 'it is wel said, For as for to bygynne eny thinge, the name of god most first

which enrages her;

she sees he sleeps,

and wakes him suddenly,

[1] fol. 15.

whereat he is affrighted,

but the lady soothes him.

He admires her beauty,

for he had seen none so fair before.

He asks pardon for his negligence.

be called to mans help / and I byleue you wel / that
The lady asks Raymondin where he travels to; ye herd not what I haue said / but, fayre sire, whither goo you att this tyme of nyght / telle hit hardyly to me / yf goodly ye may dyscouere it. And yf you knowe not the way / wel I shall dresse you to it / For there nys neyther way ne path but that I knowe it wel, and therof ye may trust on me hardyly.' 'By
[1] fol. 15 b. my feith,' said Raymondyn, [1]'gramercy, lady, of your curtoysye. And ye shal knowe it, my dere lady,
he says he has lost his way, sith that youre desyre is for to know it, I haue lost the high way syn almost yestirday none vnto now / and I ne wot where I am.' Thanne perceyued she that he[2] kept hys faytte secret fro her / and said to hym:
but she calls him by his name, and tells him not to deceive her. 'By god, fayre frend Raymondyn, ye shuld not hyde nothinge fro me, For I wot wel how it standeth with you.' And thenne whan Raymondyn herd that she
This abashes Raymondin. named hym by hys owne name, he was so abasshed that he wyst not what he shuld ansuere. And she þat sawe wel that he was shamfull of that she had named hym, and that she wyst so moche of hys secret & Counseyll, sayd to hym in this manere: 'Forsouthe, Raymondyn, I am she after god that may best counseylle the / and that may furthre and enhaunse the in this mortal lyf. and all thin aduersytees & mysdedes most be tourned in to wele / nought auaylleth to the
The lady recounts to him his adventure, for to hyde them from me. For wel I wot that thou hast slayn thy lord / as moche by myshap / as wylfully / how be it that at that coure thou supposest not to haue doon it. and I wot wel all the wordes that he told vnto þe of the arte of Astronomye, wherin duryng hys lyf he was right expert.' Whan Raymondyn
which abashes him yet more. herde this he was more abasshed than he was tofore / and said to the lady: 'Right dere lady, ye telle to me the trouth of alle thinges that ye say; but moche I
He asks how she knows of it. meruaylle me how ye may so certaynly knowe it / and

[2] 'she' in MS.

who told it so soone to you?' And she ansuerd to hym in this manere: 'Be not thou abasshed therof, For I knowe the full trouth of thy faytte. And wene nor suppose thou nat that it be fauntesye or dyuels werk of me and of my wordes, For I certyfye the, Raymondyn, [1]that I am of god, and my byleue is / as a Catholique byleue oughte for to be. and I lete the to wete that without me and my counseyll / thou mayst not comme to theude of thy faytte. but yf thou wilt byleue stedfastly all that thyn vncle Emerye said vnto the, hit shalbe profytable to the, with the help of god and of me. And I say so moche that I shal make the for to be the gretest lord that euer was of thy lynage, and the gretest and best lyuelod[2] man of them all.' Whan Raymondyn vnderstod the promysse of the lady / he remembred the wordes that hys lord told vnto hym. And consyderyng within hym self the grete parels[3] wherin he was as exilled and banysshed out of hys Countre & fro his frendes, said [to hym-self][4] that he shuld take thauenture for to byleue the lady of all that she shuld doo or say to hym, For but ones as he said he shuld passe the cruell paas of the deth. And to the lady he ansuerde full humbly in this manere: 'My right dere lady, I thanke you moche of the promysse that ye do and proffre to me. For ye shall see & knowe that this shal not abyde or tarye by me for no traueyll that ye can aduyse / but that I shall euer doo your playsire, yf it be possible to be doo / and that a cristen man may, or ought to doo, with honour.' 'By my feyth, Raymondin,' said the lady / 'that is said of free herte, For I shall not say nor counseille you nothing / but that good & wele shal comme therof. but first of alle,' said she / 'ye most promyse to me that ye shall take me to your wyf. and make you no doubte of me / but that I am of

'Not by witchcraft,' she replies,

[1] fol. 16.

and advises him to believe what Earl Emery foretold,

and promises to make him a great lord.

He thanks her,

and undertakes to do her pleasure.

She asks him to marry her;

[2] Fr. *terrien*. [3] Fr. *périls*. [4] Fr. *s'advisa*.

god.'[1] And thanne Raymondyn yede & ganne say, & sware in this manere, 'Lady dere / by my feith / sith
[2] fol. 164 a. that ye ensure me that it is soo / I shal doo aftir[2] my power all that ye wyl commaunde me for to doo / And
he promises. indide I lawfully[3] promytte you that so shal I doo.' 'Yet Raymondyn,' sayd she, 'ye most swere another thinge.' 'What it is, my lady,' said Raymondyn, 'I am redy / yf it be thinge that goodly I may doo.'
'ye,' said she / 'and it may not tourne to you to no dommage[4] / but to all wele. Ye muste promytte to me, Raymondyn, vpon all the sacrements & othes that a man very catholoque & of good feith may doo and
She asks him never to try to see her on Saturdays; swere, that neuer while I shalbe in your company, ye shal not peyne ne force your self for to see me on the Satirday / nor by no manere ye shal not enquyre that day of me, ne the place wher I shalbe.' And whan
she had thus said to Raymondyn, he yet ageyn said to her in this manere: 'On the parel of my sowle I swere
this he also promises. to you / that neuer on þat day I ne shal doo nothing that may hyndre ne adommage[5] you in no manere of wyse' / 'and I,' said she, 'ne shal doo nor thinke to none other thing but in what manere I shall mowe best encresse in worship and honour, both you and your lynee.' And Raymondyn yede & gan sey to her in this manere, 'Soo shall I doo it to the playsire of god.'/

'THanne,' said the lady / 'I shal now telle how ye most doo / doubte you not of nothing. but goo
The lady bids Raymondin go to Poitiers, fourthwith vnto Poyters, And whan ye shal comme there / many one ye shal fynd commyng fro the chasse
where the citizens will ask tidings of his uncle. that shall axe to you tydynges of the Erle, your vncle. and to them ye shall ansuere in this manere / "how /
He is to say he has not seen him, is he not yet comme ayen?" And they shal sey "nay." and thanne ye shal say, "I neuer sawe hym syn that

[1] Fr. *de par Dieu.* [3] Fr. *leaulment.*
[4] Fr. *prejudice.* [5] Fr. *soit en vostre prejudice.*

the chasse was at the strengest, and whan ye lost hym" / and semblaunt ye most mak to be abasshed more than eny other. And soone after shul comme the hunters and other of hys meyne, and [1]shal brynge with them the corps deed within a litere / & his woundes shal seme to euery man aduys to be made by the wild-bores teth. and they shal say alle, that the wildbore hath slayn hym, And yet they shall say that the Erle kyled the sayd bore / and many one shal hold it for a hardy & valiaunt dede. thus the dolour & woo shal bygynne to be moche grete. The Erle Bertrand, his sone, & hys doughtir Blanche, & alle oper of hys meyne, bothe lesse & grete togidre, shal make grete sorowe / and so shall ye doo with them. and ye shall putte on you the blak gowne as they shall. And aftir this nobly doon, and the terme assigned & take whan the barons shall comme for to doo theire obeysaunce & homage vnto the yong' Erle, ye shal retourne hither to me the day byfore the lordes & barons make theire homage / and that tyme att this same place ye shall fynde me.' Thanne as Raymondyn wold haue departed from Melusyne to haue take hys leve of her / she said to hym in this manere: 'Hold, my redoubted frend / for to bygynne & assemble our loue, I gyue you these two rynges, of whiche the stones ben of grette vertue. For the one hath suche appropriété, that he to whomme hit shal be gyuen by paramours[2] or loue, shal not dey by no stroke of no manere of wepen, ne by none armes / as longe as he shal bere it on hym / And the other is of suche vertue, that he that bereth it on hym shal haue victory of all his euyl willers or enemyes / al be it pletyng in Courtes, or fyghtyng' in feldes,[3] or ellis whersoeuer it be: and thus, my frend, ye may goo surely.' Thanne toke Raymondin leue of the lady, and embraced & kyssed her swetly & moch frendly

and to feign surprise at his absence.

[1] fol. 17.

When Emery's body is found they will think the boar killed him,

and will mourn,

which Raymondin must do too.

After doing homage to the new earl

he is to return to the Fountain.

Before Raymondin leaves Melusine she gives him two rings;

one has power to keep him safe from hurt,

the other will insure victory to the wearer.

Then Raymondin leaves his lady

[2] Fr. *par amours.* [3] Fr. *en plaidoirie ou meslée.*

fol. 17 b. [1]as she on whom all hys hoop was leyd. For he was as thenne[2] so moche esprised[3] of her loue / that al that she sayd / doubtles he held it for trouth. and raison it was,[4] as ye shall here herafter in thystorye./

Cap. VII. How Raymondin, by the counseyl of the lady, went to Poytiers.

RAymondyn lepte vpon his hors, and the lady dressed and putte hym in to the high way of Poytiers, and [he] departed fro the lady. And at departyng Raymondyn was ful sory, For he loued alredy so moche her felawship, that wel he wold euer haue be with her. Thenne thinkynge, he byganne fast to ryde toward the Cite of Poyters. And the said lady retourned toward the said Fontaynne, where the two other ladyes were, & abode her there / of whicħ ladyes thystory leueth here to speke/.

and rides fast to Poitiers.

NOw saith thystorye, that Raymondyn rode so fast that soone he was comme into Poytiers, where he [5]founde many one that were retourned fro the chasse, whicħ demanded of hym, 'where is my lord?' 'how,'[6] said thanne Raymondyn / 'is he not comme?' / and they ansuerd 'nay.' And he said to them, 'I sawe hym neuer syn that the grete chasse bygan, and that the bore scaped fro the houndes.' And while that they spak of this matere among them alle / the hunters & other folk arryued there fro the chasse, som now and thenne, the whiche all said as Raymondyn had sayd. And som said that neuer they had seen suche & so meruayllous a chasse, ne so horryble a bore. And many one said that the bore was comme fro somme other land, For none so grete / nor that ranne so fast sawe they neuer. Thanne was euery man meruaylled / how

[5] fol. 18.

When he arrives they ask for his lord;

he answers that he has not seen him since the great chase began.

Others arrive,

[2] Fr. *desjà*. [3] Fr. *surprins*. [4] Fr. *il avoit raison*.
[6] Fr. *comment*.

the Erle taryed so longe. and they went to the yate for to see if he cam*me*, & abode hym *þer* a longe space. and eu*er* cam*me* folk that said as the other had sayd / and that they lay all that nyght in the sayd Forest, For they had lost theyre way. Thanne was all the peuple of Poyters wooſuⁿ & heuy for loue of theyr lord, that taryed so longe / and specyally the Countesse, the said Erlis wyf. but more woofull & heuyer they were wit*h*in a lytel while after/.

but still no Earl Emery,

whereat the people mourn.

Cap. VIII. How the Erle Emery was brought vnto Poytiers deed within a Lyttere.

THystorye [1] telleth vnto vs, that so long' they abode at the gate with Raymondyn, that they sawe com*m*ynge toward the Cite a grete multitude of peuple. and as they dide approuch̄ & cam*me* nygh̄, they herd' and vnderstod' the pite*ous* voyces of them, wherof they were all meruaylled / and bygan many one to doubte lest that they shuld haue hadd som trouble or som*me* empeschement.[2] And so longe they abod', that they whiche bare the corps of theire lord cam*me* vnto them, sore lamentyng' & piteously waylyng', sayeng' to them in this manere: 'wepe ye, and wepe ayen, & clothe you aⁿ in blak, For the bore hath slayn o*ur* good lord, the Erle Emerye.' And after the corps cam*me* two hunters, that bare the grette bore. and thus they entred into the Cite, makyng' grete sorowe. And alle the peuple of the Cite, seeyng theyre lord deed, byganne pyteously to crye / sayeng in this manere: 'Ha / ha, cursed be he of god that first anounced this chasse.' The sorow & dolo*ur* was there so grete that no man sawe [2] neu*er* no greter. And making suche sorowe cam*me* vnto the Palleys / and there was the Corps leyed. And bycause one oughte not to kepe ne mayntenn*e* longe

[1] fol. 18 b.

A crowd is seen approaching the city gate;

their piteous voices make the townsmen marvel.

They arrive, bearing their lord's body;

two hunters follow, bearing the boar.

The citizens, weeping,

[2] fol. 19.

arrive at the palace, where they lay their lord,

[2] Fr. *empeschement.*

and all the people sorrow.

sorowe, I passe it ouer lyghtly. The Countesse & her children made ouergrete sorow / and so dide the Barons and all the Comynaltee of the land. And knowe ye also / that so dide Raymondyn, as it foloweth./

Raymondin sorrows more than any other.

Raymondyn made grete sorowe and greter than eny other, and sore repented hym of hys mysdede, And so moche / that yf it had not be the hoop & comfort of his lady, he had not mowe withhold hym self, but þat he had sayd vnto them al hys auenture, for cause of the grete contricion that he had of the deth of hys vncle and lord. But I wil not spek long of this matere.

The Earl's obsequy is done in the Church,

Soone thobsequye was doon moche nobly & richely within the Chirche of our lady of Poytiers, after the custome that was at that tyme, And ye muste knowe that the good folk of the land that had lost þeir lord were full of heuynes and of sorow / and they

afterwards the bear is burnt.

fourthwith toke the said bore, and byfore the said Chirch of our lady they brent it / And as it is wel trouth that there nys so grete a sorowe, but that within

Four days after the Barons try to comfort the Earl's family.

foure dayes[1] it is somwhat peased / the barons of the land thanne yede and swetly comforted the Countesse and her two children aftir theire power / and so moche they dide that her grete sorowe was somwhat peased. But þe sorowe of Raymondyn grew & wexed more and more, as wel bycause of his grete mysdede / as for the grete loue of whiche he loued hys vncle. It was thanne

Soon after the Barons are sent for, to do homage to their new lord,

ordeyned & concluded by the Counseyll that alle the Barons of the land shuld be sente fore, & boden to comme at a certayn day for to doo theire homage to theyre gracyous lord, the sone of the said late Erle.

[2] fol 19 b. on knowledge of which Raymondin returns to his land.

And assone [2] as Raymondyn knew of it, he toke hys hors and alone yssued out of Poytiers and entred within the Forest, for to goo & hold hys couenaunt vnto his lady./

[1] Fr. *trois jours*

Cap. IX. How Raymondyn retourned toward hys lady, and sawe a Chapell whiche neuer he had seen before./

Raymondin rides to Coulombiers,

THystory telleth to vs that so longe rode Raymondyn that he camme into the Forest of Coulombyers, & passed thrugh the lytel toune, & went vpon the mountayne and yede so longe that he perceyued the medowes whiche were vnder the roche, that was aboue the Fontayne of Soyf, and sawe a hous made of stone in a manere of a Chapell. And knowe ye that Raymondyn had be there many [a] tyme, but neuer tofore he had seen it / and went neuer to hit; And before the place he perceyued many ladyes, knyghtes, & Squyers whiche made to hym grete feste and praysed hym gretly. Wherfor he meruaylled gretly, For one of them said to hymme: [1]'Sire, alight & come toward my lady that abydeth aftir you within her pauyllon or tente.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondyn / 'hit plaiseth me wel so for to doo.' Soone he descendid from hys hors & yede with them, which conueyed hym toward the lady moche honourably. And thanne the lady camme to mete hym, & toke hym by the hand and ledd hym into her tente, And satte both vpon a bed[2] of parement moche ryche / and all the other abode without. Thanne byganne the lady for to raisonne[3] with Raymondyn, & said to hym in this manere: 'My dere frende, wel I wote that wel ye haue hold[4] alle that I introduysed, or taught you of, And therfore fro hens fourthon I shall trust you the more.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn / 'I haue founde so good a bygynnyng in your wordes, that nothing ye shall commande to me that humayn body may or oughte to comprehende or vndertake / but that I wyl & shal doo it after your playsire.' 'Raymondyn,' said she / 'for me ye shall vndertake

where he sees a new chapel,

and knights and ladies.

[1] fol. 20.

He is asked to dismount,

and is led by his lady to a tent.

His lady expresses confidence in him,

and he in her.

[2] Fr. *couche.* [3] Fr. *à arésonner.* [4] Fr. *tenu.*

A knight announces dinner;

no thing', but that of it ye shal comme to your worship.' Thenne camme there a knyght whiche kneled before her / and after his reuerence made / dressed hys wordes toward her, & said: 'My lady, al thing' is redy / ye shal comme whan it playse you.' And the lady answerde & said / 'Couere your heed, fayre sire.' Thanne the lady & Raymondyn wesshe theire handes & sette them at a moche ryche table. and within the sayd pauyllon were many other tables dressed, where dide sette many knightes and ladyes / and whan Raymondyn saw this appareyll, he meruaylled moche / and demanded of hys lady fro whens so grete a felawship was comme vnto her. And to hys demande the lady answerd nothing'. Wherfore Raymondyn asked of her ayen,

Raymondin marvels at the great company,

'My lady, fro [1]whens are comme vnto you so many of gentyl men and ladyes?' 'By my feyth, Raymondyn, my frend,' sayd the lady, 'it is no nede to you for to be meruaylled therof, For they be all at your commandement, & redy for to serue you / & many other also that now ye see not.' Thanne held Raymondyn hys peas / and so many courses & of dyuerse metes were before them brought, that meruayll it was to see it. And whan they had dyned, they weshe theire handes / and graces said & all things doon / the lady toke Raymondyn by the hand & ledd hym beside the beed, & euerychon voyded the pauyllon, and wheras they lyst went, or wher they oughten for to haue goo, eche one aftir theyre estate.

[1] fol. 29 b.

and asks his lady whence they come.

She tells him they are at his service.

After dinner his lady leads Raymondin beside the bed;

THanne said the lady to Raymondyn: 'My frend, to morowe is the day that the barons shal comme for to doo theire homage vnto the yong Erle Bertrand. And know you, my frend, that there must ye be / & shal doo as I shal telle you, yf it playse you so to doo / Now vnderstand & reteyne wel my wordes. Ye shal abyde per vnto the tyme that all the Baronnes shal haue doo their homages, and thenne ye shal putte your self

where she tells of the homage that is to be done to Earl Bertrand.

Raymondin is to go to Poitiers, but to let every one do homage before he does,

fourth byfore the said Bertrand, and of hym ye shal demande a yefte, for the salary & remuneracioun of alle the seruyse that euer ye dide vnto his fader. And telle to hym wel, how that ye ne demande of hym nothre toune, ne Castel, nor other thing of no grete value. and I wote wel that he shal acorde or graunt it to you. For the barons shalle counseylle hym for to doo soo, And as soone as he shal haue graunted your requeste / demande of hym to haue on this roche & about it / as moche of ground as the hyd or skynne of a hert may comprehende./ and freely he shal gyue it to you. In so moche that none shal now lette nor empesche you therof, by reason of [1]homage, nother by charge of rente or other ordynaunce, and whan he shall haue graunted it to you, take þerof his lettres, vnder hys grete Seele, and vnder the scelles of the peris,[2] or lordes pryncipal of the land. And whan that al this ye shal haue doo / on the morow next folowing after that / as ye shalbe comyng homward agayn / ye shal mete on your way a good man, which shal bere within a sac the skynne of a hert / and ye shall bye it / and for it ye shal pay asmoch as the said man shal aske you for it / and after ye shall make it for to be cutte in the smallest and narrowest waye that is possible for to be cutte, after the manere of a thonge. And after, lette your place be delyuered vnto you / the whiche ye shal fynd all marked & kerued, and all the trees pulled to the ground, there as it shal plaise me for to be / And as for to bryng the two endes of the sayd thong[3] of the hyd togidre about the said place / yf it happe that greter ground may be comprysed within it ye shall doo it to be leyd dounward vnto the valey / & there, at both thendes of the said thonge or leder / shal spryng out of the roche a fayre fontayne, whiche in tyme to comme shalbe full necessary

and at last he is to ask from Bertrand a gift

of the rock, and as much land as a hart's skin can cover,

[1] fol. 21.

and to get a charter for it, signed and sealed.

Raymondin is to buy a skin of a man he will meet,

and have it cut into a thong, then get the land delivered,

and lay the thong down, when a fountain will spring out where the ends meet.

[2] Fr. *pers.* [3] *courroie.*

and conuenable. Goo penne fourth, my dere frend / and doo hardyly doubtles all that I haue said. For all your werkes shalbe of good expedicioun, and without eny trouble or lettyng / and on the mornne next after that your yefte shalbe graunted and your lettres delyuered to you, ye shall retourne hither to me.' Raymondyn thanne ansuerde, 'My lady, after my power I shal fulfylle al your playsire' / And thenne they embraced and kyssed eche other / and toke leue one of other./ Here cesseth thystory of them / and begynneth for to spek of Raymondyn, whiche toke hys hors, and rode toward Poiters as [1]hastly as he myght./

Then he is to return.

Raymondin sets out for Poitiers.

[1] fol. 21 b.

* * * * * *

Cap. X. How Raymondyn, after that the barons had doon theire homage vnto the yong Erle / demanded of the Erle a yefte, the whiche he graunted to hym./

Raymondin rides to Poitiers,

THystorye telleth to vs, that Raymondyn rode so longe that he cam*me* vnto Poytiers, wheras he founde many a high baron, which were com*me* there for to make homage to the yong Erle Bertrand / and they dyde grete hono*ur* and reuerence to Raymondyn, and preysed hym right moche. And the next morow they yede all togidre vnto Saynt Hylary of Poyters, where the deuyne seruyse was doon right worshipfully, And atte that seruyse was the yonge Erle reuested lyke a Chanoyne, as theyre prymat or Abbot / and dyde hys deuoyre as it apparteyned / and that of custome was for to be doo. Thenne cam the baro*ns* [2]tofore hym / and there one after another, and eche one after hys degre rendred to hym hys homage. And thenne, after alle these thinges were doon Raymondin putte hymself fourth before the barons / and w*ith* meke & humble contena*unce* or mane*re*, said to them: 'Emong

where he finds many barons,

[2] fol. 22.

who render homage to the young Earl.

you, my lord*es*, nobles, Barons of the Countre[1] or Erle-
dom of Poytwo, vouchesaf ye to here & knowe the
requeste whiche I wyl putte & make vnto my lord
the Erle. and yf it seme you[2] to be lawfull & raison-
nable / I beseche that it playse you for to pray hym to
graunt it to me.' And the Barons ansuerd w*ith* right
a good wiH, 'we shall doo it.' Thanne they altogidre
went before the Erle, to whom Raymondyn spake
first moche humbly, sayeng in this manere: 'Right
dere sire, humbly I beseche and requere you, that in
remuneracion, or reward, of alle the seruyses that ev*er*
I dide vnto my lord, yo*ur* fader / on whos sowle god
haue m*er*cy, ye vouchesaf of yo*ur* benigne & noble
grace for to gyve to me a yefte, the whiche shall cost
you but lityl. For knowe you, Sire, that I ne demande
of you neyther toun*ne*, Castel, nor fortresse, ne nothinge
of grette valew.' Thanne ansuerde the Erle, 'yf it
playseth to my barons / ful wel it playseth to me.'
And the Barons said to hy*m* in this manere: 'Sire,
syn it is thyng' of so lytyl valewe, as he speketh of,
ye oughte not to refuse it to hym / For he is wel
worthy therof, and wel he hath deserued it.' And the
Erle said to them, 'Syn it pleseth to you for to coun-
seylle me soo / I graunt it' / 'demande now,' said the
Erles to Raymondyn, 'what ye wyl.' 'Sire,' said he,
'gramercy.[3] Other yefte I ne axe of you, but þ*at* ye
wyl gyue to me, about the fontayn*ne* of soif that is
nygh to the roches & wodes / as moche of grounde as the
hyde or leder of a hert shall mow comprehende or [4]goo
aboute, bothe of lengthe & brede.' 'Forsouthe,' said
þenn*e* the Erle / 'this I ought not to refuse to you.
I gyue it to you,' said the Erle, 'freely, w*ith*out rede-
uaunce nor homage to be doon to me, nor to my
successours for eu*er*more.' Thenne Raymondyn kneled

Raymondin tells the barons he intends to make a request to the Earl.

He says he asks nothing of great value,

only as much land as a hart's skin can compass.

[4] fol. 22 b.

The Earl grants the request,

[1] Fr. *messeigneurs, nobles barons de la conté.*
[2] Fr. *se il vous semble.* [3] Fr. *grans mercis.*

& thanked hym ryght humbly / and requyred of hym
and gives letters of gift, *lettres* of hys gyfte, the which were graunted & made
in the best and moost surest wyse that could be
deuysed / and were Seelled of the grette Seal of the
Erle, by thassent and relacion of alle the Barons of
sealed by the Earl and Barons. the land / whiche also dide putte theire Seelles therto.
Thanne they departed fro the chirche of Saynt Hylary
of Poytiers, and yede fourth vnto the halle, where the
feste was grete and joyous, and swete melody was there
herd of almaner Instruments of Musyque. and of many
They hold a feast & dyuerse meets they were serued at the table. And
after dyner the Erle gaaf grette yeftes / And wel trouth
it is, that it was sayd ȝerof many one, that amongs alle
the other Raymondyn was the moost curtoys / moost
gracyous, and of fayrest contenaunce. And thus
passed the day tyl the nyght cam*me* that euerychon
until they go to rest. went to take hys reste. And on the mornne next they
roos and yede for to here masse vnto the Abbey of
At mass Raymondin prays for a good end to his enterprise. Montiers / and there Raymondyn prayed god deuoutly
that he wold help hym att his nede, and to brynge hys
enterpryse to a good ende, and to the saluacion of his
sowle & prouffyt of hys body. And he abode *with*in
the chirche, makyng hys prayers vnto thoure of
Pryme./

Cap. XI. How Raymondyn founde a man that bare the skynne or hyde of a hert / and how he bought it /

[1] fol. 22. [1]NOw telleth thystorye to vs, that whan Raymondyn had herd hys masse, and that he had
ended his prayere / he went out of the chirche / and
at thyssue of thabbey byond the Castel he found a
Raymondin finds a man with a hart's skin to sell. man whiche bare *with*in a sac vpon hys bak the hyde
of an hert, which man cam*me* toward Raymondyn, and
said to hym in this manere. 'Sire, wyl ye bye this

hertis skynne that I haue *with*in my sack, for to make good huntyng cordes for *your* hunters.' 'By my feyth,' said Raymondyn / 'ye / yf thou wilt selle it; and at one word[1] what shall I paye for hit?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the man, 'ye shall paye to me for it ten shelyng*es*, or ellis ye shall not haue it.' 'Frend,' said thanne Raymondyn to the said man / 'bryng it home *with* me and I shall pay the there.' And he answerd, 'W*ith* a good wille.' Thanne he folowed Raymondyn vnto his hous, and there he delyuered hys hyde / and Raymondyn payed hym for it. And anone after, Raymondyn sent for a Sadelmaker,[2] to whom he said: 'My frend, yf it plese [3]you, ye muste cutte this hyde in fourme of a thonge, in the narowest & smallest wyse that is possible to be doo.' The Sadler dide cutte it, and after they leyd it agayn w*ith*in the sac thus cutte. What shuld I nowe prolonge the matere.[4] It is trouth that they whiche were co*m*mytted for to delyu*er*e to Ramondyn his yefte, rode, and Raymondyn with them, toward the fontayne of soyf, so long' that they cam vnto the roche that standeth ouer the said fontayne, where as grett tranchis or keruyng' was made w*ith*in the harde roche / and they fond' al about it grete trees throwen doun to the ground', wherof they were gretly m*er*uaylled, For it was out of mans mynde that euer trees were cutte there aboute. Raymondyn, that thanne wel knewe that his lady had wrought there, held hys peas. And whan they were w*ith*in the medowe they toke the thonge out of the sac /.

which he buys for ten shillings,

[3] fol. 22 b.

and has it made into a thong by a saddlemaker.

Raymondin and the Earl's men ride to the fountain,

where they marvel to find trees cut and rocks hewed.

[1] Fr. *en ung mot.* [2] Fr. *sellier.*
[4] *Que feroye ores plus long prolongation.*

Cap. XII. How they that were ordonned cam*me* and delyuered to Raymondyn his yefte ./

[1] fol. 24.

[1] WHan they that shuld delyu*er* the yefte saw the hyde cutte so smalle, they were of it alle abasshed / and said to Raymondyn þat they wyst not what to doo / And there incontynent cam*me* to them two men clothed with cours cloth / the whiche said in this manere. 'We are comme hither for to helpe you.' Thanne they toke out of the sack the hyde and bare it vnto the bottom*me* of the valley, as nigh the roche as they coude / and there they dide sette a stake in the erthe, and to this stake they fasted the one ende of the hyde / and as they went they sette stakes for to hold with the said thonge rounde aboute the roche / and whan they were com*me* ayen to the first stake, there was yet agrete remenant of the thong' / and for to sette and fournysshe it they drew it dounward to the valey / and so fer they went *with* it, that they cam*me* to the ende of it. And ye must knowe that after that, it is said in the Countre, and as the very and true history witnesseth / there sprange at [the] ende of the said thong' a fayr fontayn, the which rendred so moche of watre that a ryuere wexed or grew therof. Wherof many a mylle dyde grynde corne / and yet now grynden. Thanne they that were there sent for to delyuere to Raymondyn the place, were moche abasshed / aswel of the fontayne that they see spryng' sodaynly before them, as of the grete compace of the ledder, whiche conteyned wel the space of two mylles of grounde./

The Earl's men are abashed at the length of the thong.

Two men appear to help them;

they set stakes to hold the thong;

It compasses the rock and part of the valley.

At the end of the thong a fountain springs forth.

The men are abashed at the fountain and the great compass of the thong.

THistorye to vs recounteth that they whiche were ordonned for to delyuere the said yefte, as byfore is said, were moche abasshed whan they sawe the watre spryng' sodaynly & ranne al along[2] fourth by the valey. And also they were meruaylled of the grete grounde that the thonge compassed. but neuertheles

[2] fol. 24 b.

they delyuered to Raymondyn the ground that was gyuen to hym after the texte or tenour of hys lettres. And as soone as they had delyuered it, they wyst neuer where the said two men that were comme there for to helpe hem becamme, ne whither they were goon. They deliver the land to Raymondin.

Thanne they departed alle togidre, for to haue retourned vnto Poyters, where as whan they were comme, they dide telle and recounte vnto the Erle and to his moder this meruayllous auenture. And thanne the lady said to her sonne in this manere: 'Byleue thou neuer of no thinge me / of that I shall say[1] / but yf Raymondyn hath founde somme auenture in the Forest of Coulombyers, For the same Forest is somtyme full of moche meruayllous auentures.' And the Erle answerd: 'by my feyth my lady / I byleue well that ye say trouth / and long syn I haue herd say that aboue the fontayne that is vnder the same roche, men hath seen fall & happ many a wounder and meruayllous aduentures. but as to hym, I pray to god that he may enjoye it to hys honour and prouffyt.' 'Amen,' said the ladye. As they spake thus togidre, Raymondin arryued / whiche kneeled soone byfore the Erle and thanked hym of the worship & curtoysy that he had doon to hym. 'By my feyth, Raymondyn,' said the Erle, 'ye thanke me of a lytil thing, but betre I shall doo to you, with godis grace, in tyme to comme.' 'Now, my frend Raymondyn,' said the Erle, 'it is told to me of a grete and meruayllous auenture whiche is happed as of present in the place that I haue doon to be delyuered to you by my yefte. Wherfore I pray you that ye wil telle to me the pure & very trouth of hit.' 'My feyth,' sayd Raymondyn. 'My right dere lord / yf they that at [2]your commandement haue delyuered the place to me haue not told you of more than they haue seen / they haue doo wel.

The Earl's men return to Poitiers, and recount to him the adventure. The Earl and his mother speak of the marvels that have happened in the forest. Raymondin arrives and thanks the Earl for his gift; the Earl promises him more favours.

[2] fol. 25.

[1] Fr. *Ne me croy jamais de chose que je die.*

Raymondin tells of the marvellous spring, and the compass of the thong.

Neuertheless it is trouth that the space of grounde compassed aboute *with* the hyde conteyneth two mylle*s*. And as for the two men whiche cam*me* there clothed *with* cours cloth, and haue holped for to compasse & to mesure the place / and also of the ryuere whiche sourdred[1] sodaynly / of alle this, my lord, it is pure trouth.' 'By my feith, Raymondyn,' sayd the Erle, 'ye telle to vs a grete m*er*uaylle /. In good feyth, Raymondyn, lyke as it semeth to vs and supposen, ye most nedes haue founde som aduenture, and I pray you that ye wyl declare it vnto vs, for to haue vs out of the melencolye of it.' 'My lord,' said Raym*on*dyn, 'yet haue I not founde but wel & hono*ur* / but my ryght dere lord, I loue my self for to be & there to dwelle more than in eny other place, bycause that it is co*m*monly reno*m*med[2] auenturo*us* and welhappy countre / and so I hope that god shall send to me some good auenture whiche by hys plaisire shall be to me worshipfull & prouffytable bothe to my sowle and to my body. And, my ryght dere lord, enquyre ye me nomore therof / For certaynly, as of present, I can telle you nomore of it /.' Thanne the Erle, that moche loued hym, held therof hys peas, bycause that he wold not angre hym.

and says that he loves to dwell by the fountain;

then bids adieu to the Earl,

And this doon, Raymondyn toke hys leue of the Erle and of his moder. And for as now I shall say no more of them, And shall say how Raymondyn retourned toward his lady, where as he wyst that he had lefte her /.

and returns to his lady.

Cap. XIII. How Raymondyn toke his leue of the Erle of Poitiers & retourned toward his lady./

[3] fol. 25 b. [3]IN this partye, to vs telleth thistorye that Raymondyn, whiche was moche enamoured of his

[1] Fr. *est sours.* [2] Fr. *renommé.*

lady, departed at this oure fro Poytiers hastly al alone, and rode tyl he cam*me* vnto the high Forest of Coulombiers, and descended fro þe hylle doun in to the valey and cam*me* to the fontayne where [he founde][1] his lady, that moche joyously receyued hym, and said to hym in this man*ere*: 'My frend, ye begynne wel for to kepe and hyde oure secretes: and yf ye persceuere thus, grete wele shall therof com*me* to you / and soone ye shall see and perceyue of it.' Thanne spake Raymondy*n* and sayd in this man*ere*: 'Dere lady, I am & shalbe euer redy for to doo aftir my power all yo*ur* playsires.' 'In dede, Raymondyn,' said the lady / 'tyl ye haue wedded me / ye ne may no ferther see ne know of my secretes.' 'Lady dere,' said Raymondyn, 'I am alredy therto.' 'not yet,' said the lady / 'For first ye must goo vnto Poitiers for to pray the Erle and his moder and alle yo*ur* other parentes and frende*s*,[2] that they wil com*me* and honoure you with their personnes at youre weddyng', in this place, on monday next com*m*yng'. to thende that they see the noblesses that I think and purpose for to doo for to enhaunce you in hono*ur* & worship / and that they take no suspecion but that ye be maryed after yo*ur* estate and degree. And wel ye may tell to them that ye shall wedd the doughter of a kinge / but no ferther ye shall not dyscouere of it. and therfro kepe you as dere as ye haue the loue of me.' 'Lady dere,' sayd Raymondyn, 'doubte you not therof.' 'Frend,' sayd the lady, 'haue ye noo care that for what folke that ye can bryng' / but that they all shalbe wel and honourably receyued & wel lodged and wel festyed / bothe of delycyo*us* meetes and drynkes, and of allman*er* athing' acordyng / as wel to them as to theire horses. Therfore, my frend, goo surely and be not doubtous of nothing.' They thenne kyssed eche other / & Raymondyn departed fro the lady / of whiche

His lady joyously receives him;

but tells him, that he can know no more of her secrets until he marries her, which he promises to do at once.

His lady tells him to go to Poitiers and invite the Earl and his friends to the wedding,

and to tell them that he is to marry a king's daughter.

[1] omitted in MS. Fr. *où il troura.*

[2] fol. 26.

Raymondin goes to Poitiers,

thistory sylenceth / and bygynneth to spek of Raymondyn which goth toward Poytiers./

NOw telleth to vs thistorye that so longe rode Raymondyn after that he was departed fro his lady that he cam*me* to Poiters, wher he fonde the Erle and his moder & grete foyson of Barons *with* them, whiche were right wel glad of his comm*yng*e / and demanded of hym fro whens he cam*me*. And he ansuerde to them that he cam*me* fro his dysporte. And after that they had spoken longe tyme of one thing and of other, Raymondyn yede byfore the Erle & kneled & sayd to hym thus: 'Right dere lord, I moche humbly besech you, on alle the seruyses that euer I shall mow doo to you, *þat* ye vouchesaaf for to doo to me so moche of honour as to comme on monday next to my weddyng, to the fontayn of Soyf. and that it playse you to bryng thither with [1]you my lady your moder, and alle your barons also.' And whan the Erle vnderstode hym he was moche abasshed. 'How,' said the Erle, 'fayre Cousyn Raymondyn, are ye as now so straunged of vs that ye marye you without that we know therof tyl the day of weddyng! For certayn we gyue vs thereof grette merualle, For we wende yf your wylle had be to take a wyf / to haue be they of whom ye shuld first haue taken counseyll.' Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, 'My right dere lord, dysplayse you nat therfore, For loue is of so grete puyssaunce that she maketh thinges to be graunted and doon as it playseth to her / and so ferfourth I haue goo in this matere that I may not flee it: but neuertheles all were it soo that I myght doo soo yet by myn assent I shuld not be fro it.' 'Now thanne,' said the Erle, 'telle vs what she is and of what lynee.' 'By my feyth,' said Raymondyn, 'ye demande of me a thing to the whiche I can not gyue none ansuere, for neuer in my lyf I ne dide enquyre me therof.' 'Forsouthe,' sayd the Erle, 'it is

where he finds the Earl with many of his barons.

Raymondin invites the Earl to his wedding at the Fountain of Soyf;

[1] fol. 28 a.

The Earl is abashed at not being taken into confidence before.

But Raymondin says that love has made what it liked with him.

They ask his Lady's lineage,

which he cannot tell.

grett merualle. Raymondyn taketh a wyf that he knoweth not, ne also the lynage that she commeth of.' 'My lord,' said Raymondyn, 'sith it suffyseth me as therof, ye oughte wel to be playsed, For I take no wyf that shall brawle or stryue with you / but only with me / and I alone shall bere eyther joye or sorowe for it, after that it shall please to god.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Erle to Raymondin, 'ye say right wel / and as for me I ne wil kepe you therfro / but sith it is soo, I pray to god deuoutly that he wil send you peas & good auenture togidre / and right gladly we shall goo to your weddyng', and with vs shall comme thither my lady and many other ladyes and damoyselles of our baronye.' And Raymondyn ansuered, 'My lord, right gretly I thanke you, & as I byleue, whan ye shalbe there and shal see the lady / ye [1]shalbe pleased of her.' And thenne they lefte to speke of this matere, and spake of one thing and of other so long, that tyme of souper camme. And notwithstanding, the Erle thought euer on Raymondyn and his lady, and said in hym self that somme Fortune he had fonde at the fontayne of soyf./

This abashes the Earl.

The Earl wishes Raymondin good luck,

and promises to attend the wedding;

[1] fol. 27.

but ever wonders about Raymondin and his lady, and their fortune.

IN this manere thoughte longe the Erle, so moche that the styward[2] cam and said to hym: 'My lord, all is redy, yf it plese you for to comme.' 'Forsouth,' said he, 'it plaiseth me well.' Thanne they weshe theyre handes, sette at the table / and wel they were serued. And aftir souper they spak of many materes, & after they went to bed. On the morowe erly, the Erle aroos & herd his masse and made the barons to be manded & boden for to goo with hym to the weddynge of Raymondin / and they camme incontinent. And the said Erle sent hys message for the Erle of Forestz, whiche was brother to Raymondyn. In this meane while[3] made the said lady alle redy in

After mass the Earl bids his barons to the wedding,

and sends word to the Earl of Forests.

[2] Fr. *maistre d'hostel.* [3] Fr. *demantiers.*

Melusine makes ready in a meadow a noble feast.

the medowe vnder the Fontayne of Soyf, and suche appareill was there made, so grete & so noble, that for to say trouth / nothing acordyng for suche a Feste fawted ne wamted there, but honourably might a kinge with alle his estate haue be receyued therat. The sonday cam̃e that alle made them self redy for to goo to the fontayne of Soyf, at the weddynge of Raymondyn. The night passed & the day cam̃e. And thanne the Erle with hys moder / her ladyes & damoyselles / and with alle the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles of the lande / toke hys way toward the fontayne. And as they rode thither the Erle enquyred of Raymondyn the estate of hys wyf, but nothinge he would telle [1]to hym therof. Wherof the Erle was sorowfull, And so longe they yede talking togidre that they cam̃e vpon the hille, where they sawe the grete trenchis or keruyng in the harde roche that sodaynly were made / and the fontayne also whiche scourdred[2] & sprang' ther habound-auntly. Thenne meruaylled therof euerychone, how so sodaynly that might haue be doo. And they yede fourth and bibeld doun̄e toward the medowe and sawe grete plente of fayre & riche pauillons or tentes, righ[t] high[3] so grete, so noble, and so meruayllously facyoned that euery man awondred therof. and namely,[4] whan they dide see & perceyued so grete company of noble folke, as of knightes & squyers, that went vp & doun in the medowe and without, for to goo fetche suche thinges as neded to the feste. And also might they see there right grete foyson of ladyes & damoyselles richely apparayled & arayed, many horses, palfreys, & coursers were there. There might they see kychons & Cookes within, dressing meetes of dyuerse maneres. And ouer the fontayne they sawe a fayre chappel of our lady & ymages within right conuyngly kerued & entaylled, and of almener of

The Earl and his company set out to the wedding;

[1] fol. 27 b.

he inquires about Raymondin's wife, but can find out nothing.

At last they come to the fountain,

and then to the meadow,

at which they marvel,

because of the many tents, knights,

ladies, cooks,

and the fair chapel.

[2] Fr. *sourdit*. [3] Fr. *si treshaulte*. [4] Fr. *par especial*.

ornamentes so richely ordeyned, that neuer so grete richesse they had seen before that tyme in no churche, wherof they meruaylled moche, and said oon to other. 4 'I ne wot what it shall befall of the remenaunt, but here is a fayre bygynnyng grete, & shewyng grete noblesse & worship.' /

Cap. XIV. How the Erle of Poytiers camme to the weddyng of Raymondyn, acompayned of alle the Barons in hys land.

[1] NO[w] telleth to vs thystorye, that whan the Erle & hys folk were descended doun fro the 12 montayne / an auncyent knyght, nobly & richely clothed and arayed, whiche rode on a fayre palfray, and had in hys felawship xxiiij[ti] men of worship richely & nobly aourned[2] & wel horsed / camme 16 gladly & with mery contenaunce toward the Erle. First he mete with the Erle of Forest & with Raymondyn & theyre felawship, for they rode before. And whan he perceyued Raymondyn, whiche wel he 20 knew among other / he yede tofore hym & made to hym honour & reuerence, and his brother Erle of Forest he salued moche honourably, & theyre felawship also. And shortly to spek, this auncyent knight 24 receyued them worshipfully, sayeng to Raymondin in this manere: 'My lord, I pray you that I may be ledde before the Erle of Poitiers yf it playse you, [3] for I desyre to spek with hym.' And so Raymondyn made 28 hym to be ledde vnto the said Erle. And whan thauncyent knight camme before the Erle, he salewed hym swetly, sayeng, 'my lord, ye be welcomme.' And the Erle ansuerd / 'and ye are wel mete with me. nowe 32 telle ye to me why ye dide axe aftir me.' Thanne said the knight thus to the Erle: 'Sire, My lady Melusyne

[1] fol. 28.

An ancient knight comes to meet the company,

and salutes them.

He asks Raymondin to lead him before the Earl of Poitiers,

[3] fol. 28 b.

which Raymondin does.

[2] Fr. *aourné.*

The ancient knight, on behalf of Melusine, thanks the Earl of Poitiers for his presence.

of Albany recommendeth her to you as moche as she may,' and thanketh you of the gret & high honour that ye doo vnto Raymondyn your Cousin & also vnto her whan ye vouchesauf of your grace to comme hither for to bere vnto them felawship att their wedding.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle, 'In this cas,' as ye may telle to your lady, is no thankes to be had, for I am holden for to do vnto my Cousyn all worship & honour possible to me to be doo.' 'Sire,' said thauncient knight, 'ye say full curtoisly,/ but my lady is sage for to knowe what she ought for to doo ' and toward you she hath sent both me and my felawship also.' 'Sire knight,' said the Erle, 'this playseth me wel. but knowe ye that I wende nat to haue found lodged so nygh to me so noble a lady as your is, ne that had so many of noble folk with her as she hath.' 'Ha, sire!' sayd the knight, 'whan my lady wil she may haue of knightes & squyers more than she hath now with her / for she ne dare doo,' but to commande.' And thus talking one to other, they camme vnto the pauyllon. And the Erle was lodged there within the moost riche lodgys that euer he had seen before. After every man was lodged honourably after his estate ' & they[1] said that within theire owne places at hom they were not so wel lodged. Theire horses were lodged within the grett tentes,' so at large & at theire ease / that no palfrener was there but that he was full wel playsed. And alle they mervailled fro whens so moch of goode and suche plente of richesses might comme there so haboundauntly.'

The Earl is lodged in the richest pavilion he ever had seen,

[1] fol. 29.

and the rest of the company after their estate.

Cap. XV. How Raymondyn and Melusyne were wedded togider.

The Earl of Poitiers, mother and other ladies arrive,

AFter them camme the Contesse moder vnto the said Erle, and blanche, her doughtir, and with them many ladyes & damoiselles. And

thanne Melusyne, sage & wyse, sent toward̄ her
pauncyent knight, that had hold̄ companye to the
Erle, and also *with* hym she sent many ladyes [1] and [1] fol. 29 b.
damoyselles of high and noble Estate that moch and are welcomed by the ancient knight,
honourably salued and honoured the Countesse and
her doughter / and ledde them to be lodged in a fayr
pauillon made of riche cloth of gold, richely set *with*
perlys & *with* precyo*us* stones. And, shortly to spek,
they were alle so wel & so rychely lodged that moche and so richly lodged that they marvel much.
they me*r*uaylled of the grete riches that they see
*with*in the pauyllon. And there was the Countesse
receyued *with* moch̄ grete and melodyous sowne of
almane*r* instruments and alle they in her companye
were honourably lodged. And whan the Countesse
had rested a lytil while, and that she was arayed *with* The Countess and her daughter are richly dressed,
her ryche rayments / also her doughtir Blanche.
Knyghtes & Squyers / ladyes and damoyselles of her
companye went into the chambre of the spouse, the and go to Melusine's chamber,
whiche Chambre was fayrer and passed of ryches alle
the other cha*m*bres, but whan they sawe Melusyne, &
perceyued her ryche tyres / her riche gowne, alle set
with precio*us* stones & perlys / the coler that she had
about her nek, hir gerdel̄ & her other rayments, that
she had on her, they all meruaylled gretly / and where they marvel much at her rich array.
specially the Countesse, that said / consideryng that
grete estate / Neuer had I wende ne supposed that no
queene ne Emperesse had be in alle the world, that
might haue founde suche jewellis so riche & so grete in
value. What shuld I make long plee / the Erle of
poiters and one of the moost hygh barons, that is to The Earls of Poitiers and Forest lead Melusine
wete, the Erle of Forest, addressed and ledde the
spouse vnto the said Chapelle of o*ur* lady, which was
so rychely aourned, & arayed so nobly that wonder it
was to see / as of paremente & ornaments of cloth [2] of [2] fol. 30.
gold, purfeld and sett *with* perlys and precyous stones, to the richly adorned chapel,
so wel wrought and so connyngly browded, that

meruaylle it was to loke on. fayre ymages straungely kerued / as of Crucifixe & figure of our lady, all of pure and fyn gold / and bokes were there, so wel writon and so riche that in alle the world rycher bokes might nat haue be. And there was a bysshop that weddel them & songe masse before them.

where the wedding takes place.

Cap. XVI. How they were worshipfully serued at dyner. /

After divine service

AFtir that the deuyne seruyse was doon they rested them, and soone after the dyner was redy within a moche riche and grete pauyllon in the myddes of the medowe. Eche one satte there aftir hys degree. and serued they were of dyuerse & good meetes, and of many and dyuerse wynes, and haboundaunce of ypocras [1] was there. There serued the squyers richely clothed one lyke another, whiche were grete in nombre. They were serued alle in plat of pure gold & syluer, wherof alle the companye was meruaylled. And assoone as one messe was taken fro the table, the othe[r] messe was redy. And so of dyuers meetes they were serued many a cours moche honourably. /

the company dine.

[1] fol. 30 b.

They are served by squires,

and eat off gold and silver plate

divers meats.

Cap. XVII. How after dyner the Knightes & Squyers Jousted.

After dinner

ANd after that they had dyned, and the tables were take vp & graces said, and that they were serued with ypocras & spyces. the Knyghtes and Squyers went & armed them and lept on horsback. And thenne the spouse & many other ladyes were sett vpon the scaffold or stalage. Thanne byganne the Joustyng / the Erle of Poytiers jousted moche wel and so dide the Erle of Forest and alle theire knightes and [2]squyers. but the Knyghtes of the spouse dide

the knights and squires arm and leap on horseback.

the ladies go to the scaffold.

Jousting begins.

[2] fol. 31.

meruaiłł, For they ouerthrew bothe knightes and horses vnto the grounde. Thanne camme there Raymondyn that satte on a fayre & strong courser, alle in whyte, & at hys first cours he ouerthrew the Erle of Forestz, his brother / and so valyauntly he demened hym self that there ne was knight on both partyes but that he redoubted hym. And thann the Erle of Poitiers seeyng his appertyse of armes meruaylled what he was / and dressed hys sheld, & holding the speere alowe ranne ayenst hym / but Raymondyn that knew hym wel distourned hys hors and adressed his cours toward a knight of Poitou and suche a strok he gaaf hym, that both man & hors ouerthrew to the erth̄. And shortly to spek Raymondin dide that day so wel that euery man said that the knight with the white armes had jousted right strongly. The night camme and the justyng ended. Wherfore eche of them went agayn in to theire pauyllons where they toke alitil reste / but soone after was the souper redy. And thanne they yede in to the grete tente / and after they had wasshen they set them at table & wel and richely they were serued / and after souper were the tables take vp / and they wesshed theyre handes. & graces were said. This doon the ladyes wente asyde pryuely and toke other gownes on them & camme agayn for to daunse. The feste was fayre / and the worship was there grete / so that the Erle and alle they that were comme with hym meruaylled gretly [1]of the grette ryches & honour that they sawe there. And whan it was tyme they ledd the spouse to bed / moch̄ honourably within a wonder meruayllous & riche pauyllon. And there the Erles of Potiers and of Forests betoke her vnto the ladyes handes. And thanne the Countesse of Poitiers and other grete ladyes had the spouse to bed, and dide endoctryne her in suche thinges that she oughte for to doo / how be it that she was ynough

Melusine's men being victorious.

Raymondin overthrows the Earl of Forest, and demeans himself so that all are afraid of him.

The Earl of Poitiers runs against him,

but Raymondin turns aside and fells a knight of Poitou.

Every man praises the prowess of Raymondin.

They have supper in the great tent,

then they have a dance.

[1] fol. 31 b.

They lead the spouse to bed,

the Countess tells her what to do,

but finde she knowes everything.

purveyal therof. But notwithstandyng she thanked them moch humbly therfore. And whan she was abed

The ladies wait for Raymondin.

the ladyes abode there vntyl tyme that Raymondin cam̃e, whiche was yet talkyng of oon thing and of

who is speaking with the Hero.

other with the Erle of Poytiers & with his brother, whiche thanked Raymondyn of þat he first dide jouste with hym. 'By my feyth,' said the Erle of Poytiers, 'fayre Cousyn of Forestz, ye haue longe syn herd say how somtyme the hote of ladyes cometh peyne & trauayl to the enterynes lowers, and deth to homes.' 'My lord,' answerde the Erle of Forestz, 'my brother shewed it wel this day to me.' And Raymondyn, that was somwhat ashamed, said in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, speyk of the game[1] and gyue not to me so moche prayseng. For I am not he which I meene[2] that dide so. For I am not he that bare the whyte armes / but fayne I wold that god had sent to me the grace to

A knight sent by the ladies

dide so wel.' And as thes wordes cam̃e there a knight, whiche by the ladyes was sent thider / and said to them: 'Faire ladies, Jape not ouermoche. For knowe

[1] fol. 22.

ye wel that as now on other thing he most think.' 'By my feyth,' said the Erle of Poytiers, 'ye say trew as I beleue.' And yet agayn said the knight: 'my lordes, comme & heryge with me Raymondyn. For the ladyes

comes for Raymondin, and tells him that all is ready, whereat the company laugh.

axen after hym for his partye is al redy.' And perof bygan they to lawghe and said that he muste haue witnes therof and that they beleued it wel.

Cap. XVIII. How the bysshop halowed the bed wheron Raymondyn and Melusyne laye.

Raymondin is led to the bridal chamber and brought to bed.

AT thes wordes they went and ledde Raymondyn in the pauylion and soone he was brought to bed. And thanne cam̃e there þe Bysshop that had

[1] Fr. *ferppez du plat.* [2] Fr. *je ne suys mie celluy que.*

spoused them and dide halowe theire bed. and after that euerychon toke his leue / and the courteyns were drawen aboute the bed. And of this matere recounteth no ferther thystorye, but speketh of the other, of which som went to bed, [1]and som went agayn to the daunse and ellis wher them lyste for to goo. And after thystory I shall speke of Raymondyn and of the lady, how the[y] gouerned them bothe togidre. and what wordes they had among' them two as the[y] laye togidre.

then the bishop hallows the bed, the curtains are drawn,

[1] fol. 32 b.

and the company retires.

THYstorye telleth to vs in this partye that whan they euerychon departed and goon out of the Pauyllon and the stakes of hit joyned & shette, Melusyne spak and said to Raymondyn in this manere: 'My right dere lord and frend, I thanke you of the grete honour that hath be doo to me at this day of your parents & frendes / and of that also / that ye kepe so secretly that which ye promysed me at oure first couuenaunte,[2] and ye moste know for certayn that yf ye kepe it euer thus wel, ye shalbe the moost mighty & moost honoured that euer was of your lynage. And ye doo the contrary, bothe you & your heyres shall fall litil & litil in decaye & fro your estate. Ne of the land that ye shall holde & possesse, that tyme ye hold not your promysse / yf it be so that ye doo it, whiche god forbede, hit shal neuer be aftir possessed ne holden alle holl by you ne by your heyrs.' And thanne to her ansuerd Raymondyn: 'My right dere lady, doubte you not of hit, For yf it playseth to god / that shall neuer befall by me.' And the lady ansuerd to hym in this maner: 'My right dere frend / sith it is soo that so ferfourth I haue putte my self I most abyde the wylle of god, trustyng euer of your promesse. Kepe you thanne wel, my fayre frend & felawe that ye [3]fawte not your Couuenaunt. For ye shuld be he,

After the tent is closed

Melusine thanks her lord for his friends' presence at the wedding,

and for him keeping his promise,

and foretells honour to him and his if he remains faithful, but woe if he be false;

[3] fol. 33.

[2] Fr. *convenant*.

upon which Raymondin pledges himself again to keep the covenant.

after me, that moost shuld lese by it.' 'Ha / Ha, lady dere,' said Raymondin, 'therof ye oughte not to be in doubte / For that day, faylle to me god, whan I fawte of Couuenant.'[1] 'Now my dere frend,' said the lady, 'lete vs leue our talkyng therof. For certaynly as for my part there shal be no fawte. but that ye shal be the moost fortunat & happy that ever was of your lynee, and more puyssaunt thanne any of them shalbe / without it be for fawte of your self.' And thus lefte they theyre talkyng. And as thystorye reherceth,

They beget that night Uryan, afterwards king of Cyprus.

was that nyght engendred or begoten of them both the valyaunt Uryan. whiche aftirward was kynge of Chipre, as ye shall here herafter.

Cap. XIX. How the Erle of Poytiers and the Erle of Forests / the barons and ladyes, toke theyre leue of Raymondyn and of Melusyne. /

[2] fol. 33 b.

When the sun is high the lovers rise.

[2] THystorye telleth to vs in this partye that so longe abode these two louers, beyng abed, that the sonne was hye. Thanne aroos Raymondyn and made hym redy, and yssued out of the Pauillon. And as thenne were alle redy, both therles of Poyters and of

Raymondin dresses and goes with the Earls to mass,

Forests waytyng aftir Raymondyn, whiche they ledd to the Chapell and there they herde their masse deuoutly / and after they retourned vnto the medowe, where the

after which the feasting and revelling begins again.

feste & reuell bygan of new, moche grete. but therof we leue to speke. and shall say of the Countesse & other ladyes, which aourned & made redy Melusyne.

The ladies dress Melusine and go with her to mass.

And after they yede and ledd melusine moche honourably vnto the Chapel [3]forsaid. And there they herd masse. thoffertory of whiche was grete and riche. And after that the deuyne seruyse was doon, they retourned vnto the Pauyllon. What shuld I make

[3] fol. 34.

[1] Fr. *conenant*.

long tale herof; the feste was grete and noble, and lasted XV dayes complete & hole. And Melusyne gaaf many grete yeftes and jewels both to the ladyes & damoyselles, also to knightes & squyers. And after the feste the Erle, and the Countesse his moder, and alle the barons, ladyes, and damoiselles of theire felawship, toke leue of Melusyne, whiche conueyed the said Countesse and her doughter vnto & byonde the litil tounne of Coulombiers. And at departyng Melusyne gaf to the Countesse a fayre & moche riche owche of gold, in value vnestymable. and to blanche her doughter, a gerland all set with perlys with saphirs rubyes and with many other precyous stones in grete nombre. And alle they that sawe the said owche and gerland, meruaylled gretly of the beaulte goodnes & value of it. And ye moste knowe, that so moche gaf Melusyne bothe to more & lesse, that none there was at the feste / but that he preysed gretly Melusyne of her yeftes. and alle abasshed & meruaylled they were of her grete ryches. and they alle sayd that Raymondyn was gretly mightily and valiauntly marryed. And after that all these thinges were doon and perfourmed, Melusyne toke leue of [1]the Erle and of the Countesse moche honourably, and of alle the Baronye. and with a fayre and noble compayny retourned to her pauillon. And Raymondin conueyed euer the Erle. And as they rode on theire way, the Erle of Poytiers said to him in this manere: 'Fayr Cousyn telle me, yf ye goodly may, of what lynee or kynred is your wyf / how be it that thauncyent knight dide thanke us of thonour & worship that we bare to you by hys lady Melusyne of Albanye. but yet I demande it of you / bycause that we gladly wold knowe the certaynte of it. For of asmoche that we may perceyue by her estate & behauyng, nedes it muste be, that she be yssued & comme fro moch noble rychc and mighty lynee. And

Melusine gives great gifts to the company,

and conveys the Countess and her daughter beyond Coulombiers,

and gives them rich jewels.

All the company are abashed at the richness of Melusine's gifts, and say that Raymondin has married well.

[1] fol. 34 b.

As Raymondin accompanies the Earl of Poitiers,

the Earl asks the lineage of his wife,

the cause whiche moeueth vs for to desyre and be
because he is afraid he has not paid her due honour.
willing to knowe it / is bycause that we doubte to haue
mesprysed anenst thonour that apparteyneth to be doo
vnto her noble & goodly personne' / 'But my feyth,' 4
said the Erle of Forest, 'al thus was my wylle to have
said soo.'

Raymondin is wroth at the question,
Thystorye saith that thanne Raymondin was
gretly wroth, whan he herd the requeste 8
that the Erle of Poytiers, his lord, made
vnto him / and also likewyse the erle of
Forest hys brother. For he loued / doubted and
preysed so moche his lady / that he hated alle thinges 12
whiche he demed desagreable to her. Not withstand-
but answers fairly
[1] fol. 35.
ing he ansuerd to them full softe & fayr: 'By my feyth,
my lord / and you my brother, [1]playse it to you to
knowe / that by rayson naturel fro whosoever I hyd 16
my secrete / fro you I ought not to hyde it / yf it were
suche thinge that I knew of, or might say. and ther-
fore I shall answere to you, to that ye haue demanded
of me / after that I knowe of it. Ye thanne muste 20
that he did not ask her, and so
knowe, that neuer I ne demanded ne dyde enquere me
so fer of it / as now redyly ye haue demanded & en-
only knows that she is a king's daughter;
quyred of me, / but so moche I knowe, and may wel
say of her, that she is a kyngis doughter, mighty & 24
high terryen, And by the state, behauyng, & gouerne-
which can easily be seen from her behaviour.
ment that ye haue seen in her, ye may perceyue
ynough, that she nys ne haue be norysshed in mendy-
cite or pouerte / but in superfluyte of honour & largesse, 28
and among plente of goodes. And I requyre you as to
He requests that they will not ask him again about her lineage,
my lordes and frendes, that ye ne enquyre nomore
therof. For none other thinge ye ne may knowe
therof by me. and suche as she is, she playseth me 32
wel, and am right wel content of her. And wel I
knowe that she is the rote of alle myn erthly goodes
present & to comme.' Thenne ansuerd the Erle of
Poytiers: 'By my feyth, fayr Cousin, as for my part I 36

think not to enquere of you nomore therof, For as ye haue putte vnto vs wysely the high honours, riches, maneres, and behauying of my Cousin, your wyf, we oughte to conceyue of ourself, that she is of noble birth & extraction, and of right high and mighty lynee.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the Erle of Forest, 'ye say southe. and of my part I thinke nat to enquyre, ne demande of hym eny [1]thing more therof / how be it that he is my broþer. For certaynly I hold hym right wel ensuered þerof aftir myn aduys.' But, helas! he aftirward faylled Couen*aunt*. wherfore Raymondyn lost his lady, and also the Erle of Forest toke deth therfore by Geffray with the grete tothe, Whereof it shal be spoken herafter more playnly. Raymondyn thenne toke leue of the Erle, & of his brother, and of the barons, and retourned to the fontayne of Soyf. And also the Erle of Forest toke leue of the erle of Poytiers, of hys moder, and of hys sustir, and of all the barons right honourably, and þanked them alle of thonour that they had doon to hi*m* at hys brothers weddyng. And thanne therle of Potyers, his moder, and hys Suster, w*ith* alle theire felawship & meyne retourned to poitiers, and euery one of the Barons retourned to their Countrees. but there ne was none of them / but that he merueylled & gretly wondred of the grete riches that they had seen at the wedding of Raymondyn. And here resteth thystorye to spek of them / and shal spek of Raymondyn & of his lady, how they were after the departyng of theire parents and frendes. /

which they promise;

[1] fol. 35 b.

but, alas, they do not keep it, so Raymondin loses his lady, and the Earl of Forest his life.

The company break up,

and return to their countries,

and they marvel at the great richness of the wedding.

Thystory recounteth to vs that whan Raymondin was retourned toward his lady / he founde the feste greter than it was before / and also greter plente of noble folk than neu*er* was there before. Alle whiche folke yede, & said to hym with a high voyce: 'My lord ye be welcom*me* as he to whom we are s*eruaunts*, & whom we wyl obey.' And þis said the ladyes as

Raymondin returns to his lady,

and finds the feast still going on, and many noble folk at it,

who greet him,

wel the lordes. And thanne Raymondin ansuerd to
[1] fol. 36.
which Raymondin thanks them for.
them, 'gramercy of the [1]honour that ye proffre to me.'
And there thanne camme Melusyne, who moche
honourably sayd to hym: 'welcomme be ye' / and had
Melusine takes him apart,
hym apart, & reherced to hym word by word alle the
talking that was betwix the Erle and hym. and also
what his brother, Erle of Forest, had said, And yet
and thanks him for his demeanour to his brother and the Earl,
said the lady to hym: 'Dere frende Raymondin / as
longe as ye shal contynue soo / alle goodes shall
habounde to you. Fayre frende, I shall to morowe
gyue leue to the moost partye of our folk that ben here
and promises to make all goods to abound.
comme to our feste. For other thinges we must
ordeyne.' Raymondyn ansuered: 'ladye, so as it shall
playse you.' And whan the morowe camme Melusyne
She next day sends away many of her people.
departed her folke / grete quantyte went theire way /
and suche as she wold abode there. And now resteth
thystory of the thinges byfore said. and begynne to
treate how the lady bygan to bylde the noble fortresse
of Lusignen. /

When the feast was over
IN this partye telleth thenne thystory that whan the
feste was ended and that suche as she wold were
Melusine got a great many workmen,
goon / she anoone aftir made to comme grete foyson of
werkmen / as massons, Carpenters, and suche that can
who felled the trees and cleaned the rock,
dygge & delue. Whyche at her commandement fylled
dounne the grete trees, and made the roche fayre and
clene. There Melusyne sett euery man to werk. eche
on which they prepared a foundation,
one dide his Crafte. they encysed the roche & made a
depe & brode foundement. and in few dayes they
where they builded so quickly that every one wondered;
brought the werk so ferfourth / that euery man wondred
of suche a fayre and stronge bylding so soone doon.
And euery Satirday Melusyne payed truly her werk-
[2] fol. 36 b.
men / and meet & drynk they had [2]in habundaunce.
but no one knew whence the workmen came.
but trouth it is / that no body knew from whens these
werkmen were. and wete it that soone was the Fortres
The fortress was strongly built with two double walls and wards
made up / not only with one warde / but two strong
wardes, with double walles were there, or oon coude

have comme to the stronge donjon of it. Round about the walles were gret tours machecolyd, & strong posternes / and also barreres or wayes gooyng out fourth encysed and kerued within the hard roche. The Erle of Poytiers / the barons and alle the peple meruaylled moche of the said werke that so soone was doon, so grete, so stronge, & so fayre. Then the lady Melusyne and her husband Raymondyn lodged them within it. and anoone after Raymondin made to calle to a feste there, alle the noble men therabout. There camme the erle of Poytiers, both hys moder and hys suster / the Erle of Forestz, the Barons & noble men of theire landes, also of other countres and nacions. And also there was so many laydes & damoyselles, that they wel might suffyse att that day. There was jousting, dauncyng, and grete joye made with frendly and curtoys deeling. And whan Melusyne sawe tyme and place conuenable, she presented herself before the two Erles / barons and noble men, and humbly said to them in this manere: 'My fayre and good lordes, we thanke you moche of the high honoure that ye haue doon to us now at this feste—and the cause why we haue prayed you to comme I shal declare it to you.' /

protecting the donjon.

Every one marvelled at its beauty and strength.

Raymondin gives a feast,

at which was jousting and dancing;

and at a convenient time Melusine declares why the feast is given:

'LOrdes,' said the lady, 'here I haue assembled your noble personnes, for to haue your Counseill [1]how this fortresse shall be called. for that it be in mynd how that it hath be happely bylded & made.'

it is to name the fortress.

[1] fol. 87.

'By my feyth, fayre Cousyn,' said the Erle of Poiters, 'we as in general sayen to you, as oure wylle is / that ye your owneself shall / as right is / gyue name to it. For emong we alle is not so moch wyt as in you alone that haue bylded up & achyeuyd so strong and fayre a place as thesame is / and wete it, that none of us shall entremete hym to doo that ye spek of.' Thanne said Melusyne: 'Dere Sire, Wylfully and for the nones ye haue kept þis ansuere for to jape with me, but what

The Earl of Poitiers says she should name it, because of her wisdom;

she answers that they mock her,

therof is, I requyre and pray you that therof ye telle to me your entencion.' 'Certaynly, dere Cosyn,' sayd the Erle of Poytiers, 'none of us alle shal medle with all byfore you. For by reason / sethen ye haue so moche doon as to haue achyeued & made the moste strong and fayre place that ever man sawe in this Countree / ye owe to gyue name to it your owne self after your playsire.' 'Ha / ha, my lord,' said Melusyne, 'sith it ne may none otherwise be, / and that I see your playsire is that I gyue name to it, hit shalbe called after myn owne name, Lusygnen.' 'But my feyth,' said the Erle, 'the name setteth full wel to it for two causes, First bycause ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek language is as moch for to say / as thing meruayllous or commyng fro grete merueylle, and also this place is bylded and made meruayllously. For I byleue not other wyse / but that as longe as the world shal laste [1] shall there be founde & seen somme Wonder & meruayllous thinge.' Thanne they alle ansuerd in this manere: 'My lord, no man in the world might gyue betre name, that bettre shuld sette to it than she hath doo after manere of the place / also aftir the interpretyng made by you of her owne name.' and on this oppynyon & worde were alle of one acorde. Whiche name within few dayes was so publyed, that it was knowen thrugh alle the land. and yet at this day it is called soo. They soone aftir toke leue, and Melusyne and Raymondin also gaaf hem dyuers & riche yeftes at their departyng. And herafter sheweth thystory how Raymondin and Melusyne / right wysly, mightily and honorably lyued togidre. /

but the Earl replies, that as she has built the best castle in the land, she must name it.

Melusine then names it Lusignan.

Which the Earl says is a good one, because it means 'marvellous' in Greek.

[1] fol. 37 b.

All the company think it a good name.

And it was published abroad, and even unto this day the castle is so called.

The company breaks up, taking with them many rich gifts.

After the feste was ended, Melusyne, that was grete with child, bare her fruyte unto þe tyme that alle wymen owen to be delyured of their birthe. and thanne she was delyuered of a man child, whiche was moche fayre, and wel proporcyoned or shapen in alle

Melusine has a son.

hys membres / except his vysage that was short and large / one ey he had rede, and the other blew. he was baptysed, & named was Uryan, and wete it that he had the gretest eerys that eu*er* were seen on eny child of hys age / and whan they were ouergrowen, they were as grete as the handlyng of a fan. Melusyne þenne called to hym Raymondin, and to hym she said in this manere: 'My ryght swete felawe & frend, I wold not see thyn owne herytage to be lost / which by raison thou oughtest to haue by vertue of [1]patrymonye, for Guerrende Penycence and all the marches aboute apparteynen to the & to þy brother / goo thanne thither, and make the king of Bretons to be som*m*ed that he wyl receyue you in yo*ur* ryght & enherytance / shewyng to hym how yo*ur* fader slew his nevew in deffense & warde of hys owne body. For which encheson doubting the sayd kyng / lefte the Countrey, and neu*er* durst retourne / and yf he wyl not receyue you to ryght, be not therof abasshed. For afterward he shal be glad, & fayne whan he shal mow doo it.' Thenne ansuerd Raymondyn, 'there nys nothing that ye com*m*ande me, but that I shall doo after my power. For wel I considere & see that all yo*ur* werk*es* ne tenden but to wele & worship.' 'Frende,' sayd the lady, 'it is wel rayson, sith that all yo*ur* trust ye putte on me that I hold to you trouth. It is trouth that yo*ur* fader, by hys predecessors, oweth to haue many grete thing*es* in bretayne, the whiche shulle be declared unto you whan ye be there. It muste thanne be by you understand, that Henry of Leon, yo*ur* fader, that tyme he was in Bretayn for hys worthynes, grete policye & valiau*n*tnes, and as he that drad no man that owed hym euyl wyll, he was moche loued *with* the kinge there / in so moche that the said kynge made hym hys Seneschall & Captayn gene*r*al ou*er* alle his men of werre. This king of Bretons had a nevew / but no

fair of body, but of short visage, and one eye red, and the other blue.
He is named Urian,
and he had ears as large as a fan handle.
Melusine tells Raymondin of his patrimony,
[1] fol. 38.
and bids him go to the king of Britain, to enter into his inheritance.
He promises to go.
Henry of Leon, Raymondin's father,
was Seneschal and Captain-General to the king of Britain,

who had a nephew as his heir.

child begoten of his body he had. Whyche nevew, by the introduction of som, had grete enuye on Henry, your fader. For to[1] hym they said in this manere:

[1] fol. 38 b.

This heir was made jealous of Henry,

"Ha! Ha! right-full heyre of Breytayne. Woo is us to see your grete domage / that is / you to be putte doun fro the noble enherytaunce of Bretayne. yf by fawte & lak of courage ye suffre it, what shal men say? þey poyntyng you with the fynger shal sey, Loo, yonder is the fole that for his feynted herte hath be putte out of so noble enherytaunce as is the royame of Bretayne." And whan he understode the said enjurous wordes, he said: "Who is he that dare vsurpe & take fro me my right, I knowe none / but that god wyl haue me to be punysshed. and wel I wot, þat the kinge, my lord & oncle, wyl not take ony other to be hys heyer than my self." Thenne sayd one of them to hym: "By my feyth, ye are [not] enfourmed in this matere, For the kinge, your oncle, hath made & ordeyned hys heyre, Henry of Leon, and as now letters of graunt ben therof made." Whan the yong man herd these wordes, he as wood wroth ansuerd to them, "wete it for certeyn / that if I knew these wordes to be trew, I shuld putte hastly remedy thereto / in so moche that neuer he shold hold land ne no possession."

by mischief-makers telling him that Henry was to take his place;

and by Josselin Dupont,

And thenne ansuerde to hym a knight named Josselyn Dupont: "certaynly it is soo / and for we wold haue none other to be kynge in brytaynne but you, after the decees of þe kinge, we warne you therof. For this hath the kyng your oncle doon secretly, for ye shuld not knowe of it. and wete it that alle we that now are here, were present whan that couenaunt was made. aske my felawes yf I say trouth[2] or not." he demanded of them yf it was so, And they ansuerd "ye."

who told him that letters of grant had been made secretly in favour of Henry.

[2] fol. 39.

'The yongman thanne said, "Fayre lordes, I thanke you of your good wylle whiche ye shewe to me, goo youre way. For wel I shall kepe Henry therfro."

They toke theyre leue, For they rought not for no thing that might fall therof, so that they might see your faders deth. For enuyous and wroth they were that the kinge louyd hym so wel, and for nought sette they were by hym. knowe ye muste, that on the sonday next, in the morning, the kingis nevew armed hym self / yede in to the wod of Leon Castel, and there wayted tyl your fader passed by, whiche he perceyued gooyng alone to hys dysport about hys Castel of Leon / thinkynge on none euyl ne harme / and sodaynly cryed on hym, "Now shalt thou dey, false traytour, that fro me woldest haue and vsurpe myn herytage" / and foynyng at hym *with* hys swerd, wold haue ou*er*thrawen youre fader. but he glanched asyde / and so the kyngis nevew / for he recountred ayenst nothing, fell doun to the grounde, and the swerd scaped fro hys hand that then *your* fader toke up, the sayd neuew that sawe hys wepen lost, toke a lytil knyf that he had and ranne ayenst hym / but *your* fader, *with* the pomel of the swerd, gaaf to hym suche a stroke on the heed / that notwithstanding hys yron hat, he broke hys heed so that he fell doun deed, but [1]whan he knew that it was he / he was sory and woe / retourned home / toke all hys hauoyr and goode*s* meuable, and came in to the Shyre that men now call Forests, and grette help & comfort he founde in a lady, of whyche as now I kepe me styl to spek ony ferther. And after the dep*ar*tyng of her fro hym, he toke by maryage the sustir of hym that thoo dayes gou*er*ned the erledome of Poytiers, on whyche he gate many children of the whyche ye are one. /

'Frend,' said Melusyne, 'now haue I deuysed and reherced to you how *your* fader departed fro Bretayn, and lefte hys lande*s* and possessyons voyde, *with*out lord, whiche owen to be yours. You thenne shal goo toward an vncle of yours whiche is called

The Sunday after hearing this, the king's nephew laid in wait for Henry,

surprised and attacked him,

but was killed by your father, Henry of Leon,

[1] fol. 39 b.

who was sorry, and left the country for the Shire of Foresta, where he married.

Melusine tells Raymondin to go to his uncle,

Alain of Quingant, and to tell him the tale,

Alayn of Quyngant / and ye shal make you to be knowen of hym / and he shal byleue you ynough of all that ye shall sey. he hath two wrorthy knightes to hys sones, the whiche are grete men with the kinge, and loueth hem wel. by one of them, your Cousyns, ye shall make Josselyn Dupont, that as yet is alyue, to be called byfore the kyng, and there ye shalle acuse hym of the treson by hym & other machyned / thrugh whiche the kyngis nevew, willing to haue destroyed your fader, was hym self slayn. And ye muste knowe that on this quarell his sone, called Olyuer Dupont, shall fyght ayenst you therfore. but ye shall haue the vyctory ouer hym / and bothe fader and sone shal be condampned to hang and to be strangled. For the fader shall[1] vttre and knowe alle the treson / and all your grounde and enherytaunce shalbe adiuged to you. And thus shall ye be putte in pacyfyque or peesable possessyon of it by the Peerys or lordes pryncypal of the land. Now my ryght swete frend & felawe, douteles goo surely. For certaynly god shal helpe you in all your juste & true dedes.'

and get one of his sons to call Josselin before his king, and there accuse him of his deed.

Oliver Duport is to fight Raymondin, but he is to lose, and he and his father are to be strangled,

[1] fol. 40.

and Raymondin is to get possession of his land.

Thanne ansuerd Raymondyn: 'Madame, I shall endeuoyre me to achyeue & fulfill your commandement.' Raymondyn toke leue of Melusyne / and acompanyed with grete nombre of knightes and squyers, rode fourth so long on hys way, tyl they came in Brut Brytayne, wher the peuple was abasshed & moche wondred what suche grete nombre of straungers wold haue. But for they payed wel & largely for that they toke, they were ensured that they wold & sought but good. For thauncyent knight of the meyne of Melusyne rewled and gyded them alle in all honour & goodnes. And for they were not so vnpurueyed / but that with them they had armures, with them yf nede were to arme them with / the kinge that knew of it, sent to them to wete what they

Raymondin with many men goes to Brut Britain,

where they pay their way.

The king sends to learn

sought, whiche message demanded of Raymondyn yf hee owed euyl wyll to the kyng & to hys royame. In this messagery or embassade were sent two wyse knightes, whiche wysly enquered of Raymondyn as byfore is sayd what he sought and what he wold. to whome Raymondin full curtoysly ansuered thus. 'Fayre lordes, ye shall tell to my liege that I come but[1] for good and wele, and for to haue the lawful right in hys Court of suche thinges as belongen to me, For the whiche I shall presente myn owne personne byfore hys mageste, the same requyryng of socour and help.' 'Forsouth,' ansuerd the two knyghtes, 'ye shalbe welcome whan it shal playse you to do soo. and wete it wel that the kynge, our liege, is rightwyse & juste / and nothing as fer as right requyreth shal not be by hym denyed by ony wyse. but telle vs yf it lyke you whither ye are now bounde.' 'Certaynly,' said Raymondyn, 'I wold I were at Quyngant.' Thanne answerd one of them, 'ye are wel on the way toward it, and wete that ye shall fynd there Aleyn of Leon, whiche shall make you good chere. and also ye shall fynd there two knightes, men of wele and honour, and hold strayte this way and ye shal not mys of it, and with your leue we retourne on our way toward oure liege.'

if Raymondin intends evil to him.

[1] fol. 40 b.

Raymondin tells the messengers that he comes to obtain his rights,

on which he is welcomed.

He tells them he is going to Quingant.

The messengers leave,

Whanne these two knightes were fer fro Raymondyn and hys felawship an halfmyle, they byganne to say one to other: 'By my feyth, yonder are gentyl and curtoys folkes, worshipfull & honourable. For certayn they come not into this land without it is for some grete matere.' and yet sayd, 'lete vs go thrugh Quyngan; and to aleyn we shall anounce theyre commyng.' they toke the way toward it, and rode so fast that soone they came there where they found Alayn, to whome they said & announced the commyng of Raymondyn[2] and of his men. Whiche Alayn wondred moch of it. And thanne the trew

and on their way home praise Raymondin and his men,

and pass by Quingant, where they announce to Alain the coming of Raymondin's party.

[2] fol. 41.

Alain sends his sons to meet and attend to them.

man dide calle to hym hys two sones, of whiche one was called Alayn & was eldest, and that other yongest had to name Henry, and he sayd to them in this manere: 'My good children, lepe on horsbak and ryde on your way to mete yonde straungers / receyue ye them worshipfully, and see that they be wel and honestly lodged. For it is told to me, that they be six houndred horses or theraboute.' but for nought he spak. For thauncyent knyght of Melusyne was come before that / and seeying the toune was to lityl for to haue herberowed so moche peple in it / had made to be dressed tentes & pauyllons, and sent aboute in the Countre for suche thinges that necessary were to them, whiche he payed or mayd to be payd largely, in so moche that more vytayll was there brought than þey neded of. And thanne Alayn was all abasshed whan he herd of that grete hauoyr & apparey‖ that they made there, and wyst not what therof he shuld thinke or say.

The ancient knight gets a stock of food,

and pitches the tents,

and pays well for everything.

Now sayth thystory, that so long rode the two brethern with theyre felawship togidre, that they mete with Raymondin, & full curtoysly welcommed hym, and prayed hym by byddyng of Alayn, theyre fader, that he vouchesauf to comme and be lodged within the Fort or Castel of Qyngant with theyre fader, that shuld make hym good chere. 'Fayre lordes,' said Raymondyn, 'gramercy to your fader, and thanked be you of your curtoysy that ye thus proffre to me,[1] But at your requeste I shall goo toward your fader for to rendre to hym reuerence. For glad & fayn I were to see hym, for the wele & honour that I have herde say by hym.' Contynuyng suche wordes & oþer they rode tyl they came nygh the toun. And thann came there thauncyent knight to Raymondyn, and sayd: 'Sire, I have made your pauyllon to be dressed vp, and tentes ynoughe for to lodge you & al your men, and thanked be god we are wel purueyed.'

The brethren meet Raymondin,

and invite him to the castle of Quingant.

[1] fol. 41 b.

The invitation is accepted,

and they ride on to the town, where the ancient knight comes to them;

'Ye haue doo wel,' sayd Raymondin / 'goo and make ye mery and chere my men, and loke not for me this nyght, For I goo to the Fortresse *with* this two gentyl- and Raymondin tells him that he will stay at the Castle.
men.' And thenne departed he fro thaun*c*yent knight / toke *with* hym a few of hys moost famyler men, and yede to the Fortresse wher the lord of the place aborde for hym styll at the gate. Whan Raymondyn thanne He rides to the Castle, and makes reverence to his uncle.
sawe hym as to hys lord and vncle he made reue*r*ence & salewed hym mekely. Wherto shulde I vse prolixe or longe wordes of theyre acoyntaun*c*e. but of the faitt or matere whiche I owe to uttre and say, Lete vs þenne say. Whan they had souped / wesshen & graces said / the lord of the place toke Raymondyn by the After supping his uncle takes him aside,
hand / had hym apart upon a bench / there to deuyse both togidre, whyle that the other souped / the whiche þe two bretheren chered & honestly seruyd. The lord Alayn thanne wyse and subtyl, and that knewe moche of wel and honour, bygan to raissonne *with* Raymondin in this man*er*e: 'Sir knight, grete joye I haue of yo*ur* and tells how glad he is to see him,
comm*y*ng hither, For certaynly ye are full lyke to a brother of myn whiche was valyaunt, full wyse and worthy. he departed [1]fro this land xl. yere goon, for [1] fol. 42.
a stryf that befell betwix the nevew of the kinge that reygned at that tyme and hym, and wete it that this is the iiij[th] kynge that haue reyned syn that tyme vnto now. And bycause that, to me seemeth ye resemble because of his likeness to his lost brother.
my brother, I am the more glad & fayn to see you.' 'Sire,' said Raymondyn, 'therof I mercy & thanke you / and or I departe from you I shall make you certayn wherfore and by what inconuenience the stryf that ye spek of happed betwixt the nevew of the kyng and youre brother. For wete it, that for none other cause Raymondin tells his uncle he comes about the strife between his uncle's brother and the late king's nephew, which abashes Alain;
I com*e* hither. but for to shewe publiq*ue*ly the pure trouth & certeyntee thereof.'

Whan Alayn herd these wordes he was moche abasshed, and loked on Raymondyn moche

who asks how he knows about the strife.

ententyfly, and after sayd, 'and how shal that mowe be? ye haue not yet the age of xxx yere / by you may not be recounted the faytte, the trouth of whiche none might neuer knowe. For whan the stroke of the mysdede happed. my brother sodaynly departed / so that I ne none other herd neuer syn whither he was become.'

Raymondin asks if any counsellor of the late king yet lives,

'Sire, yf ye vouchesaf / telle mee yf there is as now yet lyuyng eny man that had on that tyme auctorite or rewle aboute the kinge that regned whan

and is told of one

the stryf befell.' 'By my feyth,' said Alayn, 'one and no more I knowe, that had gouernaunce in Court that same tyme, and he hym self vsurpeth & holdeth my brothers landes as his owne enherytaunce. For the kyng gaaf it to hym, for hys first begoten sone to

[1] fol. 42 b.

enjoye it for euermore, the which [1]hys sone is now of

whose son was lately dubbed a knight;

late dowbed & made knight.' 'For southe,' sayd thenne Raymondyn, 'wel I wote hys name.' 'And how know ye hyt?' said Alayn. 'By my feyth,' sayd Raymondin,

whereupon Raymondin tells their names to be Josselin Dupont the father, and Oliver the son,

'he is called Josselin Dupont / and hys sone hys named Olyuyer.' 'Sire knight,' sayd Alayn, 'ye say trouth. But telle me how ye this may knowe.' 'Sire,' sayd Raymondyn, 'no ferther ye shall as now know therof. but ye vouchesaf to come & your two sones with me,

and promises to tell Alain more if he will go to court.

unto the kinges Court / wete it that I shall declare vnto you the quarrell & stryf so clerly that, yf ye euer loued your brother, Henry of Leon, ye shal be thereof fayn & glad.' And thanne Alayn heryng the name of hys brother called, he was more abasshed than before. For he wend none other but that hys brother had be long deed. And thenne he thoughte longe in hymself or he ansuerd ony word.

Thus, as I haue sayd to you / moche long thought Alayne, and aftir he ansuerd: 'Sire knight, I

Alain grants Raymondin's request.

graunt & acorde me to your requeste / sethen that here I ne may knowe your wyll. For therat I lang moche. I gladly shall hold you company vnto the kynges

Court.' 'gramercy,' sayd Raymondyn, 'and wel I shal kepe you fro dommage.' Wherto shuld I make long proces, Alayn manded or sent for a grete foyson of hys frendes, & made hym redy in grete estate for to goo to the court. The kynge that knew theire commyng departed fro Storyon, where he laye, & came to Nantes. For the two knightes whiche the kinge sente Raymondyn were retourned, & had recounted to the kinge the ansuere of Raymondyn, and the maner of his estate. And therfore the kinge was come to Nantes and manded a part of hys baronye, For he wold not that Raymondyn shuld fynd hym vnpurueyd of men. And amonge other he sent for Josselin Dupont for [1]to haue his Counseyll on the demande that Raymondyn wold make. For he was moche sage. What shuld I saye more? thauncyent knight came before & made to be dressed bothe pauillons & tentes & purueyed for all thinges necessary. Wherfore the folke of the toune were moche abasshed of the grete appareyl that he caused to be made / Thenne came Raymondyn, Alayn, and bothe his sones, and descended into the chief Pauillon, where they made them redy and arayed them full richely, for to goo toward the kinge / and after they departed fro the tentes, acompanyed with xl knightes wel horsed and honestly arayed that wonder was to see / and had his barons with hym. And whan they come to the kinges place they descended fro theire horses / and Raymondyn / Alayn and his two sones entred within the halle, there the kynge was acompanyed with his barons / made to the kinge reuerence / after siewyng, salewed the barons & lordes, the kinge welcommed & receyued þem joyously / called to hym Alayn, and said to hym in this manere:

'It gyueth me grete wonder,' said the kinge to Alayn, 'of this gracyous straunge knight, with whome ye are so acoynted / What he seketh in this land.' 'Ha /

Alain sends for his friends;

the king comes from Nantes and sends for some of his barony,

[1] fol. 43.

and for Josselin.

The ancient knight prepares tents for Raymondin,

in which Alain and his sons dress themselves to go before the king.

They set out with forty barons;

arriving, are welcomed by the king.

who asks Alain about his friend, the strange gracious knight.

Alain tells the king that he marvels at the knight's sayings,

but believes that all will be made plain soon.

Raymondin learns that Joselin is present,

[1] fol. 43 b.

with his son Oliver.

Raymondin addresses the king, and praises his justice;

the king asks why?

ha, sire,' ansuerd Alayn. 'I am an houndred tymes more meruaylled of the wordes that he yestirday shewed vnto me / than ye are of his commyng, but soone shall be declared al that we lang aftir & desire to knowe.' Thenne Raymondyn, dressyng hys wordes to theldest sone of Alayn, sayd softly in this manere, 'Sire knight, say me of your Curtoysye, yf one called Josselyn Dupont be now in this company or nat.' Thanne sayd Alayn, 'ye—and wold to god so that the kyng shuld not be dyspleased that I had slayn hym. For he enjoyeth [1]therytage that apparteyneth to one our oncle which we shuld haue.' And after these wordes Alayn sayd to Raymondin / 'it is yond auncient knight that sitteth by the kinge. And wete it for certayn that he is replonysshed with all falshed & malyce / and yonder is his son Olyuyer that weyeth not an ownce lasse in all wykkednes & euyll.' 'By my feyth, Sire knight,' sayd Raymondin / 'ye soone shal be auenged of hym yf god wyl.' And leuyng theire talkyng, Raymondin hadd hymself fourth before the kinge, to whom he said in this manere: 'ha, high sire & mighty kinge, It is wel trouth that common renoumee ranneth thrughe alle landes. that your Court is so noble & so raysonnable that it may be called fountayne of Justice & raison / and that none ne commeth to your Court but that ye shew & gyue to hym good Justice and raisonnable after the good right that he hath.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said the kinge / 'it is trouth. but wherfore say you so, fayn I wold wete it.' 'Forsouthe, sire,' said Raymondin, 'for to vttre & shew it vnto you / I am come hither / & for none other cause. but, Sire, yf it plaise you / or I telle it you / ye shall promyse me that ye shall susteyne me ayenst alle personnes after right & raison. For that / that I shal say is in a part your wele prouffyt & honour. For no kinge acompanyed of a traytour is not wel

lodged ne sure of his personne.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'ye say trouth / say on hardily. For I swere to you by all that I hold of god, that I shal doo to you alle Justice & rayson after the good right that ye shall haue / and that shal I doo doubteles / yf it were ayenst my brother.' 'Sire,' said Raymondin, 'an houndred thousand thankes & mercyes / ye say as a valyaunt kynge & [1]trew man. For first were kynges stablysshed for to rendre or yeld to euerbody juste jugement in alle thinges.'

and promises to do justice to Raymondin,

for which Raymondin thanks him.

[1] fol. 44.

'Noble mighty kinge,' said Raymondin / 'it is wel trouth that one, your predecessour kynge, reyned somtyme moche mightily & valyauntly that was in the tyme of Josselin Dupont and of Alayn, whiche bothe are here now present before your majeste / this kynge whiche I spek of, had a moche fayre & noble yong man to his nevew. that tyme was in this Countre a baron whiche was called Henry of Leon, the whiche was brother to Alayn here present.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said thanne Josselyn, 'he saith trouth. and ouermore the same Henry of Leon slew the nevew of your predecessour by treson / fledd out of this land, and neuer syn came hither ayen. And then the kinge seased his landes and possessyons, and anoone after gaf them to me.' The kinge thanne ansuered, 'we haue herd ynoughe of this matere / but suffre this knight fynysshe his raison which he hath bygonne.'

Raymondin speaks to the king of Josselin, Alain,

and of Henry of Leon;

whereupon Josselin says that Henry slew the nephew of the king's predecessor, and fled the land;

but the king orders him to let Raymondin finish his story.

TO this ansuerd Raymondyn, 'Sire kinge, he hath wel raison to speke of hit, For ferthermore he shal be constrayned to say / how be it that as now he hath said amys & not trouth of that he saith that Henry of leon slew the kinges nevew in treson, For he knew wel why & wherfore it was, and there nys no man lyuyng that can say the trouth of it but he alone, For they that were of his acorde and conspiracion ben al deed. Therfore sire kynge, vouchesaf to command

Raymondin denies what Josselin said,

but asserts that Josselin alone knows the truth of the matter,

and asks the king to bid Josselin tell all.

hym telle trouth al on hye, that eueryone here may [1]here it.' And whan Josselin vnderstode that word, he wexed sore abasshed; neuertheles, he ansuered in this manere: 'Sire knight, are you come into this land forto vndertake eny thinge in dyshonour of me?' And Raymondin ansuerd appertly: 'Fals traytour, he fourueyeth nat that saith the playn trouth.' Thanne he said agayn to the kynge: 'Sire, it is wel trouth that Henry of Leon was a moche valiant & hardy knight, curteys and wel condicyoned, & moche was beloved bothe of the kinge and of his nevew / and vsed the kynge moche of his counseil, For he was he on whom he trusted most. It haped that dyuerse traytours beyng that time about the kinge, of which Josselin here present was one, as chef causer of the mysdede that tyme perpetred or doon / came to said kingis nevew, & to hym they said in this manere: "Gentyl Squyer, alle we that are here byfore your presence ben sory & woo of your grete dommage and shamfull losse whan ye shall be dysheryted of so noble a land as is the royame of Brytayne" / and he ansuered to them / "how shuld that mowe be doo? the kynge hath none heyre but my self." "On my god," said thanne yond Josselin to hym, "Wete it þat he hath made & stablisshed his heyre, Henry of Leon, and I byleue that this Henry hath enchaunted hym and the barons of the land also, For therof ben lettres passed & sealled with theire scalles annexed to the kingis grete seall / and al this they all togider affermed on theire feyth for trouth." "By my feith," said the squyer thanne / "here is grete inconuenyence yf that be trew that ye telle me." [2]And thanne Josselin with his complices alle with an acorde sware yet ayen to hym that it was trouth. Wherfore the said yonge squyer was sory and woo. Josselin thenne seeyng that he byleued theire falsed to be certayn, said yet agayn to the squyer in this manere:

[1] fol. 44 b.

This abashes Josselin, who asks if Raymondin has come to dishonour him.

Raymondin tells the king of the treachery of Josselin toward his father, Henry of Leon.

How Josselin told the king's nephew that he was disinherited

because of Henry,

[2] fol. 45.

" Yf in you lyeth so moch hardynes that ye dare vnder- and urged him to avenge himself,
take to auenge the wrong doon to you by Henry of
Leon, We alle shal helpe you therto." And the squyer and promised to aid him.
ansuerd, " my courage and wylle ben agreed to do
soo." Thenne said Josselin, " goo thanne & arme you
in a manner vnknowen, and we shall abyde you with
out the toune, and shall ledd you in to suche a place
where ye shal auenge you at your ease." O noble &
mighty kinge, sethen I fynde now myself in Court of
right & iustice / and that I may see myn enemye, I
wyl no more be hyd, but lete euery man knowe that Raymondin declares that he is the son of Henry, which abashes them all.
I am the sone of Henry of Leon.' Thenne they were
alle abasshed of that word, but they held them styl /
and Raymondyn spake fourth in this manere./

' Sire kinge, it is trouth that my fader had take leue He continues the story of Josselin's treachery;
of the kinge, and was goon in to hys Countrey /
and was wonnt euery mornyng for to goo in a wode
nygh by his fortesse to dysporte hym, sayeng hys
matyns alone. And this fals traytour Josselin, with his
complices, ledd the said kingis nevew and embusshed how an ambush was laid,
them there. My fader, that thoughte no harme, came
that same ooure / and whan Josselin perceyued hym
commyng he said to the squyer / " now it is tyme to
auenge you, For he is without eny armure or wepen /
he may not escape you / and yf we see that ye nede of
help[1] we shall helpe you." The squyer, thanne esprysed [1] fol. 45 b.
with euyl desire, departed fro them and ranne toward and how the king's nephew tried to slay his father,
my fader and escryed hym to deth / and as he wold
haue thrested the swerd thrugh my faders body. my
fader glanched asyde / and as god wold he that fyersly
ranne felt to the ground. My fader penne toke the
swerde that scaped fro the squyers hand, and with the
pomel of it smote hym under the eere by suche but was slain himself.
strengthe that the squyer felt doun ded. And thenne
whan my fader saw hym lyeng on the ground deed he
dyscouered his face, and anone he knew hym, wherfore

How Henry fled from the land on recognizing his enemy, fearing the king's ire:

he made grete sorow and was sory and woo / and after the dede & euylhap, doubtyng the furour & yre of the king, yede there hys hauoir was / toke it and fledd with all from þis land. And thanne Josselin the fals traytour sayd to hys complices and felawes: "Now are we come to our entencion & wylle. For the kinges nevew is deed, and yf Henry be take he may not scape fro deth. Now shal we gouerne and doo with the king that we lyst after our guyse / lete vs not meve us tyl he be ferre from vs / and after we shal take the corps & putte it in a byere that we shal make with braunches & leues, and so we shal bere it toward the king, to whom we shal say that Henry of Leon slew hym in treson." Ha / ha, noble king, all euen so as I say, dide that yonder fals traytour / and yf he say nay / here I presente & cast my gage of bataill agenst hym. And bycause, sire kinge, that I wil lete euery man knowe that I doo vndertake þis not for auarice / but for to kepe my right and enherytaunce / and for to declare, manyfeste, and [1] shewe the vylonny and euyl treson that this fals traytour Josselin and hys complices dyde to Henry of Leon, my fader, for to haue hym out of conceytte, and to be putte fro the kingis Court, I besech your highnes that he may take hys sone Olyuer and another yet of his frendes / and I shal fight ayenst them thre without fawte, prouyded alwayes the noble and juste jugement of your Court / one after another' / and sayeng these wordes he kyst his gage. but there was none that spake or ansuerd ony word. And whan Alayn and his two sones vnderstode alle that Raymondyn had said / what for joye to see theire faders nevew and Cousyn to them / and what for pyte to here telle the trayson so machyned ayenst theyre faders brother & vncle to them / ranne to kysse and embrased Raymondyn.

which pleased Josselin,

who thought he would then be able to rule the king.

Raymondin challenges Josselin,

[1] fol. 46.

his son Oliver, and one of his friends;

but no one accepts the challenge.

Alain, understanding now who Raymondin is,

embraces him.

Whan the king of the Bretons sawe that no body ansuerd to these wordes so proferid in hys presence / sayd al on high that euery one there might here hym, 'how now, Josselin, are ye deef? / I now perceyue wel & see that the prouerbe that is said commonly is trew / that is / "that olde synne reneweth shame," For this knight straunger bringeth you tydynges, moche straunge and a wonder medecyne fro ferre land / aduyse you of that ye shal ansuere.' Thanne ansuerd Josselyn to the kyng: 'Sire kinge, I am not he þat from hens fourth oweth to ansuere such thinges. And also wel I byleue that he saith it but in jape & sport.' Thanne ansuerd Raymondin, 'the mocke fals[1] traytour shal tourne on the. I now requyre you, noble king, that this matere may be discuted / lete him haue as raison requyreth for his treson / and I to be punysshed yf in eny poynt forsayd [I] haue myssaid or mesprysed.' Thenne said the kinge, 'doubt not of it, For so shal I doo. Josselyn,' said the kinge, 'ye muste ansuere to this quarell & acusacion.' Whan thenne his sone Olyuyer herd what the kyng said to his fader / he ansuerd to his wordes: 'Sire, that knight is so sore adrad that he trembleth for fere / he weneth as me semeth to take the cranes flighing, by my feith he shall wel fayll & mysse of that he hath said, For my fader is a true man in all his dedes / and I vouchesauf & graunt the batail as he hath ordonned / and there is my gage / he shal be wel happy yf he dyscomfyte me and another of my lynage suche as I shall chese. /'

The king orders Josselin to defend himself.

who says that he believes that Raymondin is joking.

[1] fol. 46 b.

Raymondin denies it, and asks the king to bring the matter to an issue.

In answer to the king, Josselin's son Oliver agrees to fight Raymondin, helped by another of his lineage.

Whan the king herd that word he was moche wroth, & ansuerd in this manere / 'that shall nat happe in my Court as long as I shall lyue þat one knight alone shal fyght ayenst two for oo maner quarell / and grete shame is to you / only to haue thought it in your herte / and wete it / that by semblaunt ye shew nat your fader to haue good quarell.

The king is wroth at the proposal to pair two knights against one,

and gives Raymondin choice of a day of battle;

Raymondin desires to fight now,

And fro this oure fourthon I gyue you journey of batayll at the requeste of the knight straunger on suche day that he shall assigne.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Raymondin, 'I am euen now redy therto, for myn armures are not ferre. and thanked be your highnesse an hondred tymes of your lawfull graunt.' There had ye herd grete rumoure made on all sydes, for all said, 'yonder is the moste valyaunt knight that euer we sawe requyryng his ryght.' but what so euer was woofull therof, Alayn of Quyngant & his two sones were fayn & glad that so shuld be doo / & said to Raymondin, 'Fayre Cousin, be not [1] abasshed of nothing in the world. take boldly the batail for you, and for us both ayenst that same fals traytour / For yf god wil we shall soone haue worship therof.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Raymondin, 'take who wil batail for hymself. For the same I shal haue for my part, and doubte you not but that I shal bring it to a good & worshipful ende god before with the good right that I haue therto.'

[1] fol. 47.

and is encouraged by Alain and his sons.

The king, knowing the might of the parties,

Whilles the rumour was among the folk, the kinge, moche wyse & subtyl / for that the parties were of grete & high parentage & lynee / doubtyng of some grete inconuenience that might happe emong them / commanded sodaynly the gates to be shette that none might entre ne yssue / & ordonned men armed to kepe euery man therfro. and aftir callid his Conseil apart / shewed to them and reherced all the quarel. and they counseilled hym of that was nedeful to be doo. Thanne retourned the kinge vnto the halle, where he made to be commanded by hym, that none there, on peyne of deth, should be so hardy to spek ony word but þat he were commanded. The kinge thenne spak & said, 'now, fayre lordes, ye muste vnderstand how this quarel is now not litel, for it is for lyf or grete dyshonour for euermore to the one

makes arrangements to prevent disorder,

and declares the quarrel to be one of life and death on both sides.

partye. and wete it for certayn that I ne owe ne also wyl not refuse ryght to be doo in my Court. Olyuier,' said the king, 'wil you deffende your fader of this treson?' 'Sire,' said he / 'ye certaynly,' / . and thenne the king ansuerd / 'the lystes ben alredy dressed, and therfore I ordeyne the bataill to be to morow exploited. And wete it / that yf ye be dyscomfited & ouercome, bothe your fader and ye shul be hanged. and not lesse shal haue your partye aduerse, yf the[1] cas myshappeth to hym. Make you thanne redy toward / and gyue in oure hand hostages & pledges / and first your fader shall abyde.' and thenne the king made Josselin to be ledde in to pryson in a stronge toure. and thanne said the king to Raymondin, 'Sire knight, whome shul ye gyue vs for hostage?' Alayn and his two sones came thanne fourth & said, 'sire, we pledge hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'it suffyseth vs wel. and therfore ye shall not hold pryson. For wel I wote that the knight had not emprysed the bataill without he wold perfourme it.' And thus departed bothe parties fro the presence of the kinge. and Raymondyn with hys folk, acompanyed of hys vncle & Cousins, yede toward his pauillons, and aboute euen tyme he went in to the chirch Cathedrall, and there he watched, making hys prayers to god with grete deuocyon / And Olyuer also came to hys hous with grete foyson of them of hys lynee, and made his hors & harneys redy. On the morowe they herd masse, and after armed them / and the king and the Barons of the land were sette on the scafoldes rounde aboute the listes / and gardes to the champ or feld were ordeyned, and the Chayers sette. And about the ooure of pryme came Raymondin with fayre felawship, armed moche goodly & richely / the spere on the rest, and on hym hys cote of armes, browded with syluer & azure / and entred the lystes vpon a grete destrier wel harneysed vnto the nayle of

Oliver undertakes to fight.

The king appoints next day for the battle,

and tells that the loser shall be hanged.

[1] fol. 47 b.

Pledges are taken from the combatants,

and both parties leave the king.

The combatants pray and hear mass.

On the morrow the lists are guarded,

and at noon Raymondin appears richly armed and well mounted, with his companions, and enters the lists;

and makes reverence to the king and barons;

the foot / as for gage of bataille / and there he made reuerence & salewed the king & the Barons. 'By my feith,' said euery one / 'it is long syn we sawe so fayre man of armes ne of so fayr contenaunce / he hath not beste werke that hath such[1] a man in hand to jouste or fyght with hym.' Thenne descended Raymondin fro the destrer as appertly as he had be vnarmed, and sette hym in the chayer abydyng after his aduersary.

[1] fol. 48.

dismounts and waits for his adversary,

who at last appears nobly armed with his father.

It is trouth that long after that came Olyuer, right wel & nobly armed, and sett on a moche ryche destrier / and wel he semed man of grete fayttes / and so was he / & before hym came Josselin, his fader, on a palfray, and made reuerence to the kinge & hys barons. Moche semed Josselin abasshed as thanne / For that euery man said he had euyl cause. What shuld I make long tale / the holy Euangiles were there brought, wheron Raymondin swore that Josselyn had euyl cause, and that he had doon the treson as he had byfore declared / and after he kneled & kyssed the book, and sette hym self ayen on the chayere. And after Josselin sware, but he stakered, and so timerous he was that he coude not touche the boke / and also Olyuer, which knew wel the trouth of all, swore full feyntly / and that doon he sette hym self agayn in his chayere. and fourthwith a herault cryded with an high voyce on the kingis byhalfe / that none, on peyne of deth, shuld be so hardy to speke ony worde ne to make eny signe or tokon that eny of the Champyons might vnderstand or perceyue. And thenne euery man voyded the place, saaf only they that were stablisshed to the garde of the champ & Josselin. And anoone Raymondyn lepte on horsbak moch appertly and toke hys spere, and on the other syde Olyuer had hys destrier redy, and lept on lightly, and toke hys spere with sharp yron / and thenne cryded a herault thryes. 'lete ranne your horses & [2] doo your deuoyre.'

Raymondin swears the justice of his cause on the Gospels,

and likewise Josselin and Oliver, but very timorously.

A herald proclaims that no signs are to be made;

the lists clear.

A herald shouts 'Do your duty' to the combatants.

[2] Fol. 48 b.

Here saith the veray hystory, that whan the cry was made Raymondin had leyed the ende of hys spere to the grounde alonge the hors nek, and thryes he made the signe of the crosse. and while he dede so hys enemy ranne at hym, and *with* hys spere hytte Raymondin on the brest or he was ware of hit moche rudely, For dooyng so he putte to it alle his strengthe & myght, but Raymondin bowed neu*er* therfore / and the spere of Olyuer brak in to piec*es*, and *with* that strok the speere of Raymondyn fell to the ground. 'Ha, tray*tour*,' said then Raymondyn / 'thou folowest wel the right euyl lynee of whiche thou yssued. but that may not auaylle the.' and toke the sterope that hynge at sadelbowe, that had thre poyntes wel assured, oche of them seuen enc̄h long. and at retourne that Olyuer supposed to haue doo, Raymondyn smote hym on the helmet with the sterop that oo poynte of it entred & perced the helmet so that the nayl of the vmbrel brake, and the vysere hing at oo syde / and the visage of Olyuyer abode all̄ dyscouered, wherfore he was moche agast and abasshed. Neu*er*theles he drew out hys swerde & wel shewed contena*u*nce of a knight that lytil redoubteth hys enemye. and so they faught long space togidre and gaaf eche other grete strokes / and there might men see grete appertyse of armes. At last Raymondin alighted on foot and toke vp hys spere that laye at ground & came *with* grete paas toward his foo mortall̄, whiche the best wyse that he coude dystourned fro Raymondin that he made to goo after hym alonge the Champ. For he dide *with* hys hors what he wold,[1] and by that man*er*e dooyng he supposed to haue made Raymondyn wery that ned*e* he muste reste hym, and so the day shuld be soone passed. But Raymondin whiche that perceyued, yede & appertly to[ke][2] hys hors that he ledde *with* one hand, &

Raymondin, his spear couched,

making the sign of the cross, is struck fiercely on the breast by Oliver's spear;

but he does not bow; Oliver's spear shivers, and Raymondin's falls.

Upon which Raymondin breaks Oliver's helmet with his stirrup;

his visor falling discovers his face.

They continue to fight fiercely with swords

until Raymondin alights from his horse and takes his spear, and goes to attack his foe,

who runs away from him.

[1] fol. 49.

Raymondin then, leading his horse

[2] Fr. *prinst.*

and carrying his spear, approaches Oliver,

toke the spere at other hand / and softly one pas after another came towarde hys enemye. And whan Olyuyer sawe hym come, perceyuying his manere he wist not how ne in what manere Raymondyn wold assayH

who suddenly spurs his horse against Raymondin,

hym / and sodaynly spored his horse, wenyng to haue come & hurted Raymondyn as he had doon byfore. but Raymondin kyst at hym yet ayen the sterop by

but has it stunned by a blow from the stirrup,

grete anger, and hitte Olyuyer hors at foreheed with suche strength that the chaunfreyn entred deep within the hors heed, so that it bowed the legges behind to therthe. Olyuyer thanne sporid his destrier, but as the hors redressed hym, Raymondyn with hys spere

and is dismounted by a spear stroke, and wounded and beaten;

smote Olyuyer at right syde of hym, so that he ouerthrew hym to therthe, and so wonderly a strok he gaf hym betwix the mayH panser & the Corset that the spere heed entred deep in hys body / and ar he might be delyuered Raymondyn cast on hym so many strokes that he might no more meve hym self, and by force

and held by the throat, Raymondin kneeling on him.

plucked the helmet fro the heed of hym, and putte hys knee on his naueH, and the hand senester at hys nek, and held hym in suche destresse that by no manere waye he might not meue hym.

After a time Raymondin asks him to yield, or die.

Thystory telleth in this partye that Raymondin held Olyuyer as aboue is said long espace of tyme, and whan he sawe that he had the best ouer hym he drew a knife[1] that heng [2]at his right side and said to hym, 'False traytour, yeld thyself vaynquyssed,

[2] fol. 49 b.

He replies he would prefer to die by Raymondin's hand;

or ellis thou art but deed.' 'By my feith,' said Olyuyer, 'I have leuer dye by the hand of suche a valyaunt knight as ye be than of another.' Raymondyn thanne

who pities him, and asks if he knew of his father's treason.

toke grete pite on hym and demanded of hym, vpon parel of the sowle of hym / yf he nothing knew of the treson that Josselin his fader had doon / and he

He says he did not;

ansuerd nay, and he was not yet borne þat tyme that this treson happed. and how be it that it plaised. to

[1] Knight in MS. Fr. version *coustel.*

god that Fortune were as thenne contrary to hym, nowithstanding yet he held his fader for a trew man / lawful and not gilty of that same dede. And thanne whan Raymondyn, that wel wyst the contrary, herd hym, he was sorowful & woo, and bete hym so moche on the temples *with* hys fust armed with his gantlet that he made hym so astonyed that he ne saw ne herd ne wyst what he dide to hym / And thanne stode vp Raymondin and toke hym by the feet and drew hym vnto the lystes, And syn he putte hym *with*out fourth / and retourned & came before the scafold of the kinge, the visere lyfte on hye, & said: 'Sire, haue I doo my deuoire, For yf I haue eny thing more to doo I am redy to it to the regarde of *your* Court & ordynaunce?' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'sire knight, ye haue quytted *your* self full wel.' And the king þenne com*m*anded that Josselin and his sone shuld be bothe hanged, and they to whom the king comanded this execucion to be doo wente soone, & *with*out delay they seasid Josselin, who anoone cryed to the king piteously for mercy. And þen the king yede and said to hym that he shulde [1]telle the trouthe of the quarell, and peradventure he night haue grace.

but Raymondin, knowing he lied, beats him on the temples.

Then Raymondin asked the king if he had done his duty;

who said he had well,

and commanded Josselin and his son to be put to death.

[1] fol. 50.

Thenne said Josselin, 'Sire, to hyd the trouth it auaylleth not / haue pite on me yf it plaise you, For certaynly it was doon in the man*er*e & fo*ur*me as the knight hat purposed & said / and wete it þat my sone Olyuyer was not yet borne.' 'By my feith, Josselin, said the kinge, 'here is grete falshed, and yf it ne had be goddis playsire that ye shuld be therof punysshed, he had not lefte you lyue so long in this world. and as to my part, ye shall not fayH of the punycyon.' Thanne he said all on high to them that were ordeyned, that anoone bothe fader & sone shuld be hanged. And thenne came fourth Raymondin & said to the king: 'Sire, I thanke you as I may of the good justice that ye

Josselin confesses his treachery.

Raymondin pleads for Oliver's life, as he is brave and valiant,

haue doon to me / but, sire, I moued *with* pite requyre you of *your* mysericorde to be shewed on Olyuyer. For seeyng his valyauntyse & worthynes, also considcryng that he is not gilty of the treson it were grete dom*m*age of hys deth. For yet shall he mow doo wel. And as to the fader, for this that I see hym olde & feble / of my part, sire king, yf ye vouchesauf to graunt hym grace therof I shuld be fayn & glad, soo that I haue myn herytage to my behouf, and that the prouffytes & fruytes that he hath leuyed & receyued of it, syn he had th*e*rytage in hys hand*es*, be by extimac*i*on reualued in money. that same payment to be by you, sire king, ordeyned to edefye or bigge a pryorye, & monkes therin to be rented *with* reuenues & possessyons after the quantyte of the said money to þe regarde of you and of *your* Counseill. the said monk*es* to pray for the sowle of the king*es* nevew perpetuelly.' The kinge thanne said to his barons, 'Fayr[1] Sires, here ye may see the free courage of a knight that prayeth to me to respyte hys enemys fro deth. but by the feyth that I owe to god Josselin nor his sone shal neuer doo treson ne cause no man to goo out of my land as exiled.' and fourthw*ith* he made them to be hanged, and rendred to Raymondin his enherytau*n*ce and al Josselyn's land *with* all. Wherof Raymondin thanked hym moche humbly and made to hym his homage. After byganne the feste to be moche grete, and held the king grete & noble Court open to al men, & was moche glad of that he had recou*e*red & goten so noble a knight in his land. but for nought he made joye, For soone ynoughe he shall see that Raymondyn had no grete wylle to abyde and dwelle in Bretayne, for moch longed to hym the sight of Melusyne.

and free from the guilt of the treason;

and for Josselin's, because he is so old, desiring only that he should make restitution of the estate,

the money to be used to found a priory.

[1] fol. 80 b.

But the king orders them to be hanged, and restores Raymondin his estates, and gives him all Josselin's land, for which Raymondin does homage.

Raymondin is feasted by the king of Brut Britain,

Now in this parte telleth thystorye that Raymondyn was moche wel festyed of the king of the brut Bretayne that held grete & honourable Court for loue

of Raymondin, and the barons of Bretayne made grete joye for his commyng, and specyally his vncle Alayn and hys two children, & they of his lynage. And thanne came Raymondin to the king and said to hym thus: 'Sire king, I pray you & beseche that ye vouchsaf to graunte & acorde that I gyue the Baronye of Leon that was to Henry my fader, on whos sowle god haue mercy, to Henry my Cousyn / and so the land shal bere the name of his ryghtfull lord / and you the name of your liege man, For he is of the right lynee.' 'By my feyth,' sayd þe kinge, 'sire, sith it playseth you thus wel it plesoth vs so to be.' Thenne the kyng called Henry, For he loued hym wel and said to hym: 'Henry, receyue the name of the baronye of Leon, which your Cousyn gyue you, and make homage to me therof' / and so he dide · and thanked moche the king & Raymondyn.[1] And this doon Raymondin called to hym Alayn his Cousyn: 'I gyue you the land that the king hath gyuen me that late was longyng to Josselin Dupont, and make your homage to the king': / and he thanked hym moche humbly · and knelyng made hys homage to the kinge that moche joyfully receyued hym to it. But the Barons of the land byganne thanne to make rumour among them and said: 'By my feyth, this knight is not come into this lande for couetyse ne auarice. But only he hath putte his lyf in grete auenture & parel for to conquere his heritage. Whan so soone he demysed hymself therof. it muste wel be that grete ryches he hath some where' / Thanne came thauncyent knight to Raymondin. and whan Raymondin sawe hym he said to hym that he shuld delyuere hym self of that his lady had commanded hym / and he ansuerd, 'my lord, therfore I am come toward you.' and thanne he presented fro hys lady to the kyng a grete Coupe of gold sette with many precyous stone. and after gaf to all the

and made welcome by the barons.

Raymondin asks the king to allow him to give his barony to his cousin Henry,

which request is granted.

The barony is given, and Henry does homage for it.

[1] fol. 51.

Raymondin gives the confiscated lands of Josselin to Alain, who does homage to the king for them.

The barons of Britain wonder at the riches of Raymondin, who gives away the land just won.

The ancient knight brings gifts from Melusine for the king and the barons,

Barons in the forsaid name many ryche jewelles. Wherof all were meruaylled of whens might come such a riches / and all they said that Raymondin muste be moche riche & mighty in some other Coun- 4
who rejoice much, and keep up the feast;
tree. Wherfore the feest was greter than afore. And Alayn and his two sones demened suche joye that
but all the time much sorrow prevails among Josselin's friends.
none shuld mow think it. but yet duryng theire joye was on other syde made grete sorow of the parents 8 & frendes of Josselin that had not forgeten þe deth of
[1] fol. 51 b.
hym / as herafter ye shal here reherce. [1]And here resteth thystorye to speke of this feste & folowyng the matere saith how Melusyne gouerned her self while 12 that Raymondyn was in his vyage.

In Raymondin's absence Melusine builds Lusignan, and walls it;
Thystory telleth vs that whiles Raymondyn was in bretayne, Melusyne made to be byld up the toune of Lusynen, and walled it with strong walles & 16 toures one nygh another,[2] and deep diches dide doo make about it. A toure she dide to be made betwixt
also builds a high watch tower, with walls twenty feet thick.
the Fortresse & the tounne walled with a wall of xx foot thikk. This toure was ouer hye / and ordeyned 20 men that shuld be styl both day & nyght, at leste one vpon the vpermost batelments of it with a trompe in his hand, that shuld blow at euery tyme he perceyued & sawe men othre on foot or on horsbak togidre aboue 24 the nombre of xx[ti] commyng toward the said toune or Castel / and that same toure she called the tromped toure. Now retourneth thistory to spek of the kyng & of Raymondin, and of the feest & chere that euery 28 one made to Raymondin.

The feast continued at Nantes.
IN this partye reherceth thystorye that moch was the feest grete at Nantes · and the king honoured moche Raymondin, and there jousted gentilmen one 32 ayenst other byfore the ladyes & gentyl wemen wher Raymondin bare hym full valiauntly & goodly that euery man spak wele of hym, sayeng that he was

[2] + Fr. *pour defendre a couvert tous les archiers.*

worthy to be lord of a grete land. And moche were they abasshed of the grete riches that they sawe euery day about Raymondin / but who someuer made feest for Raymondyn, the Chastelayn of Aruall, that was neuew to Josselin Dupont, made all the contrary. For he sodaynly sent to alle the parentes frendes and affyns of Josselin, letyng [1]them to knowe how it was of theire frend Josselyn, and that they shuld be at a certayn day that he assigned to them at a certayn retrette that was within the forest of Guerrende that was of his owne. And whan they vnderstode the deth of Josselin they were sorowfull & woo, and assembled them togider about ii C men of armes, and pryuely yede & came to the said retrette, where the said Chastelayn had manded them to come. And thanne the Chastelayn in the moost secrete wyse that he coude, departed fro the kinges court without leue of the king ne of the Barons / but there he lefte thre squyers of his for to loke & aspye whiche waye Raymondin shuld take, and that they shuld anounce it to hym to the retrette beforsaid. So long rode the Castelleyn that he cam to the retrette where he found them of his lynage, and he reherced to them all the manere of thaduenture / and how Josselin & his sone were hanged / and asked of them what they thoughte & proposed to doo / yf they shuld auenge them on Raymondin that was causer of it / and to them grete blame & shame for euermore was bycause of hym imputed / or elles to lete hym goo free. Thenne ansuered for al the lynage an vnwyse & hasty knight that was sone to the Cousyn of Josselin. 'cousyn castellayne, we wol that ye wete & knowe that thus shal nat this oultrageous werk be lefte. For we alle of one accorde & wylle wil putte hym to deth that to vs hath doo suche vitupere & dyshonour.' 'By my feith,' said thanne the Castellayne, 'I hold & repute

while Josselin's nephew advised his kindred of their loss,

[1] fol. 52.

and summoned them to a retreat in the forest of Guerrende.

They assemble two hundred strong.

and are informed of the mishap by Josselin's nephew,

and are asked if they intend to avenge themselves.

They declare they will put Raymondin to death;

fol. 52 b.

the wele & honour wel employed that Josselin dide [1] to you in tyme passed. And anoone I shall putte you in the way and place where we shal wel acomplisshe our wylle on hym that suche shame hath doon to vs. For by what someuer side he yssueth out of Bretayne he may not scape fro vs. For therto we haue good wayters, & espyes that soone shall anounce his way to vs whan tyme shalbe.' And they ansuerd alle with an voys /—'Blessed be you. and wete it that whatsomeuer fall therof / this enterpryse shalbe brought to an end, and we shal slee that false knight that hath imposed to vs alle vylonnye & shame.' And here speke þ no more thistorye of them, and retourneth to spek of the king & of Raymondyn. and how he departed fro the king moch honorably.

upon which the nephew promises to assist them,

by spying which way Raymondin leaves the country.

Thystory saith that the feest dured wel xv dayes & more. the king of Bretons & hys baronye made grete honour to Raymondyn in so moche that I can nat reherce it. Raymondin thanne toke leue of the king & of his Barons and humbly mercyed the king of his good justice that he had doon to hym in his noble Court, and departed fro them moche honourably. And wete it that bothe the king & many his barons were sory for his departing. And thus Raymondyn acompanyed of his vncle Alayn his two sones & all theyre meyne rode toward Leon. But it is trouth that þauncyent knight was departed & goon byfore / and had doo sette vp bothe tentes & pauillons and all other thinges necessary he ordeyned & made redy. And thanne Raymondin / hys vncle with his two [1] sones and the moost nere of his kynne to hym lodged them togidre in the Castel. and the other herberowed them in the toune. Whan the peple of the Countre knew the commyng of theyre owne lordes sone they were joyfull & glad, and made to hym many fayr presentes after the vse & custome of the Countre /

The feast continued fifteen days longer;

then Raymondin took leave,

and accompanied with Alain rode to Leon,

where the ancient knight had already prepared for them.

[1] fol. 53.

as of wyn, of bothe flesh & fysshe, hey & ootys, and of many other thinges, and they were fayn & glad sith it playsed not Raymondin to abyde & hold the land, that they were befall in the sayd lynee of theire lord, and that they were quytte & exempted fro the subgection & boundage of the lynee of Jossellin. Raymondin thanne þanked them curtoysly of theire presentes & yeftes. commanded & prayed them that they wold be true & feythfull subgets to Henry hys Cousin to whom he had gyue the land. and they ansuered that þey shuld doo soo. Of them resteth thistorye, and speketh of the spyes that wayted there / of which one went to the retrette where the Castellayne of Aruall · and the lynee of Josselin were all redy / and the two other spyes abode for to knowe what way Raymondyn shuld hold · /

The folk of the place bring presents to Raymondin,

and are glad to be freed of allegiance to Josselin;

and promise to be faithful to Henry, the cousin of Raymondin, their new lord.

Spies leave, and tell the kindred of Josselin of Raymondin's doings.

IN this partye telleth to vs thistory that Raymondin departed fro Leon, and toke leue of al hys parents & frendes there, & went to Quyngant where the feste was grete, and there after the feeste was ended Raymondyn wold haue take leue of hys vncle Alayn & of all his lynage / but they dide putte the moost remedy they coude for to hold hym there a seuene nyght more. Wherfore Raymondyn obtempering to them / ye / ayenst his entent & courage [1]fullfylled theire willes. And in the meane while came to Henry hys Cousyn, a man that told hym that as he passed fourth by the said retrette where the Castellayne of Aruall was with wel two houndred men in armes, that they abode for some folke to whom they owed no good wylle. but he told hym not whom they aspyed & watched for. And whan Henry understode this he toke a squyer of his and bad hym goo thither & knowe what it was. and he that was moche dilygent dyde so that he knew the moost parte of theyre purpos and entent & what nombre þey were. Soone after he retourned to Henry and reherced to hym all that he had found, and that

Leaving Leon, Raymondin goes to Quingant, where he is feasted.

[1] fol. 53 b.

A man advises Henry of Leon of the assembling of Josselin's kindred in the forest.

Henry despatches a spy,

who returns with the information

that five or six hundred men are assembled.

they were wel fyue or six houndred fighting men. And this tydinges herd / Henry deffendid to the

Henry enjoins silence on the spy,

messanger moche expresly that to no body he shuld spek of it. And soone he called his brother Alayn and some other of the moost noble of hys lynage and

and tells his brother what he has learnt.

reherced to them alle this werk. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'we ne cannot thinke what they entende to doo, but that they wold auenge them on Raymondin our Cousyn or ellis to meve werre ayenst vs for the said quarelle. but alwayes it is good to be purueyed of remedye · lete vs therfore send for alle our frendes and kepe vs secretly togidre tyl we see what they haue purposed to doo / to thende yf they come on vs that they fynde vs not discouered & vnpurueyed · also yf Raymondin departeth that he be not surpryued of them / and yf they entende to doo hym euyl / it is but for to take the lyf [1]fro hym.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'that is trouth. Now lete vs hye & delyuere vs that our mandement be doo of light & secretly.'

[1] fol. 84.

The brothers gather four hundred men of arms,

And so did they / in so moche that within the second day after / they were gadred togidre about foure houndred in nombre men of armes what of theyre lynee and what of theire affynyte & alyed / & made them to be lodged in a wod so that few men knew of it. It happed thanne that Raymondyn wold no lenger abyde / and toke leue of Alayn hys vncle þat abode styl at Quyngant moche woofull & sory of hys departyng /

and accompany Raymondin when he leaves Quingant,

and hys two sones companyed hym & conueyed with grete foyson of theyre lynee. And neuer wold lete hym goo byfore, but made theyre men to be on eche side of hym, and so long they rode that they approched

until they approach the forest where Josselin's kindred are hid.

the Forest where the Castellayne and his felawship were in his retrette which Castellayn knew by his

Josselin's nephew, the Chastellain of Arvall, learns from his spies the approach of Raymondin;

spyes the commyng of Raymondyn & his men and told it to hys parents sayeng in this maner: 'Now shal be seen & knowen who euer loued Josselin and Olyuer

hys sone. For here we may putte to deth alle the lynage of hym self þat to vs hath doon suche a shame.' And they ansuered to hym that none shuld scape, but alle shuld be putte to deth. But as the prouerbe saith, 'Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it'/[1] and so it was of the Castellayne & hys parents. In this meane while came þauncyent knight to Raymondin and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, ye[2] myster wel for to [3]be armed gooyng thrugh the Forest. For the lynage of Josselin that ye haue dystroyed loueth you not, and they might bere bothe to your personne and to your felawship & meyne grete dommage yf they found you vnpurueyed / and my herte gyueth me that soone we shall fynd hem' / and Henry & Alayn his brother and all theire lynage were armed all redy, and had sent all theire meyne byfore to make embushe within half a mylle fro the retrette. Thenne whan Raymondyn / had commanded hys men to take theire armures on hem & sawe them of his lynage that were alle armed, he ne wyst what say but þe two brethern his cousyns told hym how they had sent in embusshe byfore wel iiii. C. of their men for to kepe hym fro hys enemyes / and they reherced to hym all the trouthe. 'By my feyth,' said Raymondin, 'curtoyse oweth not to be forgeten / and for it shal not as to my parte fro hens fourthon. For yf in tyme to come ye haue nede of me / I am he that shal at al tymes be redy after my power to fulfylle your wille.' And so longe they rode that they entred the Forest /.

and on him telling his men, they promise to put Raymondin and his kindred to death.

[3] fol. 54 b.

The ancient knight warns Raymondin of his danger,

who, seeing his cousin's men all armed,

thanks them, and promises to help them should they ever want him.

Thystorye saith that the Castellayne was in his retrette and abode for the spye that last he had sent to wete whan Raymondyn shuld entre the Forest. the whiche exploited so that he came nigh Raymondin / and thanne he lightly retourned toward

[1] Fr. *Tel cuide venger sa honte qui l'acroit.*
[2] Fr. *Et bien mestier.*

The Chastellain, hearing from his spy of Raymondin's appearance, cries on his men to follow him.

the retrette and to the Castellayn he said: 'Sire, ye may see hym come yonder.' And whan the Castellayn vnderstod hym he bygan to crye *with* a hye voys / 'on horsbak, & who that eu*er* loued Josselin & his sone lete hym [1]folowe me.' Thanne styed eu*ery* man on horsbak / & they were so encressyd in nombre that they were wel viii C & moo fighting men, and rode fourth in ordynaunce ayenst Raymondin, and passed by the embusshe that Henry and his parents had sent. whiche lete them passe fourth *with*out they discouered themself. and soone after þey rode after them. So longe rode the Castelayn & his folke that they perceyued nygh them þe foreward of Raymondin. but abasshed he was whan he sawe them armed gooyng by ordyn*aun*ce / though they were but a few seruaunts and a C. men of armes / they [2]escryed them to the deth / And whan they vnderstode it they yede apart & made to blowe theire trompettes and ranne vpon Raymondyns folke whiche were sore dom*m*aged or he coude come to helpe them, the whiche rode as fast as the hors might walope, and hauyng the spere on the rest launched among his enemyes / and the first that he enco*un*tred he ou*er*threw hym doun to therthe & aftir drew out high [his] swerde and smote trauersing here & there and in a lytel tyme he moche do*m*maged hys enmyes. But whan the Castellayn saw hym he was full woo & sory / and he shewed hym to thre hys Cousyns sayeng / 'loke yonder is the knyght that hath shamed all our lynage / yf we had our wylle of hym all the other shuld be soone ou*er*come & vaynquysshed.' thanne þey spoored theire horses, and all foure ranne ayenst hym / and *with* theire speeris recountred hym, soo that they ou*er* threw bothe man

[1] fol. 55.

They mount, and are allowed to pass by the men of Henry of Leon, who are hidden in the forest,

until they meet Raymondin.

They run upon Raymondin's men;

and when Raymondin comes in sight,

the Chastellain and his three cousins attack him.

[2] Fr. *et leur escrioient: A mort à mort, mal acointastes celluy qui nous a fait la honte et le dommaige de Josselin notre cousin.*

& hors [1] to the erthe and passed al foure fourth. But whan Raymondyn saw hym ouer thrawen he spooryd hys hors, and the hors that was swyft and strong releuyd hym on hys knees and soo fourth on his feet so pertly þat Raymondyn neuer lost sterop fro the foot ne swerd fro the hand. And thanne he tourned toward the Chastellayn & so mightily smote hym on the helmet with hys swerd that he so stakerid that he lost bothe steropes / and as Raymondyn passed by hym he hurtelyd hym soo with the sholder that he feH doune to the erthe / and the pres came there so grete that he was sore tradde with hors feet. Thenne begane the bataill grete & feH and sore dommaged were bothe partes. And thanne came there also thauncyent knight and Henry & Alayn hys brother, and foughte strongly ayenst theyre enemyes. There Raymondin made grete fayttes of armes and sore dommaged hys enemys. but the Chastelayn was had out of the pres and hys men toke hym another hors. Thanne toke the party aduerse, herte & courage & stoutly fought they ayenst Raymondyn & his folke. and there were many one slayn of both sydes. And wete it that Raymondyn & his folke susteyned heuy weyght. For hys aduerse party was moch strong & moche wel they fought & valyauntly. but the embusshe of Henry came by the bake syde on them and assaylled them on aH sydes so that þey wyst not what they shuld doo / how they shuld defende them self nor where they shuld flee / Thenne was the Chastellayn taken & brought before Raymondin / and he commanded thauncient knight to kepe hym. And in conclusion aH the other were soone after outhre take or deed. And this doon they came to the retrette where Raymondyn said to hys parents: 'Now lordes I owe wel [2] to loue and thanke you of the grete socoure that ye haue doon to me this day. For

[1] fol. 55 b.

Raymondin smites the Chastellain,

and fells him.

Assistance comes in the persons of Henry, Alain, and the ancient knight,

and the ambush of Henry;

and routs the Chastellain's companions, who are all taken prisoners or slain.

[2] fol. 56.

Raymondin thanks his kindred for their help;

certaynly I wote that yf it had not be the he
god and of you this traytour had putte me to det
treson, now haue regarde what best is for to
'Sire,' said Henry, 'as your wyl shall graunte we
assent therto.' 'I shall saye you,' said Raymo

who propose to take the Chastellain, and all others of Josselin's kindred to the king of Brut Britain for judgment.

'what we shal doo. lete vs take and assemble al
lynee of Josselin to-gidre / and bothe the Chaste
and alle the other his parents we shall sende t
kinge. Whiche hauyng regarde to theire grete fa
and treson shal punysshe aftir his good wylle.'
other thanne said / 'forsouthe, sire, ye say wel.' Tl

The prisoners who are not Josselin's kindred are hung,

were chosen out all the prysonners that were n
the lynage of Josselin. and att yate of the said re
some were hanged / some at wyndowes & son

and the Chastellain and the rest are taken bound before the king.

batelments of it. And the Chastellayn and all
parents there were bounde bothe hand & fee
traytours and prysonners. the whiche Alayn
panyed *with* thre houndred spere men lede them
the kinge. and first Alayn presented to þe king
Chastelayne of Aruall as he that had conspir

Alain tells the king the treason wrought,

machined that treson / and al other after. and to
reherced Alayn all how it was happed. and how
mondyn recommanded hym to his good grace /
that he wold not be dysplaysed yf he had take v
aunce on hys mortal enmyes that wend to

and says that Raymondin has sent the Chastellain and his kindred to receive punishment.

murdred hym *with* treson, and that he sent to hym
Chastellayn chief causer and other his complices f
knowe by them the trouth of the faytte and fo
punysshe them at his plaisure and wylle / 'And
Chastellayn,' said the kinge 'haue ye be so [1]hardy to

[1] fol. 56 b.

The king asks the Chastellain why he has done such a shameful deed.

suche treson and so shamefull dede for the raisonn
justice that late we dide in *our* reaume / seeing &
considering the grete treson that Josselin *your* v
knowleched & confessed to haue doo?' 'By god,'
the king, 'ye were therof surquydous,[2] & it is wel

[2] Fr. *moult oultre cuide.*

yf euyl is comme to you therof.' 'Ha, noble kinge,' said thanne the chasteleyn, 'for your pite lete falle your mysericorde on me caytyue personne. For the grete sorowe & woo that I had of the dyshonour that Raymondin had doon to our lynage hath caused me to doo soo.'

The Chastellain begs for mercy,

'By my feith,' said the king, 'it is euyl companye of a traytour / and good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, wel I wyl that ye knowe that neuer ye shall haue suche purpos as to wyl slee no gentylman with treson, For neuer I shall ete tyl that ye be hanged with your vncle, for ye shall hold hym felawship, and also all them that are of your cohortacion.' The kinge made to be take alle them of hys cohorte or company, and were all hanged / and the Chastelayn he sent to Nantes, and there he was hanged nyghe to his vncle Josselin & Olyuyer hys Cousyn. And thus kepte wel the king of Bretons Justice in his time regnyng in Breytayne.

but the king says he will not eat till they be hung;

which judgment is executed.

Here sayth thistory that whan Alayn was retourned to Raymondin unto the retrette, and that he hadd to hym and to the other reherced this þat the kyng had doon / they said that the kyng had doo right wel as a valyaunt & lawfull justiser shuld doo. Thenne called Raymondyn to hym Henry Alayn & other of his lynee and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre cousyns & good frendes, I enjoyne & charge you that ye doo edefye or bigge a pryorye with viii monkes, and that ye reueste them with rentes and reuenues such that honestly & goodly they may lyue on for euermore / they to pray there for the sowle of [1]my fader / for the kingis nevew sowle and for the sowles of them that are slayn & ded in this quarell.' And they alle said · they shuld soo doo. And Raymondyn prayed them to recommande hym to the kingis good grace to hys barons and to Alayn their fader. And thanne he toke

Raymondin praises the king's justice,

and asks his cousin to build a priory for eight monks,

[1] fol. 57.

to pray for the souls of those killed in the quarrel.

Raymondin parts from his cousins, who

leue of them / and they were sorowfull of theire departement / and also of this that he wold nat lete them goo no ferther *with* hym. They retourned to Quyngant. And Raymondin yede on his way and

return to their father.

cam to guerrende · and wel he was there festyed and worshipfully cheryed of them of the toune. And here resteth thistorye of Raymondyn · and shall recounte how Henry & Alayn toke leue of theyre lynee and cam ayen to theyre fader.

Henry and Alain tell their father the news,

Thistorye saith in this paas that Henry and Alayn toke leue of theyre lynage & came to theire fader and recounted to hym all thaduenture of the Chastellayn, how they were departed fro þeyr cousyn,

and how they have to build a priory.

and how he hadd commanded & charged them to fownde a pryory. 'By my feith,' said þeire fader. 'Alayn, now is the land wel clene delyuered of the lynage of

The father is glad to hear of the clearance of Josselin's friends,

Josselin; god on theyre sowles haue mercy, how be it they loued vs neuer. Now fayre sones I shall saye you what ye shal doo. First ye shal goo to the kinge

and advises his sons to ask land from the king to build the priory.

& requyre hym that it plese hym to gyue you a place for to edefye the Pryorye / and telle hym the maner how ye be commanded of your Cousyn to fownde it. and I byleue he shal gyue you a good ansuer.' And they said that thus shuld they doo. And thanne they departed fro theire fader, and so long they rode that they camme to Vannes and founde the kinge departed

[1] fol. 57 *b*.

& was goon to [1]Sassymon for to dysporte hym at

They set out to the king,

Chasse. And they mounted on horsbak and came to the gate and passed & entred the Forest and rode so long tyl they came to the Castel. and founde the kyng goon to the park to the chasse / and the two brethren

and find him by a tree in the forest of Sassimon, waiting for a hart; but hide themselves till it is captured.

yed after & founde the king nyghe a grete tree by a staung where he abode aftir the herte that houndes chassed. Thenne the two bretheren drew them self aparte bycause they wold not lette the kyng to see the dysporte / who perceyued them wel[2] & coude them good thanke

[2] Fr. *leur en sceut moult bon gré.*

therfore. and not long after þe herte came that ranne in to the staung / and there he was take by chaas of dogges / and was hadd out of the watre / and the curee made & gyue to the hounde*s* as custome is to doo. Thenne Henry and Alayn his brother drew them self byfore the king and salewed hym moche honourably / and made wel theire message as theyre Cousin had charged them. And the king welcomm*ed* hem & moche enquyred of them thestate of Raymondin and they told hym alle that they had seen of hit / and after they recounted to hym how he enjoyned & charged them to edyfye & make vp a Priorye of eyghte monke*s*. them to reueste & empossesse w*ith* land*is*, reuenues & rents, they to syng & pray therfore for the sowle of the kingis nevew / for Henry his faders sowle, and for the sowles of alle them that had receyued deth in this quarelle. Also how at hys instaunce they shuld pray hy*m* for a place where they shuld edefye the said pryorye. 'By my feith,' said the king. 'the requeste is wel lawfull & raysonable. and euen now [1]I shall lede you to the place where I wyl that it be fownded and made vp.' Thanne they came out of the wareyne and came alł by the walle to thende of the clos. and thenne said the king: 'Fair lorde*s*, make here to be edyfyed a Pryory & take asmoche of grounde as ye lyketh / and I gyue lib*er*te & habaundonne you the forest for to cutte there the wode. and whan the monkes shal be stablysshed there, I enlyberte & habaundonne it to them for theire vse and to alle thider comm*yn*g & dwelling. And I graunte to them the fysshing in the see that is nygh to this place a quarter of a legge, and to take in the Forest birde*s*. & wild beeste*s* for theire lyuyng & sustenaunce of theire houshold · and also I gyue to them all the landes erable that are her about half a legge' / and of alle this he made & gaf to them good & suffisa*un*t patents. and of

They come out and salute the king,

are welcomed,

and tell him of Raymondin and his will about the priory;

and ask for land to build it on.

[1] fol. 58.

The king leads them to a spot,

where he gives them as much land as they require;

and grants to the monks the right of fishing, hunting, shooting, and wood cutting in the forest;

and gives some arable land, all on good patents.

all these graunts & gestes the two brethern thanked
The priory is built for eight white monks, the king moche humbly whiche made massons, carpenters, & other, to come, and in short tyme they made
the chirche & the priorye. and there they stablyshed 4
whyte monkes. vnto the nombre of VIII. religious
who have an azure ✠ on their outside robe. personnes, the which bere on theire vtterist habyte a
crosse of Azure / and enpossessed them wel for theire
sustenaunce & cotidiane lyuyng / as now yet is. And 8
now resteth thystorye to spek of the king of Bretons
and of the two bretheren. and retourneth to recounte
how Raymondin gouerned hym self syn after.

Now telleth thystorye that so long abode Raymon- 12
[1] fol. 58 b. din in the land of Guerrende [1] that he pesed
Raymondin reconciles two barons of Guerrend; and acorded togidre two barons of the lande that long
byfore hated eche other to deth. In so moche that he
made them to be good frendes togidre, and theire 16
Countrees in peas and rest. And after he toke his leue
of the barons & of the peuple, which sorowed moche
and leaves for Poitou, where he found many parts uninhabited, for his departing. and so long he rode that he came
into the land of Poytou, wher he found many grete 20
forests vnhabyted / and in some places he sawe many
wyld bestes, as hertes, hynd, & roo, wyld bores, and
other beestes ynough. and in other places many fayre
playnes & champaynes. many fayre medowes & ryuers. 24
'By my feyth,' said thanne Raymondin, 'it is grete pyte
& dommage that suche a commodyouse Countre is nat
having dismantled castles and other ruins, caused by past wars. enhabyted with peuple.' and many a fayre manoyr and
places were on the ryueres there that soone might be 28
redressed as hym semed whiche had be ouerthrawen in
tyme of warre. And thus rydyng fourth he came to
He arrives at the abbey of Mailleses, an auncyent Abbey called Maylleses, and therein were
comprised thabbot and an houndred monkkis, beside 32
the Convers. and there herberowed Raymondyn for the
and dwells there three days, gives jewels to the abbey church, grete playsaunce that he toke of it. and þer he dwelled
thre dayes and thre nightes. and gaf to the chirch
there many fayre jewelles. After he departed and 36

came rydyng tyl he aprouched & came nygh Lusynen. and first he perceyued & sawe the tromped toure and the new toune, and thenne he supposed not to be there as he was. For he knew not the place for cause of the said toure & toune new made of late, and moche he meruaylled whan he herd [1] the sowne of the trompes within the toure /.

and continues his journey to Lusignan, but does not recognize it, because of the new tower and town built by Melusine.

[1] fol. 59.

In this part saith to vs thystorye that whan Raymondin came aboue Lusynen, & he perceyued the toune walled round aboute with strong walles and fortifyed with deep dyches & grete. 'how,' said he to thauncyent knight, 'What may this be; mesemed right now that I was forwayed of my way to come to lusygnen / and yet me semeth soo?' thenne began thauncyent knight to lawhe. And Raymondin said to hym: 'How, sir knight, jape you with me / I telle you for certayn yf it were not the toure and the toune that I see I shuld haue wend to be this nyght in Lusygnen.' 'By my feyth,' said thauncient knight, 'soone ye shal fynde yourself there yf god wyl with grete joye.' Now I shall sey you some of Raymondyn's seruaunts were sent before by thauncyent knight to anounce Melusyne the commyng of Raymondin. and how be it she byleued them wel / she made no semblaunt perof / but soone she caused the peuple to be redy for to goo & mete with Raymondyn. and she herself, acompanyed with many ladyes & damoyselles, yede to mete & welcome hym wel horsed & arayed honorably and rychely. Thenne Raymondin loked fourth byfore hym and sawe the peple commyng fro the valey vpward ayenst hym two & two togidre in fayre ordynaunce, wherof he moche meruaylled. and whan they aproched they bygan to crye with a high voys, 'ha, ha, dere lord, welcome may you be.' And thenne Raymondin knew som of them that were comme [2] ayenst hym / and demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes,

He expresses his doubts to the ancient knight,

who tells him he'll soon be home.

Melusine, advised of Raymondin's arrival, makes herself and people ready to meet him.

Raymondin sees them,

and hears them cry 'Welcome';

[2] fol. 59 b.

recognizing them, he asks how far Lusignan is.
They, seeing his mistake,
tell him of it, and how it is caused by the new buildings,
which abashes him.
Melusine greets him,
tells him she knows all, and praises his doings.
They enter Lusignan together, and hold a great feast;
afterwards Raymondin visits the Earl of Poitiers,
recounts the news,
and returns home.
Melusine bears her second son Edon, who had a very great ear;

fro whens come you?' 'My lord,' sayd they, 'we com fro lusynen.' 'thenne,' said Raymondin, 'is Lusynen ferre hens?' They thanne, seeyng that he nyaknewe the place for cause of the new toune & toure / said: 4 'My lord, ye be at it, but ye mysknowe the place bycause that my lady syn your departyng hath doo made and byld this toun & that high toure. and yonder ye may see her commyng ayenst you.' Thenne 8 was Raymondin moche abasshed / and said not all that he thoughte. but when he remembred how she dyde doo make the Castel of Lusynen in so short tyme he gaf hym self no meruayll yf she had doon soo. 12 Thenne is come to hym Melusyne that honorably welcommed hym, sayeng in this manere: 'My lord, I am right fayn & glad of that ye haue so wel wrought & doon so honourably in your vyage. For al thinges 16 haue be reherced to me alredy.' And Raymondin ansuerd to her: 'Madame, it is by the grace of god and of you.' And talking togidre of this matere they entred Lusynen and alighted. Ther was the feste 20 grete that lasted eighte dayes, And was there the Erle of Forest that said to Raymondin, 'ye be welcome.' And after the feest they departed fro Lusynen and came to Poytiers toward the Erle that receyued them 24 benygnely, and demanded of Raymondin where he had be so long. and he recorded to hym alle his auenture. And shortly to say, the Erle Bertran was therof joyful & glad. [1] And that doon, the brethern toke leue of 28 hym / and the one yede toward forests, and Raymondin toward his wyf & lady, which thenne was grete with child, and bare her terme / the which expired, she made a fayre child that was her second sone / he was 32 soone baptised and imposed to name Edon,[2] and hadd an eere greter without comparyson than that other was / but all hys other membres were replenysshed

[1] fol. 60.

[2] Fr. *Odon*.

with beaute, the which Edon had syn to hys wyf the Erle of Marchis doughtir. And of hym resteth thistorye / and speketh ferthermore of Melusyne & of Raymo*n*dyn her lord.

he was afterward married to the daughter of the Earl of March.

Thistorye sayth & certifyeth that whan the lady had ended the terme of her childbed, and that she was releuyd / the feste was made grete / and many noble men, ladyes, and damoyselles were there, the whiche, after the feest full honourably toke their leue & dep*ar*ted. And that same tyme the lady Melusyne bylded bothe the Castel & toun*e* of Melle. Also she dide doo make Vouant & Mernant.[1] and after she made the bourgh & toure of saynt Maxence, and bygan the Abbey there. and moche good she dide to poure folk.

Melusine gives a feast.

builds the castles and towns of Melle and Maxence,

and begins the abbey there.

The second yere after folowyng she hadd a sone that was named guyon, & [he] was a moche fayre child / but he had an ey higher than that other. And wete it that Melusyne had eu*er* so good nouryces, and had so grete care for her children that they mendid & grewe so wel that eu*er*y one that saw them meruaylled. [2] And that tyme Melusyne bigged & fownd many a fayre place thrughe the lande of Poytou unto the duchie of Guyen*ne*. She bilded the Castel and þe burgh of Partenay so strong and so fayre w*ith*out comparyson. after that she dide doo make þe Toures of Rochelle & the Castel also, & bygan a part of the toun*e*, and thre leghes thens was a grete toure & bigge, whiche Julius Cesar dide doo make, and men called it the Egles toure, bycause that Julius Cesar bare an Egle in hys banere as emper*our*. That toure made the lady to be walled & fortyfyed round aboute w*ith* grete toures machecolyd, and made it to be called the Castel Eglon. And afterward she edefyed Pons in Poytou and fortyfyed Xaintes[3] that was called at that tyme

Melusine has her third son Guyon, who has one eye higher than the other;

her children are so well tended, that they grow so that folk marvel at them.

[2] fol. 60 b.

She builds much in Poitou: the castle and town of Parthenay,

and of Rochelle.

She fortifies the Eagle's Tower, said to have been built by Julius Cæsar.

She builds Pons, fortifies Saintes,

[1] Fr. *Vaviront et Mermant.* [3] *Saintes.*

builds Tallemounte, and many other towns and fortresses.

Lynges / and after she made Tallemounte and ' mondois and many other tounes & fortres. And & acquyred so moche Raymondin thrugh the pc & good gouernaunce of Melusyne, what in Bret what in Gascoyn*ne* & in Guyen*ne* as in Poytou no prynce was about hym / but he doubted to dys hym.

Melusine has her fourth son Anthony, who

Soone after Melusyne was delyuered of her fc man child, whiche hight Anthony, none 1 was seen before that tyme. but in his birth he br

has a lion's claw growing from his cheek.

a token along his chyk, that was the foot of a wherof they that sawe hym wondred, & moche abasshed.

Her fifth son Raynald has only one eye, but so

Here saith thistorye, that the vijth yere after I syne bare the fyfte child, of whiche at th of ix monethes she was delyuered, & was named nald. none fayrer child might men see, but he

[1] fol. 61.

borne only [1]*with* one eye / but it was so brigl

bright and clear that he can see ships twenty leagues off (sixty-three miles).

so clere that he sawe the ship thre kennyng*es* ferr the sea, that is, one & twenty leghes ferre / and l wyse on erthe, whatsoeu*er* it was. That same Antl was full gracyous & curteys, as ye shal here in thys herafter.

Her sixth son Geffrey had a tooth that protruded an inch and more, so he

Ferthermore saith thistory, that the eight Melusyne childed the vi. child, that was a s and had to name Geffray, Whiche at his birth bro in hys mouthe a grete & long toth, that apy *with*out an ench̄ long & more / and therfore

was called Geffrey with the Great Tooth;

added to his propre name Geffray *with* the g toth. and he was moch̄ grete & hye, and wel for

he was very strong,

& strong, me*r*ueyllously hardy & cruel, In so m that eu*e*ry man fered & dradde hym whan he wa

and did many wonders in his time.

age / he made in his tyme many wonders & me*r*uey as heraftir ye shal here in thystorye.

Her seventh son Froimond had a

Thystorye sayth that the ixth yere after Melus had a sone, that was the vijth, & hight F

mond, that was fayre ynoughe, but he had on hys nose[1] a top of heeris, and in his tyme he was moche deuonte. and afterward, by thassent of bothe hys fader & moder, he was made monke in the abbey of Maylleses, of whom ye shall here herafter thystorye.

tuft of hair on his nose,

and became a monk in the abbey of Maillesea.

In this part sayth to vs thistorye that Melusyne was two yere without birth of child, but true it is that in the xjth yere she had her[2] xth sone, and was grete meruelously / and he brought at hys birth thre eyen, one of the which was in the mydel of his forhed. he was so euyl & so [3]cruel that at the foureth yere of his age he slew two of hys nourryces.

Her tenth son Horrible had three eyes, one in the middle of his forehead,

[3] fol. 61 b.

and was very cruel.

THe veray hystory saith that so long norysshed Melusyne her children, that Vryan, whiche was theldest & first born, was xviij yere old. he was grete and fayre, & wonderly strong, and made grete appertyse in armes, so that euery man & woman had pyte of hys dyfformytee; for his vysage was short & large, hys one eye was red & the other blew, and hys eerys were as grete as the handlynges of a Fan. and Edon his brother was of xvij yere of age. and Guyon had of yeres xvj, and loued Eche other wel Vryan & Guyon / and so pert & swyft they were, that alle thoo that sawe them gaf hemself grete wonder & meruayll. they were beloued of all the nobles of the land, & made many faytes & appertyses of armes in Joustes, tournoyeng, & in Lystes.

Melusine's eldest-born Urian is now eighteen, and is fair and strong,

though his face is strange, and his ears large.

Edon is seventeen, Guyon is sixteen; Urian and Guyon love one another much.

It happed that same tyme that two knyghtes of Poytou came fro Jherusalem agayn / and recounted there as they passed, how the sawdan of Damask had besieged the king of Cypre in hys Cite of Famagoce, & that he held hym therin in grete dystres. and þat same kyng ne had to hys heyre but only a doughter, whiche was moche fayre. and these tydinges were

Two Poitevin knights return from Jerusalem,

and tell of the Sultan of Damascus besieging the King of Cyprus; and in what distress the king is, and how his heir is a daughter.

[1] Fr. *une petite tache vellue.*

[2] Fr. *huitiesme*, and so in Harleian MS. 418.

ferfourth brought in the land, that Vryan knew of it.

Urian hearing the tale, speaks to Guyon,

and he thenne said to his brother Guyon: 'By my feith, fayre brother, it were grete almesse to socoure that kyng ayenst the Paynemys. We ben al redy eyght bretherne. the land of our fader may not remayne without heyre, though we were bothe deed. Wherfore we owe the more to enterprise [1]vyages, and see where we may doo some faytes of armes, to be therwith enhaunced in worship & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said Guyon, 'ye said trouth. but what cause you to say soo, seeyng that euer I am redy to doo as ye wyl doo?'

[1] fol. 62.

and proposes to him to do some deeds of arms.

The knights from Jerusalem are sent for,

'Southly,' said Vryan, 'ye say full wel. Lete we send for the two knightes that be come fro the holy vyage, to be ensured of them more playnly of the trouth.' they sent to the two knightes that they wold come & spek with them, the which gladly dyde so. And whan they were come, the two brethern welcommed & receyued them goodly. and after they bygan tenquyre of them the manere of theire vyage / of the vse & maneres of the land where they had be. and they said to them the playn trouth. 'We vnderstand,' said Vryan, 'that ye haue passed thrugh an yle wher a king cristen regneth, which is oppressid ouermoch of the paynemys / & wonder is vs that ye abode nat in the werre with that Cristen kyng, for to help & comforte hym, ye that are so renoumed, Worthy and valyaunt knightes, consyderyng as it semeth to vs that alle good cristens are hold & bound to helpe eche other specyally ayenst the paynemys.' To this ansuered the two knightes: 'By my feith, gentil squyer & lord, wel we wyl that ye knowe that yf by eny manere we myght haue entred the toune without deth, & saf, gladly we had doo so as ye say. but wel ye wote that two knyghtes may not susteyne & bere the weight ayenst wel Lxxx. or houndred thousand paynemys, that thenne had besieged the toune wherin the said

and are questioned about where they have been.

Urian expresses his surprise that they did not stay and help the Christian king.

They explain that it was impossible to enter the town, as it was besieged by eighty thousand pagans.

king was. For ye oweth to wete that [1]wel fole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd, wenyng to make hym be styll.' 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'your excusacion is good & iuste. but tell me yf men myghty to reyse & lede with them a xxij^{ti} or xxv^{ti} thousand men of armes, myght doo eny faytte there to help & socoure the sayd kyng?' Thenne ansuerd one of the knightes: 'By my feyth, sire, ye / seen & considered that the Cite is strong, and the kyng within valiaunt, hardy & worthy fighter of his personne / and he is acompanyed with many good men of armes, & the toun wel vytaylled / and yet ther be many Fortresses where they of Rodes come to refresshe themself, of the whiche the kyng & they in the Cite haue grete recomforte / and wete it that moche easely & wel they might goo thider / and wold to god suche a felawship as ye spek of wer redy, and that my felawe & I shuld take thaduenture with them.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Vryan, 'my brother & I shall receyue you, & lede you thither, god before, and that shortly.' And whan they vnderstode hym say soo, they were moche glad, sayeng that yf they soo dyde, hit moued them of valyaunt courage & grete noblesse of herte. Here resteth thistorye of these two knightes, and yet ferther speketh of Vryan & Guyon.

[1] fol. 62 b.

Urian asks if a force of twenty-five thousand men would be any use to succour the town?

the knights think so.

Urian promises to lead them there,

for which the knights thank him.

Cap. XX. How Vryan & Guyon toke leue of bothe theyre fader & moder, and of the help that they had of ƥem.

[2]In this partye sayth thistorye that Vryan and his brother Guyon cam to Melusyne theire moder, and to her said Vryan in this manere: 'Madame, yf ye vouchesaaf, it were wel tyme that we shuld go fourth to our vyage, for to knowe the Countrees ferre & straunge, Wherby we may acquyre honour & good

[2] fol. 63.

Urian and Guyon ask Melusine to let them go abroad to seek their fortunes,

renommee in straunge marches, to thend that we lerne & vnderstand the dyuerse langages of the world. Also yf Fortune and good auenture wyl be propyce & conuenable to vs, we haue wel the wyll & courage to subdue & conquere Countrees & landes; For we considere & see that alredy we be eyghte bretheren / and are lyke, yf god wyl, to be yet as many moo in tyme commyng. and to say that your landes & possessions were parted in so many partes for our sustenaunce & gouernement / he that shuld enheryte the chyef lyflod shuld not be able to kepe no grete houshold, ne to be of grete estate, to the [1]Regard of the high blood & grete noblesse that we come of / also consideryng as now your grete estate. Wherfore as to my brother & I my self, we quytte our parte / except alonely your good grace, thrugh thayde that ye now shall doo to vs for our vyage, yf god wyl gyue vs grace to acomplysshe.' 'By my feyth, children,' said thenne Melusyne, 'your requeste is caused of grete worthynes and courageous herte, and therfore it oweth not to be refused ne gaynsayd. and vpon this matere I shall entreate your faders, For without hys counseyll I owe not to accorde your requeste.' Thanne fourthwith came Melusyne to Raymondin / and shewed hym the requeste & wyll of theire two sones; the whiche ansuerd & sayd, 'By my feyth, madame, yf it lyke you good they doo soo, I assent gladly therto.' 'Sire,' said Melusyne, 'ye say wel; and wete it that they shal do nothing in theire vyage but that it shall tourne to theire grete lawde & honour, yf god wyl.' Then came ayen Melusyne to her two sones, and thus she said to them: 'Fayre children, thinke from hensfourthon to doo wel; For your fader hath graunted youre requeste, & so doo I. and care you not for no thing, For within short tyme I shall ordeyne & purveye for your faytte with goddis grace & help / in such wise that ye shall konne me

because there are eight sons, and

if the lands are divided, the estates would not be great.

[1] fol. 63 b.

Melusine promises to ask their father's permission,

who assents gladly.

Melusine tells them that their father has granted their request, and so has she;

and promises to provide an outfit for them.

good gree & thanke therfore. but telle me whether & to what part of the world ye wyl & purpose to goo, to thende I purvey of suche thinges that shalbe necessary to you therfore.' Thanne ansuerd Vryan: 'Madame, wel it is true & certayn that we haue herd certayn tydynges that the kyng of Cypre is besiged [1]by the Sawdan within hys Cyte of Famagoce / and thither, yf it playse god, we entende & purpose to go for to ayde & socoure hym ayenst the fals & mysbyleuers paynemys.' Thanne gan say Melusyne, 'herto muste be purueyed / As wel for the see as for the land; and with goddis grace, my dere children, I shall ordeyne therof in suche manere that ye shal be remembred of me: and this shal I doo shortly.' The two bretheren thenne kneled doun byfore theyre moder / and thanked her moche humbly of her purveyaunce & good wylle. And the lady toke hem vp, and sore wepyng she kyssed them bothe, For grete sorowe she had in her herte / though she made withoutfourth chere of theire departyng. For she loued them with moderly loue, as she that had nourysshed them.

[1] fol. 64.

They tell their mother they intend succouring the King of Cyprus,

so she promises to provide what is necessary for sea and land.

They thank her;

and she, weeping, kisses them both,

for she loves them with motherly love.

Thystorye sayth that Melusyne was full curyous and besy to make al thinges redy þat were necessary to her sones for theire vyage. She made Galeyes, Carrykes, and other grete shippes to be vytaylled & redy to sayll / and þe nauye was so grete in nombre that it was suffysaunt for foure score thousand men of armes to sayll in. And in the meane while the two bretheren sent for the two forsaid knightes, & said to them that they shuld be redy to meve fourth shortly, as they had promysed to them. And they ansuered: 'Lordes, we be all redy. and many gentylmen that we knowe ben shapen & redy to go with you in your felawship, and we alle be desyrous to serue you and to doo your playsir.' 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'right grete gramercy to you. We shall

Melusine prepares galleys, carracks, and other ships, and victuals them,

enough for eighty thousand men of arms.

The Jerusalem knights are sent for,

and tell the brothers they are ready to go with them.

[1] fol. 64 b.

The armament ready, Melusine appoints four barons to look after her two sons.

[1]lede them wel, yf god wyl and you also.' Now thenne, shortly to saye, Melusyne dyde so moche that al was redy, and had foure Barons to whome she betoke the kepyng & gouernaunce of her two sones. and had grete foyson of gentylmen knightes & squyers, vnto the nombre of[2] two thousand V^C^ men of armes, & fyue houndred archers / and as many men with crossbowes. And thenne the vytayllee, artylery, harneys & horses were charged in to the vesselles, an syn mounted the men into the same. There were seen baners & standarts / and the sowne of trompes & tambours and of many other instruments was herd, that euery one enjoyed that sawe it / And the two brethern toke leue of þeire bretheren and frendes, & of the peple of the land, that moche tenderly wept for theire departyng. And Raymondin & Melusyne conueyed theire children vnto the see; and whan they come there Melusyne drew hem apart, and said to them: 'Dere children, vnderstand this that I wil telle you & commande.' /

The men and stores are put on board the fleet;

the banners are waved, trumpets sounded, and every one enjoys the scene.

The brethren bid their friends farewell,

and are accompanied to their ships by their parents.

Melusine draws them apart,

'Children,' sayd Melusyne, 'here be two rynges that I gyue you / of whiche the stones ben of one lyke vertue. and wete it that as long that ye shall vse of feythfulnes, without to think eny euyl, ne doo trychery or hynderaunce to other / hauyng alwayes the said rynges & stones vpon you, ye shall not be dyscomfyted ne ouercome in no faytte of armes, yf ye haue good quarell. ne also sort or enchauntment of art Magique, ne poysons of whatsomeuer manere shul not lette ne greve you / but that assoone as ye shall see [3]them they shall lese theyre strengthe.' and she delyuered to eyther of hem one / and they thanked her moch, kneelyng to therthe. And yet said Melusyne to them in this manere: 'My dere & beloued children, I wol & charge you that wher so euer ye be, ye here the deuyne seruyse or euer ye doo eny oþer werk.

and gives them each a magic ring,

which, whilst they wear it and remain true,

they will never lose in a good quarrel,

nor be hurt by magical arts or poison.

[3] fol. 65.

The brothers thank their mother,

who advises them always to hear divine service before doing any work;

[2] Fr. *quatre mille hommes d'armes*; no particulars given.

also that in aH your affayres & dedes ye clayme & calle thayde & help of our Creatour, and serue hym diligently, and loue & dredde hym as your god & your maker. and that allwayes ye honoure & worship with aH your power holy chirch̄, beyng her champyons, the same to susteyne & withstand ayenst alle her euyl wyllers. Help ye & counseylle the pouere wydowes, nourysshe or doo to be norysshed the pouere orphenyns, both faderles and moderles / and worship al ladyes / gyue ayde and comforte vnto alle good maydens that men wol haue dysheryted vnlawfully. loue the gentylmen, and hold them good companye. / be meke, humble, swete, curtoys & humayne, both̄ vnto grete & lesse. and yf ye see a man of armes pouere, & faH in decaye by hap & fortune of juste werre, refresshe hym of some of your goodes. be large vnto the good folke / and whan ye gyue eny thing, lett hym not tary long for it; but wel loke & considere how moche & why / and yf the personne is worthy to have it, and yf ye gyue for playsaunce, loke & kepe wel that prodigalite or folysshe largenes surpryse you not / so that after men mocke not with you. For they that haue wel deserued to be of you rewarded shuld not be wel apayed ne [1]content therof / and the straungers shuld mocke you behinde your backe. and kepe ye promyse, or behighte no thing but that ye may fournysshe & hold it. and yf ye promyse eny thing, tary not the delyueraunce of it, For long taryeng quenchith moch̄ the vertu of the yefte. kepe wel ye rauysshe no woman / ne be coueytous of other mens wyues, of whom ye wil be loued and hold for your frendes. believe not the CounseyH of none / but first ye knowe his manere, deeling & condycyons. also beleue not the counseyH of Flatterers, and enuyous, & auarycyous / ne suche putte not in none office aboute you, For they cause rather to their maister dyshonour

to call on God for help, and to serve and fear Him;

to honour and sustain holy Church;

to help widows, orphans, and ladies;

to frequent the company of gentlemen;

to be courteous to all;

to help the unfortunate;

to be thrifty;

[1] fol. 65 b.

to keep promises;

to abstain from ill-using women;

to beware of flatterers and envious persons;

& shame, than ony worship or prouffyt. kepe wel ye borow nothing but that ye may yeld it ayen / and yf for nede ye be constrayned for to borow / as soone as ye
to pay loans; may / make restitucion of it / And þus ye shal mowe 4
be without danger, & lede honourable lyf. And yf god graunte that Fortune be to you good & propyce in
to govern well; subduyng your enmyes & theire landes, gouerne wel your folke and peuple after the nature & condycion 8
that they be of. and yf they be rebell, kepe wel that
to keep all their privileges intact; ye surmounte & ouercome hem without to lese ony suche ryght that longith to your lordship & seignourye / and that ye euer make good watche vnto tyme ye haue 12
vaynquyssched at your wylle. For yf ye ouertredde your self / nedes ye muste rule your self after theire wylle. but alwayes kepe wel, whether they be euyl &
never to inflict unreasonable taxes; hard, or debonnaire, that ye ne haunce & sette new 16
customes that be vnraysonnable / and of them take only your dute and ryght, without to retayll þam
1 fol. 62. [1]without and ayenst raison. For yf the peple is pouere / the lord shal be vnhappy / and yf werr came 20
he shuld not mowe be holpe of them att hys nede / wherfore he might fall into grete daunger & seruytude. For wete it wel / that a flyes of a yere is more prouffytable / than the flyes þat is shorne twyes or 24
thryes in a yere. now, my children, yet I deffende &
to beware of the advice of exiles; forbede you that ye byleue not the Counseill of none exilled and flemed fro his land, in this that may touche the hynderyng or dommage of them that haue exilled 28
hym / yf there nys good, right & lawfull cause / and ye to haue good reason to help hym, For that shuld mowe lette you to come to the degree of worship & honour. And aboue all thinges I forbede you pryde / 32
to be just; and commande you to doo & kepe justice, yeldyng right aswel to the leste as to the moost / and desyre not to be auenged at vttermost of all the wronges don to you by some other / but take suffisaunt & rayeonn- 36

able amendes of hym that offreth it. Dyspreyse not your enmyes though they be litel, but make euer good watche. and kepe wel as long ye be conqueryng, that atwix your felawes ye mayntene nat yourself as lord & sire / but be commyn & pryue bothe to more & lesse / and ye owe to hold them company after the qualite & vocacyon that they be of, now to one & now to other. For al this causeth the hertes of creatures to drawe vnto the loue of them that are humayn, meke & curteys in theire dignite & seignouryes. Haue an herte as a fyers Lyon ayenst your [1]enemyes / and shew to them your puyssaunce and valyauntyse. and yf god endoweth you with some goodes, departe som of it to your felawes after he hath deserued. And as to the werre, byleue the counseyll of the valyaunt & worthy men that haue haunted & vsed it. Also I defende you that no grete treatee ye make with your enmyes, For in long treatee lyeth somtyme grete falshed. For alwayes wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther; and whan the sage seeth þat he is not able to resyste ayenst the strengthe of his enemyes, he seketh & purchaceth alwayes a treatee, for to dyssymyle vnto tyme he seeth hymself mighty ynough for them / and thanne anoone of lyght they fynd waye & manere wherby the treatees ben of none effect ne value. Wherfore loke ye, forbere not your enemyes there, as ye may putte them vnder your subgection with honour. And thenne yf ye shew them fauour & curtoysye, that shal tourne to your grete honour / and leue ye to doo for them by treatee or appoyntement. For though no falshed or decepcion be founde in none of bothe sydes / yet shuld mow some men say or thinke that ye somwhat doubted them / how be it, I say not that men owe to reffuse good traytee, who that may haue it' / Thus, as ye here, chastysed & endoctryned Meluzyne her two sones, Vryan & Guyon, whiche thanked

to be watchful of enemies, no matter how small;

to be on familiar terms with their men;

to have a lion-heart towards their enemies;

[1] fol. 66 b.

to share their spoils with their men;

to make no long treaties,

for they are liable to be ambiguous.

The brothers thank their mother for her advice.

her moche humbly. and thenne she sayd: 'Children, I haue sent gold & syluer ynoughe in to your ship for to hold & maynten your estate, and to pay therwith your men for foure yere. [1]And haue no doubte or care for bred, byscuyte, Freshe watre, vynaigre, Flesh salted, fyssh ynough, & good wynes suffysaunt to long tyme, For therof ben your shippes wel fylled & pur-ueyed. goo thanne fourth on your waye, vnder the sauegarde of god / who kepe you / lede & retourne you agayn with joye. and I pray you that ye thinke & remembre what I haue sayd to you, to fulfyll it after your power.' /

[1] fol. 67.

Melusine tells them she has well stored their ships;

and giving them to God's care, bids them remember her advice, and act on it.

Cap. XXI. How Uryan & Guyon tooke leue of theire moder Melusyne and entred theire ship. /

The brothers bid farewell to their parents,

Thenne they toke leue of theyre fader and moder and entred theire vessell. This doon, the ancres were had in, & the saylles haled vp, the patrons made theire recommendacions to god as customed it is, to [2]that by hys benygne grace he wyl graunte to them good ryuage, and accomplysshing of theyre vyage without lettyng or empeschement. The wyndes were for them propyce & good / and in short tyme they were ferre cast on the see so that they were out of sight /

[2] fol. 67 b.

weigh their anchors,

and after prayer

they put to sea.

Their parents leave for Eglon Castle.

Thanne departed Raymondyn & Melusyne, and theyre meyne with them, and came to the Castel Eglon. And here resteth thystorye of them, and retourneth to spek of Vryan and Guyon hys brother, and of theyre felawship that saylled on the see, holding theire way toward Cypre. /

Uryan and Guyon sail

Thystory sayth that whan Uryan and Guyon were departed fro Rochelle they saylled long on the

see, and passed by many yles, & refresshed them in many places; and so long they rowed þat they sawe many vesselles that chased two galeyes / and thenne the Patron shewed them to þe two brethern / and they ansuered, and demanded of them what was best to doo. 'By my feyth,' sayd the Patron, 'it were good we send a galeye to wete what folke they be / and in the meane while we shal make our men to take theyre armes & harneys on them at al auauntures.' 'By my feith,' said Vryan, 'that I vouchesaf' / and they dide soo. And thanne the galeye departed abrode, and saylled toward the straungers / and escryed þem, & demanded of them what they were, and they ansuerd, 'We be two galeyes of Rodes that haue be found of the paynemys that foloweth & chaceth vs, and we see wel ye be Cristen, and so are all [1]they that come after you.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they of the galeye, 'we ben as ye suppose and saye.' 'By my heed,' said one of the patrons of Rodes galeyes / 'goo & haste your felawship, For ye haue found fayre auenture. yonder be of the sawdans folke that goo to the siege of Famagosse / and who might dystroye them, he shuld doo grete socoure to the king of Cypre / and to the sawdan of Damaske grete dommage.' Whan thenne they of the galeye herd this / they sodaynly retourned & announced it to the two bretheren / and to theire folke whiche anon yede vp to the Castels of theire shippes, and clymed vp to the toppes of them, hauyng speere & darts, stones, & wild fyre alredy / also bowes & arowes in theire handes / gonnes & pouldre to shote with. There bygan tompes to blowe vp, & rowed mightily toward the paynemys. And whan the Infideles & paynemys perceyued so grete nombre of shippes rowyng toward them they ne wyst not what to thinke, For they had neuer supposed that so grete puyssaunce & strengthe of cristen men had be so nygh them / but

till they see two galleys being chased.

They send to see who are in them.

The messengers find the galleys to be from Rhodes,

[1] fol. 68.

and that the vessels that chase them are the Sultan's of Damascus, who is on his way to Famagosse, to fight the King of Cyprus.

On hearing this news, Urian and Guion prepare their ships to fight,

and row towards the paynim Sultan.

The infidels, surprised at the numbers of the Christians,

retreat, but prepare for attack.

The Christian galleys open fire,

upon which the paynims try to send a fire-ship amongst them,

[1] fol. 68 a.

but they evade it.

The Christians are victorious,

take their enemies' ships, and put the men to death.

They row to Rhodes, where they refresh themselves, and give the captured ships to the Rhodians.

The Master of Rhodes invites them to his city,

asks why they come,

and of what nation they are.

They answer, and ask the Master of Rhodes to help them to assist the King of Cyprus.

alwayes they putte hem self in aray gooyng abacke, but oure galeyes aduyronned them round about on al sydes, and bygan of al partes to shutte theire gonnes. And whan the paynemys sawe this / and that they myght not flee, they toke a vessel whiche they had take fro them of rodes, and had cast the folke that was in it into the see / and fylled it with wode, oyle, & talowe, and with sulphre & brymstone. and whan they sawe our folk approuched nygh them they sette it afyre. and whan the fyre was wel kyndled [1]they lefte it behynd them to mete first with our folke / but as god wold they were warned therof & kept / themself wel therfro / and assaylled theire enmyes at the other syde right vygourously. There was grete shotyng of crosbowes & gonnes / and soone after our folk entred byforce and strengthe of armes the shippes of the paynemys / and fynally they were take & dyscomfyted, and putte to deth. and our folke gate there grete good whiche the two brethern departed, and gaf to theire felawes and to them that wer within the two galeyes of Rodes / and syn rowed & saylled both so long that they arryued in the yle of Rodes. And there they refresshed them, & gaf to the brethern of the religyon the fustes & galeyes that they had taken vpon the paynemys, and they soiurned there foure dayes. And the maister of Rodes prayd them that they wold come into the Cite / and they dide soo / and were there honourably receyued / and the said maister demanded them of the cause of their commyng. And the two brethern told hym that they were come forto socoure the king of Cypre / And he asked them full humbly of what land they were, and what they were / and the two brethern told to hym all the trouth. Thenne made the maister to them greter chere than tofore / and said to them that he shuld send for som of his bretheren / & that he shuld goo with hem to helpe & socoure the

king of Chipre. And the two bretheren thanked hym moche humbly therefore. /

Now sayth thystorye that so long abode, & soiourned the two brethern at Rodes tyl the maister had assembled his folke, and vytaylled & laden *with* good [1]men of armes, & archers six galeys, & saylled with Uryan & Guyon so long that they arryued nygh to the yle of Coles, & apperceyued grete lyght. Thenne the grete maister of Rodes that was in Uryan's galeye, said to the two bretheren: 'Sires, in good feyth it were good & wel doon to send a CarueH vnto yonder yle, to knowe & aspye what folke is there.' 'I vouchsaf it,' said Vryan. The Rampyn then, or CarueH, saylled thither, & arryued in to the said yle, & some of þem descended & founde many grete fyres & lodgis, and by thexperience that they sawe, they extimed them þat had lodged there to the nombre of xxx thousand men / and that they myght wel haue dwelled þer foure or fyue dayes. For they found *with*out the lodgys grete foyson of oxen hornes & of other bestes. And then they came ayen in to theire VesseH, and retourned toward *our* folke / & recounted to them the trouth of all that they had found. 'By my feith,' said thenne the maister of Rodes, 'I wene they be paynemys that are gooyng toward the sawdan at the siege, and that they whiche ye haue dyscomfyted were of theire felawship, & abode for them in that same yle' / and for certayn they were soo / and of them they sayled & rowed fourth tyl they sawe an abbey on the see coste, where men sought & worshiped saynt Andrew / and men saith that there is the potence or cros wheron the good thef Dysmas was crucefyed whan *our* lord was nayled to the Cros for our redempc*i*on. 'Sire,' said the maister, 'it were good that we should entre that lytil hauen Vnto tyme that we had sent to Lymasson for to knowe tydinge*s*, & for to wete yf they wyl

The Master of Rhodes arms six galleys,

[1] fol. 69.

and sails with the brethren to Coles, where they see lights.

Men are sent in a carvell to spy,

and discover a camp of thirty thousand strong.

They return with their news.

The Master of Rhodes believes it to be a camp of paynims, friends of those just defeated in the sea-fight.

The company continues their voyage till they come to an abbey on the coast.

[1] fol. 68 b.

receyue vs for to putte our nauye in [1]surete within theyre clos.' 'Maister,' said Uryan, 'let it be doon in the name of god after your playsire.' Thenne they arryued, and entred the port or hauen / and sent 4 wordes to thabbot ther, that they shuld not doubte, For they were theire frendes. And the maister of Rodes with other went thider. And whan thabbot & monkes knew the tydinges and the commyng of the two 8 brethern, they were joyous & glad, & sent some of theire bretheren to Lymas to announce & telle pe soccours that was arryued at theire porte. Thenne whan a knyght, Captayn of the place, herde these tydinges he 12 was fayn & glad, and made fourthwith a galyotte to be shipped redy, and came toward our folke, and demanded after the lord of that armee /. and he to whome he asked it lede hym where Uryan / Guyon 16 his brother / the master of Rodes, & many other barons were in a ryche pauyllon, that they had don to be dressed on the streyte of the porte / and shewed to hym Vryan that satte on a couche with hym his 20 brother, and the maister of Rodes. And whan he saw hym he was abasshed of the valeur & of the grete fyerste of hym, & neuerpeles he yede & salued hym honourably, and Vryan receyued him goodly & benyngly. 24 'Sire,' said the Knight, 'ye be welcome in to this land.' 'Fayre sirs,' said Vryan, 'moche grete thankes to you.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is don me to vnderstand that ye departed fro your Countrie to 28 thentent to come ayde & help the king of Cypre.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'it is trouth.' 'Then, sire,' said the knight, 'it is reson that al be open byfore you, where ye wyl by all the royalme of Cypre, thrugh all 32 tounnes, Cites, & Castels there as ye shal be please to goo, but as to the same, which is to my ryght redoubted lord the king of cypre, hit shal be soone appareylled & open to you, whan it shall lyke you, & also the porte 36

They put into the harbour, and send a message to the Abbot,

who is glad to hear of their arrival.

The Captain of the place rows to our folk,

sees Urian, Guion, and the Master of Rhodes,

and is abashed at Urian's appearance.

Being assured that Urian has come to help the King of Cyprus, he promises to open the country to him, and

give his vessels anchorage.

to putte your vessels [1]in sauete.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'ye say right wel, & gramercy to you. Sire knight, it is tyme to meve, For my brother and I haue grete langyng to approche nygh the paynemys / not for theire prouffyt, but for theire dommage, if it plaise god that we so doo.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'it is good ye doo to be had out some of your horses as many as it lyke you / and take som of your men with you, and we shall goo by land.' 'By my feith,' sayd Uryan, 'ye say right wel' / and thus it was doon / and Uryan made some of hys men to be armed, vnto the nombre of foure hundred gentylmen of the moost hye barons, knightes & squyers. and he himself, & his brother armed them and mounted on horsbak / and the banere dysployed, rode fourth in moch fayre ordynaunce / and the maister of Rodes & the other shipped them on the see & rowed toward the porte. And Vryan and his felawship rode with the said knight that guyded hym so long that they came & entred in to the toune, and were right well lodged. And then came the nauye, & arryued to the porte, and the horses were all had out of the shippes, and the folke descendid to land, and lodged them in þe feld without the toune within tentes & pauyllons / and they that had none, made theire lodgis the best wyse they coude. and was moche grete playsaunce to see thoost whan they were alle lodged. The moost hye barons lodgyd them within the toune / and the nauye was draw, & had in to the clos in sauete / and they commytted good folke to deffende & kepe it, yf Sarasyns or paynemys came there for to doo som euyl. Now shal I leue to speke of Uryan, & shal say of the Captayn of the toune that moche wel aduysed thoost and the maynten of the folke, & moche preysed it in his herte / and said wel they were folke of faytte [2]and of grete enterpryse, whan so few peuple enterpryzed for to haue the vyctory ouer

[1] fol. 70.

Four hundred of Urian's barons go ashore, armed and horsed,

and ride to the town;

the ships meanwhile row to the harbour, and the horses and men land.

Guards are set to defend the navy against the Saracens.

[2] fol. 70 b.

the mawdan, that had with hym more than houndred thousand paynemys. And for to say trouth, Vryan had not yet comprised the men of the maister of Rodes, eyghte thousand fyghtyng men / and therfore the knight *m*er*u*aylled, and held it to grete audacite & hardynes of herte, and to grete valyaunce. And whan he considered the grandeur & the facion of Vryan, & the fyerste of hys vysage, and also of guyon hys brother / he said to his folke / 'thoo same are worthy for to subdüe & conquere all the world.' and he said to hymself, þat god had sent hem thither of his benyng grace for to socoure the kyng, and for to enhaunce the cristen feyth, and that he shuld lete it to be knowen to the kynge by certayn message.

The Captain of the town is surprised at the bravery of Urian, who thinks of conquering the mighty host of the Saracens with so few men;

but Urian's bold looks assure him, and he thanks God that Urian has been sent to help the king.

The Captain of the place indites a letter to the King of Cyprus, telling of Urian's arrival and of his forces,

Thystorye sayth that the knight made a l*ett*re, the tenour of whiche conteyned al the matere of Uryan, & of his brother, of theire men, & of theire co*mm*yng, and how the two bretheren had to name, and of what countre they were / and syn he called one hys nevew, & said to hym in this manere, 'ye muste bere this l*ett*re to Famagosse, and gyue it to the kyng' / and whatsoeue*r* it happeth that god forbede, but al good to you, ned*es* ye muste doo it.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said he / 'ye shall putte bothe the l*ett*res & myself in grete jeopardye & auenture, For if by some myschief, as it happeth ofte, wherof god p*r*eserue me I were taken of *our* enmyes, of my lyf is nothing / and ye wote it wel / but for the loue of you, myn vncle & of the kyng, to doo hym comfort, & to gyue hym herte & hoop to be putte & delyu*er*ed fro hys enemyes, & fro the mortal parel wherin he is now, I shall putte myself in aduenture / and I pray [1]to god deuoutly, that it please hym of his benigne grace to lede me gooyng & co*mm*yng in sauete.' / 'Thus owe men to serue theire lord,' said the Captayne, 'and yf god wyl ye shalbe wel rewarded therof.' and anoone he toke the l*ett*re, &

[1] fol. 71.

delyuered it to his nevew / þat mounted on horsbacke, & rode fourthon his way. But as for now I shall reste of hym / and I shal retourne there I lefte to spek of Vryan / and shal say howe he gouerned hymself whiles the messager yede toward the kyng. how wel he knew nat of it. /

and despatches his nephew on horseback to the King at Famagoose.

THystory saith that Vryan called to hym the maister of Rodes and the Captayn of the place, and demanded of them thus: 'Fayre lordes, is the sawdan somewhat yong, ne of grete enterpryse' / and they ansuerd, 'that ye for certayn' / 'and how,' said Vryan, 'was he neuer byfore this place to make warre than now?' / they ansuerd that, 'nay' / 'and what thenne,' said Vryan, 'hath caused hym to passe the see now? sith he is man of enterpryse, I merveyll that so long he held hym styl, seeyng ye be his nigh neygbours, and also that he hath so grete puissaunce, as it is told me.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the Captayne, 'it is veray & trouth that our kyng hath a moch fayr doughter of the age of .xv. yere, the which the saudan wold haue had by force / and our kyng wold not acorde her to hym without he wold be baptysed. And wete it that euer here tofore we had trewes togidre of so long tyme that no mynde is of þe contrarye. and whan the sawdan hath seen that our king wold not graunt to hym his doughter, he sent ageyn to hym the trewes with a deffyaunce or chalengyng, and was redy on the see with a .C. & fyfty thousand paynemys, and came & made soone his harneys to be had out on erthe, & wente and layd siege tofore Famagoce, where he found [1]the kyng all vnpurveyed of his baronye, that knew not of his commyng / but syn there be entred moche folke within the Cite ayenst his euyl gree, & there is now fayre scarmysshing where grete losse hath be on both partes / and syn the paynemyes have refresshed themself twyes of new folke, in so moch that they ben yet

Urian asks about the Sultan of Damascus,

and ascertains that he fights to get the king's beautiful daughter, now fifteen, refused him because he would not be baptised.

The Sultan challenged the king, and laid siege to Famagoose, which was unprepared;

[1] fol. 71 b.

but now reinforcements have entered the town, and there is fair skirmishing.

The Saracens are a hundred thousand strong; but they lost some vessels,

wel a .C^ml^ / but at this last vyage they haue lost a parte of theire shippes & of theire folke, which they abode fore in the yle of Coles, For one of our galleyes

as was learnt from one of our ships, who saw them pass, chasing two Rhodian galleys,

of the blakke hylle that purayewed them told it to vs, & how they chaced two galleyes of the hospytal of Rodes / and wete it that þey ne wote not where they bycame syn, For they taryed after wel by the space

but saw no more of them.

of six dayes in the said yle / but whan they sawe that they came not, they departed thens & came byfore famagoce at siege.' 'By my feyth, sire,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'this might wel be veray trouth. but

The Master of Rhodes tells the Captain of Urian's victory, which explains their non-appearance.

see here my lord Vryan and hys brother, that shuld wel ansuere therof, For they haue be all dyscomfyted & slayn by theire strengthe & valiauntis, and they haue gyuen to vs theire fustes & their nauye.' 'In good feyth,' sayd the knight, 'that playseth me wel, and blessid be god therof.' 'My lord,' said the Captayn, 'now haue I recounted to you why the werre is meued, and wherefore the saudan of Damaske hath passed the see.' 'In the name of god,' said Vryan, 'loue hath

Urian, learning that love has made the Sultan fight,

wel so moche & more of puyssaunce than of suche enterpryse to doo. And wete that syn the sawdan is

says that he is the more to be feared, because love is so powerful that it makes even cowards brave,

enterprysed of force of loue, the more he is to be doubted / For veray soth it is / that loue hath so moche of myght that it maketh coward to be hardy and to doo right grete enterpryse / & that byfore he durst not passe. And therfore thenne it is all certayn to this,

[1] fol. 72.

that the sawdan is hardy & enterprenaunt [1]the more he doth hym to be doubted / but alwayes be doo the wylle of god. For we shall departe hens to the playsire of god to morow by tymes after the deuyne servyce for to goo & vysyte them.' And then he made to be cryed & proclamed with the trompette that euery man shuld make redy hys harneys. and they departed after the thirde sowne of the trompette in goodly & fayre ordynaunce, eucrone vnder his banere / and bade them

and states that next day, after divine service, he will set out in quest of him.

At the third sound of the trumpets they march.

to siew the vanward / and so they dide. here I shall leue to spek of them / and shall retourne there as I lefte to speke of the Captayns nevew that moche strongly rode toward Famagoce / and so moche exployted his way that he came about midnyght to the Cornere of the wode, vpon a lytil mountayn, & loked doun into the valeye, and then he bygan to perceyue & see the oost of the paynemys, where as was grete lyght of fyres that were made by the lodgys; and he sawe the Cite so aduyronned al about with paynemys, that he ne wyst which way to draw for to entre the toun. and there he was long tyme in grete poughte. It happed that about the spryng of the day foure score basynets, straungers of dyuerse nacyons, yssued out at a posterne of the Cyte, & commevyd al thoost by manere of batayll / and that same ooure the watche departed, & the moost part of them was retourned to theyre lodgis / and they entred in the oost with some of them that had watched without they were ware of hem, & supposed they had be of theire companye, and came nygh to the tente of the sawdan / and thenne they bygan to launche & smyte with speeres & with swerdes on al the paynemys that they mete & recountred / and cutted cordes of pauyllons to grete desray, & made moche horryble occysyon & slaghtir of paynemys after the quantite [1]that they were of. Thenne was al the host afrayd, and bygan to crye alarme & to harneys / then bygan thoost to take on them theire armures. And whan the cristen men sawe the force & strengthe of theire enemyes that bygan to ryse, they retourned with a lytel paas toward the Cite, fleeyng & castyng to therthe al that they recountred on theire waye. And whan the messaunger sawe so grete affraye & noyse he cam at al auenture & broched hys hors with the spoorys, and passed without fourth the lodges thrugh out all the oost of pe paynemys / and he had

The Captain's nephew, that carried the letter to the king,

arrived at the city of Famagosse, sees it surrounded with paynims, and does not know how to enter it.

At the spring of day, eighty basinets leave the city,

and when the paynims' watchmen are in their tents,

the basinets fall upon the paynims, cut their tent ropes, and slay many of them.

[1] fol. 72 b.

But on the host of the Saracens arming,

they run back towards the city.

The messenger seeing the adventure, spurs his horse, rides to the basinets,

not goo long whan he found hymself atwix the Cite & them that so had commocuyd thoost, as said is. And then he knew them soone ynough that they were of the garnyson of the Cyte, and escryed them, saying: 'ha, ha, fayre lordes, thinke to doo wel, For I bryng you good tydynges; For the floure of the noble chevalrye of Crystyante cometh to socoure & helpe you / that is to wete the two damoyseaulx of Lusynen, that haue dyscomfyted alredy a grete part of the Sodanis folke vpon the see / and they bryng *with* them wel eyght thousand men. And thenne whan they understode hym they made hym grete chere and were ryght joyfull, and entred the toune ayen without eny lesse. wherof the sawdan was moch wofull & angry. And then he came & bygan the scarmoushe before the barers & many paynemys were there slayn & dede / and they of Cypre made theire enemyes to recule abacke *with* strengthe / and the saudan made the trompette to sowne & call the retrette whan he sawe that he myght doo none other thing. And þen came the said messaunger byfore the kynge, & made the reuerence on hys vnclis byhaluc, and presented the *lettre*. And the kyng receyued hym moche benyngly, & tok away the wax and opend the *lettre* & sawe the tenour [1]of hit. / and syn heued vp his hande*s* joyntly toward heuen, & said: 'ha, a veray gloryous god, Jhesu Criste, I þank regracye & mercye the ryght deuoutly & humbly of this, that thou hast not forgoten me that am thy pouere creature and thy pouere seruaunt, that haue long tyme lyued here *with*in this Cite in grete doubte & feere, and in grete myserye of my poure lyuyng and my folke also.' And thenne he made to be announced in al the chirches, that they shuld ryng theire belles, & that processyons shuld be made *with* crosses & baners, and *with* torches brennyng, lawdyng & preysyng the creator of creatures, prayeng hym moche humbly that he of his mercyfull &

and tells of the arrival of the Lusignans with eight thousand warriors,

which gladdens them,

and makes the Sultan sad and angry.

The fight continues, but the paynims are driven back, and the Sultan sounds a retreat.

The messenger delivers his letter to the king,

[1] fol. 73.

who thanks God on reading it that he has not been forgotten.

The king orders the church bells to be rung, processions to be made,

benynge grace wyl kepe & preserue them fro the hande*s* & daunger of mysbyleuers paynmys. And thanne bygan the ryngyng to be grete, & was the joye ryght grete whan the tydynge*s* of the soco*urs* commyng to them was knowen of all. And whan the paynemys vnderstode the gladnes & joye that they of the cyte made, they were moche abasshed why they made & demened so grete feeste. 'By my feyth,' sayd the saudan, 'they have herd some tydinge*s* that we wote not / or ellis they doo so for to gyue vs vnderstandyng that they haue folke ynoughe & vytaylles also for to deffende & withstande ayenst vs.' And here resteth thystorye of the soudan & bygynneth to speke of Ermyne the kingis doughtir of Cypre, which herd there as she was in her cha*m*bre the tydinge*s* of the socours that the children of Lusynen brought *with* them. and the mayde had grete langyng & desyre to knowe the veray trouth of all.

and God thanked and prayed to for help.

The paynims are abashed at the rejoicings of the Christians.

The King of Cyprus's daughter, Ermine,

The hystorye saith to vs thus / that whan the damoyselle knew of the socours & help that soone she sent for hym that had brought the tydinge*s* [1] therof, and he came to her in hir chambre & made to her the reue*r*ence. 'Frend,' said Ermyne, 'ye be welcome to me; but now tell me of yo*ur* tydinge*s*.' and he recounted to her al that was of it. 'Frende,' said the mayde, 'have ye seen that folke that co*m*meth to socoure my fader?' 'By my feyth, ye,' said the messanger, 'they are the moost appert in armes, and the fayrest men that eue*r* entred in to this land, and the best arayed & purueyed of all thinge*s*.' 'Now tell us,' said the damoyselle, 'of what land they are, & who is the chief Captayn & lord of them.' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, they be of Poytou, and lede them two yong & fayre damoyseaulx brethren, that be named of Lusynen, of whiche theldest is called Vryan, & that youngest Guyon, which have not yet berde full growen.'

[1] fol. 73 b.

on hearing of the help, sends for the messenger, and questions him.

The messenger tells of the men who have come to succour the king;

of the captains of them, Urian and Guion,

'Frende,' said the damoyselle, 'be they so fayre damoyseaux as ye say?' 'By my feyth,' said the messager / 'the eldest is moche grete & hye, strong & of fayre behauyng & maynten, but hys vysage is short & large in trauerse / and hath one eye redde, & that other ey is perske & blew, and the eerys grete to merueyll. and wete it wel that of membres & of body he is the fayrest knight that euer I sawe / and the yongest is not of so hye stature / but he is moche fayre & wel shapen of membres, & hath a face to deuyse, except that one of his eyen is hyer sette than the other is. and seye alle that see them, that they be worthy & noble to conquere & subdue vnder them all the world.' 'Frende,' sayd Ermyne, 'shall ye goo agayn soone toward them.' And he ansuerd, 'my damoyselle, assoone as I may haue tyme & place conuenable & propyce for to yssue & go out of the Cite, and that I see I may goodly escape fro the paynemys.' 'Frend,' said the damoyselle, 'ye shal on my behalue salue the yong brethern, and ye shall delyuere to the eldest this ouch, [1] and telle hym here it for the loue of me / and this ryng of gold with this dyamond ye shal take to þe lesse, and ye shall salew hym moche on my byhalf.' And he ansuered, 'my damoyselle, I shall doo it righte gladly.' He thanne departed fro her & came to the king that had doon writ his ansuere in a lettre, and made grete foyson of men of armes to arme them redyly, and them made he to yssue couertly out of the cyte and entred in to the oost / and or the oost were armed they adommaged them sore. And þen yssued paynemys out of theire tentes without eny aray, that rechaced them vnto the barrers, where they had grete scarmusshyng & fyers, and many men slayn & wounded of bothe partes. All thoost arryued where the scarmusshing was / and ther whyles was the said messanger putte out of the Cite att another gate, a bow shotte fro al the oost, so that

and of their looks.

[1] fol. 74.

Ermine sends an ouch to Urian, and a ring to Guion, by the messenger, and bids him salute them on her behalf.

The king gives the messenger an answer to the letter he brought,

and to divert the attention of the enemy, orders another sortie.

Upon which the messenger goes out at another gate,

he was nat perceyued. And thenne he rode hastly toward hys vncle. For moche he langed that he myght there be arryued for to shew hym all the tydyinges. and rides to his uncle.

And dured not long the scarmoushe, For the sawdan made it to be cessed, For he sawe wel that he shuld more lese there than wyne. Now I shal leue to speke of this forsaid matere / and shall retourne to speke of Vryan & of his brother. The Sultan soon orders his men to retreat.

In this parte telleth thistory that Uryan dide hys trompettes to be blowen at the spring of the day, & roos & commanded euery man to appareyll hym, and put saddelles on theire horses / and soone after the two brethern herd theire masse, & semblably dyde the other prynces & barons / and after the masse Vryan made to crye, that who wold drynk ones shuld drynk, and that ootis shuld be gyuen to the horses, and that at the other tyme that the trompette shuld be blowen, euery man shuld be redy that was of the [1]Vanwarde. At the spring of the day, Urian commands his host to prepare to march.

[1] fol. 74 b.

And they beying in such estate, the Capteyns nevew arryued there, and delyuered the lettre to hys vncle, that the kyng had taken to hym / and the Captayn toke & kyssed it fourthwith, opend it, and sawe by the tenour of it how the kyng commanded hym to putte bothe the fortresse and the toune at the wyll & commandement of the two bretheren. Also that he shuld commande to all good tounnes, Castels, Fortresses, portes, hauens, & passages that they shuld gyue them entre & soiourne, and that they shuld obey to them. At that time the messenger returns from the king. The Captain reads the answer, which commands all the land to be given in charge of the brethren, Urian and Guion,

And whan the Captayn sawe & vnderstode all þe substance & matere of it, he shewed the lettre to Vryan, & to guyon hys brother, the whiche redde it; & whan they knew the tenour of it they called to them the captayn, the maister of Rodes, & the two knightes, that had anounced to them thauenture of the siege, and redde to them the lettre on hye. 'Thenne,' said Uryan to the Captayn, 'we thanke moche the king of the worship to whom the letter is shown.

Urian thanks the Captain for the king's intentions,

that he doth to vs / but as to vs, our entencyon is not to entre in to thoos tounes ne castelles, yf we may goodly passe without fourth, For we thinke to kepe the feldes, yf god wyl, & make good werre ayenst the

and asks what force the Cyprians have in all their fortresses;

sodan, but telle vs what nombre of men may yssue out of all your garnysons the Fortresses alwayes kept / and wete it þat force is to vs to knowe it / and yf they be men of whom we dare trust and be assured / For god

because he wishes to fight the Sultan, and end the war.

before we tende & purpose to gyue bataylle to the Sawdan, & to putte to termynacioun, & ende this warre. For therfore are we come hither.' 'By my faith,'

The Captain says that would be hard to do, because the paynims have one hundred thousand men.

said the Captayn, 'that shal be hard to doo, For þe paynemys are in nombre wel C^ML and more.' 'Care you not, therefore,' said Vryan, 'For we haue good right in oure caas / they are come vpon vs without

[1] fol. 78.

cause / and though we had goon on them [1]vnto theire

Urian replies they have a good cause,

owne lande, we ought to doo soo, For they are enemyes of god / and doubteles though they be of grete nombre to the regarde of our felawship / yet one grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge than doth

that victory lies not on the side of numbers,

a sacke full of whette / ne victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of peuple / but in good rule & ordyn-

and that Alexander fought the world with twenty thousand men.

*aun*ce. And wel it is trouth that Alexander, that subdued so many & dyuerse landes, wold not haue with hym aboue the nombre of xx^ti thousand fyghtyng men for one journey ayenst all the world. And thanne whan the Captayne herd hym speke so valyauntly, he

Which speech cheered the Captain,

held it to grete wele & valeur, and thoughte he was wel able & worthy to conquere & subdue many landes,

who promised a company of eight thousand men;

and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I shall enforce your oost with foure thousand fighting men, and of two thousand brygandyners & crosbowes, & other.' 'By

which Urian says is enough.

my feyth,' said Vryan, 'that is ynoughe / now doo that we may haue hem to half a journey nygh oure enemyes,' and he ansuerd there shuld be no fawte of it. And then came there the Captayns nevew, and

kneled byfore Vryan & Guyon, and said to them in this manere: 'Noble damoyseaulx / the moost fayre mayde / & the moost noble that I knowe saluеth you bothe, and sendeth you of her jewels' / and thenne he toke the ouche of gold that was sette with many a ryche & precyous stone / and said thus to Vryan: 'Sire, hold & receyue this ouche of Ermynes byhalf, doughter to my liege lord the kyng', that requyreth & besechep you to were it on you for her sake.' Vryan toke it joyously, and made it to be attached & sette it on his cotte of armes, and said to hym: 'My frende, right grete thankes & thousand mercys to the damoyselle tha so moche honour sheweth to me / Wete [1]it that I shall kepe it moche dere for her sake / and gramercy to you messanger & brynger of it.' And after he presented and toke to Guyon the ring on the forsaid damoysellis byhalf / and that she prayed hym to bere it for the loue & sake of her / And guyon ansuerd that so shuld he doo, and putte it on his fynger / and thanked moche the damoyselle / and pe messager also / and the brethern gaf moche ryche yeftis to the same messager. And soone after the trompette blew, and euеryman putte hym self fourth on hys way. and there myght men be seen in fayre & good ordynaunce. And the Captayn sent to all the Fortresses & tounes, and made to yssue out & assemble togidre all the men of armes / and wel were of them aboue the nombre that the Captayn had sayd to the two bretheren fyue hondred more. Vryan thenne lodged hym and hys felawship on a lytil ryuere / and on the morne erly they departed, and went fourth tyl they came a lytil byfore mydday, in a fayre medowe, nygh to a grete ryuere / and there were foyson of trees / also there was a quarter of a leghe thens a grete bridge, where they muste passe / and fro that bridge vnto Famagoce were but seuen leghes / and there made Vryan hys folke to

The messenger presents Urian with the ouch from Ermine,

who takes it joyfully, and attaches it to his coat of arms,

[1] fol. 75 b.

and says he will keep it for her sake.

Guion is presented with the ring, and puts it on his finger.

The brethren give rich gifts to the messenger. The trumpets are sounded, and the men get under arms.

The captain assembles from the fortresses the company he promised,

and Urian marches his army within seven leagues of Famagosse, nigh a great bridge,

be lodged, and said he wold abyd̄ þere the said Captayn and his men that he shuld bring with hym. There they laye that nyght, and abode tyl the morne noone. but alwayes some knightes were goon for theire dyporte vnto the said bridge, and aspyed there about xv men of armes that were descended therat / and had theire speeris in theire fystes, and the salades after the guyse that they armed them in that Countre / and of anoþer syde they sawe come about foure houndred men [1]of armes, that peyned them self moche for to passe ouer for to greve them of the other side / thanne came one of our Knightes that escryed them, & demanded of them what they were / and one of them ansuerd, 'we are Cristen / and they that ye see at the other side of the watre are paynemys, that come for fourrage about the Countre / they haue mete & faught with vs, and they haue slayn wel an C good men that were of our felawship.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said oure knyght, 'yf ye can hold you, ye shal soone haue socours & ayde.' And thenne the knight broched hys hors, and waloped toward hys felawes, and recounted to them shortly all thauenture. And whan they vnderstode this they hastly came to the oost, and mete with xx^{ti} crosbowes men, to whom they bade they shuld hye þem toward the bridge for to help the xv men of armes that were there ayenst thenmyes. And whan they vnderstode this they walked fast, & cam nigh to the bridge, and sawe thre cristen that were ouerthrawen on the bridge by strokkes of speerys. 'Fourth,' said then one of them, 'we tary to longe / perceyue you not how this Dogges oppressen vylaynly these valyaunt & worthy crystens?' / and anone they bended þeir crosbowes, & shot all at ones / and ouerthrewe doun on the bridge fro theire horses with that first shotte xxii^{ti} paynemys. Whan the mysbyleuers paynemys sawe this they were sore abasshed, and

where they abide for the night.

Some knights go to the bridge, and see fifteen armed men,

and on the other side of it four hundred.

[1] fol. 78.

The fifteen, on being asked, say that they are Christians, and the other company paynims, who have fought them, and killed one hundred of their company.

Urian's knights help the small company of Christians;

withdrew themself somwhat backward fro the bridge. Thenne yede the cristen men, and releuyd vp their felawes that were ouerthrawen on the bridge / and thenne they made grete joye & toke good herte / and the [1]Crosbowe men shote so ofte & so strong, that there ne was so bold a paynem that durst putte his foot on the bridghe / but made to come there theire archers, & thenne bygan the scarmusshing strong & grete and moche mortal. but betre had be to the paynemys that they had withdrawe them self apart, For the knightes came to the oost and reherced to Uryan the tydinges therof, the whiche moch̄ appertly armed hymself, and made hastly a thousand men of armes to take theire harneys on them, & rode forth toward the bridge / and ordeyned another thousand men of armes, & C crosbowe men to folowe hym, yf he nede had of them / and commanded that all the oost shuld be in ordynaunce of batayłł, & betoke it to the kepyng & gouernaunce of guyon his brother, and of the maister of Rodes. Uryan thanne made the standarde to passe fourth rydyng in batayłł moche ordynatly / and was Vryan before, hauying a staf on hys fyste, & held them wel togidre, and so vnyed, that one marched nothing afore that other. But or they were come to the bridge there were come eight thousand paynemys, that moche strongly oppressed our folke, and had putte them almost fro the bridge. but anoone came there Vryan, whiche alyghted / toke hys speere, & so dyde hys folke moche appertly / and made hys banere to be dysployed abrode / and were the crosbowe men on bothe sydes of hym vpon the bridge / and then they marched fourth, and bygan to oppresse and rebuke sore the paynemys, and made them to withdrawe bakkwarde. And there Vryan cryed 'Lusynen' with a hye voys & lowde, and yede & marched ayenst hys enemys, hys banere euer byfore

and rescue some of their friends on the bridge from the paynims,

[1] fol. 76 b.

who retire to bring up their archers.

Urian hears of the skirmish,

and rides with a thousand men to the bridge,

leaving his host in charge of Guion.

Eight thousand paynims come against him, who at first press his company,

but are at last repulsed. Urian crying 'Lusignan!' rushes with his men against the enemy,

[1] fol. 77.

hym. [1]and hys men after that assaylled the fals dogges moche asprely, Whiche of the other syde bygan to launche & to smyte. Uryan smote a paynem on þe brest with hys speere so demesurably, that hys spere apered at back syde of hym. they medled them fyersly togidre. but at last the paynemys lost the bridge, and many of them fell doun in to the ryuere. And thenne passed the crystens the bridge lyghtly / and there bygan the baytayll moche cruel, For many were there sore hurte & slayn on both partyes. but euer the paynemys were putte abak, & lost moche of ground. Vryan made to passe the horses, for wel he perceyued that his enemyes wold mounte on theire horses to putte them self to flyght. Thenne came the arregarde that asprely passed ouer the bridge / and whan the paynemys perceyued them they were sore affrayed / and who that myght flee, fledd toward theire folke that lede theyre proye, oxen, kyn & shep, swynes & othre troussage. Uryan than lepte on horsback, and made hys folke to doo soo, & commanded the arregarde that passed them ouer the bridge, that they shuld folowe hym in fayre ordynaunce of bataylle / and so they dyde / and Uryan & hys folke chaced the paynemys that fledd sore chaffed & aferd, For al they that were by Uryan, & they of hys felawship atteyned, were putte to deth / and endured the chasse with grete occysyon & slaghter þe space of fyue oures & more. And thenne the paynemys ouertoke theyre folke, & made them to leue behynd them alle theyre proy, & came vpon a grete mountayne toward Famagoce / and þer the paynemys reassembled, & putte them self in [2]ordynaunce. but there came Vryan & his folke, theire speris on theire fystes alowe / at that recountryng were many one slayn & wounded sore, of one syde & of other / the paynemys susteyned the stoure strongly, For they were a grete nombre of folke. but

drives them over the bridge,

presses them hard,

and gets his horses over the bridge.

His rear coming up frightens the paynims,

who flee toward their friends.

Urian's company chase the pagans,

kill many,

and cause them to leave their spoil.

The paynims rally with their friends upon a mountain,

[2] fol. 77 b.

Uryan assaylled them vygourously / and so moche he dide there of armes that all were abasshed, and had grete wonder of it. Then came thither the arregarde that was of a thousand men of armes, & C crosbowe men which entred, & marched sodaynly vpon theyre enemyes, & faught so strongly that the paynemys were putte abacke, & lost ground. and so fyersly was shewed there the cheualry & hardynes of Cristen folke, that soone they had the vyctory, and putte theyre enmys to flight, of whiche lay dede on the place foure thousand & more, *with*out them that were slayn at forsayd bridge / and the chasse endured vnto nygh the oost & siege of the paynemys. Thenne Vryan made hys folke to *with*drawe them, and ledd *with* them the proye that the paynemys had lefte behynd. And thus within a short while they eslongyd ferre one fro other / and *our* folke retourned to the bridge / and the paynemys went fourth to theire oost cryeng alarme. Wherfore eu*ery* man went to harneys, & yssued out of theire tentes / and thenne one of them recounted to the sawdan all thaduenture *þat* happed to them. And whan the sawdan herd of it, he wondred moch who might haue brought *þat* folke, that so grete harme & dom*m*age had born vnto hym. Thanne was there grete affray in thoost, & grete noyse of trompette*s*. Wherof they of the Cite m*er*ueylled what thing it might be, & armed them self / and eu*er*yone was in his garde / and there [1]came to the gate one of the knighte*s* that were at forsayd brydge, whiche had putte hym in auenture to passe thrugh all thoost, and knewe the co*n*vyne[2] of one parte & of other, also the grete fayttes of armes that Vryan had don / he eseryed hye *with* a lowde voys / 'open the gate! For I bring you good tydynge*s*.' And thenne they demanded of hym what he was / and he ansuerd, 'I am one of the knighte*s* of the fortres of the

but Urian and his guard

again put them to flight, and slay another four thousand of them;

after which Urian retires with the booty.

The paynims alarm the Sultan, who is surprised, and wonders who can have so defeated his men;

he sounds his trumpets, which alarm the people in Famagosse, and they arm themselves.

[1] fol. 78.

A knight of Urian's arrives at the town,

and tells them that he brings good tidings;

[2] Fr. *commune*.

blak mountayne.' And thanne they opend the gate,
being led before the King of Cyprus, and he entred, and they ledd hym toward the king, that soone knew hym. For other tyme he had seen hym. The knight then enclyned hym before the king, and made to hym the reuerence / and the kinge receyued hym moche benyngly / and demanded to hym
he recounts the victory. som tydynges; and he reherced to hym worde by worde all the faytte / and how Vryan dyde, & had rescued the proye / also of thauenture of the bridge, and alle other thinges, & how hys entencion & wylle was for to gyue batayll to the sawdan, and to reyse the siege / &
The king is glad, that shortly / 'By my feyth,' sayd the kyng, 'that man ought me god wyll, for to rescue my land of the fel & cruel dogges paynemys / and for the holy feyth crysten to susteyne & enhaunse / and, certaynly, [1]I shall to morne doo fele to the sawdan þat my socour & help is nygh redy to my behauf & playsire, & that I doubte hym not of nothing.' 'My frende,' said the
and sends the knight to his daughter, kyng to the knyght, 'goo & say these good tydynges to my doughter.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'right gladly.' Then came he in to the chambre where the mayde
[2] fol. 78 b. was, and [2]moche humbly salued her, and rehersed to her all the auenture. 'How, sire knight,' said she,
who asks about the battle, and Urian. 'were ye at that batayllel?' 'By my feyth, damoyselle,' ansuerde the knight, 'ye.' 'And how,' sayd she, 'that knyght that hath so straunge a face, is he such a fyghter as men saye?' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, ye more than a houndred tymes / For he ne dreddeth no man, al be he neuer so grete & so pusyssaunt. And
The knight says Urian is the bravest and strongest knight he has ever seen. wete it what that men saye to you of hym / he is one of the moost preu & hardy knightes that euer I sawe in my lyf.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the damoyselle, 'yf he had now hyerid you for to preyse & speke wel of hym, he hath wel employed hys coste.' 'By my feyth, my damoyselle, I spake neuer with hym. but yet he is betre

[1] Fr. *Je ferai demain sentir.*

worthy than I telle you.' Then she ansuered to the knight, [1]'goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte.' And here leueth thystorye to speke of the mayde / and retourneth to Vryan, þat abode at the bridge, and founde hys oost lodged at this syde of the bridge / And also the Captayne þat had brought the men of armes, that he leuyed fro the garnysons & forstresses vnto the nombre of V^ML men of armes, with two thousand V. C. crosbowe men / and also there were many footmen / And þey were alle lodged in the medowe at the other syde of the ryuere. Where Vryan found his pauyllon dressed vp / and the other that had be at the pursyewte & chaas of the paynemys, they lodged þem that nyght the best wyse they coude, & made good watche. And here resteth thystory therof, and bygynneth to speke of the kyng of Cypre, that was moche joyous & glad of the socours that was come to hym / and regracyed deuoutely our lord of it / and in that party passed the nyght. But who someuer was glad that was Ermyne, For she coude not by no manere in the world haue out of her thoughte Vryan, [2]and desired moche to see hym for the well that it was said of hym / in so moche that she said in herself, that yf he now had the vysage more straunge & more contrefaytte than he had / yet he is wel shappen for his proesse & bounte to haue the doughtir of the moost high kynge in the world to hys paramour. And so thoughte the damoyselle al the nyght on Vryan, For loue by hys grete power had broughte her therto. Here resteth thystorye to speke of her, & bygynneth to speke of the kyng her fader.

Urian rests that night in his tent.

The King of Cyprus was glad at the victory,

and his daughter Ermine thought ever of Urian,

[2] fol. 79.

his strange visage, and his bravery,

because love by its great power had hold of her.

The hystorye recounteth here, that on the morne at the spryng of the day, the kynge had hys folke all redy, & yssued out of the Cyte with a thousand men of armes, and wel a thousand of Crosbowemen;

In the morning the king with a host

[1] Fr. *Amy, bonté vault mieulx que beaulté.*

and some brygandyners were embussshed at bothe thendes of the barrers, for to helpe & socoure hym yf he were to moche oppressyd by the paynemys. And

went out of the city and fought the enemy,

þen the king entred in to thoost, & bare grete dommage to hys enemys. For he had commanded vpon peyne of deth that none shuld take eny prysoner, but that

giving no quarter.

they shuld putte all to deth / and this dide he for cause they shuld not tende to the dyspoylle & proye, and that at laste he myght gader them ayen togidre for to withdrawe them without ony losse. And then the

The paynims come in great force,

oost began to be mevyd / and who best coude of the paynemys came to the medlee. And whan the king perceyued that they cam with puyssaunce, he remyssed hys folke togidre, and made to withdraw them al the lytil pas, and came behynde, the swerd in his fyst. And whan he sawe a knight approuche, he retourned & made hym to recule abacke. but yf he atteyned hym, he chastysed hym so that he no more had

and the King of Cyprus shows great bravery.

langyng to siew[1] hym. And there the kynge dide so wel & so valyauntly, that euery one sayd he was moche preu & worthy of his hand / and there ne [2]was so hardy payneme that oo stroke durst abyde. Then

[2] fol. 79 b.

The Sultan, bearing a poisoned dart, comes with a great company, and seeing the king, strikes him on the left side with it,

came the Sawdan with a grete route of paynemes, armed on a grete hors, that held a dart envenymed. And thanne whan he aspyed the king, that so euyl demened his folke, he cast at hym the darte yre, & hytte hym at the synester syde, in suche wyse that he perced hym thrugh & thrughe, For hys harneys coude

which causes the king great anguish. He pulls out the dart, and throws it at the Sultan, but missing him it kills a paynim warrior.

neuer waraunt hym / And soone after the kyng felt grete anguysshe, and drew the dart out of hys syde, and supposed to haue cast it agayn to the Sawdan / but the Sawdan tourned hys hors so appertly that the dart flough besyde hym, & smote a payneme thrugh the body in suche wyse that he fell doune dede. And whan the sawdan, that ouermoche had auaunced hym

[1] Fr. *suyrir*.

self, wende to haue retourned, the kynge smote hym *with* his swerd vpon the heed of hym, that he ou*er*threw hym to therthe. Thenne cam the paynemes there so stro*n*g that they made the kynge & hys folke to withdraw backe / and then*ne* was the sawdan redressed & remoun*t*ed agayn vpon a grete hors. And thenne was þe prees grete, and the paynemes were strong / in so moche that they made the kyng & his folke to withdrawe vnto theire barrers. Thanne bygan the Cypryens, that kept the passage there, to shote & to launche on the paynemes so strong that they dyed the place *with* the blood of theire enemyes. but so strong were the paynemys, that they gaynstode the crysten / and also the king had lost moche of hys blood, & wexed feble, and hys folke bygan*e* to be abasshed. And how be it that the king suffred moche dolour & peyn*e*, neu*er*theles he resioysshed moche hys peuple & encouraged them, and so moche they dide that the fals paynemes might gete nothing on them / but that they lost twyes [1]asmoche more / and was the scarmusshing moche fyers & peryllous. And thus the kyng of Cypre, by hys valyaunce & noble herte, recomforted his folke. and though he felt grete peyne & woo, he fuH wel remysed hys folke into the toun*e*. And it was grete me*r*uayH how so grete a lord, wounded to the deth, myght sytte on horsbake / but the stroke was noþing mortaH but for the venym*e*, For the dart was envenymed / and wel it appered *with*in a lytil tyme after, For he deyde of that same stroke. but for certayn he had the herte so full of valiaun*t*nes, as the faytte shewed it, that he ne dayned not make signe of eny bewayllyng before his folke, vnto tyme that one of the barons perceyued aH his senyster syde dyed *with* bloode / the whiche Baron sayd to the king: 'Sire, ye abyde to long here / come & make your folke to withdrawe them in to the toun*e* or it be more late,

The Sultan, advancing too near the king, is overthrown by him,

but is rescued by his people,

who at last drive the Cyprians back;

but these shoot so well that many paynims are killed.

The king now begins to be faint from loss of blood.

His people are abasshed, but, encouraged by him, they fight well, and slay many more of their enemies.

[1] fol. 80.

At last he conducts his folk to the town, still on horseback. Though suffering from the poisoned wound,

he makes no sign of pain, but a baron seeing the blood on his side advises him to withdraw.

For the nyght approucheth / to thende that your enmyes putte not them self thrughe the medlee emong' vs.' The kyng, whiche felt grete sorowe, ansuerd to hym thus: 'Doo therof after your wylle.' This knyght thenne made a houndred men of armes, that were reffresshed, to come before the barryere, & made to bygynne ayen the scarmusshing with an C crosbowe men; and so were the paynemes sette abacke, wherof the sawdan was fulle of grete anger, and escryed to hys folke: 'fourth lordes & barons, peyne your self to doo wel, For the toune shalbe oures this day: hit may not escape vs.' And thenne enforced ayen the medlee. And there ye had see wel assaylled & ryght wel deffended, of that one part & of that other. But whan the kinge of Cypre sawe that the paynemes strengthed them soo, he toke courage grete, & ranne vpon them vygourously / and there he suffred so moche peyne þat alle the synewes[1] of hys body were open, wherof, as some [2]sayen, his lyf was shorted / and by that same enuahissh*ing* were putte aback the paynemes, & many of them wer slayn & sore wounded. The nyght thenne approuched, and was nygh / and grete harme & losse was there of both partes. but alwayes the paynemes withdrew them vnto theire oost, For the king encouraged hys folk soo that they ne doubted no stroke nomore than yf þey had be of yron or of stele. And whan the paynems were departed, the kinge & hys folke retourned in to the toune. And whan they knew the euyl auenture of theire king, they beganne to sorowe & to make grete dueil. And the kynge, that sawe this, sayd to them: 'My good folke, make no suche waymenting' ne sorowe, but thinke wel to defende you ayenst the Sawdan / and god our sauyour shalbe at your ayde & helpe, For yf it playse hym I shalle soone be heelid.' Thenne was the peuple peased

This baron with some archers continues the fight,

which makes the Sultan angry, who calls on his people 'to do well,'

upon which they fight vigorously.

The king, though in great pain, comes to the rescue,

[2] fol. 80 b.

and the paynims are driven back;

afterwards the king and his people return to the town, where they learn of the king's wound; at which they mourn.

The king encourages them,

and tells them he may soon be healed,

[1] Fr. *vaines*.

ayen. but neuerþeles, the kyng that said suche wordes for to resioysshe hys peuple, felt in hym self that he coude not escape fro deth. And thenne he commanded to his folke they shuld make good watche, and gaf hem leue, & came to the palleys, and there alyghted & yede in to hys chambre / And thenne came hys doughter, that somwhat had vnderstand of hys mysauenture. but whan she perceyued that hys harneys was all rede with bloode, and sawe his wounde, she fell doun in a swoune, & lay as she had be deed. Thenne commanded the kynge that she shuld be borne in to her chambre / and so it was doon. After the Cyrurgiens came to see the kingis wounde, and was leyed on his backe along his beed / and they told hym that he was saaf fro pareil of deth, and that he shuld not be abasshed. 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'I wote wel how it is with me / the wylle of god be doo / hit may not be kepte so secretly but that it shalbe [1]knowen thrughe the Cyte.' And thenne byganne þe sorowe moche grete among the Cytezeyns & peple of the Cyte, and more without comparacion than it was byfore. But here resteth thystorye of the kynge & of the siege / and shal speke of Vryan and of his brother, and how they exployted afterward. /

but at the same time he knew he was near death.

The king orders good watch to be kept;

is visited by his daughter,

who faints at the sight of his wound and the blood on his armour.

The surgeons tell the king he is safe;

but the king says he knows well how it is with him.

[1] fol. 81.

The people of the city mourn for their king.

In this parte, saith thystorye, that on the morow erly, that was thursday, was Vryan after hys masse herde byfore hys tente / and there he made come, one aftir other, all the Captayns & chieftayns with theire penons & standarts, and theire folke vnder them al armed of all pieces, for to behold & vysyte theire harneys, yf eny thing wanted / as wel the straungers / as hys owne folke / and beheld wel the maintene & contenaunce of them. And after this was doo he made them to be nombred / and they were founde by extymacion about ix. or ten thousaund fyghting men. Thenne said to them Vryan: 'Lyste, all fayre lordes,

In the morning Urian hears mass,

reviews and numbers his men,

finding between nine or ten thousand in all.

He addresses them.

'It is their duty to maintain the faith of Christ, who died for them.

we are here assembled for to susteyne the feyth of Jesu cryste, of the whiche he vs alle hath regenered and saued / as eche of vs knoweth wel ynoughe how he suffred cruel deth for the loue of vs, to thende he shuld bye vs ayen fro the peynes of helle. Wherfore lordis, seen & considered in *our* herte*s* that he hath doon to vs suche a grace, we ought not to reffuse the deth, or such auenture as he shal gyue vs, for to deffende & susteyne the holy sacrements that he hath admynystred vs for the saluacion of our soulis / though that we now haue adoo with strong partye. For *our* enmys ben tene ayenst one to the regarde of vs / but what therof we haue good ryght, For they are come to assayll vs *with*out cause vnto our right herytage / and also we ought not to resuyngne ne dylaye therfore. For Jhesu Criste toke alone the warre for *our* rede*mpcion*, And by hys deth alle good folke that kepen his com*man*[2]dements shal be saued. ye oughte thenne to vnderstand all certaynly, that alle thoo that shull dye in this quarelle, mayntenyng & enhaunsyng the feyth, shal be saued, & shal haue the glorye of Paradys / And þerfore, fayre lord*es*, I tell you in generall that I haue entencyon, god byfore, to meve presently for to approche *our* enemys, and to fyght *with* them as soone as I may. Wherfore, I praye you frendly, that yf there be ony man in this place that feleth not his herte ferme & stedfaste for to *with*stande & abyde thauenture, such as it shal playse to god to send vs / that he *with*drawe hym self apart fro other, For by one ouly Cowarde & feynted herte is sometyme lefte & loste al a hoole werke. and wete it that, al thoo that wyl not com*me* *with* theire good wyll, as wel of my folke as of other,[3] I shall gyue them money

even at peril of life,

though our enemies are ten to one against us.

Alone, Christ fought for our redemption.

[2] fol. 81 b.

If you die, salvation and Paradise awaits you.

Soon I will march;

but if there be any whose heart is not steadfast, let him withdraw,

for one coward has often spoiled a great undertaking.'

[3] 'Wha will be a traitor-knave?
Wha can fill a coward's grave?
Wha sae base as be a slave?
Let him turn and flee!' (*Scots wha hae.*)

ynoughe & syluer for theyre sustenaunce & fyndyng for to passe ouer the see ayen.' After these wordes he made hys banere to be dressed a bowe shote fro the valey, vpon the mounteyne, and ordeyned hys brother Guyon for to hold & bere it / and after he said, al on hye, in heryng of hys folke / 'All they that entenden, & haue deuocion for to auenge the deth of Jeshu criste, to thenhaunsyng of the holy feyth cristen, Also to ayde & helpe the kynge of Cypre, lete hym withdrawe hym self vnder my banere / and they that ben of contrary wyll, lete them passe ouer at the oþer syde of the bridge.' Thanne whan the noble hertes herde hym saye thoo wordes. they held it to grete wysedome of hym, & of grete prowesse & worthynes, & went alle in a companye togider vnder his banere, wepyng for Joye & for pyte of the wordes that Vryan had said / ne none delayed ne taryed for nothing, but yede all vnder hys banere, as said is / Thenne was moche gladde Vryan, and joyous, and anone he made his trompettes to be blowen vp, and all was troussed[1] & putte them self on theire way. And thanne the [2]maister of Rodes, and the Captayne of Lymasson putte them self assembled togidre, and rode in fayre batayll, And said wel that ayenst Vryan and his folke no man shal endure / And thus they rode tyl they came nygh to the mountayne / and as half way to the place where the batayll had be the day byfore. 'By my feyth, lordes,' sayd Vryan, 'there nygh that yond ryuere were good that we went to be there lodged tyl we were refresshed. And in the meane while we shal see and aduyse how we shall for the moost surest way hyndre & adommage our enmyes' / And they ansuerd that so was good to doo. They went thenne all togider, to thende they were not founde abrode, & lodged þem self there. Now leueth here of them thystorye / and bygynneth to speke of the Sawdan. /

Urian gives Guion his banner,

and calls on all who want to avenge Christ's death,

and to help the King of Cyprus, to come under it,

and march across the bridge.

The noble hearts heard him, and were glad, and marched under his banner.

The trumpets are sounded, and the march begins;

they come to a mountain,

and halt for refreshment, and to hold council.

[1] Fr. *troussé*.

[2] fol. 82.

On the Sultan's spies telling him the state of the city,

Thystorye sayth that the Saudan had hys espyes within the Cite, whiche aspyed secretly þe Convyne of them of the toune. Wherby he knew that

and of the succour coming, and of the illness of the king,

socours & help came to the kyng / and also how the kyng was sore wounded, wherof the people was gretly troubled. Thanne had the sawdan cause to do

he orders an assault.

assayll the toune / and he made to blowe trompettes whan þe sonne was vp, and ordeyned his batayllles, and his Crosbowes & paueys,[1] and came vnto the dyches & barryers. There bygan the scarmusshing outrageously fyers / they shotte with Crosbowes demesurably of one part & of other. There were many paynemes slayn,

The townspeople defend themselves by shooting stones, pitch, hot oil, and overturning the enemy's scaling ladders.

For they within the toune shotte many gounes,[2] & cast vpon them fro the batelments of theire walles grete stones, pyche & grece brennyng hoot, and renersed them fro the ladders vnto the botome of the dyches. Thenne came the Sawdan fourth, cryeng with a high

The Sultan urges on the assault,

voys, 'Now, lordes, deffende yourself worthily, & lete vs take toune or ony socours come to our enemyes, For on my god Machomete, he that first shall entre

[3] fol. 82 b.

and promises the first man that enters the city his weight in silver.

[3]the toune, I shall gyue hym hys pesaunnt or weyght of sylu*er* in suche estate as he entre in to it.' Who thenne had see them assaylle & cleme vp to the

They attack vigorously, and are pelted with logs of wood, burning oil, molten lead, quick lime, sulphur, and brimstone on fire,

walles, and putte them self in parellous passage, he shuld haue be meruaylled. But they that were vpon the walles within, fourth cast on them [4]grete logges of wode, brennyng oyle, lede molten / tonnes & barels full of vnquynched lyme, and vesselles full of flaxe grecyd with oyle and mixtyouned with brymstone and sulfer, al ardaunt & brennyng / so that magre them

and are obliged to retire,

they were fayn to relenquysshe the place, and to remounte at another syde of the wall: and there

[1] Fr. *pavilliers.* [2] Fr. *gros canons et d'esprin gallez.*
[4] Fr. *pierres, pieux agus, huilles chaudes, plong fondu, poinsons plains de chaulx vive, tonneaux plains destouppes engressées et ensouffrées tous ardens.*

abode many paynemys al brent and sore hurt. And thanne the Sawdan made thassawte to be strengthed *with* new folke / but they *with*in forth deffended them ful valyauntly as preu & hardy. Also they were more vygourous of herte, for that they knew theire soco*ur*s com*m*yyng, that was nygh. Here I shall leue of þis matere / and shal say how Vryan dide, whiche had sent hys espyes to knowe how it was of the siege / And they reported to hym how the saudan gaaf grete & contynuel sawtes to the Cite / and that *with*out shortly it were socoured, they were *with*in in grete daunger / and how the kynge was syke & sore wo*u*nded. Whan vryan and Guyon vnderstode these tydyng*es*, they were *with*in them self wel angry and fylled *with* sorowe / but no grete semblau*n*t they made of it, to thende theire folke shuld not be of lesse courage therfore. /

many burnt and hurt. The Sultan renews the assault, but the townsfolk, knowing of the soccours, fight vigorously.

Urian's spies tell of the assault on Famagosse, and the sore need of the King of Cyprus,

at which he sorrows, but dissembles his grief.

Cap. XXII. How the Sawdan was slayn byfore Famagoce.[1]

[2] In this parte sayth thystorye, that whan Vry*a*n herde the tydynges forsaid, he made to sowne his trompettes, and made thoost to be armed, and departed it in foure bataylles; wherof of the first batayH he hymself was conduct*o*ur, hys brother lede the seconde, the maister of Rodes was Chieftayn of the iii^de^; And the foureth was conduyted & lede by the Captayn of Lymas. And he made to abyde in the valey aH the som*m*age, and mad it to be kept *with* a houndred men of armes and fyfty cros bowemen. And after they bygane to mounte the hille, And fro thens they sawe how the paynemes assaylled moche strongly the Cite. And then*n*e Vry*a*n said to his folke / 'Lordes, that folke is of grete nombre / but no doubte they be oures /

[2] fol. 83.

Urian sounds to arms, and marches his host in four battalions,

leaving the baggage with a guard in the valley.

At the hill they see the battle, and the great number of the pagans.

[1] Famagusta (named by Augustus after the battle of Actium, Fama Augusta), on the west coast of Cyprus, south of the ancient Salamis, the only harbour in the island.

Urian encourages them to expect victory.

and god before they shalbe dyscomfyted by vs / and that right soone. goo we thenne ayenst theire oost / and so fourth without dylayeng to them that sawten the Cite. [1]and I wene with goddis grace that they shal not endure long ayenst vs.' And they answerd, 'that good it was for to doo soo.' Thenne he wold descende the mountayne and haue passed at back syde of the oost; but whan they supposed to haue passed fourth, the paynemes perceyued that they were not of theire folke / they cryed alarme and were sore aferd. Thanne sayd Vryan to the Captayn, that with all his batail he shuld entre thoost to fight ayenst them that were there. There bygan a mortal medlee, And Vryan and the other two bataylles yede ferther, & putte them self atwix the watche & them that assaylled the Cite / and so long they sawted, that alle they that kepte theire lodgis and of þeire watche were slayn and dystroyed, and incontynent all the foure bataylles in fayre ordynaunce marched fourth toward the other that strongly assaylled. But one came to the sawdan, and said to hym how the tentes & pauyllons were take, and alle they that kepte them slayn / 'and they that haue doon þat faytte, ye may see them commyng hitherward, the moost strong and fell folke that euer I sawe ne herde speke of.' The saudan thanne loked abacke, and sawe baners & standarts and hys enmyes commyng in fayre ordynaunce / and so nygh togider that they semed not in nombre to be as moche by the half as they were. Thenne was the Saudan abasshed and wood angry / and made to sowne hys trompette to withdrawe & assemble his folke togider. But or they were half assembled, Vryan came first with hys batayll / and with a grete courage ran vpon them moche asprely, And þer began thoccysyon & slaghter moche grete / but for certayn the gretest losse tourned on the paynemes, For [2]they had no leser for to putte them self in aray of baytaylle, and

[1] fol. 88 b.

They march forward; the paynims at first take them for friends, but recognising them, are sore afraid.

Urian's battalion enters the fight; two other battalions march forward between the enemy's watch and the city.

At last all four battalions march together against the enemy.

The Sultan learns that his camp is captured,

and sees the forces marching against him;

becomes angry, sounds for his warriors to retire.

But Urian's battalion falls on them before they have time to do so,

[2] fol. 84.

were sore wery of thassawte / & none of them were vnder his banere whan Vryan and his folke ranne vpon them, whiche were aspre & harde and full wel wyst the crafte of armes, wherfore many of the paynemes putte them self to flight. But the sawdan, that was ful of grete courage & of grete vasselage, realyed his folke about hym, & delyuered & gaf ryght a grete sawte to our folke moche proudly. There were many men slayn & sore wounded / and made hym self to be redoubted and dradde, For he held a two handes ax / and smote with at lyfte syde and at the ryght syde that none myght susteyne hys strokes that were about hym. But whan Vryan perceyued hym þat so sore demened his folke, he was full woo, and said in hymself, 'By my feyth, it is grete pyte & dommage that yonder Turcke byleueth nat on god, For he is moche preu & valyaunt of his hand; but for the dommage that I see he doeth on my folke, I ne haue cause to forbere hym ony more / and also we be not in place where grete & many wordes may be holden.' Thenne he braundysshed hys swerd and with a fyers contenaunce rane vpon the Saudan / And whan he sawe hym commyng he refused hym not, but toke his ax and wende to haue smyten vryan withal vpon the crosse of the heed / but Vryan eschiewed the stroke; the ax was pesaunt and heuy, and with that vayne stroke it scaped fro the Saudans handes. And thanne Vryan smote hym vpon the helmet a grete stroke with all his might / and was the sawdan so sore charged with that stroke that he was so astonyed and amased that he neyther sawe nor herde, and lost the brydel and the steropes, and the hors bare hym where he wold. And Vryan [1]pursiewed hym nygh, and yet agayn atteyned hym with his trenchaunt swerde betwix the heed & the sholders, For his helmet was all vnlaced and his hawtepyece fell of with the forsaid stroke, wherfore with his second stroke vryan made hys swerde

kills many of them, and puts others to flight.

The courageous Sultan rallies his people, and assaults the Christian folk severely.

Urian seeing the bravery of the Sultan,

regrets he believes not in God;

but because of the damage he is doing,

rides against him,

stuns him,

[1] fol. 84 b.

and with a second blow wounds him so that he falls from his horse.

to entre in the sawdants flesshe, in so much that he detrenched & cutte the two maister vaynes of his nek, and fell doune fro hys hors to the erthe. And there was so grete prees of horses of one parte and of other, that the stoure of batayll was there so aspre and so mortall that hys folke might not help hym / and lost so moche of hys blood that he most there deye in grete dystres & sorowe / And soone after that the paynemes knew that the saudan was deed they were affrayed and moche abasshed, and neuer aftir they fought with no good herte. Thanne Vryan and his brother Guyon esprouued themself there, & faught so strongly, gyuyng grete & pesaunt strokes, that wonder it was to see. And wete it wel þat bothe Cypryens & Poytevyns dide so valyauntly that in short space of tyme they dystroyed theyre enmyes, whiche were all slayn or take. And thenne Vryan & his folke lodged them self in the paynems lodgys / and was the sommage of the cristen sent fore / and the gardes and kepers of it, fayne & glad of the vyctory, came & brought it in to thoost and lodged there / And the two brethern made the Butyn or conqueste to departe & deele so egaly after euery man had deseruyd & was worthy, þat none there was but he was full of Joye & content of it / And here resteth thystorye of Vryan / and shal speke of the capytayne of Lymas,[1] that soone came to Famagoce.

At length the Sultan dies from loss of blood.

Urian, Guion and their followers fight so well

that in a short time they take or slay all their enemies.

After the battle they lodge in the pagans' camp,

where the brethren fairly divide the booty.

In this parte telleth vs thistorye that after þe dyscomfyture of the batayll the Captayne [2]departed fro the two brethern, with hym xxx knightes of grete affayre, and came to the Cite, where the yates were opend to hym gladly, and entred and found the folke by the stretes, of whiche some made grete feeste, for þat they sawe them delyuered of theire enemyes, and blessid the heure that euer the children of Lusignen were borne, and the heure also whan they entred the

[2] fol. 85.

The Captain of Lymas and thirty knights leave the brethren and go to the city, where they are received gladly,

[1] Fr. *Lymasson* :—Limassol, on S. coast of Cyprus.

land. And some folke made grete sorowe, grete wepynges, sore lawmentyng', and grete bewaylling', for theire kynge þat was wounded to the deth. Wherfore he wyst not what to thinke, For he knew not yet the kyng was hurt. And so moche he exployted that he came to the palleys, and there he alighted, where he found the peuple wel mate[1] / and he demanded of them what they ayled, and yf they wanted of eny thing. 'By my feyth,' said one of them, 'ye / and that ynough̅; For we lese the moost true & valyaunt man that euer was borne in this royalme.' 'How thanne,' said the Captayn, 'is the kynge syke?' 'Ha / a! sire,' ansuered to hym a knight, 'knowe you no more of it? We dide yssue yesterday, and enuahysshed our enmyes / and at retourne of it the sawdan smote our king with a venymous darte, by so that no remedye nys founde therto / For we supposed euer that these two damoyseaulx had come to our ayde & help at that day, And wete it that the kingis doughtir demeneth suche heuynes & sorowe, that grete pyte it is to see, For almost two dayes are passed that she ete no manere of mete / woo & euylhap shalbe to vs yf we lese both̅ our king & our damoyselle & lady, For yf that happed the land were in grete orphanite of bothe lord & of lady.' 'Fayre lordes,' said the Captayne, 'a‖ is not yet lost that lyeth in pare‖. Haue lost[2] in our lord Jhesu Criste, and he shall helpe you. I pray you lede me toward the king.' 'By my feyth' / said [3]the knight, 'that sha‖ soone be doo, For he lyth in the next chambre, where euery man may goo as he had no harme / He hath alredy made hys testament, & hath ordeyned & bequethed of hys owne good to his seruaunts, so that euery one is content / and he is confessed & hath receyued our lord, and he is admynystred of a‖ his rightes & sacrements.' 'By my feyth,' said the Cap-

but find the folk weeping.

The Captain of Lymas proceeds to the palace,

where he learns that the King has been mortally wounded by a poisoned dart.

and that the King's daughter is sore depressed and will not eat.

The Captain asks an audience with the King,

[3] fol. 85 b.

who lies in the next chamber. It is granted.

[1] Fr. *mat.* [2] Fr. *fiance.*

tayne, 'he is thanne in good cass / and he hath doon as a wyse man oughte to doo' / And thenne he entred in to the Chambre & enclyned hym self byfore the kyng that leye on his beed, and made to hym the reuerence. 4

On entering, the Captain makes his reverences, and is welcomed by the King.

'Captayne,' said the kinge, 'ye be right welcome / and I thanke you of the good diligence that ye haue doo to haue accompanyed these two noble men by whome my land is out of the subgection of the paynemes, For I had no more puyssaunce to gouerne my folke ne my land / I pray you that ye goo & telle them on my behalf that þey vouchesaaf to come & see me or I be deed, For grete wylle I haue to make satisfaction to them to my power of the loue & curtoysye that they haue shewed to me; And also I haue grete desyre to see & speke with them, for certayn cass whiche I wyl declare vnto them.' 'My lord,' said the Captayne, 'gladly I shall doo your commandement.' 'Now gooth thenne,' said the kynge, '& lete hem be to morne with me by the houre of pryme.' The kinge thanne commanded that the grete strete where they shuld passe shuld be hanged richely vnto the paleys, and dyde doo make grete appareyl ayenst theire commyng. And here resteth thistory to speke of the king / and retourneth to saye of the Captayne. 24

8

who asks him to bring Urian and Guiom, as he desires to reward them for the help they have given him.

12

16

The Captain promises to bring them,

20

and the King has the great street of the city decorated.

Thistorye saith that so fast rode the Captayne that soone he came to the oost, and alighted at the [1]tente of the two brethern, that moche humbly receyued hym. And thenne he recounted to them how the king was sore hurt / and that affectuelly he prayed them that they vouchesaaf to come toward hym, so that he might thanke them of the noble socours that they had doon to hym, and to make satisfaction to them of theyre peyne & dyspens to his power, and also for to speke with them of other matere. 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'we are not come hither for to take sawdees[2]

[1] fol. 86.

28

The Captain relates his news to the brethren,

32

and tells how the King wishes to reward them.

Urian protests

[2] Fr. *souldoier pour argent.*

ne for no syluer / but only to susteyne & enhaunse the catholiq*ue* feyth. And we wol wel þ*at* eu*ery* man knowe that we haue hauoyr & sylu*er* ynough̃ for to pay *our* folke / but alway we right gladly shall̃ goo toward hym. And wete it that I purpose to goo toward the king in suche a state as I departed fro the batayll̃; For yf he vouchesaaf I wyl receyue of hym the ordre of knighthode for the valyaunce & hono*ur* that eu*ery* man sayth of hym. And ye, Captayn, ye may goo and telle hym that to morn*e* at that houre he hath poynted bothe my brother and I and the maister of Rodes, god before, we shal be toward hym, and a houndred of *our* moost high barons *with* vs.' Thenne toke leue the Captayne and came to the Cite, where he was receyued moch̃ honourably / and soone he came to the paleys, where he fonde the kynge in also good poynte as he lefte hym. And there was his doughter Ermyne, that was full̃ of sorowe for the euyl of her fader / but that notwithstanding she recomforted her self moche of this that men said to her, that the two damoyscaulx shuld come there. And wete it that she moche desyred to see Uryan. And thenne the Captayne salued the kyng. 'Ye be right welcom*me*,' said the kinge / 'what tydinge*s* bryng you of youre [1]message / shal I not see that two gentil damoysea*ulx*?' 'Sire, ye,' said the Captayne / 'they and houndred more *with* them / and playse you to knowe that they wil haue no recompense of you / For as they saye they be not sawdyours for silu*er* / but þey name them self sawdyours of *our* lord Jeshu criste. And so moche, sire, hath told me Uryan / that to morn*e*, god before, or it be fullysshe pryme, he shal come toward you in suche a poynt & state as he came fro the baytaylle; For he wyl receyue thordre of cheualrye and to be dowbed knight of yo*ur* hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'I lawde *our* lord Jeshu-Criste, whan before my dayes be termyned, it playseth

that his only desire is to support the Catholic faith,

and that he has treasure enough;

he will however go to the King to be knighted.

The Captain returns to the King, who is still alive and pleased to see him,

as is his daughter, when she learns that the brethren are coming to the city

[1] fol. 86 b.

The Captain delivers his message,

for which the King thanks his Saviour.

hym that I make & dowbe knight one so valyaunt & hye prynce / and wete it I shal therfore deye betre at ease.' And whan Ermyne herd of these tydinges she had so grete joye therfore in her herte, that she coulde not holde her coutenaunce ne maners / but therof she made no grete semblaunt, but shewed to haue grete sorowe woo in her herte. She toke thenne leue of her fader / and sore weping kyssed hym moche swetly / and she went into her chambre / and there she bygan to bewaylle her self sore / one houre for the doulour & woo that she had for her fader / and another houre for the grete joye & desyre that she had of the sight of Vryan, whos taryeng enjoyed her moche / & moche long she was in thoughte so argued and vexed therwith all, that all that night she coude not slepe /

Ermine rejoices at the news,

she kisses her father, and retires to her room, where she weeps for his wound,

and also for the joy of being about to see the brethren.

In this parte saith thistory, that on the morne erly the king commanded that all noble and vnnoble shuld make theire houses to be appareylled [1] & hanged without forth euery one after his power, for to make feste & honour at the commyng of the two brethern and of theyre folke / and that at euery corner of a strete shuld be trompettes and other dyuerse Instruments of musyque making grete melodye / And for certayn the peuple endeuoyred them self wel / ye / more than the kynge had commanded to be doo. What shuld I make long prologue / the two brethern within pryme came mounted moche nobly vpon two grete coursers / and Vryan was al armed, euen so as whan he came fro the batayll, the swerd naked in his fyst. And Guyon, hys brother, had on a gown of fyn clothe of damaske, rychely fourred / and byfore them rode thretty of the moost hye barons in noble aray / and nygh to them was the maister of Rodes and the Captayn of Lymas. And after the two bretheren came & folowed nygh thre score & ten knightes and their squyers & pages in her companye / and in fayre aray they entred in to the

[1] fol. 87.

The King commands the inhabitants of the city to decorate their houses, and arranges for music in the streets.

Before prime (6 A.M.) the brethren on two coursers arrive with many of their men. Urian armed as he was at the battle, and Guion in a richly furred damask cloth gown.

Cyte. There had ye seen the feste begynne moch̄ grete / and the trompettes & menestrels dooyng' theire crafte / And thrugh the stretes had ye sene folke of grete honour that were moche wel and richely clothed, whiche cryed with a hye voys / 'ha / a welcomme be ye, prynce vyctoryous, of whom we hold and are all̄ suscited of the cruel seruytude & boundage of thenemyes of our lord Jeshu Cryst.' There had ye see ladyes & damoyselles at wyndowes in grete nombre / and thauncyent gentylman & burgeys were merueylled of the grete fyerste of the noble Vryan, that was al armed, the vysage dyscouered / a grene garland on his hed, an the swerd in his fyst. And the captain bare byfore hym hys helmet on a tronchon of a spere. And whan they perceyued his fyers visage [1]they said betwene them self togidre / 'that man is able and shappen for to subdue & putte vndre hym all̄ the world.' 'By my feyth,' said the other, 'he sheweth it wel, For he is entred into this toune lyke as he had conquerd it.' 'In name of god,' said other / 'the rescue of the daunger of whiche he hath kept vs fro is worth & ynough̄ for a conqueste.' 'Certaynly,' said other, 'thaugh his brother hath not so fyers a face, yet he semeth to be man of wele & of faytte.' And so talkyng of one thing & of other they conueyed þem vnto the paleys, where they alighted. And here resteth thystorye to speke ony more of the peuple / and bygynneth to speke how the two brethern came byfore the king /

The welcome is great, what with music,

shouting, decorations, and the press of people.

The townsfolk are surprised at Urian's fierceness,

[1] fol. 87 b.

and say he is able to subdue all the world.

At length the brethren arrive at the palace, where they alight.

Cap. XXIII. How Vryan & Guyon came byfore the kinge, he beying in his bed syke.

[2]Thystorye sayth now that the two breþern moche honourably came & made the reuerens to the kinge / and the kinge receyued them joyously / and thanked them moche gracyously of theire ayde & socours/

[2] fol. 88.

They make reverence to the King, who thanks them for the aid they have given him,

and said to them / that after god / they were they by whom he & al his reaume was suscited fro the moost cruel passage, & more fel þan eny deth, For yf they had not be, the paynemys had dystroyed them all / or had constrayned to be conuerted to theire fals lawe, whiche had be to vs wers & heuyer than ony deth corporall. For they that to it had consented with herte, they had had for euermore dampnacion eternel / 'And therefore,' said the kyng, 'it is rayson that I rewarde you to my power, For I haue none other wylle than to endeuoyre me þerto / how be it certayn that I may not acomplysshe to the regarde of the grete honour that ye haue me shewed / but lowly & humbly I beseche you to take in worthe my lytil puyssaunce.' 'By my feyth,' said Vryan, 'of this ye ought not to doubte / For we be not come hither neyther to haue of you gold nor syluer / ne of your tounes, castels, ne landes / but only to seke honour and for to dystroye thenemyes of god, and to exalte the feyth catholical / and I wil, sire, that ye knowe that we hold our peyne wel employed, yf ye vouchesaaf to doo vs so moche of honour that ye wyl dowbe my brother & me knightes of your hand.' 'By my feyth,' said the king, 'noble damoyseaulx, in asmoche as I am not worthy to acomplysshe your requeste, I consent to it / but first shall the masse be said.' 'Sire,' said Vryan, 'tha me semyth wel doon.' And thanne the chapellayne [1]was soone redy. And thenne Vryan, hys brother, and all other deuoutly herde the messe & the seruyse deuyne, And after the deuyne seruyse Vryan came tofore the king. And thenne he drew the swerde out of the shede & kneled doun byfore the kyng, where he laye, and sayd to hym in this manere: 'Sire, I requyre you, for alle the salary of my seruyce that I haue doo or may doo in tyme to come, that ye vouchesaf to dowbe me knight with this swerde / and so shall ye haue wel

and says they have saved his people from being either slain or perverted,

and so he owes them a great reward.

Urian replies that he wants none,

as he desires only honour, and that the Catholic faith may be strengthened, and says he would consider himself well repaid if he and his brother were dubbed knights.

The King consents and orders mass to be said;

[1] fol. 88 b.

this done, Urian kneels before the King,

asking as his reward the honour of knighthood for himself and brother.

rewarded me of all that ye say that my brother & I haue doo for you and for your realme; For of the hand of a more valyaunt knyght and noble lord, I ne may receyue the ordre of knighthede / than of yours.' 'By my feyth,' said the kinge / 'damoyseau, ye shew me more honour than ye owe me / and ye say moche more of me than euer I deserued. but sene I considered that grete honour is to me to dowbe you knight, I am agreable therto / but after that I haue acomplysshed your requeste, ye shall couuenaunt with me yf it playse you to graunte me a yefte, the whiche shal not tourne you neyther to preiudice ne dommage, but only to your ryght grete prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said Uryan, 'I am redy therto to acomplysshe your wille & playsire.' Thenne had the kynge grete joye, and dressyng hym to sytte vp, and toke the swerde by the pomel that Uryan toke hym, and therwith dowbed hym knyght, sayeng, in this manere / 'In the name of god, I adoube you & admytte you into thordre of a knyght, prayeng god to putte from you all euyll.' And penne gaf hym the swerd ayen, and thus makyng his wounde opend, and out of it ranne blood thrugh [1]the wraper, wherof Vryan was sory & woo, and so were all other that sawe hym; but thenne the kyng layed hym self ayen along in his bed sodaynly, and said he felt none euyll. And after he commanded two knightes that they shuld fetche hys doughter / and they dide soo / and brought her at mandement of her fader. And whan the kyng sawe her, he said thus / 'My doughter thank & remercye these noble men of thayde and socoure that they haue doon to me & to you bothe, and also to all our realme, For yf had not be the grace of god & theire strengthe & puyssaunce we had be all dystroyed, or at leste exilled out of our land / or ellis vs to haue be conuertid to theire fals lawe that had be wers and more importable to vs than to suffre deth

Before knighting him the King gets Urian to promise to give him a gift, the giving of which will not impoverish Urian;

then in the name of God, the King dubs Urian knight.

The exertion opens the King's wound,

[1] fol. 89.

but he is eased by laying down;

then he sends for Hermine,

and bids her thank the brethren;

temporall' / And thenne she kneled byfore the two bretheren & salued them, & thanked moche humbly And wete it that she was in suche manere commouyd[2] as she had be rauysshed, and wyst not how to hold contenaunce, what for the woo & sorowe that she had at her herte of thanguysshe that her fader felt / as of the thoughtes that she toke for Uryan, in so moche that she was as a personne that is awaked newly fro her dreme. But thenne vryan, that wel perceyued that she had her spiryte troubled, toke her vp ryght swetely, and enclyned hymself byfore her, makyng moche reuerence eche of them to other / and where as they of the countre said / 'yf this noble man had take oure damoyselle to his lady wel it shuld come to passe, For thenne we shuld drede neyther payneme nor man that wold doo vs hurt.' And thenne called the kyng his doughtir, and to her said thus: 'My doughtir, sette you here [1]by me, For I deme that ye shall not long hold me company.' And she thanne wepyng satte herself by hym. And thanne all they that were there bygan to sorowe & wepe for the pyte they had of the kyng, And also of the sorow that they sawe the virgyne, his doughter, made so pitously.

which she does much humbly,

and is overcome by her feelings of sorrow for her father and love for Urian.

Urian seeing her emotion, raises her,

and bows to her.

The people say that were Urian to marry their lady, they would have no fear for the pagans.

[1] fol. 89 *b*.

The King tells of his approaching end,

Thystory telleth vs that the kyng was sorowfull whan he sawe hys doughter take such heuynes, and thenne he said amyably: 'My doughtir, lete be your heuynes and your grete doulour that ye take, I pray you, For that thing that may not be amended it is folye to make therof grete sorowe / notwithstandyng it is raison naturel that euerychе creature be sorowfull for hys frend & neyghbour whan that he lesith hym. but, and it playse god, I shal puruey for you so that ye shal hold you content, or I departe fro this mortal world, and so shall all the baronye of my realme' / And thenne bygan the mayde to wepe more

and seeing his daughter's grief tries to console her,

by promising to provide for her.

Fr. *esmeue*.

haboundauntly than she dide to fore, And also all the barons demened suche woo & sorowe that it was pytous for to see / but vryan and guyon were sorowfullest of all. and the kyng perceyuyng[g] theire doulour, he said to them: 'Fayre doughter, and you, vryan and guyon, this sorowe is not necessary to you, For therwith I preuaylle not nor you neyther in no manere / but it augmenteth my doulour, wherfore I you commaunde that ye cesse of this heuynes yf ye loue me, and to haue me yet with you here alyue a lytil space of tyme.' And thenne they bygan to cesse theyre doulour in theire best manere, for the wordes that the kyng[g] to them said. And ouer that spake the kynge hym self dressyng to vryan, and thus said: 'Sire knyght, thankyng be to you, ye cōuenaunted with me a yefte whiche I purpose now to take / and þat shal neyther touche your cheuaunce nor honour.' 'By [1]my feyth,' sayd Vryan, 'demande what it playse you, For yf it be of that thing wherof I haue power I shal fulfyll it voluntarily.' 'Gramercy sire,' sayd the kynge, 'wete it that by this that I shal demaude of you, shal retourne to you a noble thing[g]. Now, sire knight, I pray you that it may playse you to take my doughter in maryage, and all my royalme with her / And fro this tyme fourth I gyue you full possessyon therof to doo therwith your prouffyt' / And wel veray & trouth it is that he had doo brought there the crowne / and with these wordes he took it, & said / 'hold, Vryan, ne reffuse not my requeste that I desyre of you.' Thenne were the barons of the land so joyous that teeris fel fro theire eyen for pyte & joye that they had therof. And whan Vryan vnderstode these wordes, he called a lytel remembraunce / and wete it wel he was sorowfull & dolaunt therof. For he was wyllyng to seke the straunge countrees of the world and poursiewe for honour. But alwayes for as moche as he was accorded with the kynge

Hermine's sorrow causes her to weep more, and all the Barons sympathise with her.

But the King tells them all

that their sorrow will not avail, and that it increases his pain,

and so they become calm.

The King reminds Urian of the promised gift,

[1] fol. 90.

who says he is ready to fulfil his promise.

The King then asks Urian to take his daughter in marriage, and his kingdom in fee.

Urian wishing to see more of the world, hesitates.

of the yefte, he wold not gaynsaye it / And whan the barons sawe hym so pensefull they cryed al with a hye voyce ryght pyteously / 'ha / a then, noble man, wilt thou reffuse the kinges requeste?' 'By my feyth, lordes & barons,' said Uryan, 'no more shal I doo.' Thenne enclyned Uryan byfore the kyng wher he laye, and toke the croune and putte it in Ermynes lap, sayeng / 'Damoyselle, it is your, and sith it hath fortuned thus with me, I shall you helpe to kepe it my lyf naturel, yf it playse god ayenst al them that wold vsurpe it or putte it in subgection.' Thenne was the kinge joyful and glad, & so were al the barons. And after he dide make come the archebysshop of the Cite that asuryd them togidre. But Ermyne [1]said she wold see first the termynacion of her faders syknes or she shuld procide ony ferther. Thanne said Vryan, 'damoyselle, sith that it playseth you to doo so I am agreable therto.' Thenne was the kyng woofull & dolaust, and said: 'Fayre doughter Ermyne, ye shew wel þat lytel ye loue me, whan that thinge which I desire moost to see afore myn ende ye ne wyl acomplysshe. Now wel I see that ye desyre my deth.' Whan þe mayde vnderstode hym she was ryght dolaunt & sorowfull / and wepyng kneeled byfore the king, hir fader, and said in this manere: 'My right redoubted lord & fader / there nys thing in the world that I shuld reffuse you vnto myn owne deth / commande you me your playsire.' 'Ye say now,' said the king, 'as a true doughtir ought to say, that is wylling for to kepe her fader from wrathe & fyre. I now thanne commande you that ye leue your sorowe, and lete this halle to be dressid and with ryche clothes hanged, and make the masse to be said / and aftir the deuyne seruise do make the tables to be couered, and after dyner make here byfore me the feste as that I were now on my feet; For wete it wel / that shal helpe & comforte me wel.' And thenne they all

The Baron asks him if he refuses the gift?

He replies, no;

and takes the crown and puts it in Hermine's lap.

which gladdens the King and Barons.

[1] fol. 99 b.

Hermine says she will see the end of her father's sickness before proceeding further;

but the King upbraids her as desiring his death,

upon which she kneels at the King's feet, and promises to obey him.

The King bids her leave her sorrow and decorate the hall of the palace,

and prepare a feast.

endeuoyred them self to fulfyll this that he commanded. Thenne was the masse said, and sate them self at dyner / & Ermyne was sette at a table that was layed byfore her faders bedd / and Vryan with her, And Guyon serued Ermyne of mete. Thanne had the king grete joye, but he made betre semblaunt than his herte was of power, For certayn what chere that he made he felt grete peyne & grete dolour, For the venym that was within the wounde caused grete putrefyeng & rotyng of his flesshe / but for to rejoye the baronnye he made no semblaunt of no sorow ne [1]douleur / and after dyner bygan the feest, and lasted til nyght came. The king thanne called to hym vryan, and said, 'Fayre sone, I wyl ye wedde my doughter to morne, and I wyl delyuere vnto you the Crowne and Ceptre of this realme, For wete it I may not long be alyue. Wherfore I wil that alle the barons of þis land make theire homage to you byfore my deth.' 'Sire,' said vryan, 'sith that playseth you / your wylle & myne be one' / And there was Ermyne present þat refussed not to fulfylle her faders wyll.

After mass the company dine,

which pleases the King,

though he is in great pain from his wound.

[1] fol. 91.

The feast over, the King tells Urian that he wishes him to marry Hermine the next day, and to have the Barons make homage to him.

Cap. XXIV. How Vryan espoused Ermyne, doughter vnto the kinge of Cypre.

ON the morne next, about the hooure of tierce, was the spouse appareylled & rychely arayed, and the chappell nobly hanged with riche cloth of gold, And the Archebysshop of Famagoce espoused them there. And after came Vryan before the kyng [2]that toke the Crowne, and ther withall crouned vryan, that moche of thankes rendred to the kynge therfore. Thenne called the king to hym all the barons of þe lande / and commanded them to make theire hommage to kyng Vryan, his sone / and they voluntarily dide soo. And the masse than bygan, and after it was doo they satte

In the morning

the marriage takes place,

[2] fol. 91 b.

Urian is crowned,

and the Barons of the land render homage to him.

A great feast is given,

at dyner / and syn bygan the feste right grete, and endured tyl euen / and after souper begane ayen the feste / and whan tyme was the spouse was lede to bed / and anone aftir Vryan layed hym self by her / and the bysshop came & halowed the bed / And so thenne aH departed / some went to bed / and some retourned ayen for to daunce. And Vryan laye with his wyf, and her acqueyntaunce toke curtoysly & wel / And on the morne they came ayen tofore the kynge / the masse anoone was bygone. And thither was the queene conueyed & lede of guyon her brother, and by one of the moost highe barons of the lande.

after which the espoused retire.

Urien and the Barons from Poitou visit the King.

In this parte sheweth vs thistorye, that on þe next morne after about the hooure of pryme, kyng vryan acompanyed with the baronnye of poytou and of the royalme of Cipre, came byfore the king and enclyned hym self & salued hym right humbly. 'Fayre sone, ye be welcome,' said the kyng. 'I am fuH joyous of your commyng / make my doughter to come, so shul we here the deuyne seruyse.' Thenne came his doughtir Ermyne, wel nobly acompanyed of many ladyes & damoyselles / and she come byfore her fader & salued hym full humbly. Thenne said he to her: 'My wel beloued doughter, ye be welcome. I am right wel joyous whan god hath don to me suche a grace, that I have purueyed you of so hye a prynce & worthy knyght to your lord / and wete it that therfore I shal dey more easely sith that you and al my land is out [1]of the daunger of the paynemes, and no doubte ye haue to your protection and wraunt a prynce worthy & valyaunt, that right wel shal kepe and defende you ayenst aH your euyl willers, and in especial anenst thinfideles & enemys of Ieshucrist.' And with that worde the Chapelayn bygan the masse. And whan the masse was celebred & said, the kyng callid to hym Vryan & Ermyne, & to them said in this manere: 'My fayre

who welcomes them.

The King tells his daughter that he will die more easily,

[1] fol. 92.

having married her to a valiant prince.

Mass is said,

children, ryght affettuously I pray you that ye thinke to loue, kepe, and honoure wel eche other / and to hold & bere good feyth one to other, For nomore I may hold you companye. Now thanne I recommande you to the blysfull kyng of heuen, prayeng hym deuoutely that he gyue you peas & loue togidre, and honourable lyf & long.' And with these or semblable wordes he shette hys eyen and departed fro this mortal lyf so swetly that they supposed that he had be aslepe / But whan they were certayn of his deth the douleur & sorowe bygan to be grete. Thenne was Ermyne had in to her Chambre, For she demened such sorowe that grete pite it was to see. The kynge thenne was buryed and his obsequyes doon ryally, and in the moost honourable guyse that coude be deuysed after the vse and custome of the land. And wete it that all the peple was sorowfull & dolaunt; but they took comfort of this, that they had founde & recouered a lord ful of so grete prowesse as Vryan was / and lytel & lytil cessed the lawmenting & heuynes. And soone after yede Vryan thrugh al his realme to see and visite the places & fortres / and betoke one part of his folke to Guyon, his brother / and another part to the maister of Rodes, and made them to be shipped on the see, for to wete & knowe, for to here & knowe yf they shuld here ony tydynges that paynemes were on the see for to lande in his lande. 'For wete it wel,' said the king vryan, 'that we purpose ne think not to abyde [1] vnto tyme they fetche vs, For we shall & god before goo & vysyte them within short tyme, after that we haue ouerseen the rule & gouernaunce of our land.' And forasmoch departed Guyon & the maister of Rodes, & rowed on the see with thre thousand fyghting men. And here leueth thistorye of them / and bygynneth to shewe how Vryan & Ermyne went and vysited theire land.

the dying King gives his blessing to his children,

and then departs this mortal life in peace.

Great sorrow is felt by all, especially by Hermine.

The King is buried,

and the people seeing the bravery of their new lord, cease their lamenting.

Urian visits the towns of his realm,

and sends some of his men to learn tidings of the pagans.

[1] fol. 92 b.

Urian and his wife are well received in their land,

Thystory saith that king Vryan, *with* Ermyne hys wyf, yede & vysited theire land al about, and full gladly & honourably they were receyued in *euery* burghe, toune, & Cite where they passed / and grete yeftes were *presented* to them / And wete it that Vryan purueyed ryght wel to all hys fortres, of all suche thinges that were necessary for the werre yf some thing befell in tyme to come. And for trouth *euery* one was *mer*uaylled of his heyght, of his fyersnes, & of his puyssaunce & strengthe of body. And wel said the men of the Countree, that ferdfull & daungerous thing was to cause his wrath & anger. And thus went Vrian fro place to place thrughe his royalme. And suche officers that made rayson & kept justice, he lefte them in their offices stil / but to al o*per* that o*per*wyse dide than right requyreth, he purueyed of remede by good & meure deliberacion of his counseill. And *com*manded *euery* one to make raison & Justice in al tymes, as wel to the leste as to the moost, without to bere eny fauour to ony of eyther partye / and yf they contrary did to this hys wyll, he shuld punyssh them so cruelly that al other shuld take ensample therby. And thene he, his lady, & his folke retourned to Famagoce / and the quene was grete *with* child / And now resteth thystorye of them, and speketh of Guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that rowed on the see by the Costes of Surye, of Damask, of Baruth, of Tupple, & of Danette, for to knowe yf paynemes were on the see or not.

and his subjects marvel at his strength.

He reappoints honest officers,

and commands Justice to be well kept.

Afterwards the King and Queen return to Famagoce.

[1] fol. 93.

Guion and the Master of Rhodes searching on the sea for the pagans,

[1] Now saith thistorye, that so long sailled & rowed the Crystens on the see, that they sawe aprouch as of a leghe nygh to them a certayn quantite of shippes, but by liklyhode they might not be grete *nom*bre. Thenne they sent a Galleye toward o*ur* folke that al redy were in ordyn*aun*ce to wete what they were / but the galey came so nygh that the cristens, o*ur* folke,

toke it / and by them knew and vnderstode almaner of tydynges. Oure folke thanne halid vp saylles hastly, and saylled anone toward theire enmys. And whan the paynemes perceyued them they were moch abasshed, and gretly aferd, and wend wel to haue withdraw them self in to the hauen of Baruth / but our galeyes aduaunced them, and ran vpon them by al sydes. There was grete occysion / and shortly to say the paynemes were dyscomfyted, and their nauye take / and all were cast ouerbord or slayne. And the nauye was full of grete goodes. And after our barons putte them self in the see ayen for to haue retourned in to Cypre. but by fortune & strengthe of wyndes they were cast to Cruly[1] in Armanye. And whan the king of Armanye, that was brother vnto the kinge of Cipre, knewe theire commyng, he sent anone for to wete what folke they were / And the master of Rodes said to them that came to wete what they wer: 'Telle the kyng that it is the brother of Vryan of Lusynen, kyng of Cypre, that hath trauersed the see for to wete & knowe yf paynemes were on it in armes, for to haue come vpon the Cypryens for cause of the saudan that hath be dycomfyted & slayn, and al his folke at the grete batayll of Famagoce.' 'How,' said they of Armanye, 'is there ony other kyng in Cypre than our kingis brother?' 'By my feyth,' said the maister of Rodes, 'ye / For the king [2]was wounded with a dart enuenymed by the sawdans hand in so mortal a wyse that he is deed therof, and he beying yet alyue, he gaf his doughtir in maryage to Vrian of Lusynen, that slew the saudan & dyscomfyted all his folk.' Whan they thanne vnderstode hym, they yede & denounced it to theire kyng, which was sorowfull of the deth of his brother. but not withstandyng, he came toward the see syde with a grete company, and entred in to the vessell where

take a galley and learn the pagans' whereabouts.

They set out for the fight, and gain a victory,

and set sail for Cyprus;

but are driven by wind to Cruly in Armenia.

The King of the land sends to know who they are,

and is sent word that it is the brother of the King of Cyprus.

The King of Armenia asks if there is a new King in Cyprus,

and the Master of Rhodes relates how Urian became King there.

[1] *Truli* in Fr. ed. Afterwards spelt *Cruli*.

[2] fol. 23 b.

Guyon and the maister of Rodes were in. And whan guyon wyst of his commyng he went ayenst hym, and eche to oþer made grete reuerence. Thenne said the king to the grete Pryour of Rodes, 'Maister, sethen this yong damoyseau is brother vnto my nyghtis lord, I were vncurteys whan he is arryued in my land, yf I receyued hym not honourably as to hym apparteyneth. And of this I pray you, that ye vouchesaf to pray hym on my behalf, that it playse hym to come in to our paleys, and we shal doo to hym the best chere that we can.' 'By my feyth,' said the grete Pryour / 'that shal I doo gladly.' Thanne he spak therof to guyon, whiche ansuerd to hym right gladly, 'I wold doo a greter thinge yf it lay in my power for the kyngis sake. For good feyth & rayson requyreth it.' And thenne they went togider / and guyon lede with hym a fayre companye of knightes / but alwayes they had theire cotes of stele on þem, and were in right good aray, as folke vsed to the faytte of armes. And here speke I no more of þem, And shal speke of Florye the doughter of the kynge of Armanye. /

which courtesy is accepted.

The King of Armenia is a widower, whose heir is Flory.

Thistorye sayth that the kynge of Armanye had a doughter, and none other children / but here. [1]And the quene, his wyf, was deed / and wete it þat this kyng and the kyng of Cypre had to theire spouses the two susters that were doughters to the kyng of Malegres / and eche of them gate a doughtir on their wyues / of the whiche Ermyne that Vryan spoused was one / and that other was the pucelle florye of whome I haue bygonne to traytte. She was that tyme at Cruly ryght glad & joyous of the commyng of the straungers. She appareylled and arayed her self moche richely, and so dide all her damoyselles. Soone after came the kynge her fader / guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire felawship, and entred in to the toune, and came to the palleys in to the grete halle.

[1] fol. 94.

This lady was joyful at the visit of the strangers, and dressed herself and maids richly to receive them.

And thenne Florye, that moch desyred theire commyng, came there, and humbled herself moche ayenst her fader / and the kyng said to her, 'Cherysshe and doth feste to this noble men, & receyue them honourably / and in especiall the brother of my nyghtis lord & husband.' And whan the mayde vnderstode that, she was full glad & joyous. She thenne came to guyon / toke hym by the hand swetly, & sayd: 'Sire damoyseau, ye be right welcome in to my faders royalme.' 'Damoyselle,' sayd Guyon, 'gramercy to you.' There / bygan thenne the feest right grete & fayre / and wel they were festyed, & seruyd with dyuerse meetes & wynes / and betwix guyon & Florye were many honeste & gracyous talkyng. and wete it for certayn yf guyon had had leyser, he had dyscouered his thoughte to her. but while they were in that grete solace & joye, a galeye arryued to the port that came fro Rodes / and they that were within were receyued honourably of them of the toune / and joyful & right glad they were whan they knew that theire maister was there. Wherfore one of them said to the peuple there, 'Sires, vouchesauf to lede one of vs there [1]the lordes befor, to aduertyse them of paynemes that ben vpon the see in grete nombre.' Thanne was a knight brought there the maister of Rodes was / and said to hym, that paynemes with grete nauye were passed byfore the yle of Rodes / and had taken the wind & waye toward Cypre / and how men said that the Calyphe of Bandas with all hys puyssaunce & power was there. Whan the maister of Rodes vnderstode these tydynges, he went & told Guyon of it. Wherfore, guyon seeyng hym self as constrayned, humbly said to the pucelle, 'Damoyselle, right hertily I beseche you that ye vouchesaf, sethen I moste departe your presens, to call me ofte in your remembraunce / For as to my part, your vassall & seruaunt shal I euer be vnder the

She takes Guion by the hand, and welcomes him to the land.

A fair feast is served,

and Guion and Flory have much gracious speech together.

News comes from Rhodes

[1] fol. 94 b.

that the pagans are at sea,

with a great navy sailing towards Cyprus.

Guion, on learning this, bids Flory farewell,

and asks her not to forget him.

standart of your gouernance.' Florye thanne knowyng
The sudden parting makes her sad. for certayn his soudayn departyng, her herte was fylled
with dueyl & sorowe / how wel she kept contenaunce
in the best manere that she coude / and louyngly be- 4
held guyon, whiche toke his leue of her fader, that
conueyed hym to the see side, and grete peple with
hym. There thenne entred guyon in to his ship, and
Guion sets sail, commanded the sailles shuld be had vp to the wynde, 8
that was good & propyce to them. And wete that
watched by Flory from a high tower. Florye was mounted vp vnto the vppermost wyndowe
of an hye tour, and neuer departed thens tyl she lost
the sight of guyons vessel, prayeng god to preserue 12
hym from al daunger. /

The Caliph of Bandas and the King of Brandymount Thystorye recounteth & saith here that the Caliphe
of Bandas, and the kinge of Brandymount in
tharse, that was uncle to the saudan of Damaske, herde 16
tydynges how the sawdan was slayn, and al his folke
putte to grete dyscomfyture in the yle of Cypre. Wher-
resolve to avenge the slaughter of the Sultan. fore they beyng full sory therof assembled anone theire
power / and purposyng to auenge his deth entred theire 20
[1] fol. 96. shippes, and toke theire way toward Cypre / and [1]they
Thinking there was no King in Cyprus, they sail there, supposyng the Cypryens had be without king, hyed
them fast thitherward in suche manere that they shuld
not be perceyued where as they shuld arryue. but þey 24
but are seen, and Urian is warned, and prepares to receive them. of Rodes perceyued them, and made knowleche þerof
vnto kyng Vryan, that alredy had assembled his peple,
and putte them in aray for to receyue the batayll. and
morouer had made good ordonnaunce and gardes for the 28
portes, that assoone as they shuld perceyue them com-
myng to the hauen, that they shuld make a token of
fyre, wherby the Countrey might perceyue the commyng
of theire enmyes, and euery man to be redy in armes 32
thitherward / and so was the kingis proclamacion
vpon deth. And wete it that the king kept the feldes
in the myddes of the portes of his royalme for to
be the sooner at the porte where the sarrasyns shuld 36

arryue to take theire landing / And the king made so grete moustre & semblaunt that he gaf his peple so grete courage, that with hym & his enterpryse they durst wel fight with the Caliphe, and with his puyssaunce. It happned so, by the grace of god, that the see was enragid thrugh the stormes and horryble tempeste, that the sarrasyns were al dysmayed & abasshed / and the tempeste casted them in suche wyse here & there, that within short tyme they ne wyst where eyghte of theire galeyes were become. And on the morowe about the hooure of pryme, thayer was al clere, and the wynd cessed, and the sonne shone fayre & clere / thenne the grete shippes of the paynemes held them togidre, & toke theire way vnto the port of Lymasson. And of them I leue to speke / and shal shew you of the viii vessels that were sparpylled by the tempeste, and what way they held / and in thoo vessels was all thartyllery of the paynemes, as gonnes, bowes, arowes / ladders / paueys, & such habylements of werre [1]as they had / and so it fortuned that guyon and the maister of Rodes with theire puyssaunce recountred them, and perceyued eche other. but whan oure peple knewe that they were sarasyns / and the sarasyns knew that they were crysten peuple / they bygane eche of them to lye and bord other with shotte of gonnes & crosbowes / and whan they were chayned togidre they threw darts as thikk as hayle stones / and the batayll was so grete, hard, & stronge / but guyon, the maister of Rodes, & theire puyssaunce assaylled so manfully the paynemes that they knew not to what part they shuld tourne them to defende, For our peuple that were in the galeyes faught so mightly that the paynemes were as dycomfyted. There might men here them crye on theire goddes / nat that withstanding they were dyscomfyte & slayne. And thanne whan theire admyrall, that was maister of the

A storm causes great damage to the Saracen fleet;

but on the morrow they sail to the port of Lymasson.

Eight galleys full of stores, belonging to the Saracens, sparpilled by the tempest,

[1] fol. 95 b.

were met by the Master of Rhodes,

who attacked them, and fought so well as to defeat the pagan sailors.

The admiral seeing he is defeated,

artylery, sawe the dycomfiture tourned vpon them /. he made to be hausedd a lytel galyote out of the grete

leaves the fleet in a boat accompanied with eight persons.

galeye *with* viii hores / and so entred he and eyghte personnes *with* hym of the secretest / and toke thauenture of the wynd / & rowed so mightly that *our* peuple *meruaylled þerof* / but they made neuer semblaunce to

The Christians enter the enemy's vessels, and throw overboard or take prisoners the Saracens.

pursiew them / but entred into the paynemes vessels, & bygan to cast alle ouerbord. but they toke to the nombre of ij C sarasyns prysonners / wherof guyon gaf oo hondred to the maister of Rodes to make them

The spoils are divided,

cristen, and also two galeyes / and guyon toke the other hondred sarasyns and two of the moost richest vessels that they had wonne, and toke it to a knyght

Guion sending his share to Flory,

of Rodes / and thus said to hym, 'Conduyte me this two galeys, and þis houndred sarrasyns to Cruly, and recommand me to the kinge & his doughtir / and on my byhalue [1]presente to the pucelle Florye this two

[1] fol. 96.

and to her father the King of Armenia.

vessels as they are garnysshed / and to the kyng the houndred sarasyns.' Wherof the knyght toke the charge & departed, & hasted hym tyl he came to the Cite of Cruly / and dide his message as he was youen in commandement / and recounted to them the grete dyscomfyture and the valyaunt conduyte of guyon.

The King welcomes Guion's knight, who conveys the present, and Flory is very joyful, for she loves Guion much.

'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'ye be welcome, and thanking be to that noble damoyseau' / And the pucelle was so joyous of these nouuelles that she had neuer in her naturel lyf so grete joye. For knowe ye wel she loued so entierly guyon þat all her joye was of hym. The king thanne & his doughter yaf to the knight a riche jewel, wherof he thanked þem, and toke leue of them, & retourned hastly to Rodes. And anone, after hys departyng, the kyng of Armenye questyoned *with* the paynemes where the armee of the Calyphe was / and they said in Cipre to reuenge the deth of the sawdan of Damaske that the Cipryens had slayn in batayll. 'Par ma foy,' sayd the kyng, 'as for you, ye

The King of Armenia learns from his Saracen prisoners that their comrades have gone to Cyprus,

haue faylled of your enterpryse' / And thenne he commanded that they shuld be feteryd with yrons, and to be putte in to parfounde pryson / and the two vessels to be descharged, and all the goodes that were in to be borne into the Castel. It is now tyme that I speke of guyon and of the maister of Rodes, that had questyoned the sarasyns wher the Calyphe purposed to land / and they said in Cypre. Guyon thenne by thauys and Counseyll of his barons for cause they had many vessels & lytel nombre of peuple / commanded that al thartylery that they had wonne shuld be putte into theire shippes / and also al other thinges that were of nede to them / and the remanaunt & the vessels also / [1]he gaf to the maister of Rodes that sent them to Rodes. And whan this was don they saylled, & hasted them toward Cypre. And here leueth thystory to spek of them / and retourneth to speke of the galyote where thadmyrall was in, where it became or toke porte. /.

as does Guion.

Guion ships the spoils of the victory,

[1] fol. 96 b.

and sets sail for Cyprus.

Thystory sayth that the kyng brandymount & the Calyphe of Bandas were sorowfull for their losse & grete dommage / and so longe rowed thadmyral on the see that he perceyued the port of Lymasson, & sawe grete nauye byfore the toune. And whan he came somewhat nygh he herd shotte of gonnes & sowne of trompettes, and soone after he knew that it was the Calyphe of Bandas and his armee, & the puyssaunce of kyng brandymount of tharse,[2] that assaylled them of the toune for to take it. But there was the Captayne of the place & his peple[3] wel paueysed, that valyauntly deffended the porte in so moche that the sarasyns gat there nought / but lost many of their men, and wysshed ofte aftir theire galeyes with theire gonnes & artyllery that were sprad on the see by the tempeste / they wyst not where. Thenne came to them thadmyral that thus said on hye: 'By my feyth, Calyphe, woo

The boat containing the admiral and eight men is rowed to Lymasson,

where the sound of battle is heard.

The Captain of Lymasson defends his port well, and the Saracens wish for their artillery from the eight vessels, which they think are still at sea

[2] Fr. *Turche.* [3] Fr. *w. p*]*atout bons pavars.*

may be to you, For your nauye that I conduyted is lost & take, For the Cristen recountred vs vpon the see, and haue dyscomfyted vs / and none is scaped but only we that are here / and at oo word al is lost / for to hold you long compte therof that shuld preuayll you nought.' Thenne whan the Calyphe vnderstode hym he was sorowfuH & dolaunt. 'By my feyth,' said he / 'lordis, here ben heuy tydinges. For wel I see that Fortune slepeth as to our help / and so hath he doo long / but fauourable & moche propice it is as now to crysten peple, For wel it appereth presently by vs / and so dide but of late by our Cousyn the saudan, the which & al hys peuple also haue be slayn or dyscomfyte in the same yle of Cypre.' Thenne sai the admyral to hym: 'Sire, yf ye anounce or shew se blaunce of abasshement byfore your folke that shal use them to be half dyscomfyte / and ouermore knowe ye to this that I perceyue of them of this porte ne, that they be not shappen to lete you arryue e theire land without sore fyghting and grete sawtes gyuyng. For they shew not to be aferd of your puyssaunce. therfore I wold aduyse & counseyH you, that we shalH withdraw vs into the hye see, & lete coule them self / and about the spryng of the day we shalbe at a lytel porte that not ferre is hens called the port of saynt Andrew / and there without ony deffense or gaynsayeng we may take landH.' And this they dide. And whan the Captayn of Lymasson sawe hys enmyes departe, he made a rampyn or smal galeye to folow them of ferre, þat it coude not be perceyued of them / and aspyed how at euen they ancred aboute a myle nygh to saynt Andrews porte. Thanne retourned the rampyn hastly toward Lymasson / and to the captayne recounted al that he had seen / Thenne made the captayn fyre to be putte high vpon the garde for manere of token / and whan they of the nerest garde or watching place sawe the token of

and that he should withdraw to the port of St. Andrew,

where it will be easier to land.

The Caliph gives up the attack, and sets sail for St. Andrew, followed by a rampin from Lymasson, sent to learn the movements of the Saracens.

fyre / soone after fyre was made fro garde to garde, that knowleche was therof thrugh all the royalme. Thenne euery man, what on foot & on horsbake, drew them self to the place where kyng Vryan was, that al redy had sent hys espyes to knowe wher the paynemes shuld land, and manded to euery captayne they shuld kepe & defend wel theire fortresses / 'For,' said he, 'yf it playse god none of them shal not repasse the see. And here resteth the [1]hystorye to speke of kynge Vryan / and bygynneth to speke of the Caliphe. /

The alarm is given throughout Cyprus,

and spies are sent to learn where the Saracens will land.

[1] fol. 97 b.

In this partye sheweth thistorye / that the sarasyns that were entred in to the see / as soone as þey apperceyued the day spryng, they deceueryd, & toke vp theire ancres, and came al in oo flotte to the porte, & there landed. And wete it wel, that they of thabbey of saynt andrew perceyued them wel, the whiche immediatly made knowleche to Lymasson / and the Captayne of þe place gaf vnto the kyng' knowlech ther- of / the which had grete joye therof / and fourthwith bygan to apparayll hym to go to batayll. And the Calyphe, hys enemy, made to be putte a land his artylery out of the shippes / and dide make hys lodgis therby, as it were half a leghe fro the port, vpon a grete ryuere at a cornere of a lytel wode, to refresshe hym & his peple also; and lefte foure thousand men within the shippes, for theire sauegarde / and in the meane saison guyon / the maister of Rodes, & theire peuple arryued to Lymasson / where men said to them how the sarasyns had landed / and how theire nauye was a leghe fro saynt Andrewes porte. 'By my feyth,' sayd Guyon, 'we shal thanne goo & vysyte them / For who that might take them fro the sarasyns, none of them shuld neuer retourne foot, in sury nor in tharsy' / and in these wordes sayeng, they putte them in to the see, & went lightly sayllyng', that they came so nygh the panemes that they sawe the porte of saynt Andrew,

The Saracens at daybreak weigh their anchors and land their men and artillery at St. Andrew.

Word is at once sent to Urian of their landing;

and Guion learns that their navy is unprotected,

so sets out to capture the Saracen fleet,

and the grete nombre of shippes that were there. Thenne they putte themself in aray and in good ordynaunce / and this done, they rane vpon theire enemys as thondre & tempeste, smyttyng vpon the shippes of the sarasyns byforce of shotte so horrybly, that yl bestade were the sarasyns, that wel happy was he [1]that myght recouere the land. And by that meane were the shippes take / and al the sarasyns that were take were putte to deth. Thanne guyon sent to the abbey foyson of them that he had wonne of the sarasyns / and brought to Lymasson with them as many galeyes & shippes as there were laden with the goodes of the sarasyns, except suche as they brent. And þe other that escaped, came to thoost of theire lord, cryeng with a hye voys alarme / and recounted & said how the Cristen had by force & strengthe discomfited them. Thenne was the oost gretly mevyd, & came to the port who best coude, and fonde many of theire peuple ded, and som were hyd in the bussbes. And whan the Calyphe perceyued & sawe this grete dommage, he was moche dolaunt. 'By machomete,' said he to kyng Brandymount, 'these Cristen that are come hither fro Fraunce, ben ouermoche hardy & appert men in armes, and yf they soiourne long here it shal be to our grete dommage' / 'By machomet,' said the kyng Brandymount, 'I shal neuer deporte fro this land vnto tyme I be al dyscomfyted, or þat I haue put them to flyght, & brought to an euyl end.' 'No more shal I doo,' ansuerd Calipha. Thenne þey recouered there six of theire galeyes, & eschiewed þem fro the fyre, and lefte in it good wardes for to kepe them; and after they retourned to theire peple. And here cesseth thystorye of them / and retourneth to speke of Vryan /

[1] fol. 92.

and succeeds,

taking many prisoners.

Fugitives arrive at the Caliph's camp with news of the defeat,

which makes him doleful.

He says that if the French knights stay they will do much harm.

King Brandymount swears he will remain to be either victor or conquered.

The Saracens save six galleys from the fire.

Now sheweth thistorye how the kyng Vryan was lodged in a fayre medow vpon a ryuere, in that self place where the fourragers of the sawdan were

dyscomfyted at the brydge, as before is said. And had sent his espyes to haue knowlege where his enemyes had take theyre lodgys / And thenne came [1] the maister of Rodes, whiche alighted byfore the kinges pauyllon, whom he made reuerence moche honourably. And the king, that was moche joyous of his commyng, receyued hym benyngly, and demanded of hym how guyon his brother dyde. 'By my feyth, aire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'wel / as the moost assurest man that euer I knew. Sire, he recommandeth hym to you as affectually as he may.' 'Nowe telle me,' said the king, 'how ye haue doo syn that ye departed from vs?' And the maister recounted hym fro braunche to braunche all thauentures that had happed to them. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'ye haue worthyly vyaged; I thanke & lawde my Creatour therof / and as for myn vncle, þe kynge of Armanye, I am moche glad that ye lefte hym in good prosperyte. but we most haue aduys of our Counseyll, to see how we may dystroye the Sarasyns / and as touching me & my peple, I am redy to departe for to approuche to them, For to long they haue soiourned in our land without to haue assayed vs. goo thanne toward my brother, and telle hym that I departe for to goo ayenst the paynemes.' The maister thanne toke leue of king Vryan, and hastly retourned to Lymasson / and immedyatly the king & his peuple marched fourth, tyl they came & lodged them a leghe nygh to the Calyphes oost, vnknowyng the paynemes of it. And the maister of Rodes came to guyon, and told hym how the kyng was departed for to recountre & fyght with the sarasyns; wherfore guyon commanded his trompettes to blow, and departed fro Lymasson in fayre aray; & came vnto a ryuere, and lodged hym therby, vpon the which ryuere were the paynemes lodged, & no distaunce or space was betwene them & their enemyes, but a [2] high mountayne. And now

Urian sends spies to find his enemies' camp.

[1] fol. 98 b.

The Master of Rhodes visits the King,

and tells him of Guion's bravery, and brings Guion's regards;

and also tells of their adventures.

Urian says he may have the advice of his council how best to overcome the Saracens,

and sends back the Master to Guion.

King Urian marches his people within a league of the Saracen host.

The master of Rhodes gives Guion the King's message,

and then Guion also marches his men near the Saracens.

[2] fol. 99.

resteth thistorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of Vryan his brother.

Thystorye sayth that kyng Vryan desired moch̄ to knowe where the sarasyns were lodged / also to haue true knowlege of theire conuyne; wherfore he called to hym a knyght, that knew wel al the Countrey, and said to hym: 'putte on your harneys, and take the surest hors that ye haue, and come alone here byfore my pauyllon: and telle nobody of it / & ye shal come with me there as I shal lede you' / and anone the knight dide his commandement / and wel horsed & armed retourned to hym byfore hys tente, wher he fonde king vryan redy on horsbak, the which̄ said to some of his barons, 'Sires, meue not your self fro this place tyl ye haue tydi[ngs] of me / but yf I cam not hither ayen / loke ye do that I shal lete you wete by this knyght.' And they ansuerd that so shuld they doo / 'but take good h[eed],' sayd they agayn, 'where ye goo' / 'be not in d[oub]te therfore,' said vryan to them / And thenne they departed; and Vryan said to the knight, 'conduyte me now the surest waye that ye can, tyl that I may see the porte where the sarasyns landed.' And the knyght lede hym vnto the hylle ryght high, & said: 'Sire, yonder is the porte that ye desire to see.' 'And how,' said the kyng, 'it hath be said to me that theire nauye was al brent, and yet I see yonder some grete vessels? Fro whens myght they be come now?' / and thenne behild the king / at the synester syde in to the founs[1] of the valey, and sawe his brothers oost, that was lodged vpon the ryuere / and at the ryght syde of the hille he sawe þe Caliphes oost, that were in grete nombre. 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'yonder is grete multitude of peple payneme / them I knowe wel ynough̄; but þey [2]of this other syde I knowe not what they be. abyde me

d a

to recon-

ith him, own

The knight leads the King to a high hill,

where he sees some vessels,

his brother's and the Saracen host.

[2] fol. 99 b.

He does not recognize his brother's army,

[1] Fr. *font*.

here, and I shall goo wete what folke they be, yf I may.' The kyng thanne rode tyl he came nygh his brothers oost, and founde a knight on his way, which he knew wel; and anoon called hym by hys name, and demaunded of hym yf his brother guyon was there /. Whan the knight vnderstode hys wordes, he beheld & knew hym, and soone kneeled byfore hym, saying in this manere: 'My liege & souerayn lord, your brother guyon is yonder with al hys peuple, and the maister of Rodes also.' Thenne commanded hym the kyng that he shuld goo to Guyon hys brother, and telle hym that he shuld come & speke with hym vpon the said mountayne. And the knight went & tolde these tydinges to guyon; wherfor he, and the maister of Rodes with hym, mounted on horsbak / toke the way to the mountayneward, wher as Vryan retourned to his knyght, whome he said: 'Frend, wel it is with vs, For that is my brother guyon which is lodged yonder.' Thenne came per guyon & the maister of Rodes where the two bretheren made moche, eche of oper. The kinge after shewed to them thoost of theire enemyes / and whan they sawe it / they said / 'we wyst not them so nygh to vs.' 'Now,' said vryan, 'they may not escape vs, yf it be not by the meanes of yonder galeyes,' wherof guyon was abasshed / 'For,' said he / 'these deuels haue brought moo vessels, For within these foure dayes last passed we toke & brent al theyre nauye.' 'Thenne,' said the maister of Rodes, 'I suppose wel what that is / happely some of them were not fonde, which haue eschewed that few shippes fro the fyre.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng, 'thus it may wel be / but perto [1]We most puruey of gardes, For therby shuld mowe escape the chief lordes of theire oost, that happly might adommage vs in time to come.' 'How, sire,' said the maister of Rodes, 'it semeth that ye haue dycomfyted them al redy, and

and so rides to it.

On the way he meets a knight he knows well.

The knight kneels to him, and tells him to whom the host belongs.

King Urian sends for Guion,

who, accompanied with the Master of Rhodes, comes to the King.

Urian says that now the Saracens cannot escape, except by the vessels.

Guion is abashed at the Saracens having vessels, as he believed he had burnt or captured them all, but the Master says, these are some saved from the fire.

[1] fol. 100.

The King orders guards to be ready to prevent any one embarking,

that it ne resteth more but to kepe the Calyphe and brandymount, that they scape not at þat porte.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd the kynge, 'yf they be nomore than I see, we nede not so grete peple as god haþ leued vs.'

and sends his knight with orders to his men to march to the foot of the mountain.

The kinge thenne commanded his knight, þat he shuld goo to hys oost and make them to be putte in aray, and that he shuld conduyte them vnto þe foot of the said mountayne. The knight departed, & dide as it was youen to hym in commandement / and al thoost obeyed hym, and came in fayre aray & good ordynaunce vnto the hille. Also guyon went and made

Guion marches his men near the pagans.

hys peple to be armed, and brought þem at the other syde of the ryuere, so nygh the paynemes oost that he might wel perceyue theire manyere & contenaunce.

The Master of Rhodes is ordered to prevent the Saracens withdrawing to their ships.

And the kyng commanded the maister of Rodes, that he with all hys peuple shuld entre in to þe see / and that they shuld trauerse, rowyng nygh the porte, to thende yf the sarasyns shuld putte & withdraw them self into theire shippes, that they might not escape / 'And I goo,' sayd vryan, 'putte my peple in aray, forto gyue batayll to these paynemes.'

The King leads his forces in battle array towards the Saracens,

The kynge thenne came to his oost, and made his archers & crosbowe men to marche & goo fourth; and after folowed the wynges. & the arryergarde came after in fayre ordonnaunce / and assoone as þe sarasyns perceyued them, they bygan alarme, and euery payneme armed hym self / but or they were all armed, Vryan sent vpon them a thousand [1]good men of armes wel horsed, that moche adommaged them, for they fonde them vnpurueyed & out of aray. But notwithstanding, they assembled them in batayll & aray. Thanne bygan the stoure fyers & cruel. For there had ye seen arowes flee as thykk as motes in the sonne / and after Vryan and his auantgarde assembled to his enemys; and so manfully they faught, that they made the sarasyns to withdraw bakward. For vryan made there so grete

[1] fol. 100 b.

and before they can arm sets a thousand men on to them.

At last the Saracens array themselves, and the fight becomes fierce.

The Saracens are driven back,

fayttes of armes, and gaf so pesaunt & horryble strokes both to the lyft & right syde, that al them that he recountred he smote & threw doun fro theire horses to the erthe, in so moch that his enemyes fled byfore hym as the partrych doth byfore the sperehauke. And whanne the Calyphe of Bandas perceyued hym, he shewed hym to kyng Brandymount, sayeng, 'yf we be abasshed and yl bestad of this man only, al the other shal preyse & doubte vs nought' / and sayeng these wordes, he broched his hors with hys sporys that blood rane out of bothe sydes / And know it wel, that this Caliphe was one of the moost fyers & strengest man that was that tyme alyue / he casted hys targe behynd his bakk / toke hys swerd, & rane vpon vryan, the whiche he recountred / and by grete yre gaf hym so meruayllable a stroke vpon that one syde of hys helmet, that hys swerd redounded vpon hys hors nek by suche myght that nygh he cutte his throtte of. Thanne came kynge Brandymount vpon vryan, the which, seeynge his hors almost deed, stood vpon hys feet, & lete goo hys swerd fro his hand, and embrased his enemy; and by the strengthe of his two armes, pulled hym from his hors doun to therthe. There was [1]the prees grete, both of Sarasyns that wold rescue theyre lord / and of cypryens also, that wold haue holpen vryan theire kynge, to bryng hys enterpryse at affect. The batayll was there mortall fyers & doubtous for bothe partyes. but vryan drew a short knyff out of the shethe that hanged at his lyft syde, and threstid it vnder the gorgeret thrugh brandymontis nek, and thus he slewgh hym. Thanne stod vryan vpon his feet ayen, and cryed with a high voys 'Lusynen, Lusynen' / and the Poyteuyns that herd that, putte them self in prees by suche vertu, gyuyng so grete strokes that the sarrasyns that were about vryan lost & voyded the place. Thenne was kyng vryan remounted vpon kyng

Urian doing great feats of arms.

The Caliph, a strong man with sword and shield,

runs upon Urian,

and gives him a heavy blow,

nearly killing his horse;

King Brandymount rushes on him also,

Urian dismounts, and pulls the Saracen King from his horse.

[1] fol. 101.

The fighting becomes fierce at this point;

but Urian stabs his foe in the neck, and so slays him;

and his companions put to flight the Saracens,

then Urian pursues the Caliph.

brandymontis hors, and pursiewed the Caliphe of Bandas / and thus bygan ayen the batayH to be reforced, in so moche that grete occysyon was don on eyther partye. And in that meane season came guyon with his peuple, and courageously rane vpon þeire enemyes. And whan the Caliphe saw hym be surprysed on eche syde by his mortal enemyes / he with xi departed in the secretest manere that he coude out of the batayH, and fled toward the see / where the admyraH of Damask was, whiche made them to entre into a lytel galyote, in whiche he escaped, as byfore is said / and soone aftir he made the nauye, that he saued fro brennyng, to take vp theire ancres, & entred in the see. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, and retourneth to speke of the batayH. /

Guion on his side falls upon the Saracens,

and seeing his forces hemmed in, the Caliph with eleven men flies in a boat to his vessels,

weighs their anchors, and puts to sea.

The Saracens seeing Brandimount dead, and the Caliph fled,

In this partye sheweth thystorye, & sayth þat whan the sarasyns knew the deth of theyre kynge brandymount[1] / and how the Caliphe on whos prowes & strengthe was al theire hope & comfort [2]was thus departed and fled, they were aH abasshed, and bygan strongly to breke their aray and to voyde the place, puttyng themself to flight.[3] What shuld I make you long compte / the paynemes were putt aH to deth, what in batayH, what fleyng as drowned in the see. And after the chaas, retourned kyng vryan and hys barons to the paynemys lodgis, where they found in their tentes & pauyllons grete riches. And here thistorye cesseth of kyng vryan / and I shal shew vnto you how the caliphe of Bandas dyde, the whicH swore by his machomet & his goddes, that yf he myght euer come to sauete in damask ayen, yet shuld he doo grete hynderaunce & enuye to the Cypryens. But as he was rowyng in the see / and supposed to haue escaped al

[2] fol. 101 b.

lose heart, and try to escape;

but they are all slain,

and all their riches captured.

The Caliph swears he may yet live to avenge himself on the Cyprians;

[1] Fr. *Brandimont de Tarse.*

[3] xvii*s.* viii*d.* is noted in margin of MS. If it is price of copying up to this point, it would be about the rate of 1*d.* a page.

parels / the maister of Rodes that kept the see and wayted after hym, as aboue is sayd, perceyued the sarasyns flote þat wold haue retourned to Damask / bygan to lye by them and sayd to his peuple in this manere: 'Fayre lordes and knightes of Ieshu Criste, our desyre and wysshyng is brought to effect, for knowlege we haue ynough that the valyaunt & redoubted kyng vryan hath obtayned the vyctory vpon his enemyes & oures / yf we be now men of faytte & valyaunt, none of them shal neuer see Damaske.' Who thanne had seen the Cristen putte them self in aray, and theire meruayllable shottyng with gonnes & arowes vpon the sarasyns, he shuld haue be meruaylled / and syn oure folke cheyned with them & casted darts & stones with suche strengthe & might, that wonder it was to see. The sarasyns defendid hem self [1]manfully / but at last they were dyscomfyte. And the admyraH that sawe the grete myschief þat feH on them hallid vp saylles / rowed in hys galyote with eyght hores and so he escaped. And the maister of Rodes and hys peple toke the galeyes of theire enemyes and aH slew or casted ouer bord / and brought them ayen to saynt andrews porte. Thanne the maister of Rodes acompanyed with C knightes, bretheren of his religyon, went toward king vryan & guyon his brother, and recounted to them aH theire good fortune. but sory was the king that the Caliphe and the admyral were so escaped. kyng Vryan thenne departed & dalt emong his peuple al the proye of his enemyes that he had wonne / sauf he reteyned for hym the artylery & some pauyllons & tentes, and gaf them leue to retourne in to theire Countrees. These thinges thus don, kyng vryan in grete tryumphe & honour as vyctorious prynce, retourned to his cyte of Famagoce, acompayned of Guyon his brother, of the maister of Rodes, and of al the barons, wher the quene Ermyne receyued them right

but his fleet is observed by the Master of Rhodes, who is on the watch.

He is attacked,

[1] fol. 102.

and defeated,

but escapes with the admiral in an eight-oared boat.

The master of Rhodes captures the navy, slays or drowns all the Saracens, and takes the vessels back to St. Andrew's Port.

He recounts his victory to Urian, who is sorry at the caliph's escape.

Urian and his companions return to Famagoce.

honourably, thankyng god of the noble vyctorye that they obteyned vpon his enemyes. /

Urian's wife Hermine, being with child, he prepares to give a feast,

Now sayth thistorye, that Ermyne was grete with child & nygh her terme / and that vryan made a feest to be cryed & proclaimed; For he wold in tyme of peas & rest haue festyed his barons of poytou and al other prynces estraungers & other his subgects. Eyght dayes toforne the feste, began grete multitude of peuple to come to the Cite, wherof the kyng was joyful, and made cryees vpon peyne of deth that none shuld make derrer the vytaylles. And trouth it was that thre dayes tofore the feste the queno Ermyne was [1]delyuered of a fayre sone. Thenne bygan the feste to wex grete / and the child baptised and named Henry, bycause of hys auncestre hight Henry. And so encreased the feest in ryches & in yeftes. And there were some of the barons of poytou that toke theire leue of the kyng & of his brother, and of the quene, for to departe, whom the kynge yaf grete yeftes of riches. And they were in nombre six knightes and þeire companye, which putte them in to the see. Now wyl I cesse of them that are departed to the see / & shal shewe of the feste that was ryght noble and sumptuous, but soone it was turned to sorowe, bycause of the tydinges of the kingis deth of Armenye that came to the Court. /

but a fair son is born three days before the feast is ready.

[1] fol. 102 b.

He is named Henry.

Thystorye sheweth all thus, whan the feest was at best, there came xxi[ti]2 knightes of the moost noblest barons of the royalme of armanye, al clothed in black / and it shewed wel by theire contenaunce that they were sorowful in herte. And whan they cam tofore the kyng they dide theire obeyssaunce ryght nobly / and the kynge receyued them with grete honour / and they said to him: 'Sire, the kynge of armenye, your vncle, is passed out of this world, on whos sowle god

Twenty-one Armenian knights come to Urian, with news of the death of the King of Armenia,

[2] Fr. *xxi*.

haue mercy / and hath lefte to vs a ryght fayre pucelle begoten of his body by lawfull maryage / and she is alone hys heyre. Now knowe ye thenne, noble kynge, that in hys playn lyf he dide doo make this *lettre*, and *com*manded vs to directe it to *your* noble grace / prayeng the same that the tenour of þe *lettre* ye vouchesaf tacomplysshe.' 'By my feith, fayre lord*es*,' said Vryan / 'yf it be of the thing that I may goodly doo, I shal fulfyll his wyll [1]right gladly.' Thenne toke Vryan the *lettre* & redd it, of the whiche the tenour was this: 'Ryght dere lord and right wel beloued nevew, I re*com*mande me to you as ferfourth as I may / prayeng you right hertyly to haue me to my ryght dere & beloued nyghte *your* wyf to be rec*om*manded. And where by these my *lettres* I make to you the first requeste that eu*er* I demanded of you / also consideryng that it shal be the last / For certaynly at the makyng of thees my present *lettres*, I felt myself in such poynt that in me was none hope of *con*ualescence nor of lyf. I hertyly beseche you that ye haue it not in reffus nor in dysdayn*e*. It is so thanne that none heyre I ne haue of my body, sauf only a doughter, the which *your* brother guy*on* sawe but of late / whan he was with me. Wherfore I pray you that ye vouchsauf to entrette *your* said bro*þer* in manere that it playse hym, to take the cepter of my dignite ryall and my doughter to hys lady, and thus to crowne hym self king of armanye. And though she be not worthy to haue hym to her lord, yet is she com*e* of royal blood. consideryng thanne her consanguinite haue pite on her / and yf that mouyth not you to com*passyon* / yet remembre that ye be champyon of Crist, exalting his feyth. My royalme is now cristen, and hath be long soo / Woo were to me / yf for wantyng of a preu & valyau*nt* man it shuld retourne in to the paynemes hand*es*. Wherfore, noble kyng, haue regarde to this

and that his heir is a fair maiden.

They bring Urian a letter from the deceased king,

[1] fol. 103.

paying respects to Urian and his wife,

and intimating his near end.

The king tells of his daughter, whom Guion had seen,

and begs Urian to entreat his brother to marry the heiress of Armenia, and to be king of the country;

as the land requires a valiant man to protect it from the Saracens.

that forsaid is,' &c. Whan vryan vnderstode the tenour of þe lettre he was moche dolaunt of the kingis deth / & mouyd by compassion & pyte, ansuerd to the [1]Armanyens, sayeng in this manere: 'Lordes & barons, I shall not fayH you at your nede, For yf my brother wyl not accorde therto, yet shaH I endeuoyre my self to gyue you helpe, ayde, comfort, & counseyl, as ferre as my power shal reche.' Thanne called he to hym guyon, hys broþer, that thanne knew the kingis deth, wherof he was sorrowfuH / and vryan to hym sayd the wordes that here folowen: 'Guyon, receyue this yefte, For I make you heyre of armenye and possessour of the moost fayrest pucelle that is in aH the land / that is my Cousyn florye, doughter to the kyng of Armanye, which by the wyH of god is passed out of this world / and I pray you that ye dayne to take this yefte, For it oughte not to be refussed.' 'By my feyth, fayr brother and my lord,' said guyon, 'I thanke you moche therof, and hym also that is causer of hit, on whos sowle god haue mercy.' Thenne were the knyghtes of armanye joyfuH & glad. And as soone as guyon had consentid therto, they kneeled byfore hym & kyssed hys handes, after the custome of theire land / And thanne bygan ayen the feest greter than it was afore. And in that meane saison the king dide doo make hys nauye redy, that was in to the porte of Lymasson, and in the vessels he made to be putte grete rychesses / and guyon hys brother, accompanyed with the maister of Rodes, & with many barons of poytou and of Cypre, toke hys leue, & entred in to the see & saylled so long that they arryued in Armenye,[2] where they were receyued honourably.[3]

fol. 103 b.

He is offered the hand of the daughter of the king of Armenia.

The Armenian knights are joyful, and kneel before Guion and kiss his hands.

The navy is prepared at Lymasson, and Guion and many of his friends sail to Armenia,

[2] Fr. *Et tant allèrent, tant de jour comme de nuyt, qu'ils apperceurent et virent la ballet du Crub, qui est la maistresse ville du royaulme d'Armanie.*

[3] There is an omission here; the French version opens a new chapter, entitled *Comment Guion espousa la pucelle Florie et fut roy d'Armanie*, as follows:—*Adonc l'ung des*

There was guyon wedded with Florye / and after the feste all the barons of the land came to Cruly & made theyre homage to guyon, whiche crownned himself king & regned honourably. And after these thinges doon the maister of Rodes & the barons of Poytou toke theire leue of guyon, whiche yaf to them grete yeftes of ryches, & they entred in to theire shippes and rowed tyl they [1]cam at Rodes, where as the said maister festyed worshipfully the estraungers, and so dide al the knightes bretheren of hys relygyon. And at thende of viii dayes the barons of Poytou entred agayn in to the see, and in short tyme they arryued in Cipre, And recounted to Vryan al the trouth of the fayt, and how his brother guyon was honourably receyued in armanye / and how he had wedded Florye, and was crowned kyng of the land & loued of al the peple there, wherof moche thankes rendred guyon to god. Within few dayes after many of the knightes of poytou toke theire leue, and to them yaf vryan grete yeftes of ryches / and sent word by them in wrytyng to his fader & moder of al thestate & prosperous fortune of hym & of hys brother. And thus departed the barons & entred in to theire shippes, whiche they fonde wel purueyed of al that was necessary to them, and toke theire way toward Rochelle in poytou.

where he weds Florry.

The barons do their homage to him, and he is crowned, and reigns honorably.

His friends set sail to Rhodes,

[1] fol. 104.

where the Master entertains them,

and from thence to Cyprus, where they relate to Urian all the adventure.

Some knights of Poitou, after receiving gifts from Urian, and a letter for his parents,

set sail for Rochelle.

[2]Now sayth thystorye, that the barons of poytou sailled so long that they perceyued & sawe Rochelle, where they arryued with grete joye / and

They arrive,

barons d'Armanie parla moult hault addressant sa parole à Guion, et dist: Sire, nous vous avons esté querir pour estre nostre seigneur et nostre roy; si est bon que nous vous delivrons tout ce que nous vous devons bailler. Et voiez cy ma damoiselle qui est toute preste de acomplir tout ce que nous vous avons promis et au roy Urian votre frère. Par foi, dist Guion, ce ne demourera mie à faire pour moy; and continues then as above.

[2] This begins a new chapter in the French version, entitled, *Comment les messagiers apportèrent les lettres à Raimondin et à Melusine de ses deux enfans qui estoient roix.*

and three days after ride to Lusignan,

there they refresshed them self the space of thre dayes, and after mounted on theire horses & rode toward

where Raymondin and Melusine receive them with great joy.

Lusynen, where they founde Raymondyn and Melusyne and theire other children with þem, whiche receyued

They deliver the letters from Urian and Guion,

them *with* grete joy. And þen*ne* they delyu*er*ed to them the l*ett*res of kyng*es* Vryan & guyon theire sones.

which please their parents.

And whan they herde & vnderstod the teno*ur* of them they thanked god of the good auenture that he of his grace had youen to theire two sones / and yaf grete

This year Melusine builds the Church of our Lady and many other abbeys,

jewell*es* & ryche yefte*s* to the barons that brought tydyng*is* of þ*em*. And that same yere melusyne fownded the chirch of o*ur* lady in Lusynen & manie other abbeyes in þe [1]lande, and endowed them w*ith* grete pos-

[1] fol. 104 *b*.

and Odo marries the daughter of the Earl of March.

sessyons. And thenne was the trayttee of maryage made betwix Odon her son*e* and the Erle of marchis doughtir, And was the feest grete & noble holden in a medowe nygh to the Castel of Lusynen. /

Anthony and Reynald, hearing of the brothers' success,

Thystorye sheweth here, that Anthony & Regnald were right glad whan they vnderstode the tydinges of the fortune & noble fayttes of armes of theire two bretheren / and that in so short space of tyme they had sore adom*m*aged the enemyes of god, and said one

desire to follow their example;

to other, 'My ryght dere brother, it is now tyme that we goo seke auenture thrugh the world, For here to dwell ony lenger we may not acquyre nor gete hono*ur*, as oure brethern Vrya*n* & guyon haue don.' Wherfore they come to theyre fader & moder, and to them said humbly in this man*er*e, 'My lord and you my

so they ask permission to go out into the world to earn the order of knighthood.

lady, yf ye vouchsaf it were tyme that we went thrugh the world at *our* auenture, for to gete & acquere thordre of knyghthode as *our* bretheren vryan & guyo*n* haue don / how wel we be nat worthy to receuye it so nobly nor in so noble a place as they haue doo / but yf it playseth god *our* entenc*i*on is to endeuoyre vs þ*er*to.' Thenne ansuerd to them Melusyne theire moder, 'Fayre sones, yf that playseth wel yo*ur* fader,

I me consent to your requeste.' 'By my feyth, lady,' said Raymondyn, 'doo your wyH therof, For what someuer ye wyl I me consent therto.' 'Sire,' said Melusyne, 'it semeth to me good that from hens fourth they begynne to take on them som vyage for to knowe the world & the straunge marches / also to be renommed & knowen / and to knowe & discerne good from euyl.' Thenne the two bretheren kneeled byfore theire fader & moder, & thanked them moch̄ humbly of the honour that they promysed them to [1]doo. And here ceaseth thystory to spek of them / and speketh of another matere.

Their parents consent.

[1] fol. 105.

In this partye sayth thistorye, that in the marches of Allemayne, betwene Lorayne & Ardane, was a noble Countrey, the which was somtyme called the Erledome of Lucembourgh, and now it is named a duchye. In that same Countree was some tyme a lord erle of the land, whiche after his decesse lefte a fayre doughter his heyre / she was clepyd Crystyne, and her fader was named Asselyn. Alle the barons of the land made theire homage to her as to the rightfuH heyre of the lande. On that tyme was in Anssay a kynge whos wyf was deed in her child bed at the birthe of a doughter, whiche the fader made to be baptised & named Melidee. Whan this kynge thanne herde how the Erle of Lucembourgh was passed out of this world, and that none heyre he had but a doughter, whiche was the fayrest damoyseH of aH the land / he sent in ambaxade to her the moost noble & secretest men of hys CounseyH, to speke & treate the maryage of hym with her. But the pucelle Crystyne wold neuer consent therto / wherfore he wexed sorowfuH in herte / and sware god that outhre by force or by her wyH he shuld haue her, whatsoeuer it might faH therof. Thenne made he his mandement, & chalenged the mayde & alle her lande. Whan thanne the barons & noble men of

At the time when the ruler of Luxembourg was a maiden named Christine,

the wife of the King of Anssay died.

He wished to marry again, and made proposals to Christine,

but was rejected.

In revenge he swore he would have her by force, and challenged her and her land.

the lande & all the commynalte wyst it / they said & sware that syth theyre lady wold not haue hym to her lord / they shuld shewe to hym that he dide wrong to the pucelle and to them also. And immediatly they garnysshed theire Cites, tounes, & Fortresses. [1]And the moost part of the barons drew themself to the toune & Castel of Lucembourgh with Cristyne, theire owne propre lady. What shuld I make you long compte / they were nat that tyme strong ne puyssaunt ynough for to fyght ayenst the kyng of Anssay. For he came vpon them with a grete puyssaunce of peple & moche adommaged the lande / and came al brennyng' vnto byfore the toune & Fortresse of Lucembourgh, where he layed siege. And of faytte theire was grete scarmysshing' and grete losse of one parte and of oper. It happed thanne that one of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche had be with Vryan at the conqueste of the royaume of Cipre, and euer was with hym at all the baytayHes that he had ayenst the paynemes / the whiche was come ayen with the barons of Poytou vnto Lusynen / and had receyued of Melusyne riche jewels & grete yeftes of ryches / and sawe there Regnald and Anthony, that were moche strong and grete, & of fyers & hardy contenaunce / and wel it semed to hym that they shuld ensiew the condicions & maneres of theire bretheren, and theire high prowes & enterpryse / drew the noble men of the land apart, and said to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, ye may conceyue and wel perceyue that we may not hold longe ayenst the puyssaunce of the same kinge. Wherfore yf it seme you good, myn oppynyon were to see a remedy be had to it rather to fore than to late, For good it is to shette the stable or euer the horses be lost.' And they ansuerd, 'that is trouth / but we may not perceyue no remedy therto without the grace of god be.' 'For southe,' said the forsaid baron, 'Without godis grace none may but

[1] fol. 105 b.

The people put it in a state of defence,

but they were not strong enough to withstand the King of Anssay, who came and did them great damage.

A baron, who had been with Urian when he conquered Cyprus,

takes the barons of Luxembourg apart,

lytel or nought doo, but with that it is good to take ayde who that may [1]haue it.' 'Certaynly,' said the barons, 'ye say right wel; yf ye thanne know some gentylman worthy to haue our lady, and valyaunt & preu to deffende vs ayenst our enemyes, lete vs knowe hym. For ye be therto hold & bounden bycause of your alygeaunce.' This gentylman thanne reherced to them fro hed to hed how vryan & hys brother departed fro Lusynen, and all thauenture of theire vyage / also thestate of theire fader and moder / and ouermore, he shewed to them the fayre maynten & countenaunce of Anthony & Regnauld / and that he knew for certayn / that who so went to seke & requyre the socours and helpe of the two bretheren, they shuld come with grete puyssaunce, whan they shuld haue knowledge of the faytte. 'By my feyth,' said the noblemen, 'ye say full wel.' Thenne they fourthwith went tofore Crystyne theire lady, and worde to worde they recounted to her all this affayre. And she said to them, 'Fayre lordes, I recommande you my land and yours / doo what semeth you best to thonour of me and of you, for the commyn wele of all my land. For wete it for certayn, that for to dey or to be dysheryted, I shal not haue the kyng of Anssay to my lord / how be it he is better than to me apparteyneth, but for asmoche that he wyl haue by force me & my land.' And they ansuerd to her / 'doubte you not therof, my lady, For yf it playse god, he shal not haue so moche of puyssance as long as we shall mowe stere our owne bodyes.' 'Lordes,' said she, 'gramercy.' And thenne they departed thens. Thenne said one of the barons to the forsaid gentylman in this manere: 'ye that haue putte vs in this quarelle / say now what best is for to doo.' 'By my feyth,' said he, 'yf it lyke you good, ye shall delyuere me two of you to goo with me to Lusynen, to wete yf we can fynde there [2]ony thing to vs prouffytable.'

[1] fol. 106.

and tells them of the bravery of Urian and Guion,

and of their two brothers, Anthony and Regnald, who would come to their assistance with great forces if they were asked.

The barons have an audience with Christine.

She puts herself in their hands

and once more refuses the King of Anssay.

They pledge themselves to defend her.

[2] fol. 106 b.

Two wise and noble men are sent as messengers to Lusignan with Urian's knight.

Thenne they anoone chose among' them, that is to wete, two of the wysest & noblest men for to goo *with* hym. And they departed about the first slepe, mounted vpon good & lyght horses, and yssued out of a posterne, and passed by that one side of thoost, so that they were neuer *per*ceyued / and hasted them self on theire way toward Lusynen. And here cesseth thystorye of them, and speketh of Meluysyne & her children, that is to wete, of Anthony and of Regnald. /

During the great feast, at which Anthony and Regnald distinguish themselves in jousting,

Thystory sayth that the feste was right grete in the medowe byforsaid / and men jousted there valyauntly. but aboue alle the yonge squyers that were there, Anthony and Regnald dyde best after the sayeng & *com*mendac*i*on of the ladyes and gentyl wymen that were there. And there were grete jewels gyuen. but alwayes Melusyne thoughte to purueye to thestate of her children, and made to them fayre robes & ryche raymentes, and ordeyned and purueyed of men to goo *with* them, and in especial wyse, and noble men to endoctrine them, & shew to tham the way of good gou*er*nau*n*ce. Duryng yet the feste, came there the ambaxatours of Lucembourgh / þe whiche made theire obeyssaunce to Raymondyn & to Melusyne ryght honourably, and also to alle the companye / And joyously they were receyued / & soone was there knowen the knight that had be *with* vryan at the Conqueste of Cypre. and he was honourably festyed, and of hym demanded Anthony, for the wele that he herde saye of hym, yf it playsed hym to goo *with* hym & *with* hys brother Regnauld in som vyage where he purposed to goo, & to thayde of god, he shuld be wel rewarded. The knyght thanne demanded of Anthony: 'My lord, & whither is *your* entenc*i*on for to goo?' And he ansuerd[1]: '*Our* auenture there as god shal conduyt vs, for to gete hono*ur* and cheualrye.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'I shal telle you the fayrest and the

the ambassadors from Luxembourg arrive,

and are welcomed.

Urian's knight is asked by Anthony if he will accompany him and his brother on a voyage

[1] fol. 107.

in search of honour.

moost honourable auenture that euer gentylman had that aduentured hym self, and the moost honourable enterpryse.' And whan the two damoyseaulx vnderstod hym, they made moche of hym, & said in this manere: 'Noble man, vouchesauf to vttre to vs that noble enterpryse that ye speketh of.' 'By my feyth, lordes,' said the knight, 'in as moche that I were ryght joyous you to see enhaunsed in honour, also for to susteyne ryght & reason, I shal ryght gladly shew to you all the matere therof.

The knight tells of the fair adventure,

and is asked by the brothers for full information.

'Ryght dere lordes, it is trouth that all thoo that loue ryghtwysnes and that be wylling to gete honour / they oughte to helpe and susteyne the wydowes an orphenyns. And forasmoche, fayre lordes, it is soo that in the marche of Lorayne & of Ardane is a moche ryche & noble Countree that clepen the duchye of Lucembourgh, the whiche duchye a noble man gouerned long as hys owne propre herytage / the whiche valyaunt man passed to god but of late, and hath lefte a doughtir hys heyre of the land / to the whiche right noble and fayre pucelle alle the nobles and barons of the land haue as now don theyre homage & obeyssaunce. And where it is soo that the kynge of Anssay, knowyng the beautefulnes of the mayde, and her grete & noble enheritaunce, hath demanded her by maryage / but that pucelle reffused hym bycause he had be wedded tofore, & of late he was wydower. Wherfore this kynge of Anssay hath deffyed her and al her land, and supposeth to haue her by force & ayenst her wylle / and he is entred in to the land / and hath brent & slayn al byfore hym vnto the toune & Castel [1]of Lucembourgh, where as he hath now besieged the said lady, and hath sworne that he shall neuer departe thens vnto tyme he hath his wylle of her, other by force or by loue. Wherfore, lordes, me semeth that in all the world nys more honourable a vyage ne more raysonnable than that same is,

He relates that the Duke of Luxembourg left his daughter his heir, and owing to her beauty and riches she is sought as wife by the King of Anssay, but because he is a widower she has refused him. In revenge war has been declared, and the king is trying to get her by force, and now he is besieging her at Luxembourg.

[1] fol. 107 b.

On hearing the story Anthony agrees to succour the maiden,

For alle thoo that loue honour & gentylnesse ought to draw them self that part.' 'In good feyth,' said thenne anthony, 'ye say trouth / and wete it I shall shew this matere to my lady my moder, to see what ayde and helpe my lord our fader and she wyl gyue vs / and how so euer it happeth, by thayde of god we shall goo and socoure the pucelle that the kynge of Anssay wyl haue by force, wherof me semeth that he is euyl counseylled.' 'On my feyth, my lord,' sayd thenne the knight, 'yf ye vouchesauf to vndertake that vyage / I & my felawes, two knightes that be here come with me, shal conduyte & helpe you of al our power.' And þe two bretheren thanked them moche, & saide / 'no doubte we shal goo thither, yf it be the playsire of god' / And thenne they retourned toward theire moder / and the knight toward his felawes / and reherced to them how he had exployted / and that no nede was to speke ne requere Raymondyn ne Melusyne therof. 'Now, veryly,' said the two barons, 'it is ryght wysly don of you / blessid be god therof.' /

and the ambassadors promise to conduct Anthony and help him all in their power.

Anthony and Regnald relate the tidings to their parents, and ask for help.

Here saith thistory, that Anthony & Regnald came to theire fader & moder, and denounced to them these tydinges, and requyred them of help & ayde tacomplysshe this enterpryse. Thenne spake Raymondyn to Melusyne, & said, 'Certainly, lady, herto they may haue a fayre begynnyng in armes. Wherfore I pray you that ye purueye for [1]them in suche wyse that we may haue therof honour & prouffyt.' 'For southe,' said Melusyne, 'Sire, for tacomplysshe your wylle, I shall endeuoyre me so diligently therto, that bothe you & they also shal be content.' And thenne she made that ony man that wold take wages vnder Anthony & Regnald of Lusynen, that they shuld come at a certayn day to Lusynen, and there they shuld be payed of þeir wages for one yere / and also she made it to be cryed al about the marches of poytou. /

Raymondin thinks it a good opportunity,

[1] fol. 108.

and Melusine promises to provide well for her sons.

She announces that any man prepared to serve under the brothers, should come to Lusignan.

IN this partye reherceth thystorye, that within the day that Melusyne made to be cryed and anounced the said wages,[1] were assembled many gentylmen in a meddowe bysyde Lusynen; and grete foyson men of armes, to the nombre of foure thousand helmets and fyue houndred, some archers & oþer crosbowe men / and there were no pages, but al strong men / and were al lodged in fayre tentes & pauyllons, and so purueyed of all maner harneys & of al other thinges necessary to þem, that euery man was content. And while Raymondyn & melusyne payed them theire wages, & purueyed for al thinges that were nedefull to theyre vyage / Anthony & Regnald araysonned & demanded of the said knight and of his barons, hys felawes, of the estate of the pucelle of the land / And they said to them the very trouth / and were joyfull in theire hertes of the grete apparayll that they sawe so soone redy, For wel they had take in thanke half of the same to socoure with all theire lady. Wherfor þey thanked god & our lady his blessid moder, And sent fourth with a messager toward the barons of Lucembourgh, for to anounce to them the noble socours [2]that god sent to them. Wherof they were joyful & glad. And aftir the barons went & told to theire lady the tydynges, of the whyche she was moch recomforted, and bygan moche deuoutely to lawde god her creatour. And whan the peuple knew therof, they had grete joye, and thanked god, and made grete fyres, and cryed with a mery voys, sayeng thus: 'Joye & victory to our pucelle.' And whan theire enemyes withoutforth herd them, they wondred moch, & went & denounced it to theire kynge, wherof he was abasshed & pensefull. And thenne came tofore certayn personnes, that said to hym: 'Sire, doo make good watche, For they of the toune awayte dayly for socours.' 'By god,' said the

On the day appointed for the meeting,

4000 helmets and 500 archers assemble.

They are well armed;

and are paid their wages.

The barons describe the state of the land to the brothers,

and send word of the aid coming to Luxembourg,

[2] fol. 108 *b*.

whereat the barons, the lady Christine, and her people are glad.

The king of Anssay is informed of the rejoicing,

[1] *waged* in MS.

kinge, 'I ne wot nor may knowe by no manere fro whens socours shuld come to them; I doubte not / but that I shal haue them at my wyH, other by strength or by honger and for lack of meete.' And thus the kyng of Anssay assured hym self, But aftirward he fond hym self deceyued. Now I shal leue of hym, and shal retourne to speke of Melusyne and of her two sones.

but believes he will starve them out, not knowing of succour on the way.

Melusyne thenne called to her Anthony and Reg-
nald, her two sones / and to them she said in this manere: 'Children, ye now wyl departe fro my lord your fader & fro me / and happely we shal neuer see you agayn. Wherfore I wyl teche & introdruyte you for your wele & honour. And I pray you that ye vnderstand & reteyne wel that I shaH say, For that shal be to you nedefuH in tyme to come. First, ye shal loue / doubte, & preyse god our creatour; ye shal fermely, iustly, & deuoutly hold the commandementes of our moder holy chirche / and stedfast shal you be in our feyth catholical. / be ye humble & curteys to good folke / fyers & sharp to the wicked & euyl folke / and be ye [1]alwayes of fayre ansueryng, bothe to moost and leste / and hold talkyng to euery one whan tyme requyreth, without eny dysdayn / promyse ne beheyghte nothing but that ye may shortly acomplysshe it after your power; withdrawe not rapporteurs of wordes toward you / byleue not enuyous / nor beleue not to soone ne lyghtly / For that causeth somtyme the frend to wexe mortal foo; putte not in office auarycyous nor fel folke / acoynte[2] you not with another mans wyf / departe or deele to your felawes of suche thinges that god shal gyue you; be swete & debonnaire to your subgects / and to your enemyes fyers & cruel vnto tyme they be subduced & vnder your puyssaunce / kepe your self fro auauntyng & fro

Melusine calls Anthony and Reginald, and gives them parting advice.

She tells them to love God and keep the commandments of holy Church,

to be courteous to all,

[1] fol. 109.

to be cautious in believing scandal,

to be fair to their comrades,

stern with their enemies,

[2] Fr. *acointez.*

menace / but doo your faytte with few wordes this that may be doo. Despyse neuer none enemy, thaugh he be lytel / but loke wel about and make good watche / be not emonges your felawes as maister, but commyn with them / and worship euerychon after his degre / and gyue to them after your power, & after that they be worthy. [1]gyue to the good men of armes hors & harneys & syluer as rayson requyreth. Now, my children, I ne wot nat what I shuld more saye to you / but that ye kepe euer trouthe in al your dedes & affayres. Hold! I gyue eche of you a ryng of gold, wherof the stones ben of one vertue. For wete it that as long as ye haue good cause, ye shal neuer be dyscomfyted in batayll.' And thenne she kyssed them in moderly wyse, whiche thanked her; and toke leue of theire fader, that ryght dolaunt was of theire departyng. They made thenne theire troompettes to be sowned & blowen, and putte them self al byfore, & conduyted the auauntgarde / and after folowed the sommage & the grete batayll in fayre [2]aray / and the arryergarde also marched forth in fayre ordynaunce. It was a good sight to see the state of the vantgarde, whiche the two bretheren delyuered to be conduyted to a noble baron & valyaunt knight of poytou / and them self toke & conduyted the gret baytayll / and by them rode the ambaxadours of Lucembourg. And of the reregarde were captayns the two knightes of poytou that ledd vryan & guyon in to Cypre, and that first told to them that the sawdan had besieged the Cite of Famagoce. And to these two knightes Raymondyn & Melusyne had recommanded the estate of theire two sones, Reg-

not to be given to vain speaking
Not to despise their foes, but ever to keep good watch.

To treat their men-at-arms well,

and above all to keep to the truth.
She gives them each a ring, which will prevent them ever being defeated in battle in a good cause.

The brothers take leave of their parents,

sound the trumpets,

[2] fol. 109 b.

[1] Fr. *Donnez aux bons hommes d'armes, chevalx, cottes d'acier, bassines, des premiers, et argent selon raison, et vous se vous voiez ung bon homme de la main qui vienne devers vous mal vestu ou mal monté, si l'appellez moult humblement et luy donnes robes, chevaux et harnois, selon la valeur de sa personne et selon le povoir que vous arez alors.*

and march that night to Mirabel,

nald & Anthony. And trouth it is, that on the first nyght they lodged them nygh to a strong toun*e* vpon a lytel ryuere / and was that same toun*e* named Myrabel, þe whiche Melusyne founded / and that same

where they set good watch.

nyght bygan the two brethern to make good watche, as they had be alredy in land of enemyes, wherof many gaf themself grete m*er*ueyH; but they durst not reffuse it, For Anthony was so cruel that eu*er*y man drad hym. On the morowe next after the masse was doo /

Anthony orders everyone to ride under his banner in battle array.

the two bretheren made cryees vpon peyne of hors & haryneys, & to be banysshed out of the felawship, þat eu*er*yman shuld ryde armed vnder his banere, in good aray of batayH. none durst not refuse it / but thus was it doo, Wherof they al m*er*ueylled. And in this man*er*e they rode by the space of ten dayes, & so long that

This wearies the men,

they cam in champayne / and many one were wery & ennuyed of theire harneys / as moche for þis that it was no nede / as bycause they were not acustomed of

and in ten days the knight commanding the vanguard

it / and som spake therof, wherfor the knight that conduyted the vangarde cam to the two brethern, & thus said to them: 'My lord*es*, the moost part of yo*ur* peuple is euyl apayed & content bycause that ye [1]constrayne them to bere theire harneys; For them semeth no nede to doo soo tyl that they com*e* nygh to the marches of yo*ur* enemyes.' 'And how, sire,' said Anthony, 'thinke you not that the thinge whicH is acustomed of long tyme be bettre knowen of them that exercice it, & lesse greuable than that thing' whicH is newly lerneH?' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the knyght, 'ye say wel.' 'morou*er*,' said Anthony, 'It is bettre for þem to lerne the peyne for to susteyne theire harneys in tyme, that surely they may so doo at theire ease, & to refresshe them surely for to essaye them self, and knowe the manere how they myght easy susteyn & suffre it whan nede shalbe. For yf they muste be thaught of theire enemyes / theire peyne

[1] fol. 110.

declares to the brothers that the people think there is no need to be so arrayed till they are in the enemies' country.

But Anthony replies that it is best they should learn themselves,

rather than that their enemies should teach them.

shuld be greter & doubtous / and ye wote ynough̃, that who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete peyne & hard̃ it shal be for hym to be a good werke-
4 man in his old̃ age.' 'Certaynly, my lord,' said the knyght, 'ye saye the playne trouth of it, and your reason is fuH̃ good.' And thenne he departed fro hym, and anounced to many one this rayson, in so
8 moche that knowlech̃ of it they had thorugh al thoost, wherof euery man held hym self wel apayed & content / and al sayd that the two bretheren might not fayH̃ to haue grete wele, yf god wold send̃ to them long lyf,
12 and that they shuld come to grete perfection of honour.

The answer satisfies the host, and the men say that the brothers will come to great honour.

Thystorye sayth in this partye, that the same nyght the oost was lodged vpon a ryuere that men called aisne / and about the first slepe, the two bretheren
16 made to be cryed alarme thrugh̃ the oost right ferfully. Thenne was there grete trouble, and in euery syde they armed them, puttyng̃ themself in fayre aray of batayH̃. euery man vnder his banere byfore theire tentes. And
20 wete it wel, that it[1] was grete beaute to see the good contenaunce & the noble [2]ordynaunce & fayre aray of the men of armes, and of the two bretheren, that went fro bataiH̃ to batayH̃ / and there as fawte was of
24 ordynaunce, they redressid theire peple to it. And the thre barons, ambaxadours of Lucembourgh, beheld wel theire maner & contenaunce, & said that one to that other: 'On my feyth, these two children ben wel
28 chappen to subdue & conquere yet a grete part of the world / now wel may say the king̃ of Anssay, that dere he shaH̃ abye his folye & proude enterpryse, and the dommage that he hath borne to our lady, & to
32 her land & subgets.' In suche party they were long tyme, tyl the espyes that secretly were departed fro the oost to dyscouere & ouersee the Countre about, yf enemyes were nygh / came agayn, & sayd that þey

When the host was lodged on the Aisne that night an alarm was raised by the brothers.

[2] fol. 110 b.

The forces arrayed themselves for battle,

and spies were sent over the country to find the enemy.

[1] *is* in MS.

aspyed no personne; whero[f] al gaf them self grete wonder of that alarme & affray, but at last it was wel knowen that the two bretheren caused it. Thenne came the two knightes, captayns of the arryergarde, & also the Captayne of the vantgarde, to the two bretheren, & said to them in this manere: 'My lordes, grete symplenes it is to you thus to traueylle your peuple for nought.' 'How,' said Anthony to them / 'whan ye doo make a new rayment, be it harneys or clothing, make ye not it to be essayed, for to knowe yf ony fawte is fonde in it, and to haue it mended & sette as it shuld be?' / And they al ansuerd, 'For certayn, sire, ye / and that is ryght.' Thenne sayd Anthony, 'yf I wold haue assayed my felawes to fore that it had be tyme, for to knowe how I shuld fynd them redy at my nede / sene & consydered that we approuche our enemyes / to thend, yf ony fawte we had fond, to haue purueyed of conuenable remedy therto, at our lesse dommage / than yf in dede it had be.' Whane they [heard[1]] that word / they ansuerd, 'my lord, ye say but rayson' / and they wondred moche of [2]theire gouernement, and of theire subtylte & wyt / sayeng betwene them self / that they shuld yet come to grete perfection. Soone after the day was come, the masse was said and the trompettes sowned; at which sowne the vantgarde marched fourth, and the sommage and Cartes folowed / and after the grete oost deslodged, & went so long by theire journeyes that they came & lodged them vpon a ryuere named Meuse, vnder a Fortresse named Damcastel / And fro thens vnto the siege tofore lucembourgh, were not past two days journey for them. Thenne came the barons ambaxadours of Lucembourgh to the two bretheren, & said: 'My lord, we haue no more but xij leghis vnto the siege, it were good that ye shuld refresshe your peple here vpon this

4 8 12 16 20 24 28 32

[2] fol. 111.

The next day they marched to Dam Castle,

which is twelve leagues from the besieged town.

The ambassadors advise the brethren to halt and refresh their men.

[1] Word scraped out of MS.

fayre ryuer; For here is good soiourne & good abydyng'/ and also is good to take aduys & Counseyl how ye wyl doo.'/

4 Thanne ansuerd Anthony ryght boldly: 'By my feyth, fayre lordes, thaduys is ouerlong take, For assoone that my brother & I haue sent toward the kynge of Anssay, yf he wyl not doo after our wyll, he 8 may hold hym sure to haue batayll / and the vyctory shal send god to whom it playse hym / but what / me semeth we haue good quarell, And therfor we haue hope on our lord that he shal helpe vs / and also we 12 shal, or euer we fyght, demande of hym ryght & rayson / but it muste be aduysed who shal goo on the message.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the Captayne of the vantgarde, 'I shal be your messanger, yf it please you, 16 and the gentylman that knoweth the Countre shal lede me thither.' 'In the name of god,' said anthony / 'that playseth me ryght wel / but that shal not be tyl myn oost be but thre leghes ferre fro them / to thende, 20 yf þe batayll muste be that we may be nere them for to fyght, and haue thayde of the toune with vs. [1]For yf he wyl the batayll we wold be alredy by hym.' And thus they lefte to speke of this matere. 24 And on the morne erly, after that the masse was doo, thoost marched, & passed the ryuere vnder Damcastel in fayre ordynaunce / and so long they rode that they arryued on an euen betwene vertone and Lucem- 28 bourgh, and there lodged them self. And on the morow erly Anthony sent the Captayne of the vantgarde, and the said gentylman toward the kynge of Anssay, to whom they said the wordes that herafter 32 folowe. Thenne they hasted them so moche that they came to the siege, and were brought as messagers tofore the kyng, whome they salued, & made reuerence as they oughte / and aftir the knyght captayn 36 said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, hither we be sent

But Anthony declines to do so, and says he will send to the King of Anssay, and if he accepts not their terms they will fight.

The captain of the vanguard volunteers to be the messenger.

Anthony says he will send when they are as near as three leagues to the enemy.

[1] fol. 111 b.

In the morning after mass the army marches beyond Virton, and rests there.

Next morning Anthony sends the captain of the vanguard and the gentleman to the King of Anssay.

The captain, after making reverence to the king,

says he has been sent to show the outrage that has been committed on the noble lady of Luxembourg.

from our redoubted lordes, Anthony & Regnald, of Lusynen bretheren, for to shew vnto you the fawte & grete oultrage that ye doo to the noble damoyselle lady of Lucembourgh / the which our lordes redoubted

If the king will make amends for the wrongs he has done and depart, he can do so; if not he must fight.

mande, & lete you knowe by vs that yf ye wyl restablysshe the dommage, & to make raysounable & lawful amendes of the Iniury & vylonnye that ye haue don to her / to her subgets & to her propre enherytaunce, and after to departe out of her land ye shal doo wel, and they make them strong to make your peas with her / and yf ye wyl not so deele with her / theire entencyon is for to take reparacion vpon you of the dommages beforsayd by strengthe of theire armes & by batayll. and gyue to vs an ansuere what your wyll is to doo / and after morouer I shal telle you as I am commanded to doo.' 'How, sire knyght,' said the kyng, 'are ye come hither for to preche vs / by my feith lytel or nought ye may gete here. For as to your lettres ne to your preching, I shal not be letted of myn entencion / but as long ye may preche as ye wyl, For I vouchesaf. [1]For I take my dysport in your talkyng & prechement. And also I trow that ye ne doo or saye suche thinges but for dysport.' 'By my heed, sire,' said the Captayne, that was angry / 'yf ye doo not promptly & anoone this that our lordes mande by vs vnto you / the dysport that ye speke of / shal hastly tourne you to grete myschief & sorowe.' 'Sire knight,' said the kyng, 'of menaces ye may gyue vs ynoughe. For other thing ye shal not haue ne withbere fro me, For your maisters, nor your menaces I preyse not worth a strawe.' 'Thenne, king of Anssay, I deffye you on my ryght redoubted lordes byhalf.' 'Wel thanne,' said the kyng, 'I shal kepe me fro mystakyng & fro losse & dommage, yf I may' / 'By[2] my sowle,' answerd the Captayne, 'grete nede ye shal haue to do

The King of Anssay mocks the knight,

[1] fol. 112.

who now demands a speedy answer.

The king replies that he cares not a straw for the knight's masters; whereupon the knight defies the king on behalf of his lords.

[2] MS. read *My*.

soo.' And without ony moo wordes they departed / And whan they were out of thoost or siege / the gentylman toke leue of the Captayne, and secretly entred in to the toune for to recounte the tydinges of the two brethern / and whan he came to the gate he was anone knowen, and the yate was opened to hym, & gladly he was welcommed of euryone / and they demanded tydynges of hym / whiche ansuerd to them. 'Sires, make good chere, For soone ye shal haue the moost noblest socours that euer was seen / and wete it wel that the kingt of Anssay abydeth so longt, that he shal be certaynly othre slayn or take, & his peuple al dyscomfyted, take, or putte to deth.' Thenne byganne the joye to be so grete thrugh the toune that they withoutforth herd the bruyt therof, and woundred moche what it might be / and announced it to the kyngt. 'By my feyth,' said the kynge, 'they recomforte themself for the commyngt of thoo two children by whome that knyght hath deffyed vs, For [1]as I trow, they haue herd some tydynges therof, and perfor they make suche joye.' 'In the name of god,' said an auncyent knight, 'al this may be / but good were to take heede therto / For there nys none litel enmy, but we ought to haue doubte therof. For I know them wel ynough by semblaunt. For or euer they come hyther from poytou we shold haue brought about a parte of our wyH.' Now I shal leue to spek of the kynge / and shal retourne to speke of hym that brought tydynges of the two bretheren in to the toune. Whan the knyght thanne was entred as byfore is said, he went fourth vnto the Castel where the pucelle Cristyne was / and after hys obeyssaunce don vnto her, he reherced to her al the playn trouth of the mayntene & countenaunce of the two bretheren / and he said to her / 'how Anthony bare a claw of a Lyon in his face' / and shewed to her hys grete fyerste & his grete strengthe / Also how

The captain and the gentleman leave the king. The gentleman secretly enters the town to give tidings of the brethren.

He tells the people that the King of Anssay will be either slain or taken, and his people overcome;

whereat they make a joyful noise.

The King of Anssay says they rejoice because of the succour of

[1] fol. 112 b.

the children who have defied him.

An ancient knight advises the king to take heed of the report.

The Luxembourg knight goes to the castle where the maid Christine dwells,

and describes Anthony and Regnald to her.

Regnald had but one eye / and the beaulte of theyre bodyes & of theire membres / wherof she merueylled moche, & said that it was grete dommage, Whan eny contreyfayture was in the membres of suche noble men. And now cesse thystory to speke of them / and retourneth to teH of the captayne that retourneth to thoost toward Anthony and Regnald. /

The captain arrives at the two brethren and their host,

Thystorye sayth that so long rode the Captayne that he came in to thoost of the two bretheren, & recorded to them how he had fulfylled hys message,

and recounts the king's proud answer, and how the knight left him to go to Luxembourg.

& recounted word by word the proude ansuere of the king, and how he had deffyed hym in theire byhalf / and also how the knyght was departed fro hym, & was gon to Lucembourgh to teH there [1]of theire commyng / And whan the two bretheren herd hym they were fuH joyous / and soone made cryees thrughe theyre oost,

[1] fol. 118.

The brethren send word through the host that those who have no will to fight can go home,

that al they that had no wyH for to fyght & abyde the batayH shuld draw themself aparte, & gaf to them leue to retourne agayn in theire Countrey / but they escryed them self with an hye voys. 'Ha / a, franc demoyseaux make your trompettes to be sowned, &

but the host cries, 'Let us go forth upon your enemies.'

lete vs go forth vpon your enemyes / For we ben not come in your companye / but for to take thauenture with you suche as god shal send vs / Ha, lordes, goo we & renne vpon our enemyes, For with goddes grace, & with the good wyH that we be of, they shal soone be dyscomfyted.' Whan thenne the two bretheren herd the ansuerd of theire peple they were joyfuH, and made theire oost to departe, & came & lodged vpon a lytel ryuere / and the vantgarde & the grete bataiH lodged togidre, bycause they might goo no ferþer / and they soupped togidre, and after went to reste them, & made good watche / and at day sprynge they were al redy / and lefte to kepe their lodgis two houndred men of armes with an ℄ crosbowes / and thenne the oost in fayre aray marched forth. There myght men see

The host marches forward to a little river,

where they rest, sup, and appoint a good watch.

At day-spring they are ready; 200 men of arms and 100 cross-bowmen are left to take charge of the camp.

baners & standarts in the wynd, and vnder them the flour of cheualrye in good aray & fayre ordynaunce / there had ye sene salades & helmets shynyng clere / and harneys knokyng togidre that grete beaute it was to see. They kept & marched nygh togidre, so that one passed not that other. And Anthony and Regnauld rode at the first fraunt, mounted vpon two grete horses armed of all pieces. And [1] in that estate and aray they went tyl they came vpon a lytel mountayne / and sawe fro thens in the valey the toune & Castel of Lucembourgh, and the gret siege that aduyrouned it about. And wete it þat they of the siege had not yet perceyued thoost of the two bretheren / but they were all asured þat they shuld haue the batayll. Thenne sent anthony foure houndred helmets for to scarmysshe the siege / and the oost folowed with lytel paas in fayr aray of batayll / And on the wynges of thoost were knightes and Crosbowes in fayre ordynaunce. Now tell we of the foure houndred fyghting men that went for to scarmyssh with them of the siege. /

They march forth in good order; Anthony and Regnald in front on two great horses.

[1] fol. 113 b.

They come to a little mountain, from which they see the town and castle of Luxembourg and the siege around it. The besiegers do not see the relieving host.

Anthony sends 400 skirmishers in advance.

Thystory saith that the foure houndred fyghtyng men entred vpon theire enemyes, and slew & hew doune all that they recountred / And whan they were come nygh to the kingis tente, they of the night watche that were not yet vnarmed went ayenst them, for the cry that they made that was 'Lusynen' / many sperys were putte there all to pieces, and many one cast doune to the ground / and the gretest dommage tourned vpon them of the siege / but sodaynly the kyng armed hym self, and putte hym vnder his banere byfore his tente / and whiles they held foot alle thoost was armed, & drew them toward the kyngis banere. And he demanded of them, 'Fayre lordes, what affray is this?' 'By my feyth,' said a knight, 'they are men of armes that entred in your oost ryght fyersly, and they call

These knights slay all they encounter,

and come nigh the king's tent, which was defended by his night watch.

The king arms himself,

and asks his men what affray is this?

A knight answers that men of arms have

Lusynen, and they haue adommaged you sore / and yf
s it had not be the nyght watche the losse had be greter,
hem For they haue faught with them valyauntly / and haue
fol. 114. made [1]them to goo back by force.' 'By my feyth,' said
the kynge / 'these damoyseaulx, in whos behalf I am
deffyed, haue not taryed long to come & bere dom-
mage to me / but wel I think for to auenge me therof.'
Thenne is come Anthony and his batayll, which made
his trompettes to be sowned clerly. And whan the
kyng perceyued them he came withforth the lodgis
in fayre aray & batayll renged. And thenne the
bataylles recountred eche other / and archers & cros-
bowemen approuched & bygan to shoote, and there were
slayne & hurt many one of the kings of Anssays party,
and neuertheles the grete batayll assembled togidre /
and there was grete occysion & fyers medlee. And
thenne anthony broched his hors with the sporys, the
4 fights spere alowed, & smote a knyght by such vertue that the
targe nor his cote of stele might not warauntyse hym,
but that he threw hym doune to therthe al deed.
And thenne he drew out his swerd, and smote on the
lyfte syde & on the ryght syde, gyuyng grete & pesaunt
strokes, in so moche that in a short while he was so
that the most hardy dare not abide him. knowen thrugh al the batayll that the moost hardy
of them alle durst not abyde hym. Thenne came
Regnald mounted vpon a grete Courser callyng 'Lusyg-
Regnald also does great feats of arms. nen,' which made so grete appertyse of armes that alle
his enemyes redoubted hym. Thenne was the baytayll
fyers, cruel, and mortal on bothe partyes / but alwayes
the gretest losse & dommage tourned vpon the kyng of
Anssay & his peple, which was moche dolaunt & sorow-
full, & envertued hym self strong, and made with his
handes grete vasselage / but al that preuaylled hym
[2] fol. 114 b. nought, For the poytevins [2]were ryght strong, hard, &
fel lyke lyons / and theire were the two lordes so
puyssaunt that none so bold was there that durst abyde

them. Thenne sawe wel the kynge by the puyssaunce & strengthꝫ of the two brethern, that he myght no lenger suffre theire force.

The King of Anssay sees he cannot withstand them.

Cap. XXV. How Anthony & Regnald dyscomfyted the kynge of Anssay tofore lucembourgh / and how he was take.

The kyng' thenne, whicꝫ was a valyaunt man & strong', cryed with a hye voys 'Anssay, Anssay, lordes & barons be not abasshed, For the batayꝫ is oures' / and at his callyng' his peuple toke courage, & assembled them self ayen togidre about theire kynge, and made a fyers enuahye[1] vpon the poyteuyns / there was many man slayn / hewen & sore hurte with grete doleur. That mornyng' was fayre & clere, & the soonne shoone bright vpon the helmets / and caused the gold & sylu*er* ther on to [2]resplendyssshe, that fayre it was to see. And they of the toun*e* that herde this grete affray, toke theire armes; & eche of them made good watche, For they were ryght ferdfuꝫ & doubtous of treson. And the knyght whicꝫ anounced to them the socours of the two breþernꝫ was w*ith* the pucelle Crystyne in a hye toure, & loked out at a wyndowe / and he knew wel that it was Anthony & Regnald, that were come for to fight ayenst the king' and his peple, & anon called with an hye voys, 'My lady, cõme hither & see the floure of knyghthodꝫ, of prowesse & hardynes / cõme & see honour in his siege royaꝫ, & in his mageste / cõme & see the god of armes in propre figure.' 'Frend,' said the pucelle / 'what is that ye say to me?' 'I calle you,' sayd the knight, 'to come hither & see the flour of noblesse & of aꝫ curtoysye, that fro[3] ferre land is come hither for to fyght with yo*ur* enemyes for to kepe yo*ur* hono*ur*,

He encourages his people,

they rally and again fiercely attack the Poitevins.

[2] fol. 115.

The noise of the battle is heard by the townsfolk, and by the knight messenger who is with the maid Christine.

He asks her to look at her champions,

[1] Fr. *envaye* = attack. [3] *for* in MS.

n of

aid
ghter

ll. 1155.

seeing
made
ost,

your lande, & your peple / this are the two children of Lusynen, that be cõme for to deffend you ayenst the kingꝛ of Anssay & aH his puyssaunce, and to putte theire honour & lyf in auenture for to kepe your honour sauf.' Thenne came the mayde at the wyndowe, & beheld the mortal batayH & horryble medlee / sayeng in this manere: 'O Veray god, what shaH doo this pouere orphenym / bettre it had be that I had drowned myself, or that I had be putte to deth in some other wyse, or elles that I had be deed whan I yssued out of my moders wombe / than so many creatures shuld be slayne & perysshe for myn owne synne.' Moche dolaunt & heuy was the yongꝛ damoyselle of the grete myschief that she sawe, For in certayn thoccysyon was grete on bothꝫ partyes, For the king recomforted his peuple by his wo[r]þy contenaunce & valyaunt maynten; For with his propre swerdꝫ he mochꝫ adommaged his enemys poyteuyns. [1]But Anthony, seeyng the grete dommage that the kynge bare vpon his peple / he was dysplaysed with, & sayd in hym self: 'By my feyth, thy lyf or myn shal not be longꝛ, For rather I wold dey than to suffre & see my peuple so murdryd before me.' Thenne he sporyd hys hors / and fyersly as a lyon rane vpon the kingꝛ. and with his swerdꝫ of stele smote hym vpon the hyest part of his helmet by suche strengthꝫ & vertue that he made hym to be enclyned vpon þe hors neck, so sore astonyed that he ne wyst whether it was nyght or day, nor he had no force ne power to helpe ne redresse hymself vpward / and Anthony that this sawe, putte his swerdꝫ in the shethe ayen; & toke the king by the middes of the body / drew hym fro the hors, & so rudely cast hym to therthe that vnnethe hys herte brake within his bely / and after toke hym to foure knightes, and charged them on theire lyues that they shuld kepe hym, so that þey myght ansuere hym of it. And they

resolves to fight the King of Anssay.

He rushes upon the king, smites him,

and casts him from his horse.

He makes him prisoner.

Four knights are appointed to guard him.

said that so shuld they doo / and they thanne bonde hym & lede hym out of the batayll, and called xxv^ti archers with them. And after these thinges thus doon Anthony retourned in the prees, callyng' 'Lusynen' with a hye voys, & said: 'Now lordes & barons, gyue grete strokes, & spare none, For the journey is ours thankyng' be to god; For I haue take the kynge of Anssay my prysonner, that so grete vylonny hath don to the gentyl pucelle Cristyne.' Thenne was the medlee rude & paryllous / and there dide the bretheren so moche of armes, that al tho that saw them said that they sawe neuer two so valyaunt knyghtes. What shuld preuayll you long compte. [1]Whan the Anssays peuple knew that theire kynge was take, they neuer syn made no deffense / but wer alle outhre slayne or take. And there gate the poytevyns grete conqueste & noble proye, and lodged them self in the pauyllons & tentes of the king of Anssay & of hys peple. And was the kinge brought in Anthonys tente, which a lytel byfore was hys owne propre tente; wherfore the king' myght not hold his owne tonge, but said: 'By my feyth, damoyseaulx, wel sayth he trouth that sayth / "that god doth / he doth anoone" / For this day, in the mornyng, men had doo here within but lytel for your commandement.' 'Sire,' sayd Anthony, 'your folyshnes & synne is cause therof; For tofore ye wold rauysshe by force the pucelle Crystyne lady of this toune / but therof ye shall be payed after your deserte, For I shal yeld your self vnder her subgection.' Thenne whanne the kyng' vnderstode hym, he was shamfast & woofull / and as dysolate & dyscomfyte, full heuyly ansuerd in this manere: 'Sith now it is thus vnfortunatly happed with me, rather I wyl dey than to lyue.' 'Nay,' sayd Anthony, 'ye shal delyuere your self / no doubte of / vnto the mercy & subgection of the pucelle.'

They lead him out of the battle.

Anthony now urges his men to give great strokes, and to spare none, and tells them he has made the king prisoner.

[1] fol. 116.

The king's people give up hope after he is taken.

He is brought to Anthony, and confesses that 'that god doth, he doth anone.'

Anthony tells the king that he is to blame for desiring to seize Christine,

and announces that he is to be delivered into her hands.

Cap. XXVI. How the kyng of Anssay was lede byfore the pucelle Crystyne.

[1] fol. 116 b. [1]Thenne called Anthony to hym the two barons, ambaxadours that were come to Lusynen, with the said gentylman fro Lucembourgh and xx^ti other knyghtes of poytou, and to them said in this manere:

Anthony despatches the King of Anssay under guard to Christine,

'Now lede me this kinge tofore þe damoyselle Crystyne, and recommande vs moche vnto her / and that we send her / her enemy prysonner, for to do with hym her wyll.' And thenne they departed, & lede the kyng as they were youen in commandement / and came to the toune, where they were wel festyed & honourably receyued. And thenne the Citezeyns conduyted them toward the pucelle, theire lady Crystyne, with grete joye. 'Noble lady,' said the messagers, 'the two yong damoyseaulx of Lusynen recommande them hertyly

[2] fol. 117. vnto you, [2]and send you this kyng your enemy prysonner, to doo with hym after your dyscrecyon & wylle.'

who gives great thanks,

'Fayre lordis,' ansuerd the damoyselle / 'herto behoueth gret guerdon / but I am not puyssaunt ynough for to reward them as they haue deseruyd. I

and hopes God will reward them.

pray to god deuoutely that of hys grace he wyl rewarde them to whom I am moch bonden / and I pray you, fayre lordes, that on my behalf ye wyl pray my two yong lordes that they vouchesauf to come and lodge them self here within, & as many of theyre barons with them as it shal lyke them good. & in þe meane while men shal burye the deed bodyes, & the deed horses shal be brent / and also they of my Counseyl shal take theire best aduys to see how I shal reward them of theire grete peyne & traueyl, that they haue suffred for me vnworthy þerof, and to recompense them of theire grete expenses & dommages in the best wyse that we can or shal mowe. And ye, kynge of Anssay, ye swere vnto vs by your ryalte that ye shal

She says her council will consider how to recompense her deliverers,

and binds the king to promise that he will stay

not departe from hens without the wyH & gree of the two noble damoyseaulx, that here haue sent you toward me. For yet so moch I knowe / thankyng to god / that I shuld mysdoo to cast you in pryson / not for your sake / but for loue of them that hither haue sent you.' Whan thenne the kynge vnderstode the wordes of the pucelle, he ansuerd al ashamed, 'Noble damoyselle, I swere you on my feyth that neuer hens I shal departe without your leue & theirs also; For so moch of wele / of honour & of valyauntnes I haue sene in them, that moche I desyre to be acoynted with them / how be it that grete dommage they haue borne vnto me & my men.' And thenne the noble mayde made hym to be putte into a fayre chambre & riche, & with hym ladyes & damoyselles, [1]also knyghtis & squyers, for to make hym to forgete his losse, & forto reioye & haue hym out of melencolye. And thus don, the messagers retourned toward the tentes, & reported the mandement & prayer of the pucelle Cristyne vnto the two bretheren, whiche were counseilled to goo thither; and ordeyned the mareshal of the oost for to gouerne theire peple vnto tyme that they came agayn / and also he commanded hym to make the deed bodyes to be buryed, & to make the place clene where as the batayH had be. Thenne they departed, acompanyed with theire baronnye / and ayenst them came, in theire best wyse, an houndred gentylmen / and also the barons of the land mete with them, & made theire obeyssaunce fuH honourably vnto the two brethern, prayeng them yet agayn, on theire ladys behalf, that they vouchesauf to come & lodge them in the toune / And they ansuerd that gladly they wold doo soo. Anthony was mounted vpon a grete Courser / and he had on hym a jacke of Cramesyn velvet, aH brouded & sette with perlis, and held a grete vyreton in his hand. And in lyke & semblable manere went hys brother

in the town until the brethren are satisfied.

This done he is given a fair chamber. Knights and ladies are sent to keep him company.

[1] fol. 117 b.

The guard of the king returns to the brethren,

who leave their army in charge of the marshal,

and accompanied with their barons go towards the town.

Regnauld. And whan the barons of Lucembourgh sawe the two brethern, they wondred moch̄ of theire fyersnes, gretnes & myght, and wel said that there was no man that might *with*stand ne abyde theire puyssaunce / and moche they merueylled of the Lyons claw that appiered in Anthonys cheke, & said that yf ne had be that he were the fayrest man in the world / and moche they playned Regnald of that he had but one eye, For in al his other membres he passed of beaulte al o*per* men.

[1] In this partye sayth thistorye, that in noble estate & fayre aray entred the two brethern in to the toune of Lucembourgh; & before them sowned trompet*tes* in grete nombre, w*ith* herault̄s & menestrels; And Cyteseyns had hanged theire houses w*ith*outforth toward the stret*es*, with theire best & rychest hangyng clothes / and the stretes where the said lordes passed were coue*re*d on high w*ith* lynen clothes, that no rayne or other fowl̄ wedryng myght lette þeire entree w*ith*in the toune / and many noble & worshipful ladyes, bourgeys wyues / damoysell*es* and fayre maydens, were in theire best rayments, eche one after the state & degree that she was of / lokyng out at wyndowes for to behold & see the noble brethern & theire felawship.

and the windows full of women.

Thystorye thanne sayth that the two bretheren departed out of theire tentes with noble companye, as barons, knightes, squyers, & other gentylmen / and as vyctoryo*us* prynces rode full̄ honourably vnto Lucembourgh, and thrugh̄ the toune, where as they were behold with joyo*us* herte of euery one, sayeng that one to other: See yonder be two the fyers men, bretheren that are to be redoubted / he is not wyse that taketh noyse or debat with them / and they had grete wonder of Anthonyes cheke / and also for certayn it was a straunge thing to behold & see / but the grete beaulte that was in his body caused that inconueny-

As the brethren ride through the town, the people say that it would not be wise to oppose them.

ence to be forgoten / And thus they rode toward the Castel. The ladyes & damoyselles beheld̃ them out of the wyndowes / and said that they neu*er* sawe two damoyseaulx of more noble affayre. And th*enne* they came to the Castel, wher they alighted, and entred fourthwith into the hall̃, where as the noble Crystyne mete them at the gate, wel acompanyed of ladyes & damoysell*es* in grete nombre, and of knightes & squyers / and with a joyous conten*aun*ce & gracy*ous* maynten honou[1]rably receyued them & gretly festyed them. The halle was hanged nobly with ryche clothes after the vse of the land̃, and fro the halle they went in to another chambre, moch̃ noble & ryche, & þere the pucelle Cristyne bygan to say to them in this manyere: 'My right dere lord*es*, I thanke you moch̃, as I may of the noble socours & help that ye haue don to me / I am not so moch̃ worth as ye ought to be rewarded of / not that w*ith*standing I shall̃ endeuoyre me therto / al shuld I laye of my land̃ in pledge this ten*e* yere day. And also, my lord*es*, of yo*ur* noble grace ye haue sent to me the king' of anssay, myn enemy, of the which̃ plaise it you to knowe that I am not she to whom oughte þe punysshement of hym / but to you apparteyneth to doo therw*ith* yo*ur* playsire & volente, that haue had the parel & peyne for to ouercom*e* & take hym yo*ur* prysonner / wherfore after that right requyreth he is yours, & may doo w*ith* hym whatsoeu*er* it plaise you / and I remyse hym in yo*ur* pocession. For as touching my persone I gyue hym ouer vnto you, & loke not to medle ony more with him tofore you.' 'Noble damoyselle,' said than*ne* anthony, 'sethen it is yo*ur* playsire, we shal ordeyne wel þer*of*, in suche wyse that it shal be to yo*ur* grete hono*ur* & prouffyte / and to hym grete shame & confusyon / no doubt of / And wete it that my bro*þer* and I are not cõme hither for loue of yo*ur* siluer, but for to susteyne rayson & right /

The ladies say they have never seen such noble youths.

At the castle

Christine meets them in the hall,

and receives them honourably, and richly feasts them.

[1] fol. 118 *b*.

She thanks the brethren for their help,

and promises to reward them.

She gives back the King of Anssay into their hands

to deal with as they wish.

Anthony replies that they came not for silver, but to sustain justice,

and because they think all noble men should aid widows and orphans.

also considered that alle noble men oughte to helpe & ayde the wydowes, orphenynis, and the pucelles also. And forasmoch also that we were truly informed, that

[1] fol. 119.

the kinge of Anssay made grete werre [1]anenst you & your land wrongfully, wherfor no doubte of / of all your goodes we wyl not take the value of one peny / but alonly to be receyued in your noble fauour & good grace, all vylounye excepted.' Whan the pucelle Cristyne vnderstode these wordes, she was abasshed of the grete honour that the two bretheren dide vnto her / not that withstandyng she ansuerd in this manere:

He declines all reward, save the lady's favour and good grace.

Christine is abashed,

and wishes to pay the soldiers of the brethren,

'For southe, my gracyous lordes, at lest it were no raison, but that I payed wel your peple that be come hither to take your wages as sawdoyers.' 'Damoyselle,' said þenne Anthony, 'vouchsaf to suffre that we haue said, For my lord our fader, & my lady our moder, haue payed them alredy for a hole yere day, or euer they departed out of our land / & yet it is not fullyssh a moneth complet syn that we departed thens; And ouermore wete it that syluer & gold we haue ynoughe. Wherfore, noble demoyselle, ye lese your wordes to speke therof, For certayn it shal none other be' / and she thenne thanked them in her best manere ryght humbly.

but her offer is refused.

The steward announces dinner;

Thenne came the styward, & enclyned hym tofore the pucelle, & said: 'My lady, ye may wesshe whan it playse you, For al thing is redy to dyner' / 'whan, my lordes,' she said, 'be redy þerto, I am playsed.' Whom Anthony ansuerd: 'noble damoyselle, we be al redy whan ye vouchesaf to go therat.' and thenne they toke eche other by þe handes & wesshe.

they wash, and send for the King of Anssay,

And Anthony desired the king of Anssay to be sent for / and made hym sette first of all at the table / and after the pucelle and syn Regnauld / and anthony satte last. And nygh to them satte foure of the noblest barons of the land. And along the halle were [1]other

who sits down to dinner with them.

[1] fol. 119 b.

tables dressed, wherat sette all other gentylmen, barons & squyers, eche one after hys degree. Of the seruyse I nede not to hold you long compte, For they were so nobly & haboundauntly serued, that nothing accordyng to such a ryall feste they wanted of. And whan they had dyned they wesshe handes, and graces were said, and all the tables voyded. thanne said the kyng of Anssay in this manyere: 'Lordes damoyseaulx, vouchesauf to here my wordes. It is trouth that the wyll of god & myn vnfortune hath brought me to that caas, that by your valiauntnes & prowes I am & haue be bothe myself & al my peple dyscomfyte, & ouer that ye haue take me your prysonner / but I ensure you, consideryng your high prowesse, your bounte, & your noble affayres, I am glad & joyous to fynde me now with you, For I shal be the bettre therfore al my lyf naturel; and syth, fayre lordes, þat my presence & long abydyng here with you may nought preuaylle to you / humbly I besech you, as I best can, that it playse you to putte me to raisounable raunson & payement portable to me, so that I be not al dystroyed nor dysheryted / thaugh it lyeth now in your power / but haue pyte on me, & punysshe me not aftir the regarde of my follysshe enterpryse / how be it þat rygour of justice requyreth it.' 'By my hed,' said Anthony, 'who that shuld punysshe you after the regarde of the grete iniurye, vylonnye, & dommage that ye haue don, and yet had purposed to do to this noble damoyselle without eny lawful cause / ye were not puyssant to make amendes suffysaunt therof / but for as moche that ye knowleche your synne the lasse penytence shal ye haue / and I wyl wel that ye knowe that my brother & I be not come from our countre hither for hoop of getyng of siluer vpon you nor vpon other / but for desire & hope of getyng of honour & good fame or renommee, without to haue ony wyll or appetyt to

Dinner over, hands washed, and grace said,

the King of Anssay declares himself discomfited,

and beseeches that a reasonable ransom may be named,

and prays that he be not dealt with according to the extreme rigour of justice.

Anthony answers that he would be unable to make amends if he were duly punished for the wrong he had committed;

but as he and his brother seek honour and not silver,

haue mortal rychesses. Wherfore, as touchyng our part, we [1]now remyse & putte you free quytte & at your lyberte / sauf that we taxe you to pay to this noble pucelle all such dommages that she hath had at your cause / and þerof ye shal gyue good pledges or euer ye departe hens, And yet morouer ye shal swere vnto her vpon the holy Euaungiles, that neuer ye shal bere, ner ye shal suffre to be borne ony manere of dommage ne dyshonour to the forsaid pucelle that is here present / but at your power ye shal gyue her ayde, help, & comfort at al tymes anenst all them that iniurye or dommage wold doo to her. And wel I wyl that ye knowe that yf ye wyl not swere & accorde to that I haue said with your good wylle, I shal send you in to such a place, wherout the dayes of your lyf ye shal not escape. And whan the kynge vnderstode these wordes he ansuered in this manyere. 'Sire, I am wyllyng & redy to swere that conuenaunt, yf the noble mayde be content of that ye haue ordeyned & said.' 'By my feyth,' said she, 'I consent me therto, syn it is my lordes plaisure' / and yet morouer said Anthony suche or semblable wordes as folowen /

[1] fol. 120.

they give him liberty on condition that he pay Christine for all the cost his attempt has put her to,

and that he undertakes never again to injure her.

The king agrees to these terms,

and Anthony adds,

'Yet, sire, I haue not al said that ye muste doo, For ye muste doo founde a Pryoure of twelue monkes & the pryour, in suche place there as my lady shal ordeyne / and ye shal endowe & empossesse them with rentes & reuenue conuenable for theire lyuyng & for their successours for euermore / the said monkes & pryour to pray there for the sowles of them that haue be slayne of your part & of myn in this batayll.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne the king, 'I promyse you þat so shal I doo, and good pledges & hostages I shall gyue you, & to my lady to be asured therof.' Thenne sware the kynge by hys feyth vpon the holy Euaungiles that he shuld hold & accomplysshe al that beforesaid is / & gaf & delyuered good hostages / & lettres patentes were

that the king must build and endow a priory for twelve monks,

who shall pray for the souls of those who have been slain in the battle.

The king swears on the Evangels to keep these terms;

therof made vnder hys seal, & the seales of all the [1]barons of his lande. And that don, Anthony said to the kynge / 'I now gyue you, and delyu*er*e free all the prysonners that we & *our* folke haue take, and your tentes & pauyllons also / but the hauoir that is departed among*es* my felawes I may not it rendre or yeld to you / And then*n*e he made to be delyu*er*ed to hym foure thousaund prysouners or therabout, al men of estate & faytte / And thenne the kynge enclyned hym-self, & thanked hym moch therof. What shuld I make long compte / the feste bygan*e* sumptuo*us* & grete thrughe the toun*e* of Lucembourgh, & spe*c*ially in the Castel / and eu*er*yone spake of the grete noblesse and curtoysye that Anthony & regnald his brother had shewed to the king of Anssay /

and he and his lords delivered

[1] fol. 120b.

letters patent agreeing to the same under all their seals.

Anthony then delivers four thousand prisoners to the king.

There is a great feast in Luxembourg.

and all men praise the courtesy of Anthony.

Cap. XXVII. How the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the barons of Lucembourgh to Counseyll*e*.

[2] Thenne called the king of Anssay all the barons of the land to Counseyll, and said to them: 'Fayre lordes, Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged; how be it then*n*e that I haue be yl wyller bothe to you & to yo*ur* lady / the tyme is now come that I wold her hono*ur* and prouffit & youres also / lyst & here, For god hath sent good auenture to you, yf ye can take it in gree.' Then*n*e said the barons: 'Now, sire, syth that ye haue entamed þe matere / vouchesauf to declare vnto vs the sentence therof.' 'Ye moste,' said the kynge, 'fynde the man*er*e & meane that Anthony take yo*ur* lady to his wyf, and he to be yo*ur* lord, For then*n*e ye shal mowe saye surely, þat no nede ye haue of none other / & none so hardy were to take an henne from you ayenst yo*ur* wyll.' And they ansuered thus: 'Sire, yf Anthonye

[1] fol. 121.

The King of Anssay calls the barons of Luxembourg to council,

and advises them to find means to make Anthony marry Christine.

wold do soo we were therof fulH glad & joyous.' 'Now thenne, fayre lordes, lete me deele therwith / and I hope to god I shal brynge the matere to a good ende. Abyde and tary here a lytel, & I shal goo speke with hym.' Thenne came the kynge tofore Anthony, & said: 'Noble man & curtoys damoyseau, the barons of this land desire & pray you, that ye, your brother, & your CounseyH come and entre in to this chambre. For they desyre moch̄ to speke with you for your prouffyt & honour.' 'By my feyth,' said anthony, 'ryght gladly.' And thenne he called to hym hys brother & them of theire CounseyH / & syn entred in to the chambre / and the barons of the land that were there enclyned themself, & made grete reuerence to the two brethern. Thenne spake the kynge of Anssay, & said: 'Fayre lordes, these two noble damoyseaulx are cōme hither at your requeste & prayer / declare now to them your wylle.' And they ansuerde to hym: 'Noble kinge, humbly we beseche you, that ye anounce & shewe to them our entencion, that ye knowe [1]wel ynoughe.' 'By my feyth,' said the kyng', 'I wyl.' And thenne suche wordes as folowen he bygan to say /

[1] fol. 121 b.

The King of Anssay, in the name of the barons of Luxembourg says, seeing that Anthony and his brother will accept no gift of Christine,

'Anthony, noble man, curtoys & valyaunt knight, þe barons of this Countree haue had regarde to the grete honour that ye haue borne & shewed to theire lady, to her lande, & to them / also they haue considered how nought ye wyl take of theyre lady ner of them / and for asmoche that they desyre your wele & honour, they humbly beseche your good grace that it playse the same to graunte to them a yefte, the whicH shaH not lasse your good nor hauoyr / but shal rather augmente your honour.' 'By my feyth, noble kynge, yf it be of that thing' that I may recouere / touching myn honour, I graunt it right gladly.' 'Certainly,' said the king', 'theire requeste is thenne fulfilled, For they desyre none other but your honour.' 'Now, sey thenne,

will Anthony grant them a gift of a kind which will not lessen his possessions?

Anthony answers he will, if it is something he can do honourably.

said Anthony, 'what they desyre of me.' 'Damoyseau,' said the kinge / 'they wyl gyue you the Duchesse of Lucembourgh, þeire liege lady, to your wyf / reffuse not that noble yefte' /

The king offers the Duchess of Luxembourg to Anthony to wife.

Whan anthony vnderstode hym he stood penseful long tyme / and syn said in this manere: 'By my feith, fayre lordes, I supposed neuer to cõme vnto this countre for that quarrell; but sethen I haue accorded to you I shal not gaynsay it / lete now the pucelle be sent for, For yf she be playsed therwith I consent me þerto.' Thenne was the damoyselle fete thither by foure of the noblest barons of the land, the whiche recounted to her al the faytte, wherof she was ryght glad & joyous / how wel she made of it no semblaunt. And whan she entred in to the Chambre she made her obeyssaunce tofore antony, & salued alle the barons there / and as she beheld Anthony she bygan to wexe in her vysage more rede than a rose / and thenne the barons reherced & shewed vnto her all this affayre. And whan the pucelle had herd them speke [1]she ansuerd to them in this manere: 'Fayre lordes, I rendred & yeld thankes & mercys vnto almyghty god, to his blessed moder, and to you also, of the grete honour that now happeth to me, For I pouere orphenyme am not worthy to be addressed in to so highe a place as to haue to my lord the flour of knighthode and the noblesse of alle the world / and of that other part, I wote & knowe wel that ye whiche are my liege men, that bettre knowe myn own affayres than I doo my self / wold not counseylle me that thinge, but it were to my grete prouffyt & honour. Wherfor I ne oughte nor wyl not gaynsey it / but I am al redy to do therof your playsire.' /

When Anthony understands the position,

he asks that the maid should be sent for, and says if she agree, he will consent.

Christine is told what has been done, and is right glad.

She enters the chamber.

When she sees Anthony, her face becomes redder than a rose.

[1] fol. 122.

She declares that though unworthy she is ready to do their pleasure.

Cap. XXVIII. How Anthony espoused Crystyne, Duchesse of Lucembourgh. /

[1] fol. 122 b.

'Forsoothe, noble lady,' said the Barons, 'ye say right wel & manerly.' What shuld I bring forth prolixe or long talkyng? For shortly to say, they were assured togidre with gret joye / and on the next morne after they were espoused & maryed togidre, & was the feste holden right grete & noble, and the peple of the land was ryght joyous whan they vnderstode & knew therof / and þat same nyght lay Anthony with the noble mayde Crystyne, and gate on her a moche valyaunt heyre, & was called Bertrand. The feste thenne endured longe sumptuous & grete, & grete ryalte was seen there / and anthony gaf noble & ryche jewels / and receuyed the homages of the lordes & barons of the land. And the king of Anssay yaf leue to his peuple to retourne into theire Countrees / and abode with anthony with a pryuy[2] meyne for to fulfyll & accomplisshe that he had promysed at traytee makyng of the peas. And soone after the duc Anthony with his brother Regnald and the king of Anssay and the baronnye, went thrugh the land to vysyte the tounes & fortresses & putte al thing in good ordonnaunce / in so moche that euery man said, that he was one of the moost wysest prynce that euer they sawe / and whan he had vysyted all þe land he retourned to Lucembourgh, where the duchesse Cristyne receyued hym right joyously / And thanne by thaduys of his Counseill he adiousted to his armes the shadow or fygure of a Lyon, for cause of the duchery, wherof the lady Cristyne had oftyme prayed hym to fore. And thus they soiourned at Lucembourgh with grete dysport & joye / tyl that a messager came fro the king of Behayne there, whiche was brother to the king [3]of

Anthony and Christine are assured together, and on the next morning they are married.

night begets heir, called

Anthony, Regnald, and the king go through the land and visit the towns and fortresses.

After his return Anthony adds the figure of a lion to his arms.

[3] fol. 123.

A messenger arrives from the King of Bohemia,

[2] Fr. *privet maisgnée.*

Anssay, and was besieged within his toune of praghe by the paynemes & sarrasyns. — who is besieged by the Sarasins at Prague.

Cap. XXIX. How the kyng of behayne sent a messager toward the king of Anssay his brother. /

Thystorye sayth that a messager came to Lucembourgh fro the kyng Federyk of behayne, that — The valiant King Frederick of Bohemia,
was moche valyaunt & a true man, whiche ryght strong susteyned the feyth catholicall ayenst the Sarasyns / It is so that the paynemes entred in to his land / and seeyng hym self not puyssaunt ynough for to gyue — unable to give battle to the Paynims, withdrew to Prague.
them iourney of batayll, drew hym self & his peple with hym in to hys toune of Praghe / and had this kyng Federyke but one only doughtir to his heyre, — His heir is his only daughter, Eglantine.
whiche was named Eglantyne / & certayn it is that he was brother to the king of [1]Anssay. Wherfore he sent — [1] fol. 123 b.
a messager to Lucembourgh there as the kyng of Anssay his brother was at that tyme. And shortly to speke, — He sent a letter to his brother, the King of Anssay,
the messager came & directed his lettres to the king of Anssay, whiche opened & redd it / by the tenoure of whiche he vnderstode & knew the myschief where his — telling him how matters stood.
brother was in / and sayd al on high in heryng of euryone there in this manere: 'Ha / a, Fortune, how — The king after reading it complains against fortune,
art thou so peruerse & so cruell, certaynly[2] wel is he deceyued þat trusteth in the nor in thy yeftes by no manere. it hath not suffysed the to haue ouerthrawen me fro the vppermost stepp of thy whele vnto the lowest / but vtterly wylt dystroye me for euer, whan my brother, whiche [is] one of the moost trewest & valiaunt kyng in the world, thou wylt so dysempare & putte out fro his royaume, yf god of his grace purueye not of remedy therto' / and thenne he retourned hym self — and tells Anthony that it is worse than ever with him,
toward anthony, & sayd: 'Ha / right noble & valyaunt

[2] Fr. version reads: *Certes l'omme est bien deceu que en toy ne en tes dons se fie en riens.*

rynce, it is now with me wers than ever was / For your noble chevalrye & puyssaunce have not only mated me & made lasse myn honour, but also ye have dyscomfyted with me the moost true & valiaunt kyng' that ever was of my lynee, & that more valyauntly hath defended the cristen feyth ayenst themenmyes of god. For Federyke, my brother, noble kyng' of Behayne, beyng sore oppressed & besieged within his toun of praghe by thinfideles & enemyes of god, writeth[1] vnto me ful tenderly for help & socoure / alas, now your grete fayttes in armes have kept me therfro, so that I may not help hym / how be it that al this commeth through [illegible] owne fawte & folysshe enterpryse, For god hath [illegible]nysshed me lasse ynough than I have deseruyd.' And thenne he bygan to make suche sorowe that grete pite it was to see./

124. [illegible]hystorye sheweth in this partie that the duc Anthony was ryght dolaunt & sorowful whan he vnderstode the pyteous bewayllyng' of the king of Anssay, and said to hym in this manere: 'Sire, telle me why ye demene & make such dueyl.' 'By god,' sayd the kynge, 'wel I have cause / loke & see what the tenoure of this *letre* specyfyeth.' Thenne toke anthony the *letre* and redde it al ouer, Wherby he vnderstode & knew the grete myserye & myschief wherin Zelodyus, kyng' of Craco, held Federyk', kyng' of Behayne, besieged within the Cite of praghe. And thenne the noble duc Anthony considerying' the grete myschief wherinne the Cristen peple was hold by the puyssaunce of the paynemes, his herte was al replenysshed with pite, and said in hym self that yf he might the Sarasyns shuld bye full derly the peyne whiche they made the Cristen peple to bere / and he thenne said to the kynge: 'Sire, yf I wold helpe you for to socoure your brother, wold ye not be soone redy to goo thither-

He is given the letter to read, whereby he understands that Zelodius, King of Cracow, is besieging Frederick of Bohemia at Prague.

Anthony asks the king whether he could be soon ready to accompany him to succour Frederick.

[1] vnriteth in MS.

ward?' And whan the kyng vnderstod thoos wordes he kneled doune tofore the duc, & said: 'Sire, yf ye wyl graunte me so moche of your grace / I swere & promyse you feythfully that I shall make Regnald your brother kyng of Behayne after the decesse of my brother, whiche is elder than I almost xx^ti yere. For wete it that he hath none heyre sauf only a ryght fayre doughter, which is cleped Eglantyne / and she is about xv yere of age, & that pucelle shall I gyue, yf ye vouchesauf, to Regnauld your brother.' 'By my feyth,' said thenne Anthony, 'and I accorde therunto. / goo thanne hastly to Anssay and make your mandement, and be with vs ayen within this thre wykes, and lodge your peuple in yonder medowe, Where your tentes [1]as yet ben, and in the meane season I shal sende for my men, whiche are with a knyght of myn at the Leffe, where men had doon wrong to hym.' And the king ansuerde, 'Noble & curteys lord, he rewarde you therof, that suffred deth for vs and bytter passyon.' And thenne he toke his leue of the duc and of the duches, of Regnauld, & of all the baronnye there, & syn mounted on horsback / and with his owne meyne rode tyl he came in to his land of anssay, sorowful for his losse & joyfull for the socours that the Duc Anthony promysed to hym, for to helpe his brother ayenst the panemes & enemyes of god. /

The king is glad, and says that if Anthony will go,

he will make Regnaid king of Bohemia on his brother's death.

Anthony then asks the king to go to Anssay and to return with his people in three weeks.

[1] fol. 124 b.

The king thanks him,

and takes his leave.

He rides to Anssay, sorrowful for his losses, but glad that Anthony will help his brother against the Paynims.

The veray hystorye testyfyeth that so long rode the kinge of Anssay that he came in his land, where he was welcommed of his baronnye / and soone went to vysyte & see his doughter Metydee, that was not yet two year old / and syn retourned with his barons / to whome he shewed al his affayre, and how he moste go socoure his brother; Also how Anthony & Regnald his brother shuld helpe hym therto with al theire pussaunce. 'By feyth,' said thenne the barons, 'syth it is soo that thoo two brethern medle with this enterpryse,

The king arrives in his land, and visits his daughter Metydee.

He returns to his barons, and explains all his affairs.

The barons think that as the brethren of Lusignan

are going to help their king's brother, they are sure of success.

hit may not fare but wel. For ayenst theire puyssaunce & worthynes may none withstand nor abyde / hast you thenne to make your cryees & mandement, For we al shall go with you.' Thenne made the kyng his oost to be boden & sent for, & prayd al his frendes & alyez / & within a lytel space of tyme he assembled about seuene thousand fyghtyng men / and departed fro his royalme, whiche he lefte in good gouernaunce vnder a noble baron of the land. And syn dide so moche by his journeys, that at thende of thre wykes he came & lodged hym & his oost byfore Lucembourgh, [1]in the medow where his tentes were lefte. And thenne were also cõme the dukes peuple, that were in nombre fyue thousand helmets and a thousand V.C. archers & crosbowe men, beside them of the duchery, that were in nombre thre thousand, of þe whiche anthony toke with hym two thousand and the other he lefte behynd for the sauegarde of the land / of þe whiche he ordeyned chief captayne and protectour a noble baron of poytou / and that was the lord of Argemount. /

The king assembles a host of seven thousand men.

He leaves his land in charge of a noble baron, and in three weeks is back in Luxembourg.

[1] fol. 125,

The duke has nine thousand five hundred men;

[illegible]sand of [illegible]e leaves [illegible]o guard [illegible], which [illegible] charge [illegible]rd of [illegible]nt.

Cap. XXX. How the duc Anthony toke hys leue of the Duchesse Crystyne, and went toward praghe with hys oost.

Now sayth here thystorye, that whan the Duc Anthony toke his leue of the Duchesse hys wyf, she was right dolaunt & sory in herte, how wel she durst make no semblaunt / but she prayed hym to retourne assoone as he goodly myght / and he said to her that so shuld he doo / And, morouer, he said to [2]her in this manere / 'Duchesse, take good heede of your fruyte that groweth in your blood, and cherysshe your self / and yf goddis grace gyue that it be a sone, make hym to be baptysed & named Bertrand, For thus is my playsire. Thenne they embraced & kyssed eche

Christine is sad at Anthony's departure, and begs him to return soon.

[2] fol. 125 b. Anthony bids her take care of herself on account of her unborn babe, and directs if it be a boy he is to be named Bertrand.

other, takyng leue one of other / and syn departed the duc & came hys peuple, and made his trompettes to be sowned. Thenne mounted spere men on horsback, and bygane euery man to marche forth in fayre aray. The vantgarde conduyted & lede the kynge of anssay and Regnald with hym, whiche was mounted vpon a hye Courser, armed of al pyeces except his helmet, and held a grete staf in hys fyst, and putte his men in ordre ful wel, & semed wel to be a prynce courageous & of hye enterpryse / and after folowed the Cartes, Charyots & bagage, & the grete batayll / and after siewed the ryergarde, whiche Anthony conduyted in fayre ordynaunce of batayll, For it was tolde hym þat in that countre were many theevys / but the duc Anthony manded, & sent word fro fortresse to fortresse that yf they were so bold to take on hym or on hys peuple ony thing, that he shuld punysshe them in suche wyse that other shuld take ensample therof. And so he passed thrugh all the Leffe / and no man was so hardy that he durst take ony thing on hys oost. It is trouth that on an euen he lodged hym tofore the Cite Acon[1] with all hys oost / and the Citezeyns there made & presented to hym grete yeftes of ryches, wherof he thanked them moche, and proffred to them his seruyse, yf they myster of it. And on the morne after the masse he deslodged, & so long marched fourth on his way with his oost, that he came & lodged vpon the ryuere of Ryne, which is grete & meruaylleus. And [2]they of Coloyne made grete daunger to lete passe the oost thrughe the Cite at brydge / wherof anthonye was angry & dolaunt, and fyersly sent worde to them how he had entencion to reyse the siege, that the king of Craco had layed, & sette with lx thousand Sarasyns tofore the Cite of praghe, wherinne was in grete oppression and dystres the king of behayne,

The army marches away to the trumpet sound.

The vanguard is led by Regnald and the King of Anssay;

then comes the baggage in the middle, as

Anthony was told the country was full of thieves, and then the rearguard led by Anthony in good order.

At last they arrive at the Rhine.

[2] fol. 126.

The men of Cologne object to the host passing through the city.

Anthony angrily tells them the reason of the expedition,

[1] Fr. *Ays:—Aix la Chapelle*, Ger. *Aachen*.

and that they shuld send hym word yf they held with the payxemes or nat / and vpon that he shuld take hys adwys what he shuld doo / and also that magre them he shuld fynd good passage, but not so short as by theire Cite. And whan they of Coloyne understode this mandement, & were wel informed of the grete prowes & fyersnes of the two bretheren, they were dredfull & doubtous. And soone after they sent toward Anthony foure of pe notablest & moost worshipfull burgeys of the cyte, whiche came & made to hym ryght honourable and humble reuerence / and wondred moche of hys fyersnes and proude contenawnce / not that withstanding, they said to hym in this manere: 'right high & myghty prynce, the Citezeyns and commynalte of Coloyne haue sent vs toward your good grace. And know ye pat gladly they shal suffre you & al your oost to passe peasibly thrugh the Cite, soo that ye shal kepe & preserue them fro al dommage that your peple might here vnto them.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'yf I had be wyllyng to doo the contrary of theire wyll, they shuld haue had of me knowlege therof / and also I haue no cause to doo soo, For I knowe not that they haue mysdoon to me of ony thing, nor to the myn nother / How wel they cause me to thinke other wyse / goo and telle to them, yf they remembre not of old some mysdede don to them by myn auncestry, or of the Dukes, my predecessours, wherof as yet they be [1]not pacyfyed & accorded / that they wyl suffre me & myn oost passe surely / or ellys to send me wordes therof.' Whan they vnderstode hys wordes & knew his wyll, they retourned to the Cyte, & announced to the Commynaltee the mandement of the Duc Anthony. And they anone assembled theire counseyll, & the auncyent men / and found that neuer they had no hate ne dyscorde with the dukes of Lucembourgh, nother to theyre frendes

Anthony replies that he wishes them no harm,

and inquires if any of his ancestors had at any time done them any misdeed.

[1] fol. 126 b.

The burgesses return to the city, and tell their story to the Council,

who can remember no quarrel with the Dukes of Luxembourg.

nor alyez / and that sethen he was so noble a man & so valyaunt, they shuld lete hym passe, and al his oost also. And they remanded to hym theire wylle *with* grete yeft*es* of ryches that they made to be presented to hys grace / and purveyed for hys oost moch̄ of vytayH, as bred, wyn*e*, and flesshe / & ootys for theire horses / And whan the Duc vnderstode theire ansuere & sawe theire grete yeft*es*, he thanked them moche / and was joyo*us* of that they of Coloyne wold be hys frend*es*. Wherfor he said to them, that yf they had nede of hym & of hys powere, he was redy at theyre co*m*maundement / and they thanked hym ryght humbly. And the duc Anthony made to gyue to them that had brought to hym the said presents of vytayH, many ryche yeft*es*, that asmoch̄ were worth, or more than the presents & yeft*es* gyuen to hy*m* by the toune, For he wold not that thabytants of the Cyte shuld suppose or thinke that he wold haue ought of them for nought.

They agree to let Anthony and his host pass,

and send him many gifts for himself and victuals for his host.

When the duke understands their answer, he thanks them,

and gives them as rich gifts and presents as had been sent to him.

In this partye sheweth thystorye, how that same nyght soiourned the oost byfore Coloyne, & was wel refresshed of them of the Cite & of theire vytayH. For as the duk*es* co*m*mandeme*n*t was / they were departed in suche wyse tha[t] eue*r*y man there had part therof. And on the morn*e* erly, [1]the Duc entred into the Cite w*ith* hym, two houndred men of armes / and made his cryees, vpon peyne of deth, that none were so hardy to take ony thing of them of the toun; but he payed wel for after raison. And soone after passed the vantgarde in fayre aray oue*r* the bridge, and so forth̄ thrugh̄ the Cyte. And so passed al thoost, and lodged them at the op*er* syde of the ryue*re* of Ryn / and it was about euen tyme, or eue*r* al the Cartes, Charyots, & bagage were past. And that nyght the Duc & grete part of his baro*n*nye lodged w*ith*in the Cyte, where as grete hono*ur* was doon to them. The

The host remains opposite Cologne for the night.

[1] fol. 127.

In the morning the river is crossed, and the host marches through the city.

The duke and his barons stay all the night in the city,

and give a great supper, and great gifts to the ladies of the town.

duc Anthony bode at souper *with* hym aH the ladyes of the Cyte, & festyed them ryght honorably, & gaf grete yeftes ar he departed in so moche that they of the Cyte wysshed hym to be theire lord.

He leaves in the morning, after thanking the townspeople,

In the morne the Duc toke his leue of them of the toun / and thanked them moche of the grete honour that they had shewed to hym & to his barons. And they ansuerd aH *with* one voyce: 'Noble Duc / the Cite / we & aH *our* goodes ben at your commandement more than to ony other lord that marcheth about

who offer him aid.

vs / and spare vs not of nothing that we may doo for you, For we be now, & shal euer be, redy to do you playsure, ayde, & comfort at your mandement and first callyng' / And he departed fro them, and went in to his tente. And on the morne as he came from the

As the duke comes from mass,

masse, & commanded the trompettes to be sowned for to departe & meve / there came fro the Cite foure

four knights and five hundred men arrive from the city.

knightes wel mounted on horsbak, & armed of aH pyeces sauf the helmet, whiche alyghted byfore the duckes tente *with* foure houndred men of armes, and C crosbowe men in theire felawship. These knightes made their obeyssaunce / and syn sayd in this manere: 'Right noble & puyssaunt duc, the Cite & commynalte of Coloyne recommande them to your good grace / and where as þey haue sene so moche of noblesse & curtoysye in you / [1]desyryng right affectuelly to be

[1] fol. 127 b.

The knights say that the commonalty of Cologne wish to be his allies, and ask him to accept the help of the five hundred men of arms.

frendes & alyez vnto you, they send you foure hondred men of armes & an C crosbowes, al payed of theire wages for tene monethis day, for to goo *with* you where so euer it playse you to goo.' 'By my feyth,' sayd Anthony, 'thankyng be to them, whome I am moche beholden to / this curtoysye is not to be reffused / & wete it I shal not forgete it / but remembre in tyme & place.' 'Sire,' said one of the foure knightes, 'there

One of the knights offers to guide the army to Cracow.

nys none of vs foure, but he knowe wel al the way fro hens to Craco / and yf it mystier, we shal guyde & lede

you wel & surely thrughe all the passages & ouer al the ryueres betwix this & that.' To that ansuerd the Duc & said / 'this that ye say hurteth not our affayre, and I gaynsay not your sayeng', whan tyme shalbe.' Thenne he putte them in ordynaunce, and receyued them vnder his banere. And penne desloged the vantgarde, the grete batayll, & the ryeregarde, and marched on theire waye in fayre aray so long', that they entred in the land of Bavyere, nygh to a grete Cite named Nuenmarghe, where as the Duc of Ode was with a grete companye of peuple, For he doubted the kyng Zelodus of Craco, that had besieged the kynge Federyke of Behayne, and held hym in grete necessite, For he had with hym foure score paynemes / and the Duc Ode was doubtous lest he shuld come vpon hym, yf he subdued and dyscomfyted the kyng Federyke. And therfore, he had assembled hys Counseyl to knowe & see what best was to doo. /

The duke accepts the company, and puts them under his banner.

The army marches to Bavaria, nigh to Nuenmarghe,

where the Duke Ode is taking council what to do about the siege.

Thenne cam to the Cite an auncyent knyght that was of the Duc Ode, to whom he said after his obeyssaunce made: 'My lord, by my sowle I come from the marches of Almayne / but there is [1]commyng a grete oost hitherward of the moost goodlyest men of armes and best arayed that euer I sawe in my dayes / but I wot not where they purpose to goo / but so moche I know, that they draw them self hitherward.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc, 'I gyue me grete wonder what folke they may be, yf the king of Anssay had not be of late dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh, I shuld suppose that it were he that wold socoure his brother Federyke ayenst the Sarasyns / and on my sowle yf it were he I shuld goo with hym for to helpe his brother.' 'My lord,' said the knyght, 'it were wysely doo to haue knowleche certayn what folke they be, ne yf they purpose other wyse than wele.' 'Sire knyght,' said thanne the Duc, 'ye muste your self goo to knowe & reporte

[1] fol. 128.

An ancient knight tells Duke Ode of the approach of a great host.

The duke says if it were the King of Anssay he would go with him to help Frederick.

The duke sends the knight to ascertain what host it is.

the certaynte of it, syn ye have sene them" / And he answerde, "By my feyth, my lord, I am redy therto." And soone he departed, and so long he rode that he perceyued thoost in a valey by a ryuere. There he sawe grete compaynyes of gentyl men here & there, some castyng the barre of yron / other held theire spere & shild and exercysed them self that one on pat other / some assayed theire harneys with shoot, with strokes of swerdes, and in many other apperteyse of armes they exercyted them self. 'By my feyth,' said thenne the knight / 'there is fayre mayntene and noble contenaunce of men of armes / suche folke is to be doubted and dredde.' Thenne he loked on the ryght syde vpon a lytel mountaynne & sawe the grete batayll, and sawe the watche and the scouters al about the oost. 'By my feyth,' said the knight that moche thing had sene in his dayes / 'this ben worthy men of were and able to subdue eny lande.' And thenne he entred in to thoost / and demanded after hym that had the gouernaunce & guydyng of it / And soone he was brought tofore Anthony. And whan he saw the Duc he was moche abasshed of his facion / but alwayes he salued hym ryght curteysly / and syn said to hym, 'My lord, the Duc Ode hath sent me toward you to wete of you what ye seeke in hys land / and yf ye thinke or purpose other wyse than wele / also what ye be that conduyteth so fayre company of peuple that I see here assembled. For he woteth wel that ye come not hither with suche a felawship without it be for som grete affayre' / 'Frend,' sayd anthony / 'tell your lord that we ne demande ought of hym, nor suppose not to dommage his land in no wyse. Also ye may telle hym that it is the kinge of Anssay / Anthony of Lusynen, Duc of Lucembourgh, and Regnald his brother, with theire puyssaunce that supposen to goo reyse the siege of praghe, that the Sarasyns haue besieged.' 'Sire,' said thaun-

for the governour. He is brought before Anthony.

The knight says he is sent by Duke Ode to inquire why the host had come into his land.

Anthony answers that he is the Duke of Luxembourg, and with him is his brother and the King of Anssay, and that they are going to raise the siege of Prague.

cyent knyght, 'god graunte you good vyage.' And so he departed and retourned toward the Duc Ode of Bauyere, to whom he reherced as aboue is said, and shewed hym the fyersnes and facion of Anthony, and the contenaunce of his oost / sayeng' that they were folke to be redoubted & dred. 'By my feyth,' said thenne the duc Ode, 'It commeth of noble courage to that two bretheren to haue come fro so ferre lande for to seke auenture of cheualerye & honour, and also for to come & gyue ayde & socour to kynge Federyke anenst the enemyes of god / and I promyse god that shal not be without me, For it shuld be tourned to me to grete shame yf that I went not thither / seeyng that he is my Cousyn, & that my land is so nygh his royalme / and that the straungers come fro so ferre for to ayde & helpe hym ayenst the paynemes.' And thenne had the Duc Ode [1]made his mandement but of late, and had assembled al redy foure thousand fighting men. What shold I make long compte / thoost desloged and passed byfore Murmych. And thanne the Duc Ode yssued out of the toun with a fayre companye of peuple, and came and presented hym self and al his peple tofore the kinge of Anssay, Anthony / and his broþer, whiche Joyously receyued them / and thus marched thoost forth in fayre aray and good ordynaunce by the space of six dayes. And now seaceth thistorye to speke of them, and speketh of the king' Federyke and of the siege. /

The knight returns, delivers his message, and describes the host.

The King thinks the brethren courageous,

and resolves to go with them

against the paynims.

[1] fol. 129.

He assembles four thousand men,

and presents himself with his company to the King of Anssay and the brethren.

Here sheweth thistorye how the puyssaunce of Zelodyus, kyng of Craco, was ryght grete / and the king Federyk durst not goodly haue yssued / but alwayes he scarmousshed ofte with his enemys / and almost dayly was at the barrers / the medlee was grete & stronge / and there were within the toune about a houndred helmets of Hongery, that were valyaunt knightes & good men of werre / the whiche yssued /

Frederick is unable to cope with Zelodius,

though he often tries skirmishes.

ofte & dide grete dommage to the sarasyns. It happed
Early one morning the pagans assault the town.
on a mornyng erly that the paynemes gaf a grete sawte
to the toun / and the king Federyke with his peuple
yssued out vnto the barrers / and there the scarmyssh-
ing bygan grete & mortall / and so manfully faught
the kyng, that with the help of his men he gretly
dommaged his enemyes / and made them to cesse of the
Frederick drives them back to their camp;
sawte / & made them to goo back vnto theire lodgys.
And that tyme was the kyng of Craco mounted vpon a
but the king of Cracow comes with fifteen thousand Saracens,
grete hors, his banere to the wynd accompanyed with
xv M[l] sarasyns, and came in fayre ordynaunce to the
batayll. There was many stroke gyuen & receyued /
and forces Frederick to retreat.
and by force of armes the kynge & his peple was con-
strayned to withdrawe hym back vnto the barrers.
There was grete occysyon made, For horryble strokes
were gyuen of bothe sydes, and the king Federyke re-
comforted wel his peple, For he dide grete faytte of
Frederick sees Zelodius, [1] fol. 129 b.
armes of his owne handes. And whan he perceyued
[1]kyng Zelodyus that sore dommaged his peple, he
sporyd his horse and toke his sword in his fyst / and
cuts his way up to him,
rane smyttyng on the lyft syde and on the ryght syde
vpon his enemyes tyl he made place, and came &
and smites him on his helmet.
smote Zelodius vpon his helmet, by suche strengthe &
vertue that he made hym to enclyne vpon his hors neck
al astonyed / and lytel faylled that he was not ouer-
thrawen to the erthe, For he lost bothe the steropes /
Zelodius is succoured by his men;
but soone he was socoured of his men whiche redreced
hym vp ryght / and the king Federyk adreced hys
swerd vpon a payneme, & suche a stroke he gaf hym
that he slew hym therwith. The king of Craco was
thenne redreced as said is / and he perceyuyng the kyng
Federyk / that hewed legges & armes, & casted to
therthe al that he recountred of the sarasyns / had
grete anger in his herte and came nygh at hym / and
and launches a dart at Frederick,
with an archegaye or dart launched at hym, by suche
strengthe that the dart entred so depe into hys body

that the hed of it was sene at the back syde of hym. That doon the kynge Federyk that felt the dystresse of deth myght no more hold hym self up ryght, but fell & reuersed deed fro his hors to the ground. Thenne was his peple full heuy and dolaunt, and withdrew them self anoone, and reentred into the tounes & shetted the gates after them. And thenne byganne the sorowe to be grete in the town al about. /

which pierces his body through and through.

He falls to the ground.

His people withdraw to the town and close their gates.

Cap. XXXI. How the kinge of Craco dide do take the body of kynge Federyke that he had slayn and commanded it to be brent.

[1]The king of Craco thenne glad & joyous for cause of kyng Federykes deth, commanded the corps to be brought byfore the gate, & there to be brent for to haue abasshed the more þem of the Cite, seyng theyre king in a fyre. Whan the Cyteseyns & commynalte of praghe knew the deth of theire kynge / and the grete tyrannye of Z[el]odyus, they made grete sorowe / but in espescial the pucelle Eglantyne, his doughtir, was sorowfull in herte, and so pyteously bewaylled and lamented, that grete pyte it was to here & see / sayeng such or semblable wordes: 'Ha / god! who might comforte me whan I see my faders deth byfore me, & the total dyscomfyture of hys peple, & also the destruction of my self, For I see no way wherby myght come ony socoure vnto me, For I haue herd say that myn vncle, the kynge of Anssay, on whome I trusted more than to all [2]other men in the world, hath be dyscomfyted tofore Lucembourgh. Ha, veray god! creatour of Creatures, I ne wote other reffuge for me for to escape the tyraunt Z[el]odyus handes than the mercyfull bosom of your grace to hyd me therin. O ryght noble, ryght puyssaunt, & ryght excellent pryncesse! virgyne & moder of god! Marye, my lady & maistresse / haue

[1] fol. 130.

Zelodius commands Frederick's body to be burnt.

The citizens of Prague are sorrowful for the death of their king.

His daughter, the maid Eglantine, piteously mourns her father's death,

[2] fol. 130 b.

and calls on the Virgin Mary.

compassion on me! poure orphenyn & faderles.' Certaynly the pucelle Eglantyne bewayled, sygbed, & complayned so piteously that no personne beheld̄ her / but they were of pyte constrayned to wepe how hard̄ that theire hertes had be, For in her anguysshe & sorowe she made none ende, but euer she wept & rendred teeris habundauntly. Thenne the commynaltee of the toune, sore agast and timerous, were in propos & wylle for to yeld̄ the toun & themself ouer to the kyng Z[el]odyus, þat made them to be requyred & admounested[1] therof / shewing to them how they myght not long endure nor withstand̄ ayenst his grete puyssaunce / & that theire Catell̄ & goodes shuld be saued to them / but yf he toke theire Cyte byforce, he shuld make þem bothe theire wyues & children to be brent al to asshis, as theire kynge was. Wherfore the cyte henge in balaunce to be delyuered & gyuen ouer to the Sarasyns. But emonge other were there two good men, true & auncyent knightes, that said in this manere: 'False peuple, what wyl you now doo, yet is not the messager come agayn that rode toward the king of Anssay for socour, take courage & comfort your self, For within short space of tyme ye shal here good tydynges / thinke that ye be Cristen / & that Criste shall̄ helpe vs or it be long.' And whan they herd̄ hym so speke they were all̄ recomforted, & ansuerd̄ to the paynemes ambaxatours that they shuld̄ neuer yeld̄ them ouer vnto the last [2]mans lyf of all̄ them. And whan the kynge Zelodyus knewe theire wyll, he was wood̄ angry & sorowful, & sware his goddes that he shuld putte al on fyre. /

Those who see her grief are full of pity.

The commonalty propose to yield,

but two true knights upbraid them,

and advise them to wait tidings from the King of Anssay:

and bid them trust in Christ.

The people are comforted, and refuse to yield,

[2] fol. 131.

whereat Zelodius is angry.

The kynge[3] Zelodyus was mouyd to yre & grete anger for thansuere of the commynalte of Pragh̄, wherfor he scarmysshed them sore, & gaf grete sawtes to theire Cite, but the noble and valyaunt men that

He sorely assaults their city.

[1] Fr. *faisoit remonstrer.* [3] kynge of: MS.

were w*ith*in deffended it strongly. I wyl now retourne to speke of the Duc anthony and of hys brother Regnauld, of the kynge of Anssay / and also of Ode, Duc of Bauyere, whiche conduyted theyre oost, & marched fourth hastly, For they had tydinge*s* of the myserye that they of the Cite were in / but nothing they knew of the deth of king' Federyke. And on a thursday at euen, they lodged themself nygh to a grete ryuere, a leghe & a half fro the Cite of Praghe / and that same euen was a knight of that same Countree that was in theire felawship co*m*manded that on the morne*e* he shuld anou*n*ce theire co*m*myng to them of the Cite / and he on the morne*e* erly mou*n*ted on hys hors, and toke his way toward the Cite / and after a grete sawte was seaced for fawte of daylight, he cam vnto a lytel posterne / and they of the garde there knew hym anone, and lete hym entre the toun / and as soone as he was entred he rode softly along' by the gardes, cryeng alowde in this manyere: 'Lordes, deffende you wel, For here com*m*eth the floure of knighthode to yo*u*r socou*r*s & helpe with the kinge of Anssay, & anoone ye shal see them bygynne the batayllе / and be a good chere, For on my hed not one Sarasyn shall escape, but he be deed or take.' And [1] whan they vnderstode hym, they bygane to make such a Cry, & so lowde, that it was wonder to here sayeng: 'Lawde & thanking' be to god almighty þerof.' And the*n*ne they employed them self, & defended so valiauntly, that no sarasyn durst no lenger abyde nygh the wall a bowe shotte / & many paynemes were the*n*ne slayne, in so moche that the dyches watre was as tourned & dyed w*ith* theyre blood. And whan Zelodyus sawe the grete & courageou*s* deffense of them of the toune he was abassched, & me*r*uaylled moche of theire joyful contena*u*nce. /

Thenne whan Zelodyus perceyued that his folke w*ith*drewe them self thus backward, he was

The relieving host marches hastily,

and arrives on a Thursday evening a league and a half from Prague.

A knight is sent to the city with the news of their approach.

He enters, and bids the lords fight well because of the succour that is near.

[1] fol. 132 b.

The people thank God for the good news,

and slay many Saracens.

Zelodius is sorrowful that this assault has failed.

sorowfull & dolorus, & had grete meraylle, why & wherfore they of the town were of so outrageous deffense more than in other sawtes tofore gyuen / but soone after hys dolour & sorowe encreced moch more, For

Anthony and his host approach.

anthony approached in fayre aray. He, & Reynald hys brother, conducyted the first batayll; and the kyng of Ansuy, & his Cousin the duc of Bayyere, held the aryer garde. There had ye seen fayre companye of gentilmen in good aray / the baners & standarts dysployed / helmets & salades wel garnysshed with fyn gold & syluer, which resplendysshed full clere / And so they cam & sawe the Cite that the paynemes assaylled,

They see the Saracens' camp.

& gaaf grete sawte / & sawe theire tentes & pauyllons, where were grete numbre of sarasyns. Thenne made

Anthony calls a halt, and orders archers to his wings.

Anthony his folk to tary and be styl a while, tyl the aryergarde were nygh to them / and ordeyned archers & crosbowes to be vnder the wynges of hys batayll. and thenne they were apperceyued, [1]and seen of the

1 Sid. 122.

The paynims perceive their coming, and tell Zelodius.

paynemes, which went & made knowlege therof to theire kyng, sayeng in this manyere: 'Sire, leue the sawte, that in an euyl heure was bygonne / wete it that such a multitude of Cristen peple be comming hitherward that all the feldes be couered with.' Whan

He is wroth, and commands his men to assemble in battle array.

Zelodyus vnderstode these tydynges he was wood wroth, & gretly abasshed, and lefte the sawte, and made the trompettes to sowne the retrayte, & that euery man shuld assemble togidre vnder hys banere. he thenne ordeyned his bataylles as he coude best. And Anthony commanded hys trompettes to be sowned

Anthony's host advances against the paynims.

for to bygynne the batayll / and they approched the paynemes, keping good ordynaunce. Thenne bygan

The air is full of arrows.

the shotte to be grete & thikk as snowe in the ayer / and syn the men of armes medled togidre, and entred one vpon other, & valyauntly brake speres, & ouerthrew

Christians and paynims fight manfully.

eche other as it happed. The Cristen faught corageously / and the paynemes withstode & susteyned theire

grete strokes manfully. There was many sarasyn reuersed to therth & slayn. Wel assayed the poyteuyns them self, & dyde grete faytte of armes vpon theire enemyes. But the kingꝰ Zelodyus putte his sheld tofore his brest, & held his spere alowe, and broched his hors with the sporys, & rane vpon the Crysten; and aftir hym folowed xv Mł paynemes. Zelodius dide there grete merueyłle of armes, and ouerthrew many a Cristen to therthe, & gretly dommaged them. For his folke that folowed at back syde of hym faught meruayllously. Thenne cryed the kyngꝰ Zelodius his baner: 'Lordes, barons, auaunce, the journey is oure, For they may not vs escape' / And they of poytou receyued them moch hardyfly, and wete it wel that there was grete losse of peple of bothe partyes. Thenne came duc Anthony with the swerd[1] in his fyst / and whan he perceyued his peple recule a lytel, nygh he deyed for sorowe / and cryed: 'Lusynen!' with a high voys, and putte hym emongꝰ the sarasyns more hastyfully than thundre falleth fro heuen, and faught & smote on eche syde vpon his enemyes, and ouerthrew all them that he recountred. and his peuple folowed at back syde of hym that were al wondred of his grete fayttes & valyauntnes, For there ne was so hardy a sarasyn þat durst hym abyde / but fledd & reculed vnto theire tentes. And this seyngꝰ the kingꝰ Zelodius, he cryed: 'auaunt, lordes & barons, and deffend you / how is that for one man alone that ye flee / it is to you grete shame.' And aftir these wordes he retourned, & assembled his peple ayen togidre, and gaaf grete batayl mortal vnto anthony & the poytevyns. Thenne came thadmyral with ten thousand fighting men / and thenne enforced the batayl ryght horryble, For there were many of the sarasyns slayn and sore hurt.

Zelodius with a great host rushes on the Christians,

and greatly hurts them,

and cries 'the day is ours.'

[1] fol. 132 b.

Anthony sees his people retreating; he cries 'Lusignan,' and falls on the Saracens like thunder from heaven.

The Saracens flee.

Zelodius upbraids them,

they rally and fight again.

The admiral arrives with ten thousand men.

Cap. XXXII. How the king of Craco was slayn in bataylle.

[1] fol. 122. The vantguard, under the King of Ansay, comes up and fights vigorously.

[1] Thenne came the ryerward that the kinge of Ansay and the Duc Ode conduyted þat entred vygorously into the batayll, where was grete occysyon, For the batayll was mortal on bothe partes. And vpon that arryued Anthony & Regnauld, that entred by one assent vpon the sarasyns, making suche occysyon that there ne was sarasyn ne Cristen, but he merueylled of þe merueyllous strokes that they gaf. And in conclusyon there was none so hardy a sarasyn that durst withstand them, For whar someuer they sawe them they fledd, and so strongly faught the cristen / that the sarasyns tourned theire back, puttyng them self to flight / but the kyng Zelodyus valyauntly encouraged & reteyned them togidre. And wete it wel that he dide grete dommage to the Crysten. But whan Regnauld perseyued the king Zelodius, that rendred so grete a stoure & batayll mortall to hys folke / he sware that he shuld dye or he shuld delyuere the place fro the sarasyns / Thenne tourned he the targe behynde and sporyd his hors by grete yre and came vpon the king of Craco. And whan Zelodyus the kynge sawe hym cõme he haunced hys swerd and smote hym vpon his helmet / but his swerd glenced doune by the lyfte syde vnto his thye, & hurted hym in such manere that the blood rane vnto his foote / And thenne Regnauld þat was full dolaunt, with bothe handes lyfte vp his swerde and smote the kynge Zelodyus vpon the helmet with so grete yre that he was therwith astonyed, in so moche that the swerd fell out of his hand and bowed vpon his hors neck, and therwith brake the taches of his helmet. And thenne Regnauld retourned & smote hym ayen, and charged hym with so many hydouse strokes that he moste nedes parforce fall to therth.

[2] fol. 122 b. Zelodius encourages his folk, and does great damage.

Anthony and Regnauld give marvellous strokes,

and wherever they are they cause the Sarasens to run.

Regnauld spurs his horse against him.

Zelodius hurts him in the thigh,

but Regnauld hits him back,

And fourthwith was the prees grete aboute hym bothe of horses & men / but hys peple came & socoured hym fro the horses feet / but in conclusyon they coude not obteyne nor hym ayde / but he was slayne. And whan the sarasyns sawe that they went to flight / And the cristen peple pursiewed them manfully and slough them bothe in feld & in wodes. And wete it wel that there escaped but few, and thus was the batayll fynysshed. And this don the Cristen lodged them in the tentes of the sarasyns. And the two brethern / the king of Anssay and the Duc Ode departed with a C. [1]knyghtes with them toward the Cite, where as they were nobly receyued, For the Citezeyns had so grete Joye of the vyctorye that they had wonne vpon the sarasyns. And thenne came they & descended at the palays ryall. Thenne came the pucelle Eglantyne and recountred her vncle the king of Anssay and all his barons.

and though Zelodius' people come to defend their king,

Reynauld slays him.

The Saracens then flee;

many are slain,

and but few escape.

The Christians take the camp of the Saracens.

[1] fol. 134.

The brethren enter the town.

Cap. XXXIII. How the kynge Zelodius & the other saracyns were brent and bruyled.

The pucelle Eglantyne was thenne joyfull & glad for the dyscomfyture of the paynemes and also of the commyng of her uncle. But not withstanding she had sorowe at herte for the kynge, her faders deth, that she might not forget it. And neuertheles, whan she cam byfore her vncle she enclyned & honourably made to hym her obeyssaunce, sayeng: 'My right dere vncle, ye be right welcomme / playsed god that ye were arryued two [2]dayes rather, For thenne ye had found my fader on lyue, whiche Zelodius hath slayne & made to be brent & bruled to the moost vytupere & shame of the Catholycal feyth.' And whan the kyng of Anssay vnderstod it he was wroth & dolaunt, and sware that thus and in suche wyse shuld he do of the

The maid Eglantine is glad for the victory.

She welcomes her uncle, the King of Anssay,

[2] fol. 134 b.

and tells him how Zelodius has burnt her father's body.

He swears

kynge Zelodius and of all the sarasyns, that he coude fynde ded or alyue. And anoon were cryees made thrugh the toun, that of euery hous one man shuld goo in to the feld for to assemble the ded bodyes of the sarasyns togidre vpon a mountayne, and that men shuld bryng thither wod ynough for to brule & brēne the corps. And thus it was don. And was the corps of Zelodyus sette vpon a stake so that it was seen aboue al other / And so was the fyre grete about them / and so they were al brent & bruled / and all the ded bodyes of the cristen men that were found were buryed there as cristen people ought to be. And þese thinges doon, the kyng[e] of [illegible]y made al thing[e] to be redy for to make thobseq[ue] [illegible]f the king[e] his brother, and that moche honoura[ble] [illegible]s it is shewed hereafter. /

In this partye, sayth hystorye, that wooful & sory was the kyng[e] [illegible]nssay for the deth of his brother / but syth it plesed god to be so he lefte & passed his deuel the best wyse that he coude. Thapparyl was thenne made for the obsequye whiche was don in the Chirche Cathedral of the Cite. And syn the kyng of Anssay and the duc of bauyere [1] mounted on horsback and many barons of behayne *with* them, and al clothed in black went toward the sarasyns tentes, where the two bretheren were whiche had do cōme þer all the Sommage, Cartes, Charyotes, & bagage, And syn departed among[e] theire peuple all that they had wonne vpon the paynemes /. Thenne arryued there the kynge of Anssay, the duc Ode, and all the baronnye and nobly salued the two brethern, And the duc Anthony, & Regnauld hys brother receyued them joyfully. Thenne reccounted the kynge of Anssay to þe two bretheren how the kynge ffederyk was slayn in the baytayll, and how Zelodyus had made hys body to be brent in despyt of all cristianyte / and therfore he had doo like wise of Zelodyus body & of all the sarasyns

[1] fol. 135.

He has the cathedral prepared for his brother's obsequies;

and goes toward the Saracens camp,

where the brethren were dividing the spoil.

The King of Anssay tells how his brother was slain and his body burnt,

and how he burned the Saracens.

that were founde alyue or deed. And Anthonye penne ansuerd, 'On my feyth ye haue don right wel / and veryly kyng Zelodius mysdede ouermoche grete cruelte, For syn a man is deed / grete shame is to hys enemy to touche hym ony more.' 'By my feyth, sire,' said the duc of Bauyere, 'ye say trouth, but the kinge of Anssay is come hither to you for to beseche you & your brother to cōme to the obsequye of the kyng Federyke his brother.' And thenne ansuerd the bretherne, 'we shal thither goo gladly.' Thenne they mounted on hors back & rode toward the Cite, where as the ladyes and damoyselles, knightes & squyres / cytyzeyns & commynalte beheld them fayne and meruaylled moche of the Lyons clawe that shewed in An[1]thonyes cheke / and preysed moche his fayre & wel shappen body, and also of Regnauld hys brother / and said emong themself, 'these two bretheren ben able for to subdue al the world.' And thus they came to the chirch where thobsequye shuld be made and there alyghted.

Anthony thinks Zelodius was cruel.

The duke Ode asks the brethren to the obsequies.

They agree to come;

and are well received in the city.

[1] fol. 135 b.

Cap. XXXIV. How the two brethern were at buryeng and obsequye of kynge Federyk of behayne.

Eglantine that was in the Circh came and recountred the two bretheren, whom she made humbly her obeyssaunce, thankyng them mekely of theire noble socours that they had doo to her, For they had saued her honour, her lyf, and her land. And thenne anthony ansuerd humbly to her, sayeng, 'Damoyselle, [2]We haue nought doo but that we ought to doo, For euery good cristen is hold & bound aftir the playsire of god toppresse & dystroye thenemyes of God.' The pucelle was there nobly accompanyed of the ladyes & damoyselles of the land, thobsequye was honourably &

Eglantine meets the brethren at the church, and thanks them for saving her.

[2] fol. 136.

After the service, which is nobly done,

nobly doon as it apparteyned to suche a noble kyng' as he was. And after the seruyse fynysshed the two bretheren mounted on theire horses, and theire meyne also, and conueyed the pucelle Eglantyne vnto the paleys where they descended, & syn mounted in to the hall where the tables were redy couered / and thenne they wesshe theire handes & satte at dyner / and syn were nobly seruyd & festyed / and after dyner the tables were voyded & take vp & wesshe handes / and syn þey conueyed Eglantyne vnto her chambre, þat was euer sorowful for her faders deth. And þenne the kinge of Anssay called to hym al the baronnye of the land, & said to them in this manyere:

the brethren convey Eglantine to the palace,

where they have dinner.

The King of Anssay calls the barons of the land,

and tells them they must take counsell how to govern the kingdom.

'Lordes, barons, ye muste Counseyll emong' you, & take your best aduys how ye myght haue a valyaunt man for to gouerne the royaume, For the land which is in the guydyng & gouernaunce of a woman only is not surely kept. Now, loke thenne what best is for the prouffyt & honour of my cousyne Eglantine, & for þe common wele of this land.' Thenne ansuerd one for them alle & sayd: 'Sire, we knowe none that oughte to medle hymself therwith tofore you, For yf your Cousyn were passed out of this mortal lyf, that god forbede, al the royalme of Dehayne shuld appar- teyne to you. Wher[1]for we al bes[e]che you that therto ye puruey after your playsire.' Thenne ansuerd the king, & thus said: 'Sire, as touching my personne, I may not long abyde with you to be rewler & protectour of this land, For thanked be god I haue land ynoughe to entreteyne myn estate with / but in conclusyon lete my cousyn take some valiaunt man to her lord, that shal deffende the land ayenst the enemyes of god.' Thenne ansuered the barons fourthe with, 'Sire, yf it plaise you þat your Cousyn be maryed, seke for her some noble & worthy man to be her lord & oure, For tofore you none of vs oughte to medle withall.' Thenne

They say that in his presence they must not speak.

[1] fol. 136 b.

He advises them to marry their lady.

They ask the king to seek her a worthy man.

ansuerd the kyng in this manere, 'We thenne shal purueye therto to her honour & prouffyt & to yours also / and that anoone, For I go to speke with her for this cause.' The kynge thenne departed and came in to the Chambre where his Cousin was, that moche humbly receyued hym. And the kyng said to her in this manere, 'Fayre cousyne, thankyng to god your affayres be now in good party, For your land is delyuered fro the paynemes by the puyssaunce of god & of the two brethern of Lusynen. Now it muste be aduysed & sene how best your reaume may be guyded in good gouernaunce to your prouffyt & honour, and of your peuple also.' Thenne ansuerd the mayden, 'My right dere vncle, I ne haue noon of Counseyll & comfort but you / so I requyre you that of good remedye ye purueye therto. And conuenable & lawful it is that I obey you more than ony other personne in the world, & so wyl I doo.' Thenne had the kynge pite on [1]her & said, 'Fayre Cousyn, we haue alredy purueyed therto / ye muste be maryed to suche a man that can kepe and deffende you & your land ayenst alle enemyes, the which is fayre, noble, & valyaunt damoyseau, & not ferre hens.' 'Certaynly,' ansuerd the pucelle. 'Dere vncle, wel I knowe for certayn that ye wold neuer Counseyll me þat thing but it were to my grete honour & proffit, and for the commyn wele of all my land / but ryght dere vncle, I to be maryed so soone after my faders decesse / shuld not shewe semblaunt of dueyll for his deth. Wherfor me semeth I were blamed to doo soo / and suche shuld shew to me fayre semblaunt byfore me,[2] that wold moke me at a pryvy place /.'

He promises to find one, and leaves to speak to his cousin on the subject.

She receives him humbly.

He tells her that the way must be found how best to govern the land.

The maid asks his advice.

[1] fol. 137.

He says she must get married.

She answers that she knows he gives good counsel,

but she thinks she should not marry so soon after her father's death.

To that ansuerd the king, & said: 'My right fayre Cousyn, of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had. But, fayre

The King replies that one must choose the lesser evil.

[2] Fr. *qui en tendroit mains de compte derrière.*

He would like to wait to be at her wedding,

but he lives afar off.

Cousyn, it is wel trouth, that who myght goodly tary the day of your weddyng' it were your honour / but what, fayre Cousyn, my dwelling place is ferre hens / and here I may not make long' soiourne, without my grete dommage, as wel of other mens goodes as of myn.

Then the brethren must be rewarded,

Also the two bretheren most be recompensed & rewarded of theire noble socours, outhre of my goodes or of yours / and some saith that bettre is to haue more of prouffyt & lasse honour. And to say that ye coude recompense them as they oughte to be, by raison of the grete curtoysye by them shewed vnto you; the

but half of her kingdom would not be sufficient for this,

half of your royame shuld not suffise. And ouer more, fayre Cousyne, wete it that ye be not to suffysaunt [1] for to haue suche & so noble a man to your lord as is Regnauld of Lusynen, For in certayn he is wel worthy to marye the gretest lady in the world.

[1] fol. 137 b.

and she is not worthy to have Regnauld as her lord.

What for his noble lynee, as for his bounte, beaute, & noble prowesse.' Whan the noble pucelle Eglantyne vnderstode the kyng' her vncle, she was shamfull & hontous /

Then the maid was ashamed,

and on that other part, she consyderyng' the daunger where bothe she & her peple had be & myght be wyst neuer what to say, and bygane to wepe / but at last

and told her uncle to do with her and her kingdom as he thought best.

she ansuerd in this manere: 'right dere vncle, all my trust, my hoop & comfort is in god & in you, wherfor doo with me & with my reaume what it playse you' / 'Fayre Cousyn,' said the kyng', 'ye say right wel / and I swere you by my feyth, that nothing I shal say in this party ne doo, but that it shal be for the best.

The King bids her cease weeping.

Now thenne, noble Cousyne, seace your wepyng', & delyuere you of this affayre, For the more long' that these baronye with theire peple that be in nombre xv. M'. be soiournyng' in your land the greter dommage shal ye haue.' And she that wel knewe he said trouth, ansuerd to hym in this manere: 'Dere vncle, doo thereof al your playsyre.'

He goes to the brethren,

Thenne came the kynge in to the grete halle where the two brethern were, & the

baronye with them, and said to Anthony in this manyere: 'noble Duc, vouchesaf to understand my wordes, the barons of this land that be here present, besech your good grace / & as touching my self, I hertyly praye you that it plese you, that Regnauld your brother be king of this royalme, and that he take Eglantyne my Cousyn to his lady / prayeng hym that he this wyl not refuse, For the barons of the land desire hym moche to be theire lord.' 'Sire,' ansuerd anthony, 'this requeste is worthy to be graunted, & also shal it be. Doo hither come the noble damoyselle.' And fourthwith the kynge & the Duc Ode yede & fette the pucelle, and despoylled her of her dueyl & black clothing / and syn was arayed ful rychely of her noblest raymentes, and acompanyed with her ladyes & damoyselles, she was conueyed by the forsaid lordes vnto the presence of the noble bretheren, whiche merueylled moche of her grete beaute / and she humbly enclyned byfore them, makyng her obeyssaunce. Thenne bygan the king of Anssay to speke, & thus said /

and asks Anthony to make his brother marry Eglantine and rule her kingdom.

Anthony agrees.

[1] fol. 138.

The maid, richly arrayed,

is brought before the lords and the two brethren.

'Noble Duc of Lucembourgh, hold ye to vs your couenauntes; this is wherof we wyl hold oure promesse.' 'For sooth,' said Anthony, 'it is wel reason. come hither Regnauld brother, receyue this pucelle to your lady, For she maketh you kynge of behayne.' Thenne said Regnauld, in heryng of alle that were there present / 'thankyng be to god, to the kynge, & to all the baronye of this lande, of the grete honour that they doo to me. For yf thys noble pucelle had not one foot of land, yet wold I not reffuse her loue to haue her to my lady, after the lawes of god requyren. For with thayde of almighty god, I hoop to conquere ynoughe to hold & entreteyne therwith her noble estate' / 'Fayre brother,' said thenne anthony / 'ye say raison / this royaume ye haue wonne alredy / god yeue

The King asks Anthony to keep his promise.

Anthony calls on Regnauld to take the maid to wife.

Regnauld accepts her for her merits, not for her lands,

and says he hopes to conquer still more.

Anthony hopes that he will.

you grace to subdue & conquere other reames & landes vpon her enemyes.' And in conclusyon, the bysshop

The bishop comes and affiances Regnauld and Eglantine;

was sent for, & assured them togidre. And syn bygane

after that the feast is great, and the townsfolk make much joy.

the[1] feest sumptuous & grete, For soone it was knowen thrugh al the toun, wherof the peple made grete joye / and were the stretes hanged with ryche clothes, & grete & noble apparayll was there made, as to suche a feste apperteyned / and was ordeyned that the weddyng shuld be hold in the feld within the chief pauillon.

[1 MS. the the]

Many riche rayments & robes were made what [2]for the spouse / as for the ladyes & damoyselles. That nyght passed, and on the morne on which day they shuld be espoused / the pucelle nobly was conueyed & ledd vnto the tentes, whiche were al of cloth of gold / And that night was good watche made as þe enemyes had be nygh to them / and there the feste encressed, & were honourably seruyd at souper. And whan tyme was, euery one went to bed vnto the morow erly, when Aurora shone clere. /

[2 fol. 138 b.

Rich robes are made for the ladies.

The maid is led to the tents,

good watch is set,

and a good supper is served

before bedtime.

Cap. XXXV. How Regnauld espoused Eglantyne, daughter to the kynge of Behayne. /

At day spring many ladies accompany the spouse to mass.

Here sheweth thistorye, & sayth that whan the day spryng appiered, & the day was ful fayre & clere, the spouse nobly & rychely arayed in her robes of cloth of gold, & fourred with Ermynes, & purfylled all with precyous stones, accompanyed with grete nombre of ladyes & damoy[3]selles, was right honourably conueyed vnto the place where as the masse shuld be sayd; and solemply the bysshop espoused them here / and aftir the masse, she retourned to the pauyllon with al the noble baronye with her, where they fond al apparaylled & redy to dyner. They were ful wel & nobly seruyd of al thinges that to suche a feste be requysite & con-

[3 fol. 139.

where the bishop solemnly espouses Regnauld and Eglantine.

They return to the pavilion to dine.

uenable. And after they had dyned, graces were said, & wesshe theire handes, and syn were the tables voyded, thanne bygane they to daunce & to make grete joye. / after which they danced and made great joy.

Cap. XXXVI. How the knightes & esquyers jousted after dyner.

Thistorye sayth that after the daunce was seaced the ladyes & damoyselles mounted vpon the scafoldes. Thenne cam the knightes rychely armed, & bygan to jouste / trompettes sowned, & knightes reuersed eche other / but none might withstand the noble bretheren, but he was ouerthrow, bothe hors & man / so that no man dide there nought [1]to the regarde of theire prowes. Wherfore, they seyng that the ioustes affeblysshid for cause of them, they departed fro the lystes & toke of theire armeures / and syn dured the jousting tyl tyme of souper came. And thenne the joustes seaced, and the knightes & squyers departed, & went & dysarmed them. Thenne mynestrels with dyuerse Instruments of musique sowned & played melodyously the first cours of the souper / & syn they were nobly serued of al maner wynes / and after souper they daunced. But whan tyme was, the spouse was ledd to bed with grete honour & Joye. And anone after came Regnauld there, whiche went to bed with the pucelle. Thenne voyded euery one the chambre / some to theire rest / some retourned to the daunce / some sang, & other made grete reueyH. Regnauld, thenne that laye nigh Eglantyne, swetly embraced & kyssed her / and she to hym moche humbled her self, sayeng in this manere: 'My lord redoubted, ne had be the grace of god / your curtoysye & prowes, this poure orphelym had be / no doubt of / exilled, desolat, & lost. Wherfor, my ryght redoubted lord, I yeld thankyng to god, & to you also

The knights begin to joust; the two brethren cannot be overthrown.

[1] fol. 139 b.

Supper time arrives.

Minstrels play while it is served.

After some dancing the spouse is led to bed, and is followed by Regnald.

Eglantine declares that his prowess has saved her from exile,

and thanks him for making her his wife.

Regnald declares she has done more for him than he for her.

that haue dayned to take to your wyf her that was vnworthy therto.' 'By my fayth,' said Regnauld, 'dere herte, & my best beloued, ye haue do moche more for me than euer I dide ne possible is to me to doo for you / sene & consydered the noble yefte youen by you to me / that is your noble lady / and yet besyde that of your noble royame ye haue endowed me / and with me nought ye haue take / sauf only my symple body.' Thenne ansuered Eglantyne, & said / 'Ha / noble lord, your valyaunt body is derer to me & bettre worth than ten other suche royames as myn is / & more it is to be preysed.' Of [1]theire wordes I wyl seace / but that nyght was begoten of them a noble sone that was named Olyphart / he made in tyme afterward grete faytte of armes, and subdued & gate al the low marche of holland & Zeland, Vtreyght, & the Royame of Danemarche / and al the partyes of Northweghe also. On the morne the day was fayre & clere. Thenne was the noble lady Eglantyne ledd to here the masse / and al the baronye, ladyes & damoyselles, acompanyed her thitherward. And after the mass was doo, they retourned to the ryche pauyllon / and as they were redy to sette þem at dyner / came there two knightis fro Lucembourgh, that brought lettres to Duc Anthony from the Duches Crystyne his wyf / the whiche after theire obeyssaunce honourably made, said to hym in this wise: 'My lord, ye oughte to take grete joye / For my lady the Duches is brought to bed of the most fayrest sone that euer was seen in no land.' 'Now, fayre lordes,' said anthony, 'blessid be god therof / and ye be right welcome to me' / & syn toke the lettres.

[1] fol. 140.

He begets Olyphart,

who became famous for deeds of arms.

In the morning before dinner letters are brought to Anthony from Christine

Thistorye sayth that anthony, Duc of Lucembourgh, was joyful & glad of these tydynges, and so was his brother Regnauld. Thenne opened he the lettres, wherof the tenour was acording to that the knightes had said. Thenne made anthony moche of

which tell of the birth of a fair son.

them, gyuyng to them grete yeftes of ryches. Thenne he satte hym at dyner nygh to Eglantyne / and dured the feest eyght days, sumptuouse & open houshold̄. And whan the feste was fynysshed, they reentred in to the Cite with gret honour & joye. And on the morne next the kyng' of Anssay / Anthony & the Duc Ode, & al theire baronye toke theire leue of [1]Regnauld̄ & of Eglantyne, whiche were dolaunt of theire departing'. And anthony made coũenaunt with Regnauld̄ hys brother, that yf the paynemes made ony moo werre with hym, he shuld̄ come & all̄ his baronnye with hym to ayde & helpe hym. And the kyng' Regnauld thanked hym moch̄. And eche of them thanked & kyssed eche other at departyng' / Soo long' marched thoost þat they came to Mouchyne[2] in Bauyere / & lodged them in a fayre medowe nygh the toun. There the Duc Ode festyed them right honourably the space of thre dayes / and on the foureth day they departed & toke theire leue of the Duc Ode / and rode so long' tyl [they][3] came a day journey nygh to Coloyne. And there the foure knightes that conduyted the Coloyners auaunced them self byfore Duc Anthony, & to him said in this manere: 'My lord, it is best that we hast vs byfore you toward the toun, to apparayll̄ & make al thing' redy for your passage.' 'By my feyth,' said the Duc Anthonye, 'that playseth me wel.' Thenne departed the foure knightes & theire men with them, & rode tyl they came to the Cite of Coloyne, where they were receyued with Joye / and the Cytezeyns & gouernours of the cyte demanded of them how they had exployted in theire vyage / And they recounted to them all̄ the trouth of the fayte and the valyauntnes & noble prowes of the two brethern / & how regnauld was made kyng [of] Behayne. And whan they of Coloyne [4]understode them they were ryght glad & joyous, sayeng they

Anthony gives the messengers great gifts.

The feast lasts eight days.

Anthony, the King of Anssay, [1] fol. 140 *b*. and Duke Ode take leave of Regnald.

Anthony promises to help him against the paynims.

They march to Mouchine, where the Duke feasts them, and

on the fourth day they march again.

They arrive near Cologne.

The four knights go in advance to Cologne and

are joyfully received.

They tell the news of the expedition.

[4] fol. 141. The Cologners are glad

[2] Fr. *Muchin*. [3] MS. has *day*.

to have the friendship of such noble lords.

were wel happy & ewrous[1] to haue acquyred the loue & good wyH of two lordes of so grete valeur. And thenne they made grete apparayH for to receyue the Duc Anthony, and the kinge of Anssay with theire

Anthony and the king arrive at Cologne.

baronye. Soo longe rode thoost that they came to Coloyne, where the Cytezeyns cam & mete hem honourably / and to the prynces they made grete reuerence, prayeng them that they wold be lodged that nyght

They are nobly feasted,

within the toun, where they were nobly festyed & honourably seruyd at souper. And on the morn Anthony & his oost passed ouer the Ryn, and toke his leue of them of Coloyne, whiche he thanked moche,

and promise the townspeople their succour if it should be wanted.

sayeng: 'yf they were in ony wyse oppressed by theire enemyes he wold be euer redy for tayde & socoure them after hys power.' Wherof they thanked hym moche. Thenne the Duc Anthony & the king of Anssay dyde

Anthony arrives near Luxembourg.

so moche by theire journeys, that on an euen they came & lodged them in the medow nygh by Lucembourgh. /

Christine is joyful at her lord's return.

The duchesse Cristyne was replenysshed with joye, whan she knew the commyng of her lord anthony / and immedyatly she, nobly acompanyed, yssued out of the toun / and aH the noble cyteseyns folowed her to mete with theire lord, the whiche they recountred a half a myle fro the toun. What shal I say / greter joye was neuer sene than that was made for the retourne of Duc Anthony. The Duchesse made humbly her obeyssaunce vnto hym / and [2]hertyly welcommed hym.

[2] fol. 141 b.

His people receive him with shouts of welcome.

The peuple cryed on hye for Joye, sayeng thus: 'welcomme our lord ryght redoubted.' The joye was grete thrugh the toun where the Duc festyed the kynge of Anssay by the space of six dayes contynuelly, & forgaf & rendred to hym aH his obligacions, and held hym quytte / except the Foundacion of the pryore, where as sowles shuld be prayed for / for the loue of Regnault

He feasts the King of Anssay and frees him from all his obligations except the founding of the priory.

[1] Fr. *eureux*.

his brother. And the kinge of Anssay thanked hym moche, & toke his leue of hym / departed, & came in Anssay, where as he was receyued *with* joye / And the Duc anthony abode *with* the Duchesse Cristyne, on whom he gate a sone that same yere which was clepid Locher, whiche afterward delyu*er*ed the Countrey of Ardane fro thevys, murdrers, & robbeurs; and in the wod*es* there he founded an abbeye, and endowed it *with* grete pocessyons / And he also dyde doo make the bridge of Masyeres vpon the ryu*er*e of Meuze, and many other fortresses in the basse marche of holland[e] / and dyde many fayre fayttes of armes *with* the king[e] Olyphart of behayne, that was his Cousyn, & sone to kyng[e] Regnauld. It happed not lo*ng* after the kynge of Anssay was retourned in to his royame, that warre meuyd betwix hym & the Duc of austeryche & the [Erle] of Fyerbourgh. wherfor he besought the Duc Anthony for socour, that gladly obtempered to his requeste, in so moche that he toke by force of armes the Erle of Fyerbourgh / and syn pas[1]sed in Austeryche, where he dyscomfyted the Duc in batayll, and made hym to be pacyfyed *with* the kynge of Anssay, to the grete prouffyt & hono*ur* of the kinge. And bertrand theldest sone of the Duc Anthony, was assured with Melydee the sayd king[e] of Anssays doughter / the whiche Bertrand afterward was kynge of anssay, and hys brother Locher was Duc of Lucembourgh, after the decesse of the Duc Anthony hys fader. But of this matere I wyl no more speke at this tyme / but shal retourne to speke of Melusyne & of Raymondyn, and of theire other children. /

Now sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn by hys noblenes & grete vasselage co*n*quer[e]d grete countrees / and to hym many barons dyde homage vnto the land of Brytayn*e*. And Melusyne had two yere after that two sones, the first was named Froymond, that

Anssay thanks him, and afterwards returns to his country.

Anthony begets Locher, who frees Ardennes from thieves,

and builds fortresses, and does feats of arms along with his cousin Oliphart of Bohemia.

The King of Anssay asks the help of Anthony against his enemies.

[1] fol. 142.

Anthony assists him.

Bertrand is assured to Melydee, the daughter of the King of Anssay.

Raymondin conquers great countries, and many barons do homage to the land of Brittany.

Melusine bears two sons, Froymond,

entierly louyd holy Chirch, and that was wel shewed in his ende, For he was professid monke in to thabbeye of Maillezes, wherof there befell a grete & an horryble myschief, as ye shal here herafter by thystorye / and the other child that they had the yere folowyng was named Theodoryk, the whiche was ryght bataylleus. Here I shal leue to speke of the two children / and I shal shewe you of Geffray with the grete toth, that was yreus & hardy / & most enterpryse dide of all hys bretheren. And wete it wel that the said geffray doubted neuer man / And thystorye [1]sheweth, & the true Cronykle that he faught ayenst a knight, that was gendred with a spyryte in a medowe nygh by Lusynen, as ye shal here herafter. It is trouth that thenne Geffray was grete & ouergrowen / and herde tydynges that there was in Garande peple that wold not obey to hys fader / thenne sware Geffray by the good lord that he shuld make them to come as reason requyreth, and to do that he toke leue of hys fader, that was right wroth of hys departyng / and had with hym to the nombre of fyue houndred men of armes, and a houndred balesters, and so went in to Garande / and anoone enquyred after them that were dysobedyent / and they that held the party of Raymondyn shewed hym the Fortresse where they were, & armed them to goo with hym to helpe to dystroye hys enemyes. 'By my feyth, fayre lordes,' sayd Geffray with the grete toeth / 'ye are ryght true & loyal peuple / & I thanke you of thonour that ye proffre me / but as for this tyme present I shall not nede you, For I haue men of armes ynough for taccomplyssh myn enterpryse.' 'For soothe, sire, ye haue more to doo than ye suppose, For your enemyes ben ryght strong & of meruayllous courage, & they be frendes & cousyns, and of the grete & moost noble blood of al the Countree.' 'Fayre sires,' said Geffray, 'doubte you not, For thrughe thayde of god

who became a monk,

and Theoderick.

Geffray with the Great Tooth was the most enterprising of all his brethren.

[1] fol. 142 b.

He hears tidings that the people of Garande will not pay his father their tribute.

He goes to Garande against his father's will.

Raymondin's partizans there offer to help Geffray.

He thanks them,

but declines their aid.

They tell him his enemies are very powerful.

omnipotent I shal the matere [1]wel redresse. And wete it wel there shal be none so myghty / but I shal make them to obeye my commandement or to deye of an euyl deth. And also, fayre lordes & true frendes, yf I nede you I shall send for you' / And they answerd, 'we are now al redy, and also shal we be at al tymes that it playse you vs to calle.' 'Fayre lordes,' said Geffray with the grete toth / 'that ought to be thanked for.' Thenne toke Geffray hys leue of them / and went forth on his way toward a Fortresse that was called Syon / & within the same was one of the enemyes of geffray that hight Claude of Syon, & were thre bretheren. Moche were the thre brethern yrous & proude / and wold haue subdued and putte vnder theire subjection all theire neyghbours. Thenne sent geffray with the grete toeth wordes of deffyaunce / outhre to come & make theire obeyssaunce to hym for Raymondin his faders. And they answerd to the messager, 'that for Raymondyn ner for no man on his byhalf they shuld nought doo / and that he shuld no more retourne to them for this matere, for than he were a fole.' 'By my feyth,' said the messager, 'I shal kepe me wel therfro / but that I bryng with me a maister in medecyne, that shal make suche a lectuary or drynk wherof ye shal be poysonned, & syn hanged by the neck.' And of these wordes were the iij bretheren wood wroth. And wete it wel that yf the messager had not hasted his hors away he had be take & deed without ony remedye, For [2]they were full yrous & cruell, and doubted not god nor no man lyuyng. Thenne retourned the messager toward geffray and recounted hym the grete pryde & auauntyng of the bretheren. 'By my heed,' said Geffray with the grete toeth, 'a lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd / & doubte you not but I shal pay them wel theire wages.'

[1] fol. 142.

Geffray says he will compel his enemies to obey.

He goes against Claud of Sion,

one of three proud brethren.

He sends his defiance, and orders them to make obedience to him on Raymondin's behalf.

They refuse, and

[2] fol. 143 *b*.

the messenger tells Geffray of their pride and boasting.

Geffray says that "a little rain layeth down a great wind."

Thystorye sayth, that whan geffray vnderstode the grete pryde & the fel ansuere of the thre brethern,

Geffray approaches near the fortress.

He arms, mounts; and takes a squire with him; and orders his men to rest till he sends them word.

A knight, who well knew his boldness, follows with x men.

Geffray arrives at the Fortress of Sion.

He sees its strength on one side,

and spies all round it.

[1] fol. 144.

He finds that it is weakest by the bridge,

and returns toward his men.

Philebert and his fellowship keep out of Geffray's sight.

He sees xiv armed men in Geffray's way, and is afraid,

without ony moo wordes he came & lodged hym & his peuple half a leghe fro the said Fortresse. Thenne toke he his armures & armed hym of al pieces; toke with hym a squyer that wel knew the Countrey / mounted on horsback / commanded his men that they shuld not meue them thens vnto tyme they had word of hym, & departed with hys esquyer / but there was a knyght that wel knew hys noble & fyers courage, & that he doubted nothing of the world / which toke x. men of armes with hym and went after Geffray, folowyng hym fro ferre, For he moche loued geffray. Geffray rode so long that he sawe the Fortresse of Syon vpon a hye roche. 'By my feyth,' said thenne geffray, 'yf the Fortresse be so strong at that other syde as it is at this syde, hit shal gyue me moche peyne or euer it be take, I must see & know yf it be also strong at that other parte.' Thenne he & his esquyer aduyronned the Fortresse about, al along by a lytel wode, that they might not be aspyed ne sene. They came & descended [1]in a valey / and euer the forsaid knyght that was named Philibert[2] folowed hym a ferre / and so long rode geffray tyl he had ouer sene the said fortres al round about / and hym semed wel that it might be take by the brydge syde, For it was the feblest syde of it / Thenne entred geffray & hys esquyer in a lytel path, & retourned vpon the mountayne toward hys lodgis, where his peple were hym abydyng. Philebert, that sawe Geffray retourne, thought he would lete hym passe tofore hym, Wherfor he and his felawship reculed within the wode, to thende thay shuld not be perceyued of hym / but soone after they sawe a companye of men of warre comynge that same way that geffray came toward the Fortresse, and were to the nombre of xiiii personne wel armed. Wherfore the said knight philibert was abasshed & agast, lest they shuld mete with

[2] Fr. Ver. *Philibert de Mommoret.*

geffray, For wel he wyst that geffray wold fyght with them / as he dide / and that shal ye here herafter./ — because he knows Geffray will fight them.

In this partye, sayth thistorye, that vpon the topp of the mountayne geffray recountred the said compaye, And who that shuld enquere of me what folke they were; I shuld say it was one of Claude of Syon bretheren that came toward his brother at his mandement. And wete it wel, that the way was there so narow that vnnethe one hors myght passe by other. And whan Geffray with the grete [1]toeth recountred them, he sayd to hym that rode first of alle that he shuld tary and make his company to stand asyde tyl he were passed the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said he þat was proude & orgueyllous, 'Sire daw fole,[2] wel we muste first knowe what ye be, that say that we retourne vs for you.' 'By god,' said Geffray with the grete toth / 'that shal you knowe anone, For I shal make you retourne ayenst your wyll. I am Geffray of Lusynen / tourne back / or elles I shal make you to retourne by force.' Whan Guyon the brother of Claude of Syon vnderstode hym & knew that it was geffray with the grete toeth / he cryed to his folk, 'auaunt, lordes barons, For yf he escape grete shame shal be to vs / in an euyl heure is he come in to oure land for to demande seruytude of vs.' Thenne whan geffray vnderstode these wordes he drew out his sword & smote the nethermost of alle vpon his hed, so grete a stroke that he ouerthrew hym all astonyed doune to the erthe, and syn passed forth by hys hors, & ouer hym that laye along the way, in suche wyse that he al to brusid the body of hym / And thenne geffray atteyned another in the brest foynyng with hys swerd, so that he fell doune deed to therthe / and syn cryed aftir the oþer, 'False traytours, ye may not escape, ye shal retourne to your euyl helthe.' Thenne he passed fourth

Geffray encounters one of Claud's brothers and his men on a narrow road.

[1] fol. 144 b.

Geffray asks them to stand aside till he has passed.

They ask who he is.

He answers, "Geffray of Lusignan," and bids them turn, else he will make them.

Guion cries to his men not to let Geffray escape.

But Geffray draws his sword and smites one of his company so hard that he is overthrown.

He foins at another in the breast, and kills him.

[2] Fr. *damp musart.*

[1] fol. 145.

to the iii^de, whicℏ was grete & strong, [1] & smote Geffray vpon the helmet *with* al his strengthe / but the helmet was harꝺ and þe swerꝺ glenced asyde & do*m*maged hym nought / but Geffray toke his swerꝺ with two handes and smote hym vpon the coyffe of stele vnto the brayn*e*, & reuersed hym deed to the ertℏ. And whan guyon perceyued this myschief he was wode wroth & fuℏ of yre, For he might not come to geffray, wherfore he commanded eu*e*ry man to retourne, that they might haue them self at large to deffende eche other. Thenne eu*e*ry man tourned back & fledd, & yssued out of that narrow way in to a playn feld, And geffray with the grete toth pursiewed them, the swerꝺ in his handꝺ. Now shaℏ I speke of the knight philibert, whiche was approched nygh the saiꝺ way, and herde the noyse / so he calleꝺ to hym his felawes. And thenne guyon and his men were in þe playn & assaylled geffray on al sydes of hy*m* / but as preu & valyaunt he deffended vygourously his flesshe / and also hys esquyer bare hym valyauntly / and was ryght strong the bataylℏ. Now most I speke of hym whicℏ geffray first ou*er*threw to therthe in the pathℏ forsaiꝺ, For whan he perceyued that guyon was retourned by the force of geffray / and sawe his two felawes lyeng deed by hym, he was moche dolaunt, and beheldꝺ [2] all about hym & fondꝺ his hors, wher on he *with* grete peyne mounted, for he was al to brusyd in hys body, & hasted hym as he coude best toward Syon. And whan he came to the fortresse he fondꝺ Claude at yate and some of his men *with* hym / the whiche perceyued that he that was co*m*myng toward hy*m* was al bloody and knew hym wel / & of hym demanded who so had arayed hym / And he recounted thadventure how they had recountreꝺ geffray, and how he ado*m*maged them and had made guyon hys brother to retourne fro the narow lane by force, & that yet lasted theyre bataylle.

He cuts open the head of a third.

Guion is wroth because he cannot get at Geffray.

He commands his men to retreat.

They flee to a field.

Geffray pursues them.

Guion's men set on Geffray on all sides.

He and his squire fight bravely.

[2] fol. 145 *b*.

The knight that Geffray dismounted hastes as he best can to Sion.

He finds Claud at the gate,

and tells him of the adventure,

and that the fighting is still going on.

Thenne whan Claude vnderstode hym he was sorowfull & angry, and yede and armed hym, and made his men to be armed. Claud orders his men to arm,

Moche dolaunt was Claude whan he vnderstod of the vylonnye & dommage that geffroy had don to Guyon his brother / and how yet they were fyghtyng togidre / & armed of al pieces. his men with hym rode thitherward / and were in nombre thre score bassynets. He rides to aid his brother,

But for nought he toke hys waye, For philibert with his ten knyghtes were come to the batayll, & faught in suche wyse that al guyons meyne were slayne & he take / and soone sware Geffray that he shuld make hym to be hanged by the neck. Thenne came the said esquyer, whiche was retourned in to the forsayd land, to fette a fayre swerd, that he tofore sawe fall fro one of Guyons men / & said to Geffray in this manyere, 'My lord, I haue herd grete bruyt of men armed commyng hitherward.' And whan Geffray vnderstode hym he fourthwith made Guyon to be bound at a tree within the wod [1]nygh by them, & syn retourned with hys men toward the said path or lane for to abyde there his auenture. And philibert rode vnto the top of the hyll, and perceyued Claude & hys felawship that entred the lane / thanne he retourned to his felawes & sayd to Geffray, 'Sire, the best that ye can doo is to kepe wel this pathe, here cōme your enemyes.' And Geffray with the gret toeth ansuerd / 'doubte you not / but it shal be wel kept & deffended.' Thenne he called to hym the squyer that was come with hym, & said: 'renne hastily toward thoost, & make my folke to cōme hither." And he anone departed toward thoost, and whan he was there arryued he said to them, 'Fayre lordes, now lightly on horsback, For geffray fyghteth ayenst his enemyes.' And they armed them & soone mounted on theire horses, and hasted them to folowe the squyer that guyded them

but is too late;

as the men are slain and his brother is Geffray's prisoner.

A knight tells Geffray that more men of arms are approaching.

[1] fol. 146.

Guion is bound to a tree.

Geffray and his company return to the path to wait the arrival of Claud.

Geffray sends a messenger to his host.

His lords haste

to succour him.

the nerest way there he supposed to fynd Geffray, fighting with his enmyes.

Thystorye sayth that geffray, philibert, & theire knightes were at thentree of the pathe / and thenne came Claude & his men with grete puyssaunce along thrugh the lane, & wel they supposed to haue mounted the montayne. But Geffray was at thentre of the path that vygourously & valyauntly deffended the passage / and wete it wel there was none so hardy but he made hym to recule. For there were two of his knightes that descended fro theire horses, & stode at eyther syde of geffray, & proudly rebuckyd Claudes men with theire speres, & many of them were there slayne. Philibert [1]was thenne descended from his hors, and thre othre of his companye, and recouered the montayne aboue the pathe, where as they gadred stones and threw them vpon them that were in the lane, thrugh suche yre & grete strength, that there was none so strong bassynets nor armure but it was perced; and therwith they were astonyed or elles ouerthrawen / and wete it wel þat there were more than xx^ti. slayn.

Geffray blocks the path,

[1] fol. 146 b.

while the Knight Philibert and three men ascend the mountain, and throw stones on Claud and his men.

Thenne came there the squyer with the batayll that he brought. And whan geffray knew it, he commanded thre houndred men of armes, that they shuld draw at the other ende of the lane to kepe the passage, that Claude nor hys peple should not retourne to theire fortresse. And anone from thens the squyer with his companye departed, & came hastly to fore the medowe, & passed byfore the Fortresse. And whan Clerevauld, the iii^de brother of Claude, sawe them, he demed that it was some socours that came to them / For he trowed not that in the land shuld haue be so many enemyes. The whiche esquyer with his companye came with amyable contenaunce, shewyng no semblaunt but as frendes. And thenne Clerevauld, that byleued wel that they were theyre frendes lete fall the bridge, & opened the

Geffray's company arrives, and is ordered to prevent Claud returning to his fortress.

Clerevald, third brother of Claud, takes Geffray's company to be friends.

yate where he stode *with* xx^{ti}. men of armes. And whan the squyer & his companye perceyued *þat* the bridge was doun & the gate open, they drew them hastly in the way to passe the Fortres. And passyng[e] by the Fortresse, Clervauld demanded what they were / and they ansuerd[e]: [1]'We be frend*es*.' and in approuching of the said[e] bridge to the nombre xx^{ti} knight*es*, they enquyred after Claude of Syon: 'For fayn we wold[e] speke *with* hym.' And Clereuauld them approuched, sayeng[e]: 'he shal retourne anoone, For he is dep*ar*ted to fyght with Geffray with the grete toeth *our* enemye, that he & Guyon *our* brother haue enclosed in yonder mou*n*tayne that is there byfore you / and wete it wel that Geffray may not escape them, though he were tempred *with* fyne stele, but that he shal be slayne or take.' 'By my feyth,' sayd the squyer, 'this be good tydynges.' An then*ne* he approuched with his xx^{ti} knightes nerer & nerer, askyng hym where shal we goo to helpe hym. 'By my feyth,' sayd Clereuauld, 'gramercys it shal not nede at this tyme.'

He allows them to come near the fortress.

Clerevald asks who they are; [1] fol. 147. "We be friends," they answer.

Thystorye sheweth that the squyer approched to Clereuauld so nygh by his fayre word*es*, that he & hys company came vpon the bridge / & then*ne* he cryed to hys peple / 'auaun*t*, lord*es*, the fortresse is oure.' And whan Clereuauld herd[e] these word*es*, he supposed[e] to haue reculed & to haue lyft vp the bridge / but the squyer & his peuple came so rudly that it was not in theire powere to haunce the bridge / but bare it doune by force, and anone alighted & entred in at the gate / and with two speres vndersette the portecollys / & immedyatly descended more than an hounդred of the squyers men on foot, & came & entred into the Fortres. Then*ne* was clereuauld[e] take, and al hys peple that were there *with* hym, & brought vnto a chambre fast bounden, where they were surely kept *with* fourty men of armes / [2]And after this don, they

The squire and his company by fair words get on the bridge. He then cries, "The fortress is ours."

Clerevald tries to pull up the bridge, but is too late.

He and his men are taken prisoners.

[2] fol. 147 b.

assembled them, & toke Counseyll how they might best send word vnto geffray of this faytte, & how they shuld kepe them within the Fortresse to thentent to take Claude yf it happed hym to retourne / And thenne said the squyer that he hym self shuld goo to gyue Geffray knowlege of this auenture. And thenne anone he departed and came to Geffray, to whom he shewed all the trouth of the faytte / and whan geffray knew thauenture he was joyful, & made hym knight, & gaaf hym the gouernaunce of a houndred men of armes / & commanded that he shuld go anoone in to the countrey, to kepe wel that Claude shuld take none oþer way, but the way to the Fortresse; For yf he escaped he might do grete harme tofore he were take, & that bettre it were to close hym in that lane, & there by force to take hym. 'Sire,' said the new knight, 'doubte you not he shal not escape you, but yf he cane flee, yf that I may come by tymes to the lane.' Thenne he departed & descended the mountayne with hys men of armes. And geffray taryed at the pathe, that mightily faught with his swerde vpon his enemyes. And wel fourty knyghtes were alighted on foot vpon þe hylle, & threw stones vpon Claude & his peple in suche wyse, that by force he & hys peuple was constrayned to retourne / And Geffray & his peple entred in to the lane & chaced þem / but vnnethe he might passe to pursiew men for deed men that were slayn with castyng of stones. Now shal I shew you of the new knight that was comming at the other lanes ende with his company / but whan he herd the bruyt of the horses / he thought wel that [1]Claude retourned / and he toke the couert of the mountayne & suffred Claude to take the way toward the Fortresse.

The squire returns to tell Geffray of their deed.

Geffray is glad, and knights the squire, and gives him a hundred men to prevent the escape of Claud.

Claud is obliged to retreat,

Geffray chases him.

The new knight hears the noise of the retreat, and

[1] fol. 148.

suffers Claud to return to the fortress.

Thystorye telleth that Claude hasted hym fast to come out of the lane for to saue hym self & his peple in the Fortresse of Syon, but that the fole

thinketh oftymes commeth to foly. It is veray trouth that he spede hym so fast that he was out of the lane & came to his large / and so he ne taryed neyther for one nor for other / but came walapyng' toward the Fortresse. And whan he was nygh, he cryed with a high voyce / 'open the gates' / & so they dide / and thenne he passed the bridge and entred, & was alyghted afore that he perceyued that he had lost the Fortresse / and fourthwith he was seasyd & bounde by hys enemyes. Thenne was he gretly abasshed; For he sawe not about hym no man that he knew. 'What dyuel is this? where are my men become?' 'By my feyth,' said a knight / 'ryght foorth shal ye knowe, For ye shal lodge with them' / And so immedyatly he was brought to the chambre where Clereuauld, his brother & his peuple were in pryson. Thenne whan he perceyued them bound & kept as they were, he was ryght dolaunt. And whan Clereuauld sawe hym, he said: 'Ha / a, Claude, fayre brother, we are fall by your pryde into grete captiuite / and doubte it not we shal neuer escape from hens without losse of our lyues, For to cruel is Geffray.' And Claude ansuerd hym: 'We muste abyde all that therof shal fall.' Thenne came Geffray [1]ryght foorth to the Fortresse, & had slayn or take all the residu of Claudes peple / saaf hys brother Guyon which was brought with hym, & putte prysonner in the said pryson where as Geffray entred / and emong al oper said to Claude: 'How,' said he, 'thou fals traytour, durst thou be so hardy to hurte or dommage my faders Countre & his peuple, thou that owest to be his subget / and by the feyth that I owe to my fader I shal punysshe the, in exemple of all other, For I shal doo the hang' byfore Valbruyant, the Castel in syght of thy Cousyn Gueryn, that is a traytour as thou art, vnto my lord my fader.' And whan Claude herd that gretyng', wete it wel / he was not therwith playsed. But whan the peple of the

Claud and his people reach the fortress, and cry, "Open the gates."

He is seized and bound.

He asks about his men. He is told that he will see them, as he is to be lodged with them.

Clerevald sees his brother, and upbraids him.

[1] fol. 148 b.

Geffray arrives and brings his prisoner Guion.

Geffray tells Claud that he intends to hang him before Valbruiant, the castle of his cousin Guerin, who is also a traitor.

The people of the land are glad that Claud and his people are taken or slain;

Countrey knew that Syon the Fortresse, & Claude and his brethern were take & theire peple slayne / thenne came playntes of robberyes & other euyl caas vpon Claude & vpon his peuple, & within that same Fortresse were founde more than a C prysonners of the good peple of the Countrey, as marchants & straungers that

because they robbed them and despoiled all passers by the fortress.

were robbed passyng by the way / For tofore that tyme none passed by the said Fortresse vnspoyled. And whan geffray herd of this tydynges, he made to be

Geffray sets up a pair of gallows and hangs all the people of Claud, but spares his two brothers.

sette vpon the syde of a hille a payre of galowes / & therat dide do be hanged al the peple of Claude / and his two brethern he spared for that tyme / and gaaf the

Geffray leaves the castle in charge of a wise knight,

Castel in keping vnto a knight of the Countrey that was ryght valyaunt & wyse / & commanded hym [1] vpon his lyf to kepe it wel / and to gouerne lawfully his subgets, & to kepe good justice / And he promysed hym so to doo, For he gouerned the countre wel &

[1] fol. 149.

and departs to Valbruiant.

rightfully. And after his commandement he departed on the morowe toward Valbruyant / and toke the three bretheren with hym, the whiche had grete fere of deth / and that was not without cause / as ye shal here herafter.

Thystory sayth that geffray & his peuple rode ty they cam tofore Valbruyant / wher as tentes were dressed & sett vp, and euery man lodged in ordre

He erects gallows in front of the castle, hangs Claud and his brothers, and orders them of the castle to yield on pain of hanging.

Thenne made geffray ryght foorth to sette vp galowes tofore the Castel gate, and there dide do hang incontynent Claude & his two bretheren / and sent word to them of the Castel / yf that they yelded not to hym the Fortres, that he wold hang them yf he had it by force. And whan Gueryn of Valbruyant herd thes tydynges, he sayd to his wyf: 'It is so for trouth madame, that ageynst this strong dyueH I ne may withstand ne kepe this Fortresse, wherfor I wyl departe &

Guerin departs from his castle to Mountfrain to have counsel.

goo vnto mountfrayn to Guerard my nevew, & to othe my frendes for to haue CounseyH how we may hau

traytye of pais with Geffray.' And thenne the wyf that was right sage & subtyl said to hym / 'go foorth / by the grace of god, & kepe you wel that ye be nat take by the waye, and departe not from Mountfrayn tyl ye haue tydynges fro me, For by thayde of god I hoop that I shal purchasse a good traytye with geffray for you; For had ye don after my Counseyll, & byleued me, ye shuld not [1]haue medled with the werkes of Claude & of his bretheren / not with standing yet haue ye not falsed your feyth toward your liege lord Raymondyn of Lusynen.' Thenne Gueryn her said: 'My dere sustir & spouse, doo that ye thinke best, For my fyaunce is in you / and I wyl byleue all that ye may counseylle.' And thenne departed he by a pryvy posterne vpon a swyft hors, and passed by the couerts of the wodes, so that he was not aspyed. And whan he was a lytel passed he sporyd his hors, and the hors bare hym swyftly, and wete it that he had so grete fere lest he shuld be aspyed, that he was almost out of his wyt / & thanked god moche whan he fond thentre of the Forest þat dured wel two leghes / and toke the way toward Mountfrayn, as moche as he coude ryde.

His wife tells him not to leave there till she sends him tidings;

she declares she will make a treaty with Geffray.

[1] fol. 149 b.

Guerin tells her to do her best,

and leaves on a swift horse by a privy door.

He rides fast, as he fears to be seen.

Thystory testyfyeth, that so long rode Guerym that he came to mountfrayn, where he found guerard hys neuew, & recounted to hym al these werkes; and how Geffray with the grete toth had take Claude theire Cousyn & his two brethern, & brought tofore Valbruyaunt, where he dide al thre to be hanged / and how he was departed thens, doubtyng to be take within the Fortresse. 'By my feyth,' said Guerard, 'Fayre vncle, ye haue do wysely, For after that men speke of Geffray, he is a valyaunt knight of hye & puyssaunt enterpryse / and he is moche cruel & moche to be doubted. Woo is to me that euer we went to Claude! For wel we knew that he & hys bretheren were of euyl gouernement, & that none passed foreby theire For-

He tells Gerrard the news, how Geffray has hanged Claud and his two brethren,

and how he had fled to escape capture.

Gerrard says he has acted wisely,

and is sorry they had had to do with Claud, because Claud and his brethren were of evil conduct.

[1] fol. 150.

tresse vnrobbed. Now pray [1]We god, that he preserueth bothe *our* lyues & hono*ur* in this affayre. Fayre vncle, vpon this caas we muste seke remedy / It is good that we lete haue knowledge to *our* parents & frend*es* þ*er*of, þ*at* haue be of this folyssh alyaunce.' And gueryn ansuerd: 'that is trouth.' The*nne* they sent word*es* to theyre frend*es* that they shuld al cõme to mountfrayn, so that they might haue Counseiłł togidre vpon this faytte, & to seke the meane to escuse them toward geffray. Now resteth thystory of them / and speketh of the lady of Valbruya*nt* that was moche subtyl & sage / and she eu*er* blamed her lord of that he had consented to Claude & to hys brethern. This lady had a doughter, whiche was of the age of ix yere / & fayre & gracyo*us*; and also a sone that was ten yere of age, whiche was fayre & wel endoctryned. And the*nne* this lady as she had of nothing' be abasshed[2] / mounted upon a palfray rychely arayed, & dide do be mounted her two children vpon two horses, and ordeyned two auncyent gentylmen to conduyte theire horses / and acompanyed w*ith* six damoysell*es*, dide open the gate where she fond the new knight that brought the mandement of geffray, whicħ she receyued benyngly, and he that coude moche of hono*ur* made to her the reu*er*ence / and the lady seyd to hym temperatly: 'Sire knight, my lord is not w*ith*in / and therfore I wyl go myself toward my lord yo*ur* maister to knowe [3]what is his playsyr, For it semeth me that he is come hither to make werre / but I byleue not that it is for my lord nor for none w*ith*in this fortresse. For god deffende that my lord or ony of this place had do that thing that shuld dysplayse geffray or my lord his fader / and by aduenture yf some of his synester frend*es* haue informed geffray otherwyse than raiso*n*, I wold humbly beseche & pray hym that he vouche sauf to here my

Guerin and Gerrard send to their friends to come to Mountfrain to devise means of excusing themselves to Geffray.

The lady of Valbruiant

mounts her two children on horseback

and accompanies them to the gate of the castle,

where she tells the new knight that she will go to Geffray herself,

[3] fol. 150 *b*.

as her lord has done nothing to displease Geffray or his father.

[2] Fr. *Adonc la dame ne fut ne folle ne esbahie.*

said lord & husband in his escuses & deffenses' / and thenne whan the knight herd her speke so sageously / her ansuerde: 'Madame, this requeste is raisonable,
4 wherfore I shal conduyte you toward my lord / and I hope that ye shal fynd hym frendly, & that ye shal haue a good traytye with hym / how be it, he is infourmed of gueryn your lord ryght malycyously / but I
8 byleue that at your requeste he shal graunte a part of your petycion' / And thenne they departed & came toward the lodgys of Geffray.

The new knight undertakes to conduct her to Geffray.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray saw the com-
12 myng of the lady he yssued out of his tente & came ayenst her / and she that was wel nourrytured held her two children tofore geffray, to whom she made humble reuerence / and thenne geffray enclyned hym
16 to her, & toke her vp right humbly, & said: 'Madame, ye be right welcome' / and 'my lord,' said she, 'I see þat I desyre' / and thenne her two children dyde [1]theyre obeyssaunce in the moost humble wyse / and
20 he gaf to them ayen his salut. Thenne toke the lady the word / and feynyng as though she had knowen nothing of hys euyl wyll / said vnto hym in this wyse: 'My lord / my lord! myn husband as for this tyme he
24 is not present in this Countre. Wherfore I am come toward you to pray you that it may playse you to take your lodgys in your Fortresse, and take with you as many of your peple as shal you playse; For, my lord,
28 thanked be god, there is ynough to plese you with / and wete it wel that I & my meyne shal receyue you gladly, as we owe to doo the sone of our souerayn lord naturall.' Whan geffray vnderstode her requeste
32 he was gretly abasshed how she durst desyre hym / consyderyng how he was infourmed ageynst Gueryn her husband. Neuerthele he sayd, 'By my feyth, fayre lady, I thanke you of your grete curtoysye that ye offre
36 me / but this requeste I ought not to agree, For men

Geffray issues from his tent,

inclines to her, and bids her welcome.

[1] fol. 151.

She feigns to know nothing of her lord's ill-doings.

She tells Geffray that her lord is away from home,

and invites Geffray to lodge in the fortress.

Her request abashes Geffray,

who says that he has been told that her lord does not deserve such recognition,

haue youen to me knowlege that your husband hath not deseruyd it ayenst my lord, my fader, & me / how be it, my fayre lady, I wyl wel that ye knowe that I am not come for to make warre ayenst ladyes & damoy selles / and be ye of this sure, that neyther to you no to none of your fortres I wyl nought say nor hurt, y your husband be not there' / And she thenne said

but that in her lord's absence she and those in the fortress are safe.

'gramercy, my [1]lord. But I requyre you, that it plays you to shew me the cause of your indignacyon that y

[1] fol. 151 *b*.

The lady answers that neither herself nor her husband have done wrong;

haue vnto my lord myn husband, For I am in certai nother he nor I haue neuer do no thing to our know leche that shuld be your dysplaysure / and I byleu

and hopes that Geffray will hear her husband's excuses,

that yf it might plese you to here my lord & husban & his escuse, that ye shal fynd them that thus hau informed you, be not matere of trouth / and my lord therupon I make me strong that in conclusyon ye sha fynde as I say.'

In this partye sheweth thistory, that whan geffra herd the lady thus speke he thought a lytel, & sy ansuerd & said: 'By my feyth, lady, yf he goodly ca excuse hym that he haue not falsed hys feyth, I shalb

Geffray promises to listen to them,

glad therof / & I shal receyue hym gladly in his excu acyons with his felawes & all theire complyces / an

and gives him a safe conduct for a week.

from this day seuen nyght I gyue hym saaf gooyng commyng, and fourty personnes with hym.' Thenn toke the lady her leue & retourned to Valbruyan where she lefte her children / and acompanyed wit ten knightes and squyers, & with thre damoysell

The lady goes to Mountfrain

departed, & rode so long tyl she came to Mountfray where she was receyued joyously of her lord & h

and tells her lord of her interview.

frendes, to whom she recounted how gueryn her lo had safconduyte of geffray for hym, & fourty personn with hym / & yf he may excuse hym geffray sh

[2] fol. 152.

here hym gladly, [2]and shal admynystre hym al rayso

An ancient knight says that they will have a

'By my feyth,' said an auncyent knight, 'thenne sha we haue a good traytye with hym / For there nys no

that may say that euer we mysdyde in eny thing' ayenst our souerayne lord naturel. Yf Claude, that was our Cousyn, had vs requyred of ayde, yf he neded, & we had promysed hym to helpe hym / not for that we ne haue yet mysdon / nother geffray nor none other may not say that euer we had the helmet on heed, nor þat we yssued euer out of our places for to comforte or ayde hym ayenst geffray by no wyse / goo we thenne surely toward geffray, & lete me doo there withall, For I doubte not but that we shal haue good traytye with hym.' The frendes & cousyns of gueryn confermed this propos, & made theire appareyl for to goo toward geffray on the iiide day folowyng. And thenne the lady departed, & retourned to Valbruyant, where she sent for breed, wyne, capons, chikkons, conyns, & suche vytayll, with hey & ootys, and presented it to geffray / but he neuer receyued of it / but suffred that who wold toke of it for his money / and the said lady lete geffray haue knowleche how her lord & his frendes shuld come toward hys grace. /

good treaty with Geffray,

for they did not help Claud against Geffray.

The lady returns to Valbruiant

and sends victuals to Geffray,

and tells him how her lord is about to come before him.

Here sayth thystory, that Gueryn of Valbruyant & guerard hys neuew, taryed for theire frendes at mountfrayn / and whan they were come they mounted on theire horses & rode tyl they came to valbruyant / and on the morne [1]they sent word to Geffray of theire commyng, and that they were al redy to come toward hys good grace to theire excuse. And geffray ansuerd: þat he was apparaylled to receyue them. And þenne they departed fro the Castel & came tofore the tente of geffray, to whom they made theire obeyssaunce ryght honourably. And there thauncyent knight of whiche I spak tofore toke the word, & said: "Mighty & puyssaunt lord, we are come hither toward your highnesse for this, that we vnderstand how ye are infourmed ayenst vs, that we were consentyng' to the ylnesse & dysobedyence of Claude ayenst our souerayne lord

Guerin and Gerrard arrive at Valbruiant,

[1] fol. 152 b.

and send word to Geffray,

who announces his readiness to receive them.

They present themselves and make their obedience.

The ancient knight tells that he has heard that Geffray thinks they consented to Claud's misconduct.

naturel, your fader. My lord, it is wel trouth that the said Claude our Cousyn, tofore hys folysshe enterpryse, he assembled vs togidre, & thus said to vs: 'Fayre lordes, ye be all of my lynage & kynrede / & I of yours / wherfore rayson requyreth that we loue eche other.' Thenne sayd we / 'by my feyth, ye say trouth / but wherfor say ye soo?' And thenne he ansuerd couertly: 'Fayre lordes, I doubte me to haue shortly a strong werre & to haue a doo with a strong partye; Wherfor I wyl wete yf ye wold helpe me' / & we thenne asked of hym / ayenst whom / he ansuerd: 'we shuld knowe it al in tyme, & that he was not parfytte frend, who that relenquysshed hys cousyn at hys nede.' Thenne said we to hym, 'we wyl wel that ye knowe that there nys none so grete in this countrey, [1]ne so myghty, yf he wyl hurt or dommage you, but that we shal helpe you to kepe & susteyne you in your ryght.' and vpon that he departed / and syn had he many rancours ayenst some where we ayded hym / but my lord wete it wel that fro the tyme of hys dysobedyence to my lord your fader, we ne doubte nor fere neyþer god nor man that we euer putte piece of harneys on vs / nor that none of vs all yssued out of his fortres, nother for hym nor for his faytte / and the contrary shal be nother knowen nor fond, For herof we wyl not haue grace / but we requyre only right & justice / and yf there be other cause that our euyl wyllers might haue contryued vpon vs thrugh enuye or hate / I say by right that ye ne owe to be therfore indigned ayenst vs, þat are very subgets & obedyent to my lord, your fader Raymondyn of Lusynen, For yf some were wylling to vexe or moleste vs by ony wyse ye oughte to helpe & kepe vs / and herof I can no more say, For we can not thinke that none of vs dide euer that thing that myght dysplayse my lord your fader. Wherfor we al present

He relates how Claud had asked their help,

but did not give the name of the enemy,

[1] fol. 153.

and how they promised to assist him.

They helped Claud against some of his enemies,

but after his disobedience to Raymondin they had not aided him.

Therefore he thinks Geffray should not be indignant against him,

because they cannot think what they have done displeasing to Geffray's father,

beseche & pray you that ye be not infourmed but of rayson." / and beg to be informed of their fault.

Whan geffray had herd thexcuse of the old knyght that spake for all, he called his Counseyll hym / and syn said to them: 'Fayre lordes, what seme yow of this fayte? [1]me semeth that these folke excuse them self full wel.' 'By my feyth,' sayd they all in commyn, 'that is trouth / nor ye can not aske of them, but that ye make them to swere vpon the holy Euangylles, that yf the siege had be layed tofore syon / they had socoured Claude or not ayenst you / and yf they swere ye / they are your enemyes / and to the contrary, yf they swere that noo / ye owe not to bere to them euyl wyll.' To this they all accorded / & therewith concluded theire counseyll. And thenne were gueryn & hys frendes called tofore geffray / and after he had recorded to them the sayd conclusyon / they said that gladly they shuld swere as they dyde. Wherfore they had peas with geffray, and syn went with hym al about the Countre vysytyng the Fortresses & places by the space of two monethes. And after Geffray toke leue of the Barons there / and lefte gouernours to kepe & rewle the Countrey / and syn departed & retourned to Lusynen, where he was gretly festyed of hys fader & moder, that were glad of his retourne. Thenne was there come a knyght of poytou fro Cypre, whiche had reported tydynges how the Calyphe of Bandas, and the grete Carmen were arryued in Armenye / and moche they had adommaged the kynge Guyon. Also how kynge vryan had tydynges how they entended to make werre ayenst hym in Cypre. Wherfore he made hys assemble of men of armes & of shippes, for to recountre & fyght with them in the see. [2]For his entencion was not to suffre them to entre in his land. Whan thenne Geffray vnderstode these tydynges he sware by the good lord, that shuld not be without

[1] fol. 153 b.

Geffray tells his council that he thinks they have made a good defence.

The council advises that Guerin and his friends should be made to swear that they would not have helped Claud had his castle been besieged.

Guerin is ready to swear; so he has peace with Geffray.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, and is greatly feasted.

News comes from Cyprus that the Caliph of Bandas is attacking Guion, King of Armenia.

Urian is assembling ships to fight his brother's enemies.

[2] fol. 154.

Geffray resolves to aid his brethren.

hym, and that to long he had kept his fyre / and said to Raymondin hys fader, & to Melusyne his moder / that they wold make hym cheuysaunce of help for to goo ayde hys bretheren ayenst thenemyes of god / And they accorded therto / so that he promysed them to retourne within a yere day toward them.

Geffray asks the knight from Cyprus to accompany him.

Ryght joyous was geffray whan his fader had graunted hym his wyll. and thenne he prayed the knight that was come fro Cipre, that he wold retourne with hym, & that he shuld reward hym well therof. 'By my feyth,' sayd the knight / 'men telleth me as touching your prowes may none compare / and I shal go with you for to see yf ye can doo more than Vryan & Guyon your bretheren; For thoo two I know ryght wel.' 'By my feyth, sire knight,' said geffray 'it is a lytel thing of my faytte concernyng the puyssaunce of my lordes, my brethern / but I thanke you of this lyberall offre to goo with me / & I shall meryte you, therfore, yf it playse god.' Thenne he made hys mandement & dyde so moch, that he assembled xiiii. C. men of armes, & wel iij. C. arbalestres, and made them to drawe toward Rochelle / And raymondyn & melusyne were there, whiche had don arryued many vesselles, & wel purueyed of[1] vytaylles necessary. And [2]thenne Geffray toke leue of his fader & of hys moder, & entred into the see with his companye, & saylled so þat they lost syght of land, For they made good way. Here resteth thystorye of them to speke and begynneth to speke of the Calyphe of Bandas & of the Sawdan of Barbarye, that was nevew to the sawdan that was slayn in the batayll vpon the heed of Sayr Andrew aboue the black montayne.

He assembles xiiii. C. men of arms and iii. C. archers, and marches them to Rochelle, where Raymondin had provided and victualled many vessels.

[2] fol. 154 *b*.

Geffray sets sail.

The Saracen lords resolve

Thystorye sheweth vs that the Caliphe of Bandas & the Saudan of Barbarye / the kyng Anthenor of Anthioche / and the admyral of querdes[3] had made

[1] *Orig.* of of. [3] Fr. *Cordes*.

togidre theire affyaunce, that neuer they shuld retourne tyl they had dystroyed the kynge Vryan of Cipre, and guyon the kyng' of Armanye his brother / and had wel assembled to the nombre of xvi.M sarasyns, & had theire shippes all prest to thentent to arryue first in Armanye / & first of all theire werkes to dystroye the yle of Rodes, & after the royalme of Armanye / & so passe in to Cypre to dystroye & putte to deth / & had sworne that they shuld make kyng' Vryan to dey on the crosse / & hys wyf & his children they shuld brenne. But as the wyse man saith / 'the fole proposeth & god dysposeth' / and at that season were many espyes emong' them as wel of armenye as of rodes / and there was one of the maister of Rodes spyes that was so [1]Lyke a Sarasyn that no man mysdymed hym for other than a Sarasyn, & had the langage as a man of the same Countrey; the whiche knewe the secretes of the sarasyns / and syn departed fro them & came to baruth, where he fond' a barke þat wold sayll to Turckye to fette marchandyse, and entred in it. And whan they had good wynd they toke vp theire ancres & saylled so long that they sawe the yle of Rodes, where they came to refressh them there / and soone after the sayd espye went out of the shipp and toke hys way toward the Cite of rodes, where he fonde the maister of rodes, that welcommed hym & demanded what tydynges. And the spye recounted to hym al that the Sarasyns entended for to doo / the which tydynges the maister of rodes dyde doo knowe by wrytyng to the two bretheren kynges of Armenye & of Cipre / and that they shuld entre in to the see with þeire power / and that he shuld mete with them at the porte of Japhe / and thenne whan guyon kyng' of armanye vnderstode this he entred in to the see, & had with hym to the nombre of six thousand' men of armes, & wel iii.M balesters, & cãme sayllyng to Rodes, where

to destroy Urian of Cyprus and Guion of Armenia.

They intend to first destroy the Isle of Rhodes, afterwards the kingdom of Armenia, and then to capture Urian of Cyprus, and make him die on the cross.

[1] fol. 155.

A spy of the Master of Rhodes among the Saracens

returns to his master and tells all that they intend to do.

Word is sent to the Kings of Armenia and Cyprus, and they are asked to set out to sea and to meet the Master of Rhodes at Jaffa.

Guion sails to Rhodes, where the prior receives him joyfully.

as he fonde the grete maister at the porte / And whan the grete pryo*ur* of Rodes sawe him he had grete joye, & forthw*ith* he entred w*ith* hym & al his puyssau*n*ce into the see to the nombre of [1] iii.C bretheren men of armes, & vi.C balesters or crosbowmen. Whan they were assembled togidre fayre was the Flote, [2]For by very estymac*i*on they were fonde to the no*m*bre of ten thousand men of armes / & about xviii.C what balesters as Archers. And wete it wel, it was a fayre syght, For the baners & standarts wayued w*ith* the wynd / and the gold & azure vpon the helmets & armures resplendysshed brigh & clere, that it was grete me*r*uayll / and syn they rowed toward the porte of Japhe, wher the Sarasyns had made theire nauye to dryue. And here resteth thystorye of them to speke, & sheweth of vryan as ye may here herafter. /

[1] fol. 155 *b*.

They set sail to Jaffa.

Urian gathers his barons at Lymasson,

Thystory sayth, that the kyng Vryan made & sent his mandement thrugh al his land of Cypre, for to gadre his baronye togidre w*ith* theire puyssau*n*ce, & whan they were assembled at the porte of Lymasson he toke leue of the quene Ermyne, his wyf, & entred into the see. And wete it they were in nombre, what men of armes as balesters & archers xiiii.M, And þe*n*ne they departed fro the porte, & saylled by suche force of wynde that quene Ermyne, which was vpon a hye toure, lost soone the syght of them. And wete it wel that geffray with the grete toth, w*ith*in thre days after arryued vnder Lymasson / but the maister of the porte suffred them not to entre w*ith*in the porte. how be it he was abasshed to see the armes of Lusynen in theire baners vpon the toppes of theire shippes, & wyst not what to deme or say; wherfore he went anoone to the Castel & anounced these tydynge*s* to the quene / And she þ*at* was full sage, said to hym / 'go ye to know

takes leave of Ermine,

and soon sails out of sight.

Geffray arrives three days after at Lymasson, but the master of the port will not let him enter.

[2] Fr. *six mille hermins et bien trois mille arbalestriers. Hermins = Armenians.*

what folke[1] they be, For without treson, they are some of my lordes lynee / speke thenne with them, hauyng your men prest & redy vpon the porte to thende, yf they wold arryue by force, that ye may withstand them' / And he anone fulfylled the quenes commandement & came to the barryers of the clos & demanded of them what they sought. Thenne ansuerd the knight whiche tofore that tyme had be in Cypre / 'lete us arryue, For it is geffray, kyng vryans brother, that commeth to socoure & ayde hym ayenst the Sarasyns.' And thenne whan the maister of the porte vnderstode þe knight he knew hym anone, & thus sayd: 'Sire, the kyng is departed from hens thre dayes agoo, & hath take hys way and hys puyssaunce with hym toward the porte of Japhe, For he wyl not suffre, yf he may, that paynemes entre in his royame / but pray, my lord, hys brother, that it playse hym to come & see the quene that ryght ioyous shal be of hys comyng.' And he al this said to geffray, whiche anoone entred into a lytel galyote, & with hym the said knight and other of hys felawship, & rowed to the chayne[2] that anoone was open / & so they entred in to the hauen, where as they fonde many noble men that honourably receyued geffray & his felawship, whiche meruaylled them gretly of hys grete courage & of hys fyersnes, & brought hym toward the queene that abode for hym, holdyng her sone Henry in her armes. And as Geffray approched to her she enclyned herself tofore him / and geffray to her made his obeyssaunce & toke her vp & kyssed her / & [3]syn said to her, 'Madame, my sustir, god yeue you joye of al that your herte desyreth' / And she welcommed hym frendly & honourably. And thenne geffray toke vp his neuew Henry, that kneled tofore hym. What shuld I now make long compte. Geffray was thenne glad / & the port was open & hys

[1] fol. 156.

The Queen says they may be of her husband's lineage.

The master of the port is told it is Geffray, the king's brother, who is in the ships.

He tells the knight that the king sailed for Jaffa three days before.

Geffray visits the queen,

[3] fol. 156 b.

and is welcomed.

[2] Fr. *chainne.*

His navy enters the port and is refreshed.

nauye entred, & whan they were wel refresshed geffray said to the quene: 'Madame, I wyl departe, lete me

Geffray asks for a pilot.

haue a maronner that wel knoweth the costes of this see, so that I may fynd my brother.'

To this ansuerd the quene, 'My right dere brother / By my feyth, I wold it had cost me a thousand poundes that ye were now with my lord, your brother, For wel I knowe he shal haue grete joye of your commyng.' and thenne she called to her the maister

The queen orders the portmaster to prepare a galley with the sagest mariner that can be found.

of the porte, & sayd / 'go make a galyot to be shipped redy with ten oores, & seke for the sagest maronner & best patron that can be fond, for to conduyte my lord my brother toward my lord.' 'Madame,' ansuerd

He has a rampin ready, which guides Geffray,

the maister of the port, 'I haue wel a rampyn alredy shipped to rowe, wel armed & vytaylled, & resteth no more than to meve & departe.' Thenne was geffray right glade & toke hys leue of the quene & of his nevew, & entred in to his shipp / and the said rampyn or galley gyded hym / & so departed with hys flote, &

who soon sails out of sight,

rowed & made good way, so that in short space they of the porte lost the syght of them. And the quene Ermyne prayed deuoutely to god that they myght retourne with joye. Of hym I shal leue to speke. But Vryan his broþer rowed so long tyl they perceyued the

[1] fol. 157.

Urian comes to Jaffa, and sees the Saracen fleet there.

porte [1]of Japhe, & the bygge & grete vesselles that were there assembled / and thenne was there comme the Caliphe / the Saudan of Barbarye, the kyng of Anthioche, & thadmyral of querdes, with theire puyssaunce. And was by them concluded the king anthenor & thadmyral shuld make vantward, & shuld hold the way toward rodes / and yf that they neded socour they shuld wryt to the Caliphe & to the Sawdan, whiche alwayes be redy to helpe & ayde them / and

The Saracens intend to sail against Rhodes.

the kyng antenor of Anthyoche & thadmyral of Cordes departed fro the porte of Japhe with fourty thousand panemes, & toke theire way toward Rodes by suche

wyse that Vryan knew nothing of theire departyng / and had rowed but two dayes journey whan they perceyued kyng guyon & the nauye of rodes, and also the Cristens perceyued them / Thenne was there grete alarme of bothe partes, and soone they borded togidre. There was grete occysyon & horryble medlee / and at the first recountryng were six galleyes of the sarasyns sounken & perysshed in the see / And the noble crystens endeuoyred them self wel & faught valyauntly, But the force & the quantyte of the Sarasyns was grete / and the Crysten peuple susteyned grete charge, & had be dyscomfyted yf god of hys grace had not conduyted geffray that part as it shall be recounted herafter.

They meet Guion, and fight. There is much slaughter,

six Saracen galleys are sunk;

but because of the multitude of Saracens the Christians would have been defeated,

Thystory saith, that geffray & his peple saylled in the see by force of wynd þat they had at theire wyll so long, that they [1]approuched the place where the batayll was. And first of all the rampyn that conduyted them approuched so nygh that they sawe them fyght / and anone retourned & said to geffray, 'Sire, commande al men to be redy, For we haue perceyued the batayll / & as we suppose they are sarasyns & crysten fyghting togidre.' Thenne rowed the galyote & came so nygh the baytayll that they herde crye on hye, 'Cordes & Anthioche' / and at the other part 'Lusynen & saynt John of Rodes' / and immedyatly retourned the rampyn toward geffray, & said to him, 'Sire, at that one party they ben sarasyns / and at the other part theire callyng is Lusynen & Saynt Johan of rodes / but certaynly it is not the kyng vryan / but I byleue, my lord, that it is the kyng guyon hys brother & the maister of Rodes that thus fyght with the Sarasyns.' 'Ryght foorth,' sayd geffray, 'goo we to them asprely' / thenne they haunced saylles vp & saylled foorth by such wyse that it semed as it had be the vyreton of a Crosbow, & stemed the shippes of the sarasyns in suche manere that they were sparpylled, so that there rested

[1] fol. 157 b.

had not Geffray come to their aid.

Geffray is told that it is a fight between Christians and Saracens.

He sails swift as an arrow and breaks up the Saracen fleet.

He cries, 'Lusignan,' which makes the Armenians think Urian has come to help.

not foure of al the flote, and cryed 'Lysynen' with a high voys. Wherfor the Ermayns & they of Rodes byleued þat it had be the kyng Vryan that were cõme fro cypre. And thenne toke they good herte to them

The Christians take heart.

courageously. And the kyng of Anthioche [1]& thadmyraH of Cordes gadred ayen theire peple, and rane vpon the crysten with grete force. But geffray & hys peuple, that were fresshe & new, ouerrane them in

[1] fol. 158.

The Saracens rally and attack their enemies.

Geffray damages the Saracens;

suche manere that they dommaged gretly the sarasyns / and thenne the vessel where geffray was / borded the

boards the vessel of Anthenor,

vessel of the kynge anthenor & were chayned togidre. And geffray entred into the vessel of the kyng & bygan to make grete occysyon of the sarasyns, & his peuple entred & faught so valyauntly with suche a strength that there was no sarasyn so hardy that durst shew

and causes many to enter the Admiral of Cordes' ship.

hym or make deffense / and many of them for theyre relyf supposed to haue entred into thadmyral shipp & they were drowned / the whiche admyral, guyon & his peuple assaylled strongly, & drowned foure of the sarasyns shippes.[2] The bataylH was fyers & horryble & thoccysyon hydouse / and briefly to say, the sarasyns were putte in suche manere so low that they had noþing them to deffende. /

Moche was the bataylH hard & strong, but aboue al other faught geffray manfully, & so dide the poyteuyns that were come with hym there, & so dyde guyon the maister of Rodes & theire peple / but they were abasshed for this that they cryed 'Lusynen' /

King Anthenor and the admiral see that they have been dis-

but thenne it was no saison tenquere. And thenne the kyng anthenor & thadmyral perceyued wel þat the dyscomfiture fylH on them, For they þenne [3]had lost more than the two partes of theire peple, wherfore they made the resydu of theire peuple to withdraw them

[3] fol. 158 *b*.

comfited, so set sail to Jaffa.

[2] In Fr. *et toutesfois le roi Anthenor se saulva au vaisseau de l'admiral de Cordes et fut tantost son vaisseau pillié de ce qui y estoit de bon, et puys fut effrondé en mer.*

toward the port of Japhe to haue socour / and the said kyng' & admyral put them self in a shipp of auauntage & made grete sayl fro the batayl, and whan the sarasyns perceyued they went after, he that might. But the Ermayns & they of Rodes ouertoke the moost part & putte them to deth & threw them ouerbord. But whan geffray perceyued the departyng' of the kyng' anthenor & the admyral, he dyde make sayl & went after with al hys nauye, & made so fast way that anoone he lefte the Ermayns & the maister of Rodes at sterne. And whan the rampyn ship of auauntage perceyued geffray, the patron cryed to hys peuple with a hye voys / 'after / after / fayre sires, For yf geffray leseth his way & faylleth to mete with hys brother, I shal neuer dare retourne to my lady.' And thenne the kynge Guyon, that knew the rampyn, asked of the patron what was that lord cristen that so had socoured them. 'By my feyth,' said the patron, 'it is geffray with the grete toth, your brother.' And whan the kyng guyon vnderstod it he cryed with a hye voys, 'make more sayl, that we were with our brother, For yf he were perysshed I shuld neuer haue hertly joye.' But the rampyn went tofore so fast that in short tyme he ouertoke geffray, that was neer the [1]sarasyns that approuched the porte of Japhe. Here I shall leue to speke of them, & shal shew of Vryan that tofore was come to the port and had fyred the sarasyns shippes there / but the paynemes rescued them in theire best manere / not that withstanding there were more than ten vesselles brent.

Geffray chases them,

and is followed by the rampin to Jaffa.

[1] fol. 159.

Urian had been there, and had set fire to some of the Saracen fleet.

In this partye sheweth thystorye that Geffray with the grete toeth pursiewed so long' the king anthenor & thadmyral of Cordes, that they approuched nygh to the port of Japhe, where they entred in / and geffray after them; For by no manere he wold leue them / though men shewed to hym the grete multitude of

Geffray enters the port of Jaffa after the king and the admiral.

paynemes that thenne were entred in to the vesselles to
He fights them; socoure the kyng' anthenor. But he anoone bygan the
batayH that was hard & mortaH, in so moch that the
they take to land. kyng and thadmyraH were constrayned to take land, 4
and went to the toune of Japhe, where they fond the
calyphe of Bandas and the Sawdan of Barbarye that
were gretly abasshed that so soone they were retourned,
They tell the caliph and the sultan their adventures. and demanded of the cause wherfore / and they re- 8
counted to them al thaduenture, And how the kyng
of armenye & the maister of Rodes were dyscomfyted,
had not a knyght araged or wodd that came & so-
coured them with a few peuple that cryed 'Lusynen' / 12
& there may none withstand hym, whiche is now
yonder at the porte where he fyghteth ayenst our peuple /
and al that he recountreth is brought to hys ende.
And whan the sawdan vnderstod it he had no wyH to 16
[1] fol. 159 b. [1] lawghe / but said, 'By machomet, it is tolde me of old
The sultan repeats an old prophecy that says that people who believe in Mahomet cannot withstand the Lusignans on the sea. that I, & many other of our sette and lawe, shall
susteyne grete parels vpon the see, by the heyres of
Lusynen / but yf we might haue them on land, and 20
that our peuple were out of þe shippes they shuld be
soone aH dyscomfyted.' 'By aH our godd*es*,' said the
Caliphe, 'ye say trouth, / and also yf they were here
dystroyed we shuld subdue lyghtly Rodes, cypre, & 24
armanye / Lete vs thenne make our peuple to come to
land, and suffre the Cristen to take peasybly theire
landing.' But in certayn for nought they spake soo,
For they yssued out without ony commandement, by 28
Geffray meanwhile drives the Saracens from their ships. the vertue & strengtH of Geffray that therto constrayned
them / and Geffray with his peuple pursiewed them at
land, & chaced them vnto the Cite of Japhe / and all
thoo that were ouertake were put to deth / and they 32
They fly to Jaffa. that entred in the toun cryed 'treson, treson!' Thenne
were the gates shette, and euery man went to hys
Geffray orders the horses to be landed. garde / and geffray retourned to his shippes / and com-
manded that the horses shuld be had out aland. For 36

he said that neuer he shuld departe but he shuld dey or he shuld make men to say, that Geffray with the grete toth hath be here.

4 Thystorye telleth vs that whyle Geffray was about to haue out of the shippes hys horses, the rampyn perceyued the baners & penons of the kyng' vryan, that moch strongly scarmysshed the nauye of 8 the sarasyns that knew nothing' that geffray had take land, For they had take the deep of the porte. And [1] the kynge and thadmyrall were arryued at the narowest syde to be the sooner on land. Thenne departed the 12 rampyn shipp of auauntage, and rowed toward vryan. And thenne they recountred guyon, whiche asked of the patron tydynges of geffray. 'Yonder he hath take land,' said the patron, '& hath chaced the paynemes 16 vnto þe Cite / and yonder is the kyng vryan your broþer, that scarmyssheth theire nauye, to whom I goo for to anounce hym your auenture, and the commyng of geffray, his brother' / And thenne the rampyn 20 rowed fast, and came to vryan to whom, after his obeyssaunce don, he recounted al the faytte. Wherof Vryan thanked god deuoutely / & cryed to hys peple, 'auaunt, lordes, thinke to doo wel, For our enemyes 24 may not escape vs, but that they be other slayn or take.' Thenne the crysten borded theire enemyes, the which were gretly abasshed of this, that they had knowleche that the kyng' anthenor & thadmyrall were 28 retourned to Japhe. wherfor they toke land who that might, & fledd toward the toun. And thenne whan the Calyphe and the saudan sawe theire peple aland, they dyde send ambaxades toward the prynces Cristen 32 for to haue trews the space of thre dayes, & that they shuld suffre theire landing', & on the foureth day they shuld gyue them journey of batayll. Kinge Vryan accorded therto, and sent word therof to his brethern 36 guyon and geffray / and thus they landed peasybly, and

Urian is seen by the men of the rampin.

[1] fol. 160.

They row to him,

and tell of Geffray's doings.

Urian drives the Saracens to land.

They fly to the town.

The caliph asks a truce for three days.

Urian agrees to it.

The brethren land their hosts, [1] fol. 160 b.

assembled theire peple togidre. Thenne [1]was the Joye grete emongt the thre bretheren, and theire oost was nombred xxii.M what men of armes / balesters & archers.

greet each other, and refresh themselves.

Thystorye sayth that the thre bretheren and theire peuple made moche eche of other, & refresshed them duringt the trews. But þanne the Sawdan of Damaske that had knowleche of the crystens landing sent wordt to the Calyphe & to the sawdan of Barbarye, that they shuld not fyght with the crysten tyl he were come with them, & that they shuldt take othre thre days of trews / & so they dide; wherto the noble prynces crysten accorded. And duryng that terme the Caliphe &[2] the sawdan of Barbarye dyde withdraw theyre peuple toward Damaske to thentent that they might have the Cristen more within the landt, so that none might flee to theyre nauye; but he were ouertake & slayne. For they wendt to haue aH theire wyH vpon the Crysten. For they were after the saudan of Damaske was assembled with them to the nombre of VII score thousandt fyghtyng men / and þe crysten were but xxii.M good men / the whicH, when they knew of the departyngt of the sarasyns fro Japhe, they were fuH dolaunt; For they supposed they had fledd / but for nought they wend soo / for at ende of six dayes they came & approuched nygh them, & on the morne gaf them batayH. Thenne came a trucheman mounted vpon a dromadary, whiche alighted tofore the tentes of the thre bretheren, and humbly salued them / and they rendred hym [3]gretyngt / and he beheld them long or he spake. For he wondred moche of theire noble maynten & fyers contenaunce / and in especial he meruaylled moche of Geffray that was the hyest of personne, & saw the toeth that passed ouer the lyppe along hys cheke; wherof he was so abasshed that almost he coude not speke / but at last he said to

The truce is lengthened.

The Saracens march inland to prevent the Christians escaping after the battle.

The hosts are 140,000 Saracens against 22,000 Christians.

The Christians think the Saracens have fled.

An interpreter comes to the brethren.

[3] fol. 161.

He wonders at their fierceness; especially at Geffray's tooth.

[2] MS. & and.

kynge Vryan in this wyse. 'Noble kyng of Cypre / my right redoubted lordes the Sawdants of Barbarye & of Damaske / the Calyphe of Bandas / the kynges of Anthioche & of Danette & thadmyraH of Cordes send word̄ by me to you that they be prest[1] redy to lyuere you batayH, & they tary after you in a medowe vnder Damaske where ye, with al your puyssaunce may come / saf and peasybly there to make and take there your lodgys tofore them wheresomeuer it playse you / and by auenture whan ye haue sene theire puyssaunce ye shaH fynd some good & amyable traytye with my said̄ lordes. For certaynly it is not to your power to withstand̄ theire strengtH.' And whan geffray herd̄ there wordes, he sayd to hym / 'goo thou to thy kynges & sawdants, & to thy Caliphe / and say them that yf there were none only but I & my peuple, yet wold I fyght / & say them þat of theire trews we haue nought to doo / and whan thou shalt come to them say that geffray with the grete toth deffyeth them / and anoone after that thou art departed from hens I shal sawte the Cite of Japhe, & shal fyre it / and al the sarasyns that I shal fynd̄, I shal putte them to deth / and say to them, as thou passe by [2]that they puruey them wel, For I ryght foorth shaH departe to asayH them.' And whan the trucheman or messager herd̄ this ansuere, he was al abasshed / and without eny more proces he lept vpon his dromadary, For he had so grete feer of the fyersnes of geffray that alwayes he loked behynd̄ hym, for fere that he had folowed hym / & sayd in hym self: 'By mahon, yf al the other were suche as that with the grete toth, our lordes, nor theire puyssaunce were not able to withstand them.' And thenne he came to Japhe, & said to them that geffray with the grete toth wold come anoon tassayH theire Cyte, and that he had sworne that he shuld putte in

He delivers his message,

that the Saracen lords are ready for battle.

He suggests a treaty.

Geffray bids him return to the Caliph

with his defiance,

and the news that Geffray is about to assail Jaffa and to slay all the Saracens he finds there.

[2] fol. 161 *b*.

The interpreter leaps upon his dromedary and full of fear rides away, thinking that his lords cannot withstand many Geffrays.

He tells the people of Jaffa that Geffray is about to assail them.

[1] Fr. *pretz*.

subgection of hys swerd al them that he fond. Thenne were they all abasshed / and wete it wel that the more parte of the peple there fled for fere toward Damaske, and toke with them theire goodes. And anoon geffray dide blow vp hys trompettes, & armed hys peple, & went incontynent to sawte the toun, and wold neuer cesse therof, For ony thing that his brepern said / and sware by god that he shuld shewe them suche tokens that men shuld knowe that he had ben in surye. But here seaceth thistorye of hym, & speketh of the forsaid messanger þat rode so long that he came tofore the lodgys of the sarasyns at Damaske.

Many fly to Damascus.

Geffray approaches Jaffa.

In this party, sayth thystory, that the messager rode so fast vpon his dromadary that he cam / vnto thoost tofore Damaske / & fond in the tente of the Calyphe the two sawdans, [1] the kyng anthenor / thadmyral of Cordes, the kyng golofryn of Danette, & many other that asked tydynges of the Cristens. And the messager them said / 'I haue don your commandement & message / but whan I shewed vnto them, yf that they had seen your puyssaunce it wold haue be a meane of traytye with you / and thenne one of them that had oo grete toth, wold not suffre the kyng of Cypre to haue the wordes, but he hymself said þus, "Goo thou to thy kynges and sawdants, & say them we haue not to doo with theire trews, / & that yf there wer but he & his peple only, yet wold he fyght with you" / and morouer said to me / that assoone as I shuld come to you that I shuld take you ayen þe patents of your trews, & that ye shuld beware of hym / and that in despyte of you all he wold assawte Japhe, & putte the fyre thrugh al the toun & destroye them for euer / and that thus I shuld say to them whan I passed by the Cite / and so haue I doo / and wete it wel that the more [2] part of the Cytezeyns be come after me, & immedy-

The interpreter returns to the Saracen knights,

[1] fol. 162.

and relates the result of his embassy.

[2] MS. has *more* twice.

atly after my departyng' I herd hys trompettes blowe thassawte of Japhe / & ye coude neuer thinke thorryble & fyers contenaunces of the prynces crysten with theire puyssaunce / And wete it wel after the semblaunce that they shew, ye be not of power tabyde them, & in especial he with the grete toth hath none other fere but that ye shal flee or they come to you.' And whan the saudan of Damaske vnderstod it, he bygan to lawgh, & said, 'By machomid, in asmoche as I haue perceyued now your hardynes, ye shal be the first in batayll ayenst hym with the grete toth.' Wherto ansuerd [1] the messager / 'vnhappy be that heure or day that I approche hym / but yf there be a grete ryuere or the toures or walles of Damaske or some other Fortres betwix hym & me / and yf I doo other, lete my lord mahomid drowne me,' / & therwith bygans euery personne to lawhe. But there were suche that lawhed, that afterward, yf they might haue had leyser, they wold haue wept. Now shall I shew how geffray assawted Japhe, and toke it by force, and putte to deth all the sarasyns there, and toke their hauoir and goodes out of the Cyte / & bare it vnto the vesselles, and after sette fyre on the Cite / and this don, retourned the crysten to theire lodgys, where geffray requyred his bretheren that they shuld take hym, the maister of Rodes, & hys peuple, to make the vantgarde / & they were agreed / and that same nyght they rested them tyl on the morowe.

He tells the Saracens that he thinks they are unable to withstand the Christians.

The Sultan of Damascus jeers and says he will make the interpreter the first to fight Geffray.

[1] fol. 162 b.

The interpreter declares he will not fight Geffray.

Geffray assaults Jaffa, slays the inhabitants, and takes their goods to his vessels.

The battle is arranged.

The next day, as the hystory wytnesseth, after the masse herd, desloged the vanward, and after the grete batayll, & the sommage & syn the ryergarde / and it was a noble syght to see thoost & the fayre ordynaunce to departe. Thenne came a spye to geffray, & hym said: 'Sire, about half a leghe hens ben a thousand sarasyns, whiche drawe them toward baruth to kepe the hauen of the toune.' to whom geffray asked / 'canst conduyte me thither?' / 'ye, by

The host marches in good order.

A spy tells Geffray of the march of a thousand Saracens to Beyrouth.

my feyth, sire,' sayd the spye. Thenne said geffray to the maister of rodes, that he shuld conduyte the vanwarde, puttyng fyre vpon the way where he went, to thentent he shuld not fayH to fynd hym by the trasse of the fumyer / and the maister of [1]Rodes said / 'it shal be don.' And thanne departed geffray with the spye, and went before, where he perceyued the sarasyns commyng fro a mountayn ; & he shewed to geffray the sarasyns, whicH was joyful therof, & hasted hys peuple. and whan he had ouertake them / he sware : 'by god / ye gloutons ! ye may not me escape' / & so rane vpon them, & ouerthrew the first that he recountred to the erth, & syn drew hys swerd, & dyde meruayllous fayttes of armes, & his peuple in lyke wyse. What nede is to speke more of the sarasyns, they were dys comfyte, & fled toward Baruth, & the Crysten in the chaas. And whan the sarasyns of baruth sawe the fleers, they anoone knew them, & lete faH the bridge & opened the gates & barryers / thenne the fleers entred within the toune / but alwayes geffray folowed so hastly, that he entred with them within the town with wel fyue C men of armes. And whan Geffray was entred he commanded to kepe [the] gate[2] tyl the resydu of hys peuple were come / And thenne bygan the batayH to be fyers & strong / but neuertheles the Sarasyns might not endure, but fled at another yate out of the toun. And he that penne had a good hors was wel bestad, For they sporyd fast, som toward the Cite of tryple, & some toward Damaske. And geffray & his peple slew al the sarasyns that they fond in the toun, and threw them in the see / and he that sawe the toun strong & the Castel nygh the see, fayre porte garnysshed with toures for the sauegarde of the nauye sayd / 'that place shuld be kepe for hym self' / and there geffray lefte two houndred men of armes &

Geffray follows

and overthrows them.

They fly to Beyrouth, chased by the Christians.

The Saracens cross the bridge, followed by five hundred of Geffray's men.

The Saracens are driven out of the other gate, and fly to Tripoli and Damascus.

Geffray slays all the Saracens he finds,

and says that he will keep the place.

[1] fol. 163.

[2] Fr. *à garder*. MS. has *repegate* = *kepe* [*the*] *gate*.

C balesters of his ꝑple / and he hym*self* [1]soiourned there all that same nyght. And on the morne he toke leue of his men that he lefte there, & rode after thoost by the trace of the fumyer & smoke / but the maister of Rodes was aferd lest he shuld haue grete empesche-ment /. Here seaceth the hystorye of hym / and sheweth of the fleers out of Japhe toward Damaske, whiche came to thoost at the tente of the Sawdan, where as the lord*es* sarasyns were / and pyteously recounted to them the dystruct*i*on of Japhe / how the Cristen had putte to deth bothe yong & old, & sette fyre on eche part of the toun. Whan the saudants & kyng*es* sarasyns vnderstod it, they were full dolaunt. 'By al our godd*es*,' said the saudan of Damaske, 'Moche hard ben the crysten, & they doubte nought as it semeth / but full wel they knowe that they are not of power to w*ith*stand our grete puyssaun*ce*; wherefore they make semblaunt, that nought they fere vs, & make suche sawt*es* while that we are ferre fro them / but yf we marched foorth / no doubte they wold recule & w*ith*-drawe them in to theire shippes.' 'By mahon,' said the sawdan of Barbarye / 'yf they were here alle rosted or soden, & yf it were custome to ete suche flesshe, they were not to the regarde of our peple suffysaunt for a brekfast / by my lawe, yf there were but I & my peuple only, yet shuld none repasse of them homward.' But whan the trucheman or messager herd hym so speke he coude neu*er* hold hys tonge, but that he sayd / 'myghty sawdan, yf now ye sawe the kyng Vryan / the kyng guyon hys brother, & he w*ith* the grete toth, theire horryble & fyers conten*aun*ce, shuld cause [2]you to be in peas & cesse your grete menaces. And wete it wel, or the werke be ful doo ye shal not haue them fo[r] so good chep as ye say / but oft he that menaceth is somtyme in grete fer & drede hym self, & aftirward ouerthrawen' / And then*ne* whan the saudan vnder-

[1] fol. 163 b.

He leaves three hundred men to guard it,

and by the guidance of the smoke rides to the Christian host.

The fugitives from Jaffa recount their mishap to the sultan.

The Sultan of Damascus says the Christians would fall back if he marched against them.

The Sultan of Barbary says there are not enough Christians to make the Saracen host a breakfast;

but the interpreter says if the sultan saw the brethren he

[2] fol. 164.

would cease his threats and make peace

stode the messagers wordes, he said to hym: 'By Mahomid, fayre sire, I see wel by the grete hardynes that is in you, ye wold fayne be ordeyned at the first recountre of þe batayll ayenst Geffray with the grete toeth.' & he ansuerd: 'By my lawe, sire, yf he be not recountred of none other but of me / he may wel cõme surely; For I shal tourne myn heelys toward hym / ye / one leghe or two ferre fro his personne.' Thenne the lawhing was there grete / but soone after they herd other tydynges, wherof they had no wyll to lawhe, For the fleers fro baruth forsayd came to thoost, and to them recounted the dommage & pyte of the toune of Baruth, and how geffray with the grete toth had chaced þem by force, & al the resydu of them he had slayn / & 'by mahon,' said they, 'wete it wel he is not of purpos to flee, For he hath lefte garnyson at Baruth, & wel vytaylled it, & commeth hyperward in al haste to hym possible / & men see nothing thrugh al the Countre where he passeth but fyre & flamme, & the wayes be all couered with sarasyns that he & hys peple haue slayn.' Thenne whan the saudan of Damaske vnderstode it he was moch dolaunt & angry. 'By mahomid,' said he, 'I byleue fermely that he with the grete toth hath a dyuel in his body.' Thenne said the saudan of Barbarye, 'I am in doubte of that is told me.' 'What is that?' [1]said the saudan of Damaske / 'it is said that the heyrs of Lusynen shal dystroye me, and that our lawe shal by theire strengthe be hurt & dommaged.' Thenne was there none so hardy a Sarasyn but that he shoke for fere. And now cesseth thystorye of them, & retourneth to geffray.

The fugitives from Beyrouth relate how they have been chased by Geffray, and that he is approaching.

The Sultan of Damascus believes Geffray to have a devil in his body.

[1] fol. 164 *b*. He refers to a saying about the heirs of Lusignan destroying him.

Thystorye sheweth in this partye, that so long rode geffray with hys felawship, that he ouertoke the vanwarde that the maister of Rodes conduyted, whiche was glade of his retourne, & asked how he had exployted. And geffray recounted to hym how he & his

Geffray overtakes the Master of Rhodes,

peple, with thayde of god, he had wonne the toune, castel, & hauen of baruth, and that by force they had chased a grete part of them that were within, and the resydu they had putte to deth / & how he had lefte certayn nombre of his peuple to kepe it. 'By god,' sayd the maister of Rodes, 'ye haue wel don, & nobly & valyauntly exployted' / and soone these tydynges were knowen thrugh thoost / & Vryan & Guyon were joyfull therof. 'By my feyth,' said Vryan to Guyon: 'Oure brother Geffray is of grete enterpryse & ryght valyaunt in armes, and yf god of his grace yeue hym long lyf, he shal do yet many grete actes worthy to be had in mynde.' 'By my feyth,' said guyon, 'ye say trouth.' Long tyme went the two bretheren thus spekyng of the prowes of geffray / And so long marched þeir oost, that on an euen they lodged them by a ryuere fyue myle fro Damaske / & there came theire espyes, that declared to them all the manyere & contenaunce of the sarasyns: And thenne they toke Counseyl to wete what best was to doo, & they [1]concluded that on the morne theire oost shuld lodge a leghe nygh to the Sarasyns as they dide. And thus on the morne they departed, & was commanded that none shuld sette fyre on his lodgys, nor in none other place; to thende that the Sarasyns shuld not soone perceyue theire commyng. And briefly to say, so long they went tyl they came to the place where they lodged them togidre, & made þat nyght good watche toward theire enemyes. & after they souped & lay al nyght in theire harneys. And anoone aftir middenyght geffray, accompanyed with a thousand fyghting men, toke a guyde that wel knew the Countre, & went toward thoost of the Sarasyns al the couert. & nygh therby was a forest that dured a myle, and there he embusshed & sent word to thoost that they shuld be redy as to receyue theire enemys.

and relates how he captured Beyrouth.

The news spreads, and Urian and Guion are joyful.

The brothers speak of the prowess of Geffray.

The host arrives close to Damascus.

[1] fol. 165.

Next day they march still nearer.

At midnight Geffray ambushes a thousand men near the Saracen host.

He takes two hundred more men, and tells those of the ambush not to fight until he and his company fall back; and that then they should rush upon their pursuers.

Thystorye testyfyeth that geffray at the day spryn
mounted on horsbake, with ij. C fyghtyng me
& commanded them of thembusshe þat for nothing th
they sawe they shuld not meue them tyl that they sav
hym & hys company recule, and thenne vpon them
the chaas they shuld renne. Thenne departed geffra
& went vpon a lytel montayne, and sawe the sarasyn
oost all styl, & herd nothing, as nobody had
there. Thenne was he dolaunt, that sooner he had n
knowen theire contenaunce, For yf hys bretheren ha
be there with theire peple, they shuld haue had goo
chep of sarasyns / but not withstanding, he sware th
syth he was so nygh, that he shuld make them
knowe his commyng. Thenne said geffray to hy

Geffray marches to the Saracen host.

felawes: 'ryde we fast, & see that ye be not aslepe
they are / & make no bruyt tyl I shal commande yo
And they said [1]that nomore shuld they doo. Then
they rode al the couert nygh togidre, & and entr

[1] fol. 165 b.

It is asleep.

into thoost, & wel perceyued that they were aslep

When he sees the great multitude he says that they would have to be dreaded if they were Christian, but as they are, they are only dogs.

on euery syde / geffray behel & sawe the grete mul
tude of peuple / and syn he said in this wyse: 'By n
feyth, yf þey were crysten, they were to be ferd
dredd / but yet they be not so good as dogges.' and wi
his felawship went vnto the myddes of thoost, or th

Geffray sees a rich tent;

made eny stryf. And there geffray perceyued a ryc
tente, and supposyng that it had be other the Caliph
tente or one of the saudants / said vnto hys peuple
'auaunt, lordes & good men, it is now tyme to chere
awake these houndes, for to long they haue slep

he enters and smites those inside.

Thenne Geffray, & ten knightes with hym, entred in
the sayd tente, & vpon them that were in smote wi
theire swerdes, makyng heedes, armes, & legges to le
the bodyes. There was the noyse, & the cry grete
hydous to here / & wete it that it was þe tente of t

They awake;

kyng Gallafryn of Danette; which anoone rose vp f
hys bed, & wel he supposed to haue fled out at t

backsyde of hys tente, but geffray perceyued, & gaf hym suche a stroke with his swerd that was pesaunt, & cuttyng sharp as a raser, that he cleft hys heed vnto the brayne / & the sarasyn kyng fell doun deed / and none escaped of them that were in the tente; but they were all slayne. And thenne cryeng 'Lusynen' they retourned thrugh thoost, puttyng to deth al the sarasyns that they recountred. Thenne was thoost wel awaked & made grete alarme / And anoone came these tydynges to the tente of the sawdan of Damaske, that said: 'What noyse is that I here yonder [1]without?' Thenne a sarasyn that came fro that part, which had a broken heed, in such manere þat hys one eere lay vpon hys sholder / sayd to hym: 'Sire, that are x dyuelles, and theire meyne that haue entred into your oost, which slee & ouerthraw al them that they recountre in theire way / and they haue slayn the kyng of Danette your cousyn, and theire cry is "Lusynen!"' Whan the saudan vnderstood it he made hys trompettes to blow vp, that euery man shuld be armed. And thenne the saudan & x. M[l] sarasyns with hym went after. And geffray went with hys peple thrugh thoost makyng grete occyson of sarasyns, For they were vnarmed, & might not endure nor withstand. And wete it that or euer they departed fro thoost, they slough & hurt more than iii M[l] sarasyns / and whan they were out of the lodgys, they went al softe & fayre / And the sawdan of Damaske hasted hym after.

Geffray cuts Gallafrin's head open.

The Christians crying 'Lusignan,' return through the host and slay many Saracens.

[1] fol. 166.

The Sultan of Damascus hears the tidings,

and with x. Ml Saracens

hastes after Geffray.

Moche dolaunt & angry was the saudan of Damaske, whan he perceyued the grete occyson that the crysten had don vpon hys peuple / & sware by hys goddes Appolyn and mahon, that forthwith he shuld be auenged on them, & that not a crysten shuld be take to mercy, but shuld al be slayn. thenne he folowed geffray with x thousand Sarasyns. And thenne geffray that perceyued, & sent word therof to

hys bretheren by his peple feynyng to flee / and h
entred within the busshe where his peple was, for t
putte them in aray / And the saudan folowed alwa
& passed byfore thembussh. Wete it wel that th
maister of Rodes that conduyted the vanward wa
[1] fol. 166 b. thenne in fayre [1]batayH. And whan he sawe th
He is driven back by the vanguard of the Christians. saudan that folowed the crysten / he ranne ayenst th
sarasyns, the spere in the rest, and there they medle
togidre & faught strongly / and within a lytel space
tyme the Sarasyns were dyscomfyte. For at the fir
recountre with the speerys, eche cristen ouerthrew
sarasyn to the erth. And whan the sawdan saw
that he might no lenger withstand he reculed,
assembled his peple in hys best wyse, abydyng th
Then his host is fallen upon by the ambush, sarasyns that came after. But geffray & hys com
panye yssued out of thembusshe and ranne vpon the
þat went without ordonaunce after the saudan. An
four thousand Saracens are slain. within a whyle there were slayn of the sarasyns by th
way more than foure thousand. And thenne many
Some of them escape to their host them fledd toward theire oost, and fond the caliphe
bandas, the saudan of barbarye, the king Anthenor,
thadmyral of Cordes, whiche asked them fro whe
and tell the Saracen leaders of the mishap. þey came / And they ansuerd: 'we come fro th
batayH where the sawdan of Damaske hath be dy
comfyted.' And whan they vnderstod it they we
dyscomforted & sorowful, & wyst not what they shu
say or do. Now I wyl retourne to speke of the batay

The Sultan of Damascus fights manfully. The batayH was horrible & cruel, & the sawdan
Damaske faught manfully þat day, after that
had assembled hys peple. Thenne came geffray, th
ranne vpon them at backsyde / and the maister
rodes at the other syde, In so moche that there w
made grete occysyon of sarasyns. What shuld I mal
long compte / the feled them assaylled on bothe syd
[2] fol. 167. wherby [2]they were dyscomfyted, & might no leng
defende. And whan the saudan perceyued the dy

comfyture, he went out of the batayll & tourned the targe behynd, and sporyd hys hors, & fled fast toward thoost of the sarasyns / and geffray was at that syde, that wel perceyued hym, & demed wel by hys ryche armures that it was he, or some grete lord of the sarasyns. Thenne he broched hys hors with the sporys after the saudan, and cryed to hym, 'retourne, or thou shalt dey! For I shuld haue grete vergoyne yf I smote the behynd / but alwayes, yf thou not retourne, nedes I most do soo.' And whan the sawdan vnderstod hym, he sporyd hys hors, & hasted hym more than he dide tofore / and geffray, that ryght dolaunt was that he might not ouertake hym, cryed to hym ayen, sayeng: 'Fy on the! recreaunt coward; that art so wel horsed, & so nobly & surely armed, and yet darest not abyde a man alone / retourne, or I shal slee the fleeyng / how be it, that shal be ayenst my wyll.' And thenne the saudan, vergoynous of geffrays wordes, that for fere of a man alone he fledd / retourned at the corner of þe wode, nygh by thoost of the sarasyns, in that same place where as geffray had that day embusshed hys peuple / and putte hys shild tofore hys brest, and the spere in the rest, & thus he cryed to geffray: 'What art thou, þat so hastly folowest me / by mahon! that shal be to thy grete dommage.' / 'and for thy prouffyt I am not come thus ferre,' said geffray / 'but syth that myn name thou axest, thou shalt [1]it knowe. I am Geffray with the grete toeth, broþer to the kinges Vryan & guyon / and what art thou?' 'By mahon,' said the saudan, 'that shalt thou knowe / I am the saudan of Damaske. And knowe thou, that I were not so joyous who that had gyuen me a C thousand besans of gold, as I am to haue fond the so at myn ease, For thou mayst me not escape / I deffy the, by machomet my god.' 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'nother thou nor thy god I preyse not a

When discomfited he flies to the Saracen host.

Geffray recognizes him, and cries to him,

'Return, or thou shalt die!'

He hastes away the faster;

but Geffray again calls on him.

At last the sultan turns round and asks his name.

[1] fol. 167 b.

Geffray replies that he is brother to Urian and Guion, and demands his adversary's name.

The sultan tells him, and defies Geffray.

rotyn dogge; For soone thou shalt fynd̄ me nerer the,

Geffray cries that he will not escape.

to thyn euyl helthe / and yf it playseþ to god, my creatour, thou shalt not escape.' /

Geffray and the sultan go apart, then run upon each other.

Here sayth thystorye, that Geffray & the saudan, that bothe were of grete courage & strength̄, reculed eche fro other, and syn raune vpon eche other / and the Saudan valyauntly smote geffray, & tronchoned his spere vpon his shild / but it is wel to byleue that the noble & valyaunt geffray, at this first cours, faylled not; For he smote the Saudan by suche radeur, that he lefte hym out of hys arsouns, & bare hym vnto therthe. and so passed foorth, and immedyatly toke in hys hand̄ hys good swerd̄ / and pretendyng that men shuld̄ speke of his fayttes & valyaunces, he smote the saudan by suche vertu that he perced hys helmet, and effoundred hys heed almost to the brayne, so that the sawdan was sore astonyed and euyl bestad̄, in suche wyse that he nother sawe nor herd̄ / but as geffray wold̄ haue alyghted̄ to haue take the saudans helmet, to haue brought it to hys bretheren, & to see yf he [1] was deed,

Geffray bears the sultan to the earth.

He cleaves his helmet,

and is about to take it from his head,

[1] fol. 168.

[a] when he sees sixty Saracens, who cry, 'Your end is come.'

he perceyued wel thre score sarasyns, that cryed after hym, & said: 'By my lawe, false crysten, your ende is come.' And whan geffray vnderstode it, he sporyd hys hors, & brandysshed the swerd̄; and the fyrst that he recountred̄, he smote doun to therthe al deed̄. And who that had be there, he had seen hym execute noble faytes & armes, as of one man deffendyng hys lyf; For geffray cutte and smote of heedes & armes, and dyed the place with grete effusyon of sarasyns blood̄ / and they casted at hym sperys & dartes, and made grete peyne for to haue had ouerthrawen hym to therth̄. And thenne the saudan was come at hymself ayen, and stode vp al astonyed, as he had come fro slepe / he loke at ryght syde of hym, and mounted on hys hors, & sawe the batayll̄, where he perceyued wel geffray, that made grete occysyon of sarasyns / and was

Geffray smites the first dead,

and slays many others.

The sultan comes to his senses,

geffray wounded & hurt in many places of his body. Thenne cryed the saudan, admonnestyng his peple, sayeng / 'auaunt! worthy sarasyns / by mahomid, yf he vs escape, I shal neuer haue joye; For who might bryng hym to an euyl ende, the resydu were not to be doubted.' Thenne was geffray assaylled on all partes / & he deffended hym hardyly & so valyauntly, that no sarasyn durste hym abyde / but casted at hym fro ferre sperys, darts, stones & arowes / vyretons & quarelles, with theire crosbowes / but it semed not that he [1]made ony force therof / but as a hongre wolf renneth vpon sheep / so dide he renne vpon the enemyes of god. 'By my goddes, Appolyn & mahon,' sayd thenne the saudan / 'this is not a man / but it is a grete dyuell, come out of hell / or the Cristen god, which is come hither to distroye our lawe' / And, For certayn, geffray was in this auenture wel by the space of two heures.

and incites his people against Geffray,

who defends himself valiantly,

[1] fol. 168 *b*.

and as a hungry wolf runs upon sheep, so runs Geffray upon the enemies of God.

The sultan cries that Geffray is either a great devil or the Christian God.

In this parel was geffray vnto tyme that the new knight, which had be with hym in garende, which had sene hym departe after the saudan / cam at him with wel a C men of armes, For he loued hym entierly. And thenne, whan he approched the wode, he perceyued the batayll, and sawe the sawdan, that dyde his best for to hurt & dommage Geffray, that faught alone ayenst mahondys peuple; wherfore he said / 'cursed be he of god, that shal not helpe hym now' / and the knightes peple ansuerd, 'to theire euyl helthe they haue recountred geffray.' And forthwith they broched theire horses with theire sporys, & came to the batayll. but assoone as the saudan perceyued the socours, he sporyd hys hors, & hastly fled toward thoost / & left his peple in that plyght, of the which neuer one escaped, but were al slayne. Thenne whan geffray perceyued the new knight, that so wel had socoured hym, he thanked hym moche, & sayd: 'My frend, suche rooses ben good, & of swete odour / & the

Geffray's new knight sees his lord's danger,

and rushes at the head of his people to the rescue.

The sultan takes flight.

Geffray thanks the knight,

lorde that hat about hym suche cheualrye, may take his rest surely.' 'Sire,' said the knight, 'I haue not doo that thing[1] wherof I owe to be [1]rewarded, For euery trew seruaunt oweth to take heede to thonour & prouffyt of hys maister and lorde. And thenne, syth it is soo / no reward ought not to be had therfore / but departe we hens, For it is tyme that ye take your rest: ye haue do this day that wel may suffyse. & also we be lytel nombre of peuple, & nygh our enemyes, that haue grete puyssaunce / and your woundes and soores must be vysyted and ouersene / and also, it me semeth best, that we retourne toward oure oost by our owne wyH / than yf by force we were constrayned to retourne; For no doubte / who that retourneth fleeyng, & is chassed by hys enemyes / that may be to hym but blame / how be it, that oftyme it is said / that bettre it is to flee, þan to abyde a folyssh enterpryse.' Thenne said geffray: 'Fayre sire, at this tyme we shal byleue your counseyH.' And they thenne departed, and went toward theire oost, & fonde in theire way the feldes sowen with sarasyns deed. And wete it wel, that the same day, byfore none, the sarasyns lost wel xxv[M] thousande men, that by fayt of armes were al slayne / and there escaped, fleeyng, XL. M[l]. And wete it also, that the Caliphe and the two saudans, the kinge Anthenor and thadmyral of Cordes fonde of seuen score thousande panemes that the euen tofore were in theire oost, but foure score thousand, wherof they were gretly abasshed. Now I shal speke of Geffray, that was retourned to thoost, where he was wel festyed of hys bretheren, and of theire baronye / and his woundes were vysyted by the Cyrurgyens, that [2]said that he shuld not leue the harneys therfor: and they all thanked god. And now I shal shew of the sawdan. / Thystorye sayth, that whan the saudan was departed fro the bataylH, he walaped tyl he came to the

[1] fol. 169.

who advises him to return to the Christian host;

because it is often better to flee than to abide a foolish enterprise.

Geffray follows the knight's counsel.

On the way back they find the field covered with the slain Saracens, who have lost xxv. Ml men.

[2] fol. 169 b.

Geffray's wounds are tended, but they do not oblige him to leave off his armour.

sarasyns oost, where as he fond̄ his peple al abasshed, For they wend he had be slayn. And whan they sawe hym, they made grete joye, & made to hym theire obeyssaunce, and asked how he had exployted. 'By mahomid̄,' sayd þe saudan / 'lytel or nought haue I doo, For my peple is al deed.' And incontynent he was desarmed, & recounted them al thauenture. And the two oostes rested them that night, without ony approching or cours don of neyther partye. /

The sultan gallops to the Saracen host. They thought him to be dead, so receive him with joy.

He relates his adventure.

Here sheweth thystorye, that on the morow by tymes, the Crysten armed them, & rengid̄ & ordeyned them in batayH, and lefte good watche for to kepe theire lodgys / and them that were wounded & hurt, that myght bere no harneys / and marched foorth in fayre ordynaunce toward thenemyes. In the vanwardes were geffray, & the maister of rodes, & theire peple; & good̄ arblasters were vpon the wynges, wel rengid̄. And in the grete batayH was the king Vryan / and the king Guyon conduyted the ryergard̄ / and so long they marched, that they sawe thoost of the sarasyns / And anoone was made thenne, on bothe sydes, a meruayllous cry / with whiche they marched that one ayenst that other. And bygan the batayH by the archers and arblasters so aspre that thayer was obscurid̄ with the quarelles & arowes, that flewh so thyk̄. [1]The valyaunt geffray was in the Formest frount of his peuple, and whan the shotte seaced, he toke his sheld & hys spere in escryeng 'Lusynen' by thre tymes, and smote his hors with his sporys, & thrested̄ in to myddes of his enemys so swyftly that the maister of Roles coude not folowe hym. Ther was thenne horryble bruyt with theire cryes / that one cryed 'Damaske' / that other / 'barbarye' / some cryed 'bandas,' & some 'anthioche,' and other were that cryed 'cordes' / and geffray & his peple cryed 'Lusynen & Rodes.' There made the thre bretheren

In the morning the Christians arm

and march against the enemy.

The archers begin the battle.

[1] fol. 170.

Geffray shouts, 'Lusignan,' and rushes upon the Saracens.

The brethren do such deeds of arms that all are abashed.

so meruayllous faytes of armes / that not only the sarasyns were abasshed / but also the crystens merueyllel therof. The saudans of Damaske, & of barbarye, perceyued the thre bretheren, that so ouerthrew & slew

The Sultans of Damascus and Barbary rush on the brethren;

theire peple; wherfore they, with xx. M! sarasyns, couched theire sperys & rane vpon them. There reforced the batayH / and with that [1]cours the cristen the lengthe of a spere ferre. And whan the thre bretheren saw the sarasyns, that thus ouerane theire peple / bygan to crye 'Lusynen,' & said, admounestyng theire peple / 'auaunt, lordes barons! these dogges

but the Christians pluck up heart and slay many of the enemy.

may not long' withstand our armes.' And thenne the Cristen toke herte corageous, & vygourously made an horryble cours vpon theire enemys; wherby the stour was strong, & the batayH mortal,[2] For they ouerthrew & slough many sarasyns. Thenne was þer Geffray, that effoundred heedes vnto the brayne, & smote doun to therthe al that he recountred with his swerd[3]; Whiche perceyued thadmyral of [3]Cordes, that smote on the Cristen. Thenne thrested geffray thrugh the prees,

[3] fol. 170 b.

Geffray gives the admiral a stroke so great that he dies.

& cam and smote thadmyral by suche vertu, that he brake bothe helmet & heed vnto the brayne. There was the prees grete, For ther came the two saudants and theire puyssaunce, that supposed wel to haue redressed thadmyraH vpon his hors / but it was for nought, For he was deed. Thenne came there Vryan,

Urian sees the Sultan of Barbary,

and sawe the saudan of barbarye, þat moche hated hym, for cause that he had slayn the saudan his vncle

and strikes off his left arm.

in Cypre. Thenne came Vryan, & smote hym by suche strengthe, that he made hys lyft arme to flee fro the body. And whan the saudan sawe hym thus arayed, he went out of the batayH, & made ten knightes

The sultan retreats to Damascus, but the Saracens continue the fight.

to conduyte hym to damaske / and neuertheles faught euer the sarasyns, For the saudan of damaske, & the caliphe of bandas, & the king anthenor held them in

[1] Fr. *se reculèrent le long d'une lance.* [2] Fr. *greigneur.*

vertu. There was grete doleur, & grete pestylence. And wete it wel, that the Cristens were sore dommaged / but as the veray cronykle sayth, the sarasyns receyued there ouergrete dommage & losse, For of them were slayn XL. M[l] & more / and dured the batayll vnto euen tyme, that they withdrew them eyther other part to theire lodgyses. And on the morne the Caliphe, & the king[e] anthenor, & the residu of theire peuple, withdrew them in to the Cite of Damaske. And whan the thre bretheren vnderstod it, they went & lodged, with theire puyssaunce, tofore Damaske. And wete it wel, they were gretly febled, & the more part of them hurt. And there they rested them by the space of VIII [l]dayes, without sawtyng ne scarmysshing.

Both sides are hurt, but the Saracens the more.

The battle stops at eventide.

Next morning the Saracens, greatly enfeebled, retire to Damascus.

They rest viii. days.

[l] fol. 171.

Thystorye sheweth vnto vs that the kyng Vryan and hys bretheren and the maister of Rodes were ryght dolaunt & wroth for the grete losse of theire peple. For wel they sawe that yf the sarasyns assembled new men, it myght come therof some euyl to them. For wel they had lost viii[Ml] of theire men. But at that other part were the saudans al abasshed. For they knew not the dommage that the Crysten had receyued. And they had Counseyll that they shuld requyre kyng Vryan journey of traytye vpon fourme of peas / and so they dide / And the kyng hadd counseyll that he shuld be greable to it. And the iourney was assygned by thaccorde of bothe partes on the iii[de] day atwix the lodgys & the toun / and were the trews graunted & were delyuered good pledges & hostages of both partyes. And thenne came they of the toun to selle theire marchaundyse in to the Crystens oost. Thenne came to the iourney of traytye that was assigned the saudants and theire Counseyll. And of the other part came Vryan & hys bretheren, the maister of Rodes & theire baronye with them, and spake, & communyked togidre of one thinge & of other, / and dede so moch of eyther

Urian and his brethren

see that if the Saracens assemble new men they may lose, for they had lost viii. Ml men.

But the sultans are abashed, and ask for a treaty.

It is granted.

The Saracens are to pay the Christians all the costs of their voyage,

partye that they were accorded, and pacyfyed by condycion that the Sarasyns shuld restore to the lordes Cristen aH theire expenses & costes made in their vyage,

and a yearly tribute to Urian and his heirs of xxx. Ml besaunts of gold;

& to paye yerly vnto kyng Vryan & hys heyres for euermore xxx^{Ml} besaunts of gold / and trews were made betwene them for ¢ & one yere, and therof were letres patentes sealled. And this couuenaunt and trayte the sawdan of Barbarye that great doleur felt in

[1] fol. 171 b.

hys sholder for hys arme that [1] was of / and the kyng^{r} of Anthioche / ratyfyed, / promyttyng that neuer they

also they promise not to wage war against Urian, Guion, or the Master of Rhodes.

shuld bere armes ayenst king Vryan, / ayenst Guyon of Armanye nor ayenst the maister of Rodes, nor theire peple / and that yf other kynges or princes sarasyns wold attempte ony werre anenst them, they shuld lete them haue knowleche therof assoone as they might know it / and yf thrugh that cause they had werre ayenst ony king^{r} or prynce, Vryan promysed them to socoure and gyue them comfort with aH hys power, / & in lyke wyse kyng^{r} Guyon & the maister of Rodes promysed to them / And soone after the thre brepern and theire peple retourned to the port of Japhe. And the saudan of Damaske, the Calyphe of bandas, & the kynge Anthenor conueyed hym thither. And the sawdan made moche of Geffray, and proffred hym grete yeftes, but he wold nought receyue / but that he moche thanked hym of his curtoysye.

The brethren return to Jaffa, accompanied by the Saracen kings.

The sultan makes much of Geffray, but he will receive no gifts.

Thystorye sayth that Vryan & Guyon entred in to the see, & vowed themself to Jherusalem. Wherfore they toke leue of geffray theire broper, and hym moche thanked of hys noble ayde & socours / and syn they departed fro the porte of Japhe, and rowed toward Jherusalem. And Geffray toke hys way by the see toward Rochelle, & saylled so long that he came there where as he was honourably receyued & gretly festyed. / And on the morn he departed, and rode with hys companye tyl he came to Merment, where he fond bothe

Urian and Guion take leave of Geffray and go to Jerusalem.

Geffray sails to Rochelle, where he is honourably received.

On the morn he rides to his father at Merment.

his fader & and his moder, that knew tofore how he & his brethern had wrought beyond the grete see & festyed hym gretly / raymondyn hys fader kept a grete feste & grete Court for joy that he had of his commyng. But soone aftir [1] came there tydynges that in the Countre of the Garende was a grete geaunt that by hys grete pryde & orgueyll, & by his grete strength held all the Countre in subgection. For no man durst gaynsay his commandement. Of these tydynges was Raymondin ryght dolaunt; how be it he made of it no semblaunt, feryng that geffray shuld knowe & here of it. For he knew hym of so grete courage that he wold goo fyght with the geaunt yf he vnderstod where he was. But it might not be kept so secret but that geffray vnderstode þe talkyng of hym / and that come to hys knowlege / he sayd in this wyse / 'how dyuel my bretheren and I haue subdued & made trybutary the saudan of damask & hys complyces, and that hound alone shal be suffred to hold my faders ryght enherytaunce in subgection / by my sowle, in his euyl helthe he thought to vsurpe it, For it shal cost hym hys lyf yf I may.' Thenne came Geffray to hys fader, & thus said to hym. 'My lord, I merueyll of you that are a knight of so noble enterpryse how ye haue suffred so long of that hound Guedon the geaunt, that hath putte your countre of garande in subgection / by god, my lord, shame is therof to you.' Whan raymondin vnderstod hym, he said / 'Geffray, fayre sone, wete it is not long syn we knowe therof / & that we haue suffred vnto your joyful commyng. For we wold not trouble the fest / but doubte you not, guedon shal haue hys payment after his deserte. He slew my granfader in the Counte of pouthieu, as it was told me in bretayn, whan I went thither for to fyght with Olyuer, sone to Josselyn, that betrayed my fader.' /

Raymondin gives a great feast for joy of his return.

[1] fol. 172.

Tidings come from Garende of a great giant who keeps the country in subjection.

Raymondin hides his grief in fear that Geffray will see it.

Geffray swears that he will attack the giant.

He tells his father that he marvels that he has suffered Guedon to keep his country in subjection so long.

Raymondin says the giant shall have his payment.

fol. 172 b.

Thanne ansuerd Geffray: 'I ne wot nor wyl not enquyre of things past, syth that my predecessours haue therof had thonour & are come to theire aboue / but at this tyme present that Iniurye shal be soone mended yf it plese god & I may / and as touching your personne ye ought not to meue your self for suche a theef & palyard; For I, with ten knightes of myn houshold only for to hold me companye / not for ayde that I wyl haue of them ayenst hym, I shal goo fyght with hym' / And whan Raymondyn hys fader vnderstod hys wordes he was dolaunt & sorowful, and thus said to hym / 'sethen it may none other wyse be / goo thou by the grace of god.' And thenne geffray toke his leue of his fader & of hys moder, and putte hym self on the way toward garande accompanyed with x knightes, and there where he passed by he enquyred after guedon where he might fynd hym / And wel it is trouth that it was told hym where the geaunt was But men were meruaylled, & asked of geffray why he speryd after hym. 'By my feyth,' ansuerde geffray 'I bryng hym the trybut & payment that he by his foly & oultrage thaketh vpon my faders lordship / but it is neyther gold ne syluer / but it is only the poynte of my spereheed, For none other payment he shal receyue of me but strokes of my swerd withal.' And whan the good peple herd hym thus speke, they said to hym in this wyse: 'By my feyth, geffray, ye vnder take grete foly, [1]For an hondred suche as ye be shuld not be able to withstand hys cruelte.' 'doubte you not,' said geffray / 'but lete me haue the feer alone', and they held theire peas, For they durst not make hym wroth. For moche they fered hys fyersnes & yre, of whiche he was replenysshed / but þey conduyted hym vnto a leghe nygh to the sayd geauntis retrette or pryue dwellyng / and þene they sayd to geffray: 'Sire, ye may lightly fynd hym at yonder place within the

Geffray says he is ready to go against him with ten knights.

Raymondin sorrowfully consents.

Geffray sets out to find Guedon,

and men marvel why he wants him.

Geffray answers that he brings Guedon his payment for his outrages.

[1] fol. 173.

They tell Geffray that a hundred like him could not withstand the giant.

Geffray is conducted near the giant's dwelling.

forest' / and geffray ansuerd, 'I wold fayne see hym, For to fynd hym I am come hither' / And here cesseth thystorye to speke of geffray / and sheweth of Raymondyn & of Melusyne. /

The veray and trew hystorye witnesseth that Raymondin & Melusyne were at merment making grete joye for the prosperous estate & good Fortune of theire children; but this joye was soone tourned to grete sorowe, For as ye haue herd how thystorye saith tofore that Raymondin promysed to Melusyne that neuer on the satirday he shuld not enquere of her nor desyre to see her that day. It is trouth that on a Satirday a lytel byfore dyner tyme, Raymondyn vnderstode that hys brother the Erle of Forests was come to Merment for to see hym & hys Noble Court. wherof Raymondin was ryght Joyous, but sith grete myschief came to hym therfore as herafter shal be shewed. Thenne made Raymondin grete apparayll & ryght noble for to receyue his brother / And shortly to shewe, he came & recountred hys brother [1] with noble company & welcommed hym honourably, & dide moche that one of that other, & went to chircheward togidre / And after the deuyne seruice was don they came agayn to the palleys where al thinges were redy to dyner / they wesshe theire handes and syn sett them at dyner and pey were worshipfully serued / ha / las! thenne bygan a part of the doleur & heuynes. For hys brother coude not kepe hym, but he asked after Melusyne, sayeng in this manere: 'My brother, where is my sustir Melusyne? lete her come, for moche I desyre to see her.' And Raymondyn, whiche thought none euyl, ansuerd, 'she is not here at this tyme / but to morne ye shal see her & shal make you good chere.' But for that ansuere the Erle of Forests held not hys peas / but thus said ayen to his brother: 'Ye are my brother / I owe not to hyde to you your dyshonour.

Raymondin and Melusine are at Merment making joy over the good fortune of their children, but great sorrow comes.

The history has told how Raymondin promised that he would never inquire after Melusine on Saturdays.

The Earl of Forest comes one Saturday.

[1] fol. 173 b.

After attending church they return to the palace,

and sit down to dinner.

The earl asks after Melusine, and says he desires much to see her.

Raymondin answers that he can see her next day.

The earl says to Raymondin, 'You are my brother, I cannot hide your dishonour.

One set of folk says your wife goes to another man every Saturday,

and others that she is a spirit of the fairies, and goes on Saturdays to do penance.

I know not which to believe.'

Now, fayre brother, wete it that the commyn talking of the peple is, that Melusyne your wyf euery satirday in the yere is with another man in auoultyre / & so blynd ye are by her sayeng' that ye dare not enquere nor knoweth wher she becommeth or gooth / and also other sayen, & make them strong' that she is a spyryte of the fayry, that on euery satirday maketh hir penaunce. I wot not to whiche of bothe I shal byleue / and for none other cause I am come hither but to aduertyse you therof.' Whan Raymondin thenne vnderstod these wordes that his brother hym said he roos [1]fro the table and entred in to his chambre, and anoone all espryued with yre & Jalousy, withall toke hys swerd & girded it about hym, & syn went toward the place where as Melusyne went euery satirday in the yer / and whan he cam there he fond a doore of yron thikk & strong / and wete it wel he had neuer be tofore that tyme so ferre thitherward / and whan he perceyued the doore of yron he toke hys swerd, that was hard & tempered with fyn stele, and with the poynte of it dyde so moche that he perced the doore, and made a hoH in it, and loked in at that hoH, and sawe thenne Melusyne that was within a grete bathe of marbel stone, where were steppis to mounte in it, and was wel xv foot of length; and therin she bathed herself, makyng there her penytence as ye shal here herafter. /

[1] fol. 174.

Raymondin rises from the table full of jealousy; he girds on his sword and goes to the place where Melusine retires on Saturdays.

He finds a strong door,

and pierces a hole in it with his sword.

Cap. XXXVII. Here aftir foloweth how Raymondin by the admounesting of hys brother beheld Melusyne hys wyf within the bathe, wherfor he toke hys brother the Erle of Forest in grete indignacion.

fol. 174 b. Thystorye sayth in this partye that Raymondin stode so long at the yron doore that he perced it with the poynte of his swerd, wherby he might wel see

all that was within the Chambre / and sawe melusyne within the bathe vnto her nauell, in fourme of a woman kymbyng her heere, and fro the nauel dounward in lyknes of a grete serpent, the tayll as grete & thykk as a barell, and so long it was that she made it to touche oftymes, while that raymondyn beheld her, the rouf of the chambre that was ryght hye. And whan Raymondyn perceyued it, wete it wel that he was ryght dolaunt and sorowful & not without cause, and coude neuer hold hys tonge, but he said, 'My swete loue, now haue I betrayed [1]you, & haue falsed my couenaunt by the ryght fals admounestyng of my brother, and haue forsworne myself toward you.' Raymondin thenne was smyten to the herte with suche sorow & dystresse that vnnethe he coude speke / and pensefull with a heuy contenaunce retourned hastly toward hys chambre, and toke some wax wherwith he went & stopped the holl that he had made at the doore of yron, and syn came agayn to the hall where he found hys brother. And thenne whan therle of Forest perceyued hym and sawe hys heuy contenaunce / wel supposed he that he had found Melusyne in some shamful fayt, and said to him in this wyse: 'My brother, I wyst it wel / haue ye not found as I said?' Thenne cryed Raymondin to hys brother of Forest in this manyere: [2]'Voyde this place, fals traytour, For thrugh your fals reporte I haue falsed my feyth ayenst the moost feythfullest & truest lady that euer was borne. ye are cause of the losse of al my worldly joye & of my totall destruction / by god, yf I byleued my courage, I shuld make you to dey now of an euyl deth / but rayson naturel kepeth & deffendeth me therfro, bycause that ye are my brother / goo your way & voyde my syght, that al the grete maisters of

Raymondin sees Melusine in the bath,

half woman, half serpent.

He becomes sorrowful, and laments that he has betrayed her.

[1] fol. 175.

He returns hastily to his chamber, to procure wax to stop the hole in the door.

This done he returns to the hall,

and orders his brother out of the place,

and tells him that were he not his brother he should die.

[2] Fr.: *Fuiez d'icy, faulx triste, car vous m'avez fait, par votre tresmauvais rapport, ma foy parjurer contre la plus loyalle et la meilleure des dames qui oncques naquit, apres celle qui porta notre seigneur Ihesucrist.*

hell may conduyte you thither' / And whan the Erle of Forest apperceyued Raymondyn his brother that was in so grete yre, he went out of the halle & all his peple, & mounted on horsbak and rode as fast as they might toward Forests ryght pensefull & heuy, repentyng hym of hys folyssh enterpryse; for he knew wel that Raymondin his brother wold neuer loue hym nor see hym. Here I leue to speke [1]of hym, & shal shewe you of Raymondin that entred in to his chambre wooful & angre. /

The earl and his people ride home as fast as they can.

He repents of his foolish enterprise.

[1] fol. 175 b.

'Halas, Melusyne,' sayd Raymondin, 'of whom all the world spake wele, now haue I lost you for euer. Now haue I fonde the ende of my Joye / and the begynnyng is to me now present of myn euerlastyng heuynes / Farwel beaute, bounte, swetenes, amyablete / Farwel wyt, curtoysye, & humilite / Farwel al my joye, al my comfort & myn hoop / Farwel myn herte, my prowes, my valyaunce, For that lytel of honour whiche god had lent me, it came thrugh your noblesse, my swete & entierly belouyd lady. Ha / a, falsed & blynd Fortune, aigre, sharp, & byttir / wel hast thou ouerthrawen me fro the hyest place of thy whele vnto the lowest part of thy mansyon or dwellyng place, there as Jupyter festyeth with sorow & heuynes, the caytyf & vnhappy creatures / be þou now cursed of god. by the I slough ayenst my wyll my lord, myn vncle, the whiche deth thou sellest me to dere. helas! thou had putte and sette me in high auctoryte thrugh the wyt and valeur of the wysest, the fayrest, & moost noble lady of al other / and now by the / fals blyndo traytour and enuyous, I must lese the sight of her of whom myn eyen toke theire fedyng. thou now hatest / thou now louest, thou now makest / thou now vndost / in the, nys no more surety ne rest than is in a fane that tourneth at al windes. Halas / helas! my ryght swete & tendre loue / by my venymous treson I haue

Raymondin cries, 'Alas, Melusine, I have lost you for ever.'

He upbraids Fortune,

that made him slay his uncle.

and now will make him lose his lady.

maculate your excellent fygure / helas! myn herte & al my wele ye had heeled me clene of my first soore / yl I haue now rewarded you therfore. Certaynly yf I now lese you / none other choys is to me / [1]but to take myn vtermost exill there as neuer after no man lyuyng shall see me.'

He cries that he will go into exile if he loses her, [1] fol. 176.

Here sayeth thistorye, that in suche doleur & bewaylinges abode raymondin al that nyght tyl it was day light. And as sone as aurora might be perceyued, Melusyne came & entred in to the chambre / and whan Raymondyn herd her come he made semblaunt of slepe. She toke of her clothes, and than al naked layed herself by hym. And thenne bygan Raymondyn to sighe as he that felt grete doleur at herte / and Melusyne embraced hym, & asked what hym eyled, sayeng in this wyse: 'My lord, what eyleth you, be ye syke?' And whan Raymondin sawe that she of none other þing spake, he supposed that she nothing had knowen of this faytte / but for nought he byleued soo, For she wyst wel that he had not entamed nor shewed the matere to no man / Wherfor she suffred at that tyme & made no semblaunt therof / wherfore he was right Joyous, and ansuerd to her: 'Madame, I haue be somewhat euyl at ease & haue had an axez[2] in maner of a contynue.' 'My lord,' said Melusyne, 'abasshe you not, For yf it plese god ye shal soone be hole.' And thenne he that was right joyous said to her, 'By my feyth, swete loue, I fele me wel at ease for your commyng' / and she said, 'I am þerof glad' / and whan tyme requyred they roos and went to here masse / and soone after was the dyner redy / and thus abode Melusyne with Raymondyn al that day / and on the morne she toke leue of hym & went to Nyort, where she bylded a fortresse. [3]And here seaceth thistorye of her / and retourneth to speke of geffray.

and bewails all the night long.

In the morning Melusine returns. Raymondin feigns sleep.

Melusine lies by him. He sighs.

Melusine inquires what is wrong.

Raymondin thinks she does not know of his deed.

She does, but makes no show of her knowledge.

He replies he has a fever. Melusine says he will soon be well.

He says he is better since her return.

Melusine goes to Niort and builds a fortress.

[3] fol. 176 b.

[2] Fr. *ung peu de fièvre en manière de continue.*

Geffray is received with joy in Garende.

Here sayth thystory, that Geffray came in garande, where as he was receyued with gret joye / and

He asks after Guefon, and is taken to his tower of Mermount.

he asked where the geant guedon held hym self / and, as before is said, they conduyted hym, and shewed to hym the strong tour of Mermount, where the geaunt was, & said: 'Sire, wete it / that yf ye byleue vs, it shal suffyse you to haue sene the toure, & shal retourne

His guides leave.

with vs; For as touching our personnes, we shal goo no neer þat horryble geaunt, algaf you to eyther of vs your pesaunt or weyght of fyn gold.' 'By my feyth, sires,' said geffray, 'I thanke you moche, that thus ferre ye haue brought me.'

Geffray dismounts and arms himself.

Geffray thenne, as thystory saith, descendid from his hors, & armed hym, and syn girded hys swerd[1] about hym, & remounted on horsback; and after toke hys sheld, & heng it tofore hys brest; & toke a clubbe of stele, & faste it at tharsons of his sadell; and syn toke a trompe of yuory, and heng it at hys neck behynd; and syn asked hys spere / and thenne said to his tene knightes, in this manere:

He tells his knights to wait for him in the valley, and bids them come to him when they hear his horn.

'Fayre lordes, abyde me in this valey / and yf god graunte me the vyctory of the geaunt, I shal thenne blowe this horne / and whan ye shal here it, ye shal lyghtly come to me.' And they were dolaunt that he wold not suffre them to go with hym, and bade hym farwell, prayeng god for hys good spede. Thenne

Geffray mounts to the tower.

departed the valyaunt & hardy geffray, and mounted the montayne; and anoone cam to the first gate of the toure, & found it open / thenne entred he in to the bassecourt, & went toward the dongeon, that strong was to meruayll. And whan he was nygh, he beheld it, & moche [2]playsed hym the facion and byldyng of hit; but he sawe the brydge, that was drawen vp. For the geante slepte. Thenne he cryed with a hye voys, sayeng in this manere: 'hourys sone & fals geaunt,

[2] fol. 177.

He calls to the sleeping giant,

[1] *hys swerd* twice in MS.

cõme speke *with* me! For I bryng to the / the syluer that the peuple of my lord, my fader, owen to the.' And, for certayn, geffray cryed so long that the geaunt awacked, & came at a wyndowe, and beheld geffray, armed of al pyeces, mounted vpon a courser, that held hys spere couched / and thus bygan to crye, with a lowde voyce, 'knyght! what wold thou haue?' 'By my sowle,' said geffray, 'I seke for the, & for none other / and I come hither to chalange the, and bring with me the trybut that thou hast ouersette vpon the peuple of my lord, Raymondyn of Lusynen, my fader.' Thenne whan the geant vnderstode geffray, he was nygh aragid & mad, that of one knight alone was so bold to make hym warre, & had sette hym so nygh hys place. but, notwithstanding, when he had wel aduysed hym, he consydered in hym self that he was a man of grete valyaunce. Thenne the geaunt armed hymself, and laced the taches of hys helmet; & toke a grete barre of yron, and a grete sythe of stele, & came to the brydge, and lete it fall; & came in the bassecourt, & demanded of geffray: 'What art thou, knight, that art so bold to come hither?' And geffray ansuerd, in this manere: 'I am geffray with the grete toeth, sone to Raymondyn of Lusynen, that commeth hither to chalenge the patiz or trybut, that thou takest thrugh thy grete pryde, of my lord my faders peple.' Thenne whan Guedon vnderstod it, he bygan to lawhe, and to hym thus said: 'By my feyth, poure fole, for thy grete hardynes & the grete enterprise [1]of thyn herte, I haue pyte of the. Now wyl I shew to the curtoysye / that is, that thou retourne lyghtly to make thy warre in other place; For wete thou wel, yf now with the were V. C suche foles as thyself art, yet coudest thou not endure and withstand my puyssaunce. but for pyte that I haue to putte to deth so hardy a knight, as I suppose thou art, I gyue the lycence & congie to

who comes to his window and asks what he wants.

Geffray answers he bears him his tribute for his misdoings.

The giant is enraged;

he arms

and descends to the basecourt, and again asks who Geffray is.

He answers that he is the son of Raymondin, and has come to challenge the tribute he has heretofore exacted.

Guedon laughs at him,

[1] fol. 177 b.

and tells him to go back, because V. C like Geffray could not overcome him.

He says he will remit the tribute for a year.

retourne to Raymondyn thy fader / goo thou lyghtly hens / and for loue of the I shal forgyue to thy faders peple the payement of a hoⁿ yere of the trybut that they owe me.' Thenne whan geffray with the grete toth herd that the geaunt made so lytel of hym, & that as nought he preysed hym, he was of it ryght dolaunt, and said to hym in this wyse: 'Meschaunt creature, thou alredy ferest me moch̄ / I wyl wel thou wete that of thy curtoysy I sett nought by, For thus spekest thou for the grete feer that thou hast of my toeth. but wete þou, for certayn, that I shal neuer departe fro this place vnto that tyme I haue separed the lyf fro thy body / and therfor, haue pyte of thyself, & not of me, For I hold the for deed where as thou art / & ryght foorth I deffye ye.' And whan the geaunt herd hym, he made semblaunt of lawghing, sayeng al this: 'Geffray, fool, thou commest in to batayⁿ, & thou mayst not endure one stroke of me only, without I felle the to þe erthe.' And thenne geffray, without ony more sayeng, smote hys hors with hys sporys, and charged hys spere, & dressed hym toward the geaunt, asmoche as the hors might ranne; and strak hym thrugh the brest by suche strength that he bare hym to the ground, the bely vpward.

Geffray is sorrowful that the giant appraises him at so little.

He taunts Guedon that he is afraid;

but the giant still laughs at him.

Geffray thereupon spurs his horse and rides against Guedon.

Geffray knocks him down.

[1] but the geaunt stert vp lyghtly, in grete yre, & as geffray passed by, he smote hys hors behynd with hys sythe of fyn stele / and whan geffray wyst it, he descended lyghtly from hys hors, & came toward the geaunt, the sword drawen. and thenne came the geaunt toward hym, holding his sythe in his hand: where as was grete batayⁿ.

[1] fol. 178.

The giant rises, and smites Geffray's horse.

Geffray dismounts and approaches the giant with sword drawn.

The giant comes against him,

Cap. XXXVIII. How geffray slough Guedon, the geaunt, in garande.

and raises his scythe to smite Geffray,

All thus, as ye haue herde, geffray was on foot tofore the geaunt, that held his sythe in his fyst, & supposed to haue smyte geffray / but he bare

it vp / & *with* that, he smote *with* hys swerd vpon the hafte[1] of the geantis sythe, that it fell in two pyec*es*. And th*en*ne the geaunt toke hys flayel of yron, & gaf geffray a grete buffet vpon his bassynet, wherw*ith* he was almost astonyed. Th*en*ne came [2]Geffray toward hys hors, that laye on the erthe, & toke hys clubbe of yron, that hyng at tharsons of hys sadell, & lightly tourned toward the geaun*t*, that haunced hys flayel, supposyng' to dyscharge it vpon geffray / but geffray, that was pert in armes, smote with hys clubbe suche a stroke vpon the flayel, that he made it to flee out of the geantis hand*es*. And th*en*ne the geaun*t*, full of yre, put hys hand in hys bosom, where were thre hamers of yron; of the whiche he toke one, & casted it by suche radeur, that yf geffray had not receyued that strok vpon his clubbe, he might haue be myschieuyd therw*ith* / by the force wherof hys cluble flough out of hys hand*es*: and the geaun*t* toke it vp / but geffray drew lightly his swerd, & came to the geaun*t*, that supposed to haue smyte geffray w*ith* the cluble of stele on the heed / but geffray, that was light & strong, fled the stroke, & the geaun*t* faylled; & the stroke fell to therth, by the force wherof the heed of the clubbe entred in to the grounde a large foot deep. And th*en*ne geffray smote the geaun*t* vpon the ryght arme w*ith* hys swerd, in suche vyolence, & hys swerde was so sharp & trenchaun*t*, that he made it to flygh fro hys body to the erthe. Th*en*ne was þe geant gretly abasshed, whan he sawe thus his arme lost / notw*ith*standing, he haunced his swerd w*ith* hys other hand, and trowed to haue smyte geffray at herte / but geffray kept hym wel therfro, & smote the geaun*t* vpon the legge, vnder the knee, by suche strength that he smote it in two. Th*en*ne the geaun*t* fell, & gaf suche an horryble crye, that al the valey sowned þerof, so that they that bode for geffray, herd it / but they

who cuts it in halves.

The giant takes his flail and smites Geffray.

[2] fol. 178 *b*.

Geffray takes his iron club

and knocks the flail out of the giant's hands.

The giant throws a hammer at Geffray

and drives his club out of his hands.

The giant thinks to hit Geffray,

but he flees the stroke.

Then Geffray smites off the giant's right arm.

The giant tries to strike at Geffray with the other hand, but he cuts the giant's leg in two.

The giant falls, and utters a horrible cry.

[1] Fr. *manche*, a haft or handle. Written 'haste' in MS.

[1] fol. 179.

knew not the certayn what it was / but [1]alwayes they had grete meruayH of that horryble sowne. Thenne geffray cutte the taches of the geant helmet, and after cutte of his heed / and syn toke hys horne, & blew it; Wherby his peple, that were in the valey, might here it / and so dide other that were of the countre / and by þat they knew the geaunt was deed; wherof they gaaf lawdyng' to our lord god deuoutely. and immediatly they mounted the mountayne, & came to the place, where they fonde geffray, that said to them of the Countre / 'this fals traytour geaunt shal neuer more patyse you, For he as now this tyme present, hath neyther lust nor talent to aske ony tribut of you.' And whan they perceyued the body & the heed of the geaunt, lyeng in two partes, they were al abasshed of hys gretnes, For he was XV foot of lengthe / sayeng to geffray, that he had enterprysed a grete faytte, to haue putte hym self in so grete parel tassayH suche a dyueH / 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'the parel is past. For, fayre lordes, I wyl that ye knowe / thing' neuer bygonne / hath neuer ende / In euery thing' most be bygynnyng', tofore the ende commeth.'

Geffray cuts off the giant's head. He blows his horn, and the people laud God when they know the giant is dead.

Geffray tells them that the giant will never trouble them again.

[2] fol. 179 b.

[2]Cap. XXXIX. How Froymond, brother to Geffray, was professed monke at Mayllezes, by consentement of hys fader & moder.

Moche were thenne the knightes abasshed, as thistorye reherceth, of this that geffray had slayn the geaunt, that was so grete & mighty. And the tydinges therof were spred in the Countre, & in the marches about. And also geffray sent, by two of hys knightes, to hys fader, the heed of the geaunt. And in the meane season he went & dysported hym in the Countre, where as he was gretly fested, & receyued

The tidings of Geffray's deed are spread in the country.

Geffray sends the giant's head to his father.

with grete joye, & presented *with* gret ryches. Here I shal leue to speke of hym / & shal shew you of Froymond, hys brother, who that prayed so moche hys fader and his moder, that they were greable that he shuld be professed monke at Maylleses / & so he was shorne, by the consentement of hys fader, & of [1]his moder; Wherof thabbot & all conuent was ryght joyous. And wete it wel, there were *with*in the place to the nombre of an hondred monkes. And yf they had thenne grete joye of Froymonds professyon / it was afterward reuersed in to grete doleur / as ye shal here herafter / but wete it wel, that it was not thrughe the faytte of Froymond, For he was right deuoute, & ledd a relygious lyf / but by the rayson of hym came to the place a merueyllous auenture. It is trouth that the two forsaid knightes that geffray sent vnto hys fader *with* the heed of the geant, rode tyl they came to merment, wher they fond Raymondin, & presented hym *with* the heed of the geaunt, wherof he was joyful. And the heed was moche loked on / & euery man meruaylled how geffray durst assayll hym. And thenne Raymondin sent a lettre to geffray, how Froymond, his brother, was professed monke at thabbey of maylleses. helas! that message was the cause of the trystefull doleur of the departyng of his wyf, wherof neuer after he nor she had hertly joye, as ye shal here herafter. Trouth it was that Raymondyn gaaf thenne grete yeftes to the two knightes, and delyuered them the lettre; and sayd that they shuld grete wel geffray, & that they shuld bere the hed of the geaunt to Melusyne, that was at Nyort: For it was not ferre out of theire way. Thenne so departed the two knightes, & held on theire way tyl they came to nyort, where they fonde their lady; the whiche they salued, & presented her *with* the heed of the geaunt. Wherof she was ryght joyous, [2]and sent it to Rochelle, and was

Froimond prays his father and mother to allow him to become a monk at Mailleses.

[1] fol. 180.

They consent; he is shorn.

The abbot is glad,

but Froimond's profession causes them much pain afterward.

The knights bring Raymondin the giant's head,

He sends back word to Geffray how Froimond was professed monk.

He gives the knights gifts,

and bids them take the head to Melusine.

[2] fol. 180 b.

She has it set upon a spear at a gate of Rochelle.

sette vpon a spere at the gate toward guyenne. And Melusyne gaf the two knightes ryche yeftes; and after that toke theire leue, and went toward the toure of mountyouet,[1] where geffray was for hys dysport & solas. And here cesseth thystory, & sheweth other matere. /

There was a giant in Northumberland named Grymault,

Thystory sayth that the tydyng was anoone spred thrughe the Countre, how geffray with the grete toeth slough the geaunt guedon in batayll, and all they that herd therof were gretly abasshed. And for that tyme regned in northomberland a geaunt that hyght Grymault, & was the moost cruel that euer man sawe.

xvii. foot high.

For he was xvii foot of heyght / and that same grete dyuell held hym nygh a mountayne called Brombelyo, and wete it wel for trouth he had dystroyed all the Countre about in so moche that there ne durst no person inhabyte nygh hym by eyght or nene leghes / & so all the Countre was desert & wyldernes. It befell

He lived at Brombelyo, and destroyed the country for nine leagues round.

They hear in Northumberland of Geffray's deed,

that in Northomberland came tydynges how geffray with the grete toeth had slayn the geaunt guedon. Wherfore they of the same Countrey made a grete

and resolve to ask him to deliver them from Grymault.

counseyll, that they shuld sende to geffray, & profre hym so he wold delyuere them of the cruel murdrer grymauld, euery yere duryng hys lyf he shuld haue x. M[l] besans of gold; & yf he hath yssue male of hys body they to possesse the said annuel rente of x. M besans / and yf he hath a doughter to hys heyre, we to be quytte after his decesse of our sayd trybute. Wher

E'ght noble persons are sent to Geffray:

upon they choose eyght of þe moost noble personnes of theire Countre, & sent hem in ambaxade toward geffray / the whiche departed & came to Mountyouet where they fonde geffray, to [2]whom they proposed the cause of theire commyng. And thenne whan geffray vnderstode it / he ansuerd nobly: 'Fayre lordes, I wyl not refuse your demande, how be it I shuld haue goon thither to fyght with þat geaunt, For I herd tydynges

[2] fol. 181.

and when he understands their message he promises to help them.

[1] Fr. *Monjouet.*

of hym tofore your commyng', for the pyte that I haue of the destruction of the peple, & also for to seke honour. Wete it that now foorthwith I wyl departe with you without ony lenger delay / and by the help of god I suppose texille the geaunt.' And þey thenne gaaf hym grete thankinges.

Cap. XL. How the two messangers of Raymondin cam in garande toward geffray.

Thenne came the two knyghtes that he had sent toward hys fader, and salued hym honourably, and recounted hym the noble chere that they had hadd of hys fader & of his moder, whiche [1]greted hym wel: 'By my feyth,' said Geffray, 'that playseth me wel.' and after they delyuered to hym the lettre from hys fader, whiche geffray toke & opend it / the tenour of whiche made mencon how Froymond his brother was shorne monke at Mayllezes. And whan geffray vnderstod it he was wroth, & shewed thenne so fel & cruel semblaunt that there ne was so hardy that durst abyde the syght of hym; but they all voyded the place except the two knightes and the ambaxatours of northomberland. /

The knights salute Geffray, and tell him of the noble cheer they had at his father's.

[1] fol. 181 b.

They deliver the letter which tells how Froimond had professed himself monk.

Geffray waxes wroth at the news.

In this party sheweth thistory, that whan geffray knew the tydynges of Froymonds professyon he was so dolaunt that almost he went fro his wyt. And wete it wel that thenne he semed bettre to be araged & madd than man with rayson. And he said in this wyse: 'how deuell! had not my fader & my moder ynough for to entreteyn & kepe thestate of Froymond my brother, & hym to haue maryed som noble lady of the land / and not to haue made hym a monke / by god omnipotent these flatterers monkes shal repente them þerof, For they haue enchaunted my lord my fader, & haue drawen Froymond with them for to fare

He seems to be mad,

and declares that the monks shall repent of their guile and their greed.

þe bettre by hym / but by the feyth that I owe to god I shal pay them so, therfore, that they shal neuer haue neyther lust ne talent to withdraw no noble man to be shorne monke with them.' And thenne he said to the bassade of Northomberland: 'Sires, ye muste soiourne a while & abyde my retourn hither / For I must goo to an affayre of myn that toucheth me moche.' And they that knewe hys wrathe & anger ansuerd: 'My lord, so shall we doo with a good wyll.' Thenne made geffray his ten knightes to mounte on horsback / and also he armed hym and lept on hys hors / & syn departed [1]fro Mountyoued, esprysed with grete yre ayenst the abbot & Conuent of Maylleses / and at that tyme the said abbot & hys monkes were in Chapitre. And geffray thanne come to the place, entred, the swerd gird about hym, in to the Chapitre. And whan he perceyued thabbot & hys monkes, he said al on hye to them: 'Ye false monkes / how haue ye had the hardynes to haue enchaunted my brother, in so moche that thrughe your false & subtyl langage haue shorne hym monke / by the toeth of god yl ye thought it, For ye shal drynk therfore of an euyl drynk.' 'helas! my lord,' said thabbot, 'for the loue of god haue mercy on vs / and suffre you to be enfourmed of the trouth & rayson, For on my Creatour, I nor none of vs all counseylled hym neuer therto.' Thenne came Froymond foorth, that trowed wel to haue peased the yre of geffray hys brother / and þus said: 'My[2] dere, dere brother / by the body & sowle which I haue gyuen to god, here is no personne, nor within this place that euer spake ony word to me touching my professyon, For I haue it doon of myn owne free wylle & thrugh deuocion.' 'By my sowle,' said geffray, 'so shalt thou be therfore payed with the other, For it shal not be wytted[3] me to haue a brother of myn a monke' / and

Geffray tells the embassy that they will have to wait.

With his ten knights he goes to Mailleses,

[1] fol. 182.

and finds the monks in chapter.

He upbraids them for having shorn his brother monk.

The abbot denies having so counselled him.

Froimond comes forward and says he became monk of his free will.

Geffray says he will pay him with the rest.

[2] *By* in MS. (Fr. *Mon.*)

[3] Fr. *reprouché.*

with these wordes he went out of the Chapter, & shetted the doores fast after hym, & closed thabbot & the monkes therynne / and incontynent he made al the meyne of the place to bryng there wode & strawe ynoughe al about the Chapter, and fyred it / & sware he shuld brenne them all therynne, & that none shuld escape. Thenne came the ten knightes foorth tofore geffray, whiche blamed hym of þat horryble faytte / sayeng: 'that Froymond, his broþer, was in good purpos, & that happly thrughe hys [1]prayers & good dedes the sowles of his frendes & other myght be asswaged & holpen.' 'By the toeth of god,' sayd thenne geffray, 'nother he nor none monke in this place shal neuer syng masse nor say prayer, but they shal all be bruled & brent.' Thenne departed the x knightes from hys presence / sayeng that they wold not be coulpable of that merueyllous werke.

He goes out of the chapter, closes all the monks inside, and has wood and straw brought, and swears he will burn them.

His knights remonstrate with him,

[1] fol. 182 b.

without avail,

and leave him because they will not be culpable of such a deed.

Cap. XLI. How Geffray with the grete toeth fyred thabbey of Mayllezes, & brent bothe thabbot & al the monkes there.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Geffray anoon after that the ten knightes were departed fro hym, he toke fyre at a lampe within the chirche, & sette the fyre in the strawe all about the Chapter, where as were in thabbot, & al the monkes of the place, & hys brother Froymond with them. It was a pyteous syght, For as soone as [2]the monkes sawe the fyre they bygan to crye piteously, & to make bytter & doulorous bewaylynges, but al that preuaylled them nought. What shuld I make long compte? Wel it is trouth, that all the monkes were brent / and wel the half of the said Abbey or euer geffray departed thens. That don he came to hys hors & lepte vp / but whan he cam in to the feldes he retourned hys hors, & beheld toward

Geffray takes fire from a church lamp and lights the straw.

[2] fol. 183.

The monks cry bitterly when they see the fire.

They are all burnt, and half of the abbey.

thabbaye / & perceyuyng that grete myschief & the dommage that he had don there, & his vnkynd & abhomynable deelyng, remors of conscience smote the herte of hym, and bygan to syghe and bewayH byttirly / sayeng vnto him self in this wyse: 'helas! fals, wycked, & vntrue prodytour[1] & enemy of god / woldest thou that men dide to the that / whiche thou hast doo to the true seruauntes of god? / nay certayn.' And thus blamed & wytted hym self, so that no man myght thinke the dyscomfort & grete dyspaire that he thenne toke / & wel I byleue that he had slayn hym self with hys owne swerde yf it thenne had not fortuned that hys ten knightes cam to hym there / one of the whiche bygan to hym saye / 'ha / a, my lord, ouer late is this repented.' And whan geffray vnderstode hym / he thenne had greter despyte than tofore / but he dayned not ansuere to the knyght, but rode so fast toward the toure of Mountyouet, that with grete peyne myght his men folow hym / & so long rode he tyl he came thither / And thenne made his apparayH for to goo with the ambaxatours there as they shold conduyte hym / & toke with hym but his x knightes. And here seaceth thystorye of hym, & speketh of Raymondin his fader /

Geffray feels remorse, and begins to sigh bitterly.

He upbraids himself,

and is full of despair, and like to slay himself.

His knights approach, and one says that it is too late to repent.

Geffray rides swiftly to Mountjouet,

and gets ready to go with the ambassadors.

Here sayth thistory, that a messager came toward Raymondin at merment that came fro mailleses, [2]and after hys obeyssaunce recounted to Raymondyn ryght pyteous tydynges, sayeng to hym in this manere: 'My lord, wel it is trouth, that geffray with the great toth your son hath take so grete malencolye & suche dueyl of the professyon of your son Froymond that he is com to maylleses, & there he hath fyred the Abbay / & within the chapter brent & bruled aH the monkes, pryour, & Abbot.' 'What sayst thou?' sayd than Raymondyn / 'that may not be / I can not beleue

A messenger from Mailleses recounts to Raymondin the piteous tidings

[2] fol. 183 *b*.

of the burning of the abbey and the monks.

Raymondin says he cannot believe the story.

[1] Fr. *proditeur*.

it.' 'By my feyth, my lord,' said the messager, 'it is trouth that I telle you; &, morouer, your son Froymond is brent & deed with them / and yf ye byleue me not make me to be putte in to pryson, & yf ye fynde otherwyse than I saye, lete me be hanged therfore.' Thenne Raymondyn sorowfull & heuy mounted foorthwith on horsbak, & toke hys way toward maylleses as fast as hys hors myght bere hym / and hys men, who þat myght folowed hym / and he neuer seaced tyl he cam thither / where he fonde, as the messager said, & sawe the grete doleur & myschief that geffray had don. Wherof he toke suche yre & anger at herte, that almost he was out of hys wyt. 'ha / a,' sayd he, 'Geffray, thou haddest the fayrest begynnyng of hye prowes & cheualrye to haue come to the degree of high honour more than ony prynce son lyuyng at this day / and now thrugh thy grete cruelte thou shalt be reputed & holden vnworthy of al noble fayttes, & abhomyned for cause of thys vnkyndnes & horryble dede of al creatures. By the feyth that I owe to god, I byleue it is but fantosme or spyryt werke of this woman / and as I trowe she neuer bare no child that shal at thende haue perfection, For yet hath she brought none but that it hath some strange token / see I not the [1]horryblenes of her son called Horryble, that passed not vii yere of age whan he slew two squyers of myn / and or euer he was thre yere old he made dye two gentyl women his nourryces, thrugh hys byttyng of theire pappes? / sawe I not also theyre moder of that satirday, whan my brother of Forestz to me brought euyl tydynges of her / in fourme of a serpent fro the nauel dounward? / by god, ye / and wel I wote certayn / it is som spyryt, som fantosme or Illusyon that thus hath abused me / For the first tyme that I sawe her / she knew & coude reherce all my fortune & auenture.'

But the messenger says it is the truth, and that Froimond was burnt with them.

Raymondin rides to Mailleses,

and when he sees the mischief

he complains of Geffray,

and how he will be hated for his cruelty.

He cries that he believes it is spirit work.

He complains that Melusine never bore a perfect child, and of the horribleness of her son Horrible.

[1] fol. 184.

He speaks of seeing Melusine half woman, half serpent, on a Saturday,

and says he believes her to be a spirit.

In this partye, sayth thystorye, that Raymondyn, pensefull and wroth ouer meruayllously, departed fro Mayllezes, & rode agayn toward Merment. And whan he was come thither, he alyghted, & went in to hys chambre, where as he layed hym vpon a bed / and there he made suche lamentacion, & so pyteous bewayllynges, that there nys in the world herte so harde / but that it had wepte to here hym. Thenne were al the barons ryght dolaunt / and whan they sawe that they myght not gyue none allegeance to hys dolour, they toke Counseyll that they shuld lete it wete to theire lady Melusyne, whiche was at Nyort that tyme / and thither they sent a messanger, to recounte to her al the matere of the fayt. Halas! full euyl dide they, For they augmented thereby bothe Raymondyn & Melusyne in theyre douleur & myserye. Now bygynneth theire hard & bytter departyng, eche fro other, whiche dured to Raymondyn his lyf natural / & to Melusyne shal laste her penitence vnto domysday. The messager thenne rode tyl he came to Nyort, & made his obeyssaunce, & syn delyuered the lettres to his lady: [1]the whiche she toke, & opened it. And whan she vnderstode the tenour of the lettres, she was ryght heuy & dolaunt, & more for the yre & wrath of Raymondin than for ony other thing; For she sawe wel that the meschief that geffray had doon might none otherwyse be as for that tyme present. She thenne made come all her peuple & aray, and sent for many ladyes & damoyselles, for to hold her companye / and so departed fro Nyort, & came to Lusynen / and there she soiourned by the space of thre dayes / and euer she was of symple & heuy contenaunce / and went al about in the place, vp & doun, here & there / gyuyng ofte syghes so grete that it was meruaylle & pyteous to here / And the hystory & cronykle, whiche I byleue be trew, sheweth to vs that wel she knew the doleur &

Raymondin goes to Merment. He retires to his chamber

and makes piteous lamentation.

The barons are sad,

and send word to Melusine at Niort,

but this augments the grief of Raymondin and Melusine.

[1] fol. 184 b. When Melusine reads the letter she is sorrowful, more for the wrath of Raymondin than anything else.

She comes to Lusignan, where she looks so sad,

and sighs so much, that it is pitiful to see her.

sorow that was nygh her to come / and as to me, I byleue it fermely / but her peple thoughte nothing of that / but they trowed that it had be for cause of the grete myschief that was befell thrugh the fayttes of geffray, to thabbay of maylleses / and also for the wrathe & anger that Raymondyn toke therof. Melusyne thenne, on the III^de^ day, departed fro Lusynen, & came to merment wel acompanyed of ladyes & damoyselles, as tofore I haue sayd. And thenne the barons of the land, that were there assembled for to haue recomforted Raymondin, that they loued entierly / came ayenst her, & honourably receyued her / & sayd how they by no wyse coude make Raymondyn to leue hys dolour. 'Wel,' sayd she / 'doubte you no; For, by the grace of god, he shalbe soone recomforted.'

She knows of the sorrow that is coming,

but her people think she is sad on account of Geffray's mischief.

She comes to Merment,

where they receive her honourably, and tell her of Raymondin's grief.

Melusyne, the good lady, that thenne was wel acompanyed of many ladyes & noble damoyselles, & of the barons of the land, entred in to þe Chambre where as Raymondin was in / the which chambre had regarde toward the gardyns, that [1]were commodyous & delectables, and also to the feldes toward Lusynen. Thenne whan she sawe Raymondin, humbly & ryght honourably salued hym / but thenne he was so dolaunt & replenysshed with yre, that he to her ansuerd neuer a word / and thenne she toke the word, & sayd: 'My lord, grete symplenes & foly it is to you that men repute & hold so sage & so wyse a prynce / you thus to maynten & make suche sorowe of that thinge that may none other wyse be, & whiche may not be amended nor remedyed / ye argue ayenst the playsire & wyll of the Creatour, whiche all thinges created, & shal vndoo at al tymes whan it playse hym, by suche manere wyse aftir his playsire. Wete it that there nys so grete a synnar in the world / but that is more piteable & mysericordyous whan the synnar repenteth hym, with herte contryte, of his mysdede &

[1] fol. 185.

Melusine enters his chamber

and salutes him.

But he answers not a word.

Melusine chides him for his grief,

and says what is done cannot be undone,

and that God had allowed Geffray so to do because of the sins of the monks.

synne / yf geffray, your sone & myn, hath doon that oultrageous folye thrugh his meruayllous courage, Wete it certaynly that suffred god for cause of the monkes mysdedes & synnes, whiche were of euyl, inordinate, & vnrelygious lyuyng / and wold our lord god haue them to be punysshed in that manere wyse / how be it, that it is vnknowen to creature humayne, For the jugements of god be ryght secret & meruayllous. And, moreuer,

She says they have enough to rebuild the abbey, and to endow it richer than it was before,

my lord, thankyng to god, we haue ynough wherof to do make ayen thabbey of Maylleses as fayre & bettre than euer it was tofore, & to empossesse & endowe it bettre & rychelyer, and therin to ordeyne greter nombre of monkes than euer were there ordeyned. Also, yf it playse god, geffray shal mende hys lyf, bothe toward our lord god & the world. Wherfore, my lord, leue your sorowe, I pray you.' Whan thenne Raymondyn vn[1]derstode Melusyne, he knew wel that she sayd trouth of that she had sayd to hym / and that it was best, after rayson, so to doo / but he was replenysshed & perced with yre, that al rayson natural was fled & goon from hym. And thenne, with a right cruel voyce, he said in this manyere:

and she hopes that Geffray will amend his life.

[1] fol. 185 *b*.

Though Raymondin knows she speaks wisely, he is so full of anger that in a cruel voice he cries,

Cap. XLII. How Melusyne felle in a swoune, for this that Raymondyn, her lord, wyted her.

'Goo thou hens, fals serpente / by god! nother thou nor thy birthe shalbe at thende but fantosme / nor none child that thou hast brought shal come at last to perfection / how shal they that are brent & bruled haue theire lyues agayn / goode fruyte yssued neuer of the, saaf only Froymonde, that was youen to god & shorne monke; the whiche, thrugh arte demonyacle, hath myserably suffred deth: For all

'Go hence, false serpent! Thou and thy children are but phantoms.

How can the dead have life again?

Froimond, your only perfect child, by devilish art has suffered death.

they that are foursenyd[1] with yre obeye [2]the comandements of the prynces of helle. And perfor, thorryble & cruel geffray commanded of his masters, alle the deuelles of helle, hath doon that abhomynable & hydouse forfaytte, as to brenne hys owne propre brother & the monkes, that had not deserued deth.' Thenne whan melusyne vnderstode these wordes, she toke suche douleur at herte, that foorthwith she fell in a swoune doun to therthe, & was half an oure long that nother aspyracion nor breth was felt nor perceyued in her, but as she had be deed. And thenne was Raymondyn sorowfuller & more wroth than euer he was tofore, For thenne he was cooled of his yre, & bygan to make grete dueyll, & moche repented hym of that he had sayd / but it was for nought, For pat was to late / And thenne the baronnye of the land, & the ladyes & damoyselles were ryght sory & dolaunt, and toke vp the lady, & layed her on a bed / and so moche they dide, that she came ayen to her self. And whan she myght speke, she loked on Raymondyn pyteously, and said /

[2] fol. 186.

Geffray burnt his brothers by command of his masters, the devils of hell.'

Melusine is overcome by his cruel words, and swoons.

He repents, but it avails nought.

When Melusine comes to herself she looks piteously at Raymondin and says,

Cap. XLIII. It is shewed herafter, how Melusyne came to her self ayen, and spake to Raymondyn.

'Ha / a Raymondyn / the day that first tyme I sawe the was for me ryght doulourous and vnhappy / in an euyl heure sawe I euer thy coynted body, thy facion, & thy fayre fygure / euyl I dyde to desire & coueyte thy beaute, whan thou so falsly hast betrayed me / how wel thou art forsworn toward me, whan thou puttest thy self in peyne to see me / but for this, that thou haddest not yet dyscouered nor shewed to no man nor woman, myn herte forgafe [3]the / and no mencion I neuer shuld haue had made therof to the /

'It was an evil hour when I first saw your figure.

When you falsely betrayed me I forgave you because you kept my secret.

[3] fol. 186 b.

[1] Fr. *enforcenez*.

and god shuld haue pardoned the. Halas, my frende / now is our loue tourned in hate, doleur & hardnes / oure solace, playsire & joye ben reuersed in byttir teerys & contynuel wepynges, and our good happ is conuerted in ryght hard & vnfortunate pestilence / Halas, my frend! yf thou haddest not falsed thy feythe & thyn othe, I was putte & exempted from all peyne & tourment, & shuld haue had al my ryghtes, & hadd lyued the cours natural as another woman; & shuld haue be buryed, aftir my lyf naturel expired, within the chirche of our lady of Lusynen, where myn obsequye & afterward my annyuersary shuld haue be honourably & deuoutely don / but now I am, thrughe thyn owne dede, ouerthrowen & ayen reuersed in the greuouse and obscure penytence, where long tyme I haue be in, by myn auenture: & thus I muste suffre & bere it, vnto the day of domme / & al through thy falsed / but I beseche god to pardonne the.' Melusyne began thenne to make suche doleur, that none was there that sawe her but he wept for pyte. And whan Raymondyn sawe her douleur & heuynes, almost hys herte brake for sorowe, in so moche that he nother herd, nor sawe, nor coude hold contenaunce. /

Our love is now turned to hate.

If you had kept your oath, I was to be exempt from torment.

I should have been buried at Lusignan,

and my anniversary would have been devoutly kept.

But now my fate is altered.

I must suffer grievous penitence till doomsday.'

Melusine shows such grief that all pity her.

The heart of Raymondin is nearly broken by her grief.

Thystorye sayth that Raymondyn was right dolaunt; and, for trouth, the true cronykle testyfyeth that neuer no man suffred so grete dolour, without of his lyf expired. but whan he was a lytel come to hys mynde, & sawe Melusyne tofore hym, he kneeled doun on hys knees, & joyntly[1] handes, thus bygan he to saye: 'My dere lady & my frend, my wele, my hoop, & myn honour, I beseche & pray you that it playse you to pardonne me, & that ye wyl abyde with me.' 'My swete frend,' sayd Melusyne, that saw the grete habundaunce of teerys fallyng fro hys eyen / 'he that is the very forgyuer, creatour & omnipotent, forgyue you your

He kneels to Melusine and beseeches her pardon.

Melusine calls on God to forgive him,

[1] Fr. *joingnist.*

forfaytte; For as touching myself, I forgyue & pardonne you with al my very herte / but as to myn abydyng with you ony more / it is Impossible / for the veray jugge & almighty god wold neuer suffre me [1]to doo soo.'

as she does;

but declares that God will not let her abide with him.

[1] fol. 187.

Cap. XLIV. How Raymondyn & Melusyne felle bothe in a swoune.

And with thoo wordes Melusyne toke vp Raymondyn, her lord / and thenne, as they wold haue embraced & kyssed eche other, they fell both at ones in a swoune, so that almost theire hertes brake for grete doleur: Certayn there was a pyteous syght. There wept & bewaylled barons / ladyes & damoyselles, sayeng in þis manere: 'Ha, fals Fortune! We shal lese this day þe best lady that euer gouerned ony land / the moost sage / most humble / moost charytable & curteys of all other lyuyng in erthe.' And they al lamented & bewaylled so pyteously, & rendred teerys in habundance, in so moche that it was a pyteous syght. Thenne retourned Melusyne to her self out of swounyng, and herd the heuynes & dolour that the baronnye made for her departyng / and cam to Raymondyn, that yet laye on the grounde, & toke hym vp / and thenne to hym, in heryng of thassistaunce, she said in this manere /

Melusine raises Raymondin.

They kiss, and immediately swoon on account of their grief.

The barons and ladies weep at the thought of losing their lady.

Melusine recovers,

and comes to Raymondin and says—

Cap. XLV. How Melusyne made her testament. /

'My lord & swete frend Raymondyn, Impossible is my lenger taryeng with you; Wherfore lyst, & herke, & putte in mynde that I shal saye. Wete it, Raymondyn, that certayn after your lyf naturel expired, no man shal not empocesse nor hold your land so free in peas as ye now hold it, & your heyres & successours shal haue moche to doo / and wete it shal

'My sweet friend, it is impossible to stay with you, therefore listen and keep in mind what I say. After your life no man shall hold your land in peace.

Your heirs through their folly shall lose their inheritance.

be ouerthrawen & subdued, thrugh theire foly, from theire honour & from theire ryght enherytaunce / but doubte you not, For I shal help you duryng the cours of your lyf naturel / and putte not geffray, oure sone, fro your Court / he is your sone, [1] & he shal preue a noble & valyaunt man. Also we haue two yong children male, Raymond & theoderyk / of them I shal take good heede / how be it, aftir my departyng / that ryght soone shal be / ye shal neuer see me in no womans fourme. And I wyl & bequethe to theodoryk, yongest of all our children, the lordshipes with al thappurtenaunces of Partenay / Vernon / Rochelle, & the port there / And Raymond shal be Erle of Forestz / and as touching geffray, he shal wel purueye for hym self.' Thenne drew she Raymondyn & hys Counseyll apart, & sayd to them in this wyse: 'As touching our sone, that men calle Horryble, that hath thre eyen / wete it for certayn, yf he be lefte alyue / neuer man dide, nor neuer shal doo, so grete dommage as he shall. Wherfore I pray & also charge you that, anoone aftir my departyng, he be put to deth; For yf ye doo not soo / his lyf shall full dere be bought, & neuer ye dide so grete folye.' 'My swete loue,' sayd Raymondyn, 'there shal be no fawte of it / but, for goddis loue, haue pyte on yourself, & wyl abyde with me.' And she said to hym: 'My swete frend, yf it were possyble / soo wold I fayne doo / but it may not be. And wete it wel, that my departyng fro you is more gryeuous & doubtous a thousand tymes to me than to you / but it is the wyll & playsire of hym that can do & vndoo al thinges.' and, with these wordes, she embraced & kyssed hym full tenderly / sayeng: 'Farwel, myn owne lord & husbond; Adieu, myn herte, & al my joye; Farwel, my loue, & al myn wele / and yet as long as thou lyuest, I shal feed myn eyen with the syght of the / but pyte I haue on the of this, that thou mayst neuer see me but

[1] fol. 187 *b*.

Keep Geffray with you, he will prove a valiant man. I will take care of Raymond and Theoderic, though after I go you will never see me again in woman's form. I bequeath Partenay to Theoderic;

Raymond shall be Earl of Forest; Geffray will provide for himself.

I charge you to put Horrible to death.'

Raymondin asks Melusine to stay with him,

but she says that it cannot be done.

She then kisses him tenderly and bids him adieu.

in horryble figure' / and therwith she lept vpon the windowe that was toward the feldes & gardyns ayenst Lusynen. / She leaps to the window,

Cap. XLVI. How Melusyne in fourme of a Serpent flough out at a wyndowe.

[1]In this partye, saith thistorye, that whan Melusyne was vpon the wyndowe as before is said, she toke leue sore wepyng, and her commanded to all the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles that were present / and after said to Raymondyn: 'here be two rynges of gold that be bothe of one vertue, and wete it for trouth that as long as ye haue them, or one of them / you / nor your heyres that shal haue them after you, shal neuer be dyscomfyted in plee nor in batayll, yf they haue good cause / nor they that haue them shal not dey by no dede of armes,' and Immediatly he toke the rynges. And after bygan the lady to make pyteous regrets and greuouse syghynges, beholdyng Raymondyn right pyteously / And they that were there wept alway [2]so tenderly that euerych of them had grete pyte, they syghyng full pyteously. Thenne Melusyne in her lamentable place, where she was vpon the wyndowe hauyng respection toward Lusynen, said in this wyse, 'Ha, thou swete Countre / in the haue I had so grete solas & recreacion, in the was al my felicite / yf god had not consented that I had be so betrayed I had be full happy / alas! I was wonnt to be called lady / & men were redy to fulfylle my commandements / & now not able to be alowed a symple seruaunt / but assygned to horryble peynes & tourments vnto the day of fynal judgement. And al they that myght come to my presence had grete Joye to behold me / and fro this tyme foorth they shal dysdayne me & be ferefull of myn abhomynable figure / and the lustes & playsirs that I was wonnt to haue shal be reuertid in tribulacions

[1] fol. 188.

and again takes leave, weeping sorely.

She gives Raymondin two magic rings.

[2] fol. 188 b.

Those present weep, so full of pity are they.

She looks from the window towards Lusignan,

and speaks of her sad future,

and how all will disdain her because of her abominable figure.

& grieuous penitences.' And thenne she bygan to say with a hye voyce: 'Adieu, my lustis & playsirs / Far wel, my lord / barons / ladyes, & damoyselles, and I beseche you in the moost humble wyse that ye vouche-sauf to pray to the good lord deuoutely for me / that it playse hym to mynusshe my dolorous peyne / notwithstanding I wyl lete you knowe what I am & who was my fader, to thentent that ye reproche not my children, that they be not borne but of a mortal woman, and not of a serpent, nor as a creature of the fayry / and that they are the children of the doughter of kynge Elynas of Albanye and of þe queene Pressyne, and that we be thre sustirs þat by predestinacion are predestynate to suffre & bere grieuous penaunces, and of this matere I may no more shew, nor wyl.' And therwith she said: 'farwel, my lord Raymondyn, and forgete not to doo with your sone called Horryble this that I haue you said / but thinke of your two sones Raymond & Theodoryk.' Thenne she bygan to gyue a sore syghe, & therwith flawgh in to thayer out of the wyndowe, transfigured lyke a serpent grete & long in xv foote of length. And wete it wel that on the basse stone of the wyndowe apereth at this day themprynte of her foote serpentous. Thenne encreaced the lamentable sorowes of Raymondyn, and of the barons, ladyes, & damoyselles / and moost in especial Raymondyns heuynes aboue al other / And foorthwith they loked out of the wyndowe to behold what way she toke / And the noble Melusyne so transffygured, as it is aforsaid, flyeng thre tymes about the place, passed foreby the wyndow, gyuyng at euerche tyme an horrible cry & pyteous, that caused them that beheld her to wepe for pyte. For they perceyued wel that loth she was to departe fro the place, & that it was by constraynte. And thenne she toke her way toward Lusynen, makyng in thayer by her furyousnes suche horryble crye &

She tells that her father was

Elinas, King of Albany, and her mother Queen Pressine; and that she is one of three sisters.

She gives a sore sigh, and becomes like a great serpent;

[1] fol. 189.

and to this day her serpent's footprint is on the base-stone of the window.

The grief of Raymondin and his people increases.

They see Melusine fly three times about the place, uttering horrible cries;

then she makes her way to Lusignan, moaning so

noyse that it semed al thayer to be replete with thundre & tempeste. / loud that it sounded like thunder.

Thus, as I haue shewed, went Melusyne, lyke a serpent, flyeng in thayer toward Lusynen / & not so hygh / but that the men of the Countre might see her / and she was herd a myle in thayer, For she made suche noyse that al the peple was abasshed. And so she flawgh to Lusynen thre times about the Fortres, cryeng so pyteously & lamentably, lyke the voyce of a Mermayde. Wherof they of the Fortresse & of the toun were gretly abasshed, & wyst not what they shuld thinke, For they sawe the fygure of a serpent, and the voyce of a woman þat cam fro the serpent. And whan she had floughe about the Fortresse thre tymes she lyghted so sodaynly & horrybly vpon the toure called poterne, bryngyng with her such thundre & tempeste, that it semed that bothe the Fortres & the toun shuld haue sonk and fall / & therwith they lost the syght of her, and wyst not where she was become. But anoone after that cam messagers fro Raymondyn, [1]that he sent thither to haue tydynges of her / to whom was shewed how she fyl vpon the fortresse / & of theire fere that they had had of her / and the messagers retourned toward Raymondyn, & shewed hym al the caas. And thenne bygan Raymondyn to entre into hys sorowe. And the tydynges were knowen in the Countre, the pouere peuple made grete lamentacion & sorowe, & wysshed her ayen with pyteous syghes, For she had doo them grete good. And thenne bygan thobsequyes of her to be obseruyd in al abbeyes & chirches that she had founded / and Raymondin, her lord, dede to be doon for her almesses & prayers thrugh al his land.

She flies through the air to Lusignan, making a great noise, and then flies three times round the fortress,

lamenting piteously like the voice of a mermaid.

She alights on Postern Tower in such wise that it seemed the fortress would fall.

She disappears.

[1] fol. 189 b.

Messengers are sent by Raymondin to get tidings of her.

Raymondin and all the people lament.

Her obsequies are observed in all the churches she had built.

Cap. XLVII. How Raymondyn dide do brenne his sone called Horryble.

The barons remind Raymondin of Melusine's command about Horrible.

Thenne came tofore the presence of Raymondyn the barons of the land, and said: 'My lord, it behouyth that we doo of your sone horryble this that his moder hath charged you & vs to doo.' And Raymondyn to them ansuerd, 'doo you in this that ye are commanded to doo.'

He bids them fulfil her order.

And then they went and toke by fayre wordes this Horryble / & led hym in to a caue.

Horrible is led to a cave

For yf he had had warnyng of theire purpos they shuld not haue had take hym without grete peyne.

and suffocated.

And thenne they closed hym in smoke of wet hey.

He is buried at Neufmoustier.

And whan he was deed they buryed hym honnourably in the Abbey called the Neufmoustier.

Cap. XLVIII. How Melusyne came euery nyght to vysyte her two children.

Raymondin goes to Lusignan, and brings his children Raymondin and Theoderic,

Thenne departed Raymondyn from thens & came to Lusynen, & brought with hym his two children, Raymond & theodoryke / and said that he shuld neuer entre ayen in to the place wher [1]he had lost his wyf.

[1] fol. 190.

Melusine visits them every day.

And wete it wel that Melusyne came euery day to vysyte her children, & held them tofore the fyre and eased them as she coude / and wel sawe the nourryces

They grow faster than other children.

that, who durst no word speke. And more encreced the two children in nature in a weke than dide other children in a moneth; wherof the peuple had grete meruayll.

Raymondin when he hears of her coming,

but whan Raymondyn knew it by the nourryces that melusyne came there euery nyght to vysyte her children / relessed his sorowe / trustyng to haue her

hopes to have her back, but in vain.

ayen / but that thoughte was for nought, For neuer after sawe he her in fourme of a woman / how be it dyuers haue sith sen her in femenyn figure. And wete it that how wel Raymondyn hooped to haue her ayen / neuertheles he had alway suche hertly sorowe that there is none that can tell it / And there was neuer man syth that sawe hym lawgh nor make joye / and

Raymondin is so woful that he never laughs,

hated gretly geffray with the grete toth / and yf he myght haue had hym in his yre, he wold haue dystroyed hym. But here seaceth the hystorye of him And speketh of geffray. /

He hates Geffray.

Thystorye sayth, that geffray rode so long' that he came in Northomberland with the ambaxatours and hys ten knyghtes with hym / And whan the barons of the Countre vnderstod his commyng' they cam ayenst hym honourably, & receyued hym solemply, sayeng: 'ha, sire, of your joyful comyng we owe wel to lawde & preyse our lord god, For without it be by you & thrugh your prowes we may not be delyuered of the horryble geaunt and meruayllous murdrer, Grymauld, by whom all this countre is dystroyed.' Thenne ansuerde geffray to them: 'And how may ye knowe that by me ye may be quytte & delyuered of hym?' to whom they ansuered, 'My lord, the sage astronomyens haue said to vs that the geaunt grymauld [1]may not dey but by your dede of armes / and also we knowe for certayn that he knoweth it wel. Wherfore yf ye go to hym, and that yf ye telle hym your name ye shall not kepe hym, but he shall you escape.' Thenne sayd geffray to the barons, 'Sire, lede me toward the place where I may find hym, For grete desyre I haue to see hym.' And Immedyatly they toke hym two knyghtes of the land that conduyted hym toward the place / but that one of them said to that other þat they shuld not approche al to nygh grymauld / and that they myght not beleue that geffray shuld haue the vyctory of hym. And thenne geffray toke leue of the barons and departed, the two knyghtes with hym, and so long they rode tyl they saw the montayne of Brombelyo. Thenne sayd the two knyghtes to geffray, 'My lord, yonder ye may see the mountayne where he holdeth hym / & this way shal lede you thither without ony fayH, For certaynly he is euer at yonder trees vpon that mountayne

Geffray comes to Northumberland.

The barons tell him they are joyful at his arrival,

because they will be delivered of Grymauld.

Geffray asks how they know.

[1] fol. 190 b.

They answer that wise astronomers have said that he alone can slay Grymauld, and the giant knows this too, so Geffray must not tell him his name.

Geffray is taken to the mountain of Brombelyo,

where the knights show

where Grymauld is to be found. Here they leave him for fear of hurt.

for to espye them that passe by the way. Now may ye goo thither, yf it playse you, For as touching our personnes we wyl goo no ferþer that way.' And geffray

Geffray tells them that it is well he has not trusted to their aid.

ansuerd to them in this manere, 'Yf I had come vpon thaffyaunce of your ayde I had faylled therof at this tyme.' 'By my feyth,' sayd one of them, 'ye say trouth.' Thenne came they to the foot of the hyll / and there geffray descended & armed hym, and syn remounted on his hors, and layed the sheld tofore hys brest, and toke his spere, and thenne he said to the two knyghtes that they shuld abyde hym vnder the mountayne, and that they shuld soone see what therof shuld befall. And they sayd that so shuld they doo.

fol. 191.

Cap. XLIX. How geffray with the grete toeth rane ayenst the geaunt & ouerthrew hym with hys spere./

Geffray leaves the knights and ascends the mountain.

In this partye sayth thistorye that Geffray toke leue of the two knyghtes, & mounted the mountayne, so that he approched nygh the trees where as he

He sees the giant, who is astonished at Geffray's boldness in coming against him alone.

apperceyued the geaunt þat satte vndernethe them. but assoone as he sawe geffray he meruaylled gretly how one knyght alone had the hardynes to haue dare come toward hym, and thenne he thought in hym self that he cam to treate with hym for som patyse or for som peas. but he sware hys lawe that lytel or nought he shuld entrete hym. Thenne rose vp the geaunt and

The giant takes a club.

toke an horryble grete Clubbe in hys handes, which ony man had ynough to doo to lyft it vp fro the ground. [1]And so he came ayenst Geffray, and cryed with a hye voys, 'What art thou that darest come so

[1] fol. 191 b.

He demands Geffray's name, and threatens him with death.

boldly toward me in armes / by my lawe wel shal thou be payed therfor. For who that sendeth the hyther wold haue the deed.' And geffray cryed to hym, 'I

Geffray defies the giant,

deffye the / deffend thou thy self yf thou canst.' And

with these wordes geffray couched hys spere & sporyd hys hors and ranne & smote the geaunt in the brest so myghtily that he ouerthrew hym, the legges vpward to the ground / and anoon geffray descendid fro his hors, feeryng that the geaunt shuld slee hym vndre hym, and fasted it by þe brydel at a tree / & pusshed his shelde behynd, and toke his good trenchaunt sword; For wel he sawe that it were grete foly to hym to abyde the stroke of the geauntis Clubbe. And thenne cam the geaunt toward geffray, but almost he coude not perceyue hym for cause he was so lytel of personne to the regarde of hym. And whan he was nygh hym he said to hym, 'Say me thou lytel body, who art thou that so valyauntly hast ouerthrawen me? / by mahomid I shall neuer haue honour but I auenge me.' And thenne geffray ansuerde to hym, 'I am Geffray with the grete toeth, sone to Raymondyn of Lusynen.' And whan the geaunt vnderstod hym, he was ryght dolaunt, For wel he wyst that he myght not be slayne but with geffrayes handes. not that withstanding he ansuerd to hym, 'I knowe the wel ynough. thou slough that other day my Cousin Guedon in Garande, al the deuelles of helle haue brought the now hither.' And geffray hym ansuerd, 'no doubte / but I shal slee the yf I may.' And whan the geant vnderstod it, he haunced his Clubbe & wold haue dyscharged it vpon geffrayes heed, but he faylled, And thenne Geffray smote hym with his swerd vpon the sholder. [1]For he myght not reche to his heed, & cutte the haulte piece of his harneys, and made his swerd to entre in his fleshe wel a palme deep, and thenne the blood fell doon along his body vnto the heelys of hym. And whan he felt that stroke he cryed & said to geffray / 'cursed be that arme that by suche strengthe can smyte, & hanged be the smyth that forged that swerd. For neuer blood was drawen out of my body of no

and rushes forward and overthrows him.

Geffray dismounts,

fastens his horse to a tree, and takes his sword and shield.

The giant approaches Geffray, but can hardly see him.

He asks Geffray who he is.

Geffray answers that he is the son of Raymondin of Lusignan. The giant is sad at this news, because he knows that Geffray alone can slay him.

The giant says he knows him as the slayer of Guedon.

Geffray tells the giant that he will kill him too.

The giant raises his club, but misses Geffray.

[1] fol. 192.

Geffray wounds the giant,

who curses Geffray's arm,

and strikes back.

manere wepen al were it neuer so good.' And thenne with his clubbe he wend to haue smyte geffray / but

Geffray avoids the blow.

geffray fled the stroke. For wete it for trouth that yf he had atteyned hym he had slayn hym / but god, on whom hys trust was, wold not suffre it. And ye owe

The force of the giant's stroke drove his club a foot into the ground.

to wete for certayn that with that same stroke the Clubbe entred into the ground wel a foot deep / but or euer the geaunt myght have haunced his Clubbe,

Before it is raised Geffray strikes it from his hands.

geffray smote on it with his swerd by suche strengthe that he made it fligh out of the geauntes handes. and therewith he cutte a grete piece of it.

Cap. L. How the geaunt fled & Geffray folowed hym.

Thenne was the geaunt ryght dolaunt & abasshed whan he sawe his Clubbe þus cutte lyeng on the

The giant fears to bend to lift his club, so he strikes Geffray with his fist.

grounde, For he durst not bowe hym self to take it vp. Thenne he lept on geffray & strake hym with his fyst vpon the helmet with so grete myght & yre that almost geffray was astonyed therwith all. but geffray, corageous & hardy, smote the geant vpon the þye, so that

Geffray smites the giant on the thigh.

he cutte a grete part of it. And thenne whan the geaunt sawe hym thus hurt he withdrew hym a lytel backward, and syn bygan to flee / but geffray, holdyng his swerd, folowed hym / and the geaunt entred into

He flies to a hole in the mountain. Geffray follows

a holl within the mountayne, Wherof geffray was abasshed /. Thenne came geffray [1]to the holl and loked

[1] fol. 192 b.

and looks in, but it is so dark that he cannot see the giant.

in, but it was so obscure & derk & so deep that he sawe nor wyst where the geaunt was become. And he retourned and toke & mounted ayen vpon his hors, and

Geffray rides to his men, who marvel at his safe return.

descended into þe valey, & came to hys meyne that abode for hym there, whiche had grete meruayll whan they sawe hym retourne hole & sauf / and in especial the two knightes wondred moche & were abasshed of

The two knights ask if he has seen the giant.

it / and they asked hym yf he had sene the geaunt / and he said to them, 'I haue faught with hym / and

he is fled & entred in to an hoⁿ, where as I may not see hym.' And they demanded of geffray yf he had told hym hys name / and he ansuerd, 'ye' / and thenne they said that it was for nought to seke hym, For wel he wyst that he shuld dey by the handes of geffray. 'Doubte you not,' said geffray, 'For wel I knowe where he is entred in / and to morne, with goddes help, I shal fynd hym wel.' And whan they vnderstode Geffray to speke they had grete joye, and said that geffray was the moost valyaunt knight of the world.

Geffray tells how he fought him, and how he entered a hole in the mountain.

They say that there is no use of looking for the giant, because Geffray has told his name.

Geffray says that with God's help he will find him next day.

Cap. LI. How Geffray went & entred into the hoⁿ for to fyght with the geaunt./

And thenne on the morowe by tymes Geffray armed hym & mounted vpon his hors & rode tyl he came to the said hoⁿ vpon the mountayne. 'By my feyth,' said geffray thenne / 'this geaunt is twyes as grete as I, & sith he is entred here in, wel I shal goo thrugh it / and so shal I do whatsomeuer it befeⁿ therof.' And thenne he toke hys swerd in his hand, & fayre & softly lete hym self faⁿ into the hoⁿ / and as he was in to the botome of it, he perceyued some light, & sawe a lytel pathⁿ. And thenne he made the signe of the cros & foorth [1]went that way./

Geffray rides in the morning to the hole where Grimold disappeared.

He jumps in sword in hand, and sees a light and a path.

He makes the sign of the cross and follows it.

[1] fol. 193.

Cap. LII. How Geffray fonde the sepulture of the king of Albany, his granfader Helynas, within the mountayn.

Geffray thenne went not ferre whan he fond a ryche Chambre, where as were grete ryches and grete Candstykes of fyn gold, and vpon them grete tapers white wax, brennyng so clere that it was meruayⁿ. And in the myddes of the Chambre he fonde a noble & ryche tombe of fyn gold, al sette with

Geffray comes to a chamber

that contains a noble tomb,

perlys & precyous stones, & vpon it was figured the fourme of a knyght, that had on hys heed a ryche croune of gold with many precyous stones / and nygh by that tombe, a grete ymage of Albaster, kerued & made aftir the fourme of a quene, crouned with a ryche crowne of gold / the whiche ymage held a table of gold / where-as were wryton the wordes that folowen. 'Here lyeth my lord myn husband the noble kyng Elynas of Albanye' / and also shewed al the manyere how he was buryed there, and for what cause. And also spake of theire thre doughtirs, that is to wete, Melusyne, Melyor, and Palastyne / and how they were punysshed bycause that they had closed theire fader / as in thystory tofore is reherced. Also it shewed by wrytyng how the geaunt had be there ordeyned for the kepyng & sauegarde of the place, vnto tyme he were putte therfro by the prowesse of one of the heyres of the said thre doughtirs / and how there myght none neuer entre within yf he were not of that lynage / and in these tables of gold was wel dyuysed along as it is wreton in the Chapytre of king Elynas / and thus geffray beholding & seeyng, [pondered] by grete space[1] vpon [2]the tables as vpon the beaute of the place / but he knewe not yet that the tables shewed that he was of the lynee of kyng Elynas & Presyne his wyf. And whan he had wel behold a long tyme he departed, & went by a waye obscure tyl he fond a feld, thenne loked he tofore hym, & sawe a grete toure, square, wel batelmented, & went toward and went about the toure tyl he fonde the gate the whiche was open, & the bridge let fall doun, & entred in, & came to the hall, where he fonde a grete yron trayll,[3] wherin were closed a hondred men & more of the Countre that the geaunt

and an alabaster statue of a queen,

with this inscription, 'Here lieth my husband, King Elynas of Albany,' and other writing regarding his burial, and his daughters Melusine, Melior and Palastine;

and how the giant was put on guard until the arrival of an heir of one of the daughters.

[2] fol. 193 *b*.

Geffray looks a long while at the inscriptions, but knows not that he is of the lineage of Elynas.

Geffray leaves the chamber, and makes his way to a field, where he sees a great tower.

He finds the gate, and enters the hall, where there are over a hundred prisoners.

[1] Fr. *Et à ce veoir et regarder advisa Geuffroy par grant temps.*

[3] Fr. *traillis.*

held for hys pryssonners./ And whan they sawe geffray they marvaylled moche, & hym sayd, 'Sire, for the loue of god flee you, or ye shal be deed; For the geaunt shall come ryght foorth that shal dystroye you al, were ye an C suche as ye are'/ And geffray answerd them al thus: 'Fayre lordes, I am not here come but only the geaunt to fynd'/ & I shuld haue don to grete foly to be come fro so ferre hither to retourne so hastly.' And after these wordes cam the geaunt fro slepe. But whan he sawe geffray he knew hym, and sawe wel that his deth was nygh, and had grete feer / and thenne he fledd unto a chambre, the whiche he sawe open, & speryd the doore to hym. And whan geffray that perceyued, he was ryght sorowful that he had not mete with hym at the entryng of the Chambre./

They are astonished to see Geffray, and advise him to fly from the giant.

Geffray replies that he has come to find him;

and just as he finished speaking the giant appeared.

When he saw Geffray he knew his death was at hand.

He fled to a chamber, and barred the door.

Thystorye sayth that geffray was right dolaunt whan he sawe the geaunt was entred into the chambre, and that he had speryd the doore to hym. Thenne cam geffray toward the doore, rennyng with a grete radeur, & smote with his foot so mightyly that he made the doore to flye vnto the mydde*s* of the chambre. [1]And thenne the Geaunt swyftly went out at the doore bycause he might none other way passe, and held in his hand a gret mayllet wherof he gaaf to geffray suche a stroke vpon the bassynet that he made hym al amased. And whan geffray felt the stroke, that was harde & heuy, he foyned with his swerd at his brest, with suche yre that it entred in the geaunt thrughe to the cros of the swerd. And thenne the geant made vp [2]an horryble cry, sayeng, 'I am deed, I am deed.' And whan they that were in the traylles of yron herd it / they cryed with an hye voys, 'Ha, noble man, blessid be the coure that thou were borne of a woman. We pray the for the loue of god, that thou haue vs hens,

Geffray bursts it open.

[1] fol. 194.

The giant rushes on Geffray, and strikes him with a mallet;

then Geffray thrusts his sword into the giant right up to the hilt.

The giant cries out, 'I am dead, I am dead!'

The prisoners on hearing the cry bless the hour of Geffray's birth, and beg their deliverance.

[2] MS. *has* '&.'

For thou hast at this day delyuered this land out of the gretest myserye that euer peuple was in.'/

Cap. LIII. How geffray delyuered the prysonners that the geaunt kept in pryson.

Geffray finds the keys, and releases them.

And thenne geffray cerched the keyes so longe tyl he fonde them, & lete the prysonners out; and this doon, they all kneeled tofore hym / & asked hym

He tells how he came,

by what way he was come. And he said to them the trouth. 'By my feyth,' said they, 'it is not in remembraunce that this foure hondred yere was no man so hardy to passe by the Caue, but onely the geaunt and his antecessours, that fro heyre to heyre haue dystroyed all this Countre / but wel we shal bryng you another way.' And thenne geffray gaf to them al the

and presents the prisoners with the contents of the tower.

hauoir of the toure./

Cap. LIV. How the prysonners led the geaunt deed vpon a Charyott.

fol. 194 *b*.

The prisoners put the giant's body on a chariot, and burn it.

Geffray returns to the valley with the prisoners bearing their shares of the goods of the tower and the giant's head.

The prysonners thann toke the Geaunt deed, & putte hys body in a Charyot, and sette hym ryght vp, & bound hym so that he shuld not fall, & putte fyre all about hym. And this don, they led geffray to the place where he had left his hors, vpon the whiche he mounted, & descended toward the valey with al the goodes that they had. Wherof euery man had his part / and toke the heed hool of the geaunt with them / and came foorth tyl they sawe geffrayis knightes and the more part of the nobles & peple of the Countre, the which fested & dide to geffray grete honour / and

Geffray is feasted; he refuses gifts, and leaves the country.

to hym wold they haue youen grete yeftes, but he wold none take / but toke his leue, & departed fro them.

The prisoners take the giant's head about the

And the prysonners bare the heed of the geaunt thrugh al good tounes for euery man to see, of the whiche

sight eu*e*ry man had grete m*er*ueyll that one man alone durst be so hardy to assaylle such a deuell. And here seaceth thistory of that more to speke / and retourneth to speke of geffray.

country, and the people marvel that one man should have been brave enough to have fought such a devil.

In this partye sayth thistorye that geffray rode so long that he came to mountyoued[1] in garande, where they of the countrey receyued hym nobly. And for thenne was come his brother Raymond to enfourme hym of the yre that theire fader had, & of his word*es* that he had said of hym, And hym recounted fro the bygynnyng vnto the fyn. And how theire moder was departed and al the manere / And how the first bygynnyng of her dep*ar*tyng was thrugh theire vncle of Forestz. And how she had said at her departyng that she was doughter of kyng Elynas of Albanye. And whan geffray herd this word he bethought hym of [2]the table that he fond vpon the tombe of kynge Elynas. And by this he knew that he and his brethern were come of the same lynage; wherof he thought hym self the bettre, but this not w*i*th standing he was ryght sorowfull of the departyng of hys moder, & of the heuynes of hys fader / and knew th*e*nne wel that this misaduenture was cõme & grew by therle of Forestz his vncle. Wherfor he sware by the holy trynyte that he shuld quyte hym. And th*e*nne he made to go to horsback hys brother and his x. knight*es*, and rode toward the Countee of Forestz / and had tydyng*es* that the Erle his vncle was in a Fortresse that was edyfyed vpon a roche ryght hye / and was the self Fortres named at that tyme Jalensy, and now it is called the Castel Marcelly.

Geffray is well received at Mountjouet.

His brother Raymond tells of their father's rage, and how their mother had departed owing to the behaviour of the Earl of Forest; and that she was a daughter of King Elynas.

[2] fol. 195.

Geffray recollects the inscription on the tomb of Elynas, and understands that he is of the king's lineage.

He is sorry for his mother,

and swears revenge on the Earl of Forest.

Geffray takes his brother and ten knights, and rides to his uncle's castle.

Cap. LV. How Geffray was the deth of the Erle of Forestz hys vncle.

[1] Fr. *Monjouet.*

He enters his uncle's hall, and finds him among his barons, and calls out 'To death traitor, for through thee we have lost our mother.'

Geffray approaches the Earl, with sword drawn.

The Earl runs out of a door followed by Geffray, who chases him to the top of the tower.

So long rode geffray that he came to the Caste and anoone he alighted & went into the hal where he fond the Erle emong his barons / and thenne he cryed with an hye voyce / 'to deth traytour For thrughe the we haue lost our moder' / and foortl with drew his swerd & yede toward the Erle / And the Erle whiche knew wel hys fyersnes and anoon fled toward a doore open / and that part geffray folowed hym / and so long chassed hym fro chambr to chambre to the hyest part of the toure where h sawe he myght no ferder flee / he toke a wyndowe / and

[1] fol. 195 b.

The Earl gets out of a window to pass to another tower, but loses his hold and falls dead at the foot.

supposed to haue passed vnto a tour [1]nygh but fo to saue hym from the yre of geffray / but footyn faylled hym, & fell doun deed to the grounde. And thenne geffray loked out of the wyndowe, & sawe hyn al to rent & brused lyeng deed on the erthe / bu therof he toke no pyte / but sayd 'False traytour b thyn euyl report I haue lost my lady my moder / now haue I quyted the therfore.' And thenne he cam doun ayen to þe halle / but none so hardy was ther that durst say one word ayenst hym. And he thenne commanded that his vncle shold be buryed / and s he was and his obsequye don. And after þat geffray recounted & shewed to the barons of the land why he wold haue slayne his vncle / and bycause of th Erles mysdede and false reporte they were somewha peased. And thenne Geffray dide make them to do hommage to Raymond his brother, that was aftirward Erle of Forestz. And now seaceth thistory of hym t speke / and retourneth to shewe of Raymondyn his fader /

Geffray looks out of the window and upbraids him for the loss of his mother.

Geffray descends to the hall, where none dare to speak against him.

He orders his uncle to be buried, and explains to the barons his uncle's misdeed.

Geffray makes his uncle's barons do homage to his brother Raymondin.

Cap. LVI. How Geffray went to Lusynen toward hys fader and prayed hym o mercy.

Thystorye sayth that soone after this delyt was shewed to Raymondyn, wherof he was ryght dolaunt & sorowful / but he forgate it lyghtly, bycause that his brother had announced hym the tydynges whereby he lost his wyf / and said to hym self / 'this pat is doo may be none otherwyse / I most pease geffray or he doo ony more dommage.' And [1]therefore he sent word to hym by hys brother Theodoryke that he ahuld come toward hym at Lusynen. And geffray came to his fader at his mandement / and as ferre as he sawe hym he putte hym self on his knees / and prayed hym of pardon & mercy, sayeng in this wyse, 'My ryght redoubted lord, my dere fader, I beseche you of forgyfnes & pardon / and I sware you that I shal doo make ayen thabbay of Mayllesses fayrer than ouer it was afore / and there I shal found ten monkes ouer the nombre of them that were there byfore.' 'By god,' said Raymondyn, 'al that may be doo with the helpe of god / but to the deed ye may not restore theire lyf. But geffray it is trouth that I muste go to a pelgrymage that I haue promysed god to do. And therfor I shal leue you the gouernaunce of my land / and yf by auenture god dide hys wylle of me, al the land is yours / but I wyl & charge you this that your moder hath ordeyned by her last wylle to be doo be fulfylled. She hath bequethed to Theodoryke Partenay, Merment, Vouant & al theire appurtenaunces vnto Rochell, with the Castel Eglon with al that therof dependeth / and fro this tyme fourthon I enpocesse hym therof for hym and for his heyres.' Thenne said Geffray to him, 'Dere fader, wel it is raison that it be so don.' This doon Raymondyn made his apparayll, & with hym mounted on horsback many lordes & knightes, and toke with hym grete fynaunce & hauoir and so departed and foorth rode on his way. And Geffray & [2]Theodoryke conueyed

Geffray's father is told the story.

He determines to appease Geffray.

[1] fol. 196.

He sends Theodoric to ask Geffray to come to Lusignan.

Geffray obeys, and on seeing his father falls on his knees and asks pardon, and promises to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais better than it was before.

Raymondin answers that with God's help he may fulfil his promise, but that will not bring the dead to life. He tells Geffray that he is going on a pilgrimage, and that he leaves his land in his care, and makes him his heir.

Raymondin declares that Theodoric has been left Parthenay and other lands and castles by his mother.

Raymondin then starts on his pilgrimage, accompanied by many knights, and well provided with money and goods.

[2] fol. 196 b.

Geffray and Theodoric go part of the way with their father, and Geffray tells how he found the tomb of his grandfather Elynas at Brombelyo, and what was written on the golden tablet about Elynas' three daughters, one of whom was Geffray's mother.

hym tyl he bade them to retourne. And as they rode geffray recounted hym how he fonde the tombe of Helynas his granfader within the mountayne of Brombelyo, vpon foure Coulonnes of fyn gold and of the ryches of þe place / and of the fygure of the quene Pressyne that stod vp ryght, and held a table of gold, and of this that was there writon / and how theire thre doughters were predestyned / 'of the whiche,' said geffray, 'our moder was one of them' / and shewed hym al the begynnyng of the matere vnto theend of hit. And wete it wel that Raymondyn herkned hym gladly, & was wel pleased of that he said that hys wyf Melusyne was doughter of king Elynas & of Pressyne hys wyf. And thenne he gaf lycens to his children to retourne. And so þey departed & retourned toward Lusynen / and Raymondyn held on his way toward Romme. And to theodoryke he gaf the ryng whiche Melusyne gaf hym at her departyng fro hym.

Raymondin is glad to hear that his wife was the daughter of Elynas and Pressine.

He tells his sons to return, and continues on his way to Rome.

He gives Theodoric a ring, Melusine's parting gift.

Cap. LVII. How Raymondyn came toward the pope of Romme and confessed hys synnes to hym.

fol. 197.

Raymondin reaches Rome, and does reverence to Pope Benedict.

He confesses his sins.

Here sayth thystorye that Raymondyn rode so long that he came to Romme and his companye with hym, where he fonde the Pope named Benedictus / & drew hym toward hym to whome humbly he made reuerence, & syn kneeled tofore hym & confessed his mysdedes & synnes in his best wyse / and as touching this that he was forsworne ayenst god and Melusyne hys wyf, the pope gaf hym therfor such penaunce as it playsed hym. and that same day Raymondyn dyned with the pope Benedicte / and on the morne he yede & vysyted the holy places there. And whan he had doon there al that he muste doo, he toke leue to the Pope & said to hym in this wyse, 'Ryght reuerend holy fader, I may not goodly considere in me how euer

The Pope gives him due penance. Raymondin dines with the Pope, and next day visits the holy places. When his affairs are attended to he takes leave of the Pope,

I may haue joye. Wherfore I purpose to yeld myself into some hermytage.' And thenne the Pope hym demanded thus, 'Raymondyn, where is your deuocyon & wylle to goo?' 'By my feyth, holy fader,' said Raymondyn, 'I haue herd say that there is to Mountferrat[1] in Aragon a deuoute & holy place / & there wold I fayn be.' 'My fayre sone,' said the pope, 'soo it is said.' And to hym said Raymondyn, 'holy fader, my intencion is thither to goo and to yeld my self there hermyte, for to pray god that it playse hym to gyue allegeaunce to my lady my wyf.' 'Now fayre sone,' said the Pope, 'with the holy gost may ye goo / & al that ye shal doo with good wyll I remysse it to your penaunce.' And thenne Raymondyn kneeled & kyssed the popes feet. And the pope gaf hym hys benediction. / And thenne departed Raymondyn & came to hys lodgys / & dide doo [2]trusse & make all redy for to departe / and as touchyng his meyne nor of hys way I wyl not make long mencyon / but he rode so long that he came to Thoulouse / and there he gaf lycence & leue to all hys meyne to departe & retourne / except only a Chappellayn & a Clerc that he toke with him / and wel & truly he prayed [3]euery one so that they were content / but sory they were all of theire maister that so departed fro them / and he sent letres to geffray & to the barons of hys land that they shuld doo theire hommage to his sone geffray, & receyue hym for theire lord. And his meyne toke the letres / and soo they departed fro theire lord with grete sorow & heuynesse, For he neuer told them what way he shuld take / but wete it he had with hym goodes ynough / and dyde so moche that he came to Nerbonne where he rested hym a lytel space of tyme.

and tells him that he wishes to be a hermit.

The Pope asks where he would like to go.

Raymondin answers Mountserrat in Aragon.

The Pope bestows his blessing, after Raymondin had kissed his feet.

Raymondin gets on his way, and when he arrives at Toulouse he pays off his men,

[3] fol. 198.

and sends them home with letters to Geffray, which order the barons of his land to do homage to Geffray.

His men return sadly, without knowledge of where their master is going. Raymondin goes to Narbonne, where he makes a halt;

Thystorye sheweth in this partye that whan Raymondyn was come to Nerbonne he dide

[1] Montserrat, the correct reading. [2] Fr. *trosser les sommiers.*

and has hermits' habits made for himself, his chaplain and his clerk.

doo make many hermyte habytes, and also for his Chappellayn & Clerk suche as they owe to haue / and syn departed & went tyl he came to [1] Parpynen where he soiourned one day / and on the morne [2] he passed

He continues his journey

the destraytte & mounted the mountaynes of Aragon / and so foorth he came to Barselone the Cite where he toke hys lodgys and soiourned there thre dayes, and on

till he arrives at Mountserrat.

the foureth toke hys waye toward Mountferrat where he came & yede & vysyted wel the Chirche & the place

He attends divine service.

there, whiche semed hym ryght deuoute / and there he herde the deuyne seruyse deuoutly / but yet had he on hys worldly gownes / And thenne came to hym they

He is asked if he will stay the night, and answers 'yes.'

that were ordeyned for to lodge & herberowe the pelgrymes, and demanded of hym yf it playsed hym to abyde there for þat nyght / and he ansuerde 'ye.'

[3] fol. 198 b.

Thenne were his [3] horses stabled / and they gaf hym a fayre Chambre for hym & for his men. And in the

Raymondin visits the hermitages, and finds the third cell empty, the hermit having died lately.

meane while Raymondyn yede & vysyted the hermytages / but he went no ferther than to the v^th^ celle, for that place was of so grete heyght that he myght not goodly goo thither / and fonde the III^de^ celle exempt. For the hermyte there was deed but late tofore that. And there was stablysshed of olde a Custome that yf within a terme prefix none came there to be hermyte, he of the nerest Celle gooyng vpward muste entre into that other Celle so exempted / and so al the hermytes benethe hym to chaunge theire places vpwarde. And so by that maner wyse was the nedermost Celle of al exempt & without hermyt. And the cause of this permutacion was that alwayes the nedermost hermyte most serue hys brother hermyte next aboue hym of meet & drynk after theire pytaunce & manere of etyng, and so foorth dide that one to that other vpward / and

[1] Fr. *Perpignen.*

[2] Fr. *passa le vellon et le pertuys, et vint à disner à Funères, et au giste à Gnomie.* Omitted above.

thus one seruedꝰ other. And so ferre enquyred & knew Raymondyn of theire maner of lyuyng that he toke grete deuocion to it more than tofore / that is to wete to be hermyte there. And thenne he toke leue of the vth hermyte & so dide as he descended of the other. And he demanded after the pryour of thabbey / and it was told hym that he was in the vyllage nygh by thabbay that was hys, whiche vyllage was called Culbaston / and thenne he desyred them that they wold conduyte hym there as he was. And so Raymondyn left there his Chappellayn & his Clerc, and with a seruaunt of the place went there as þe pryour was, whiche receyued Raymondyn with joyful chere. And there shewed Raymondyn al hys wyll and deuocyon and how the place playsed hym. And thenne the pryour that sawe Raymondyn of fayre coutenaunce & man of grete worship graunted hym the exempteꝰ place, wherof Raymondyn had grete joye at herte. /

Thenne was Raymondyn ryght joyous whan the pryour had graunted hym the place of the nethermost hermytage and moche þanked god therof. and so he bode there with the pryour al that nyght / and on the morow they mounted and came ayen to thabbay where as Raymondyn toke his habytes and was there made hermyte. And thenne was the deuyne seruyce doon, where Raymondyn offred ryche jewels as goldꝰ and precyous stones. And after the seruyce they went to dyner / and raymondyn dyde doo sendꝰ to hys bretheren hermytes besyde theire pytaunce other meetes for recreacion, letyngꝰ them knowe hys professyon & commyng. Wherof al they lawded god, deuoutely prayeng hym that he wold hold & encres Raymondyn in good deuocyon. And so dwelled Raymondyn in thabbay, and on the morne he entred in to his Celle wher he bygan to leꝺ a holy & strayt lyf. And anoone after was the tydynges spreddꝰ

Raymondin, after his enquiries, takes a greater liking to the place than ever.

He takes leave of the hermit in the fifth cell and descends.

Raymondin asks to be taken to the prior of the abbey.

[1] fol. 199.

The prior entertains Raymondin,

and at his request grants the empty cell.

The next day Raymondin is made a hermit,

and after divine service makes a rich offering.

Raymondin tells his brother hermits of his profession, and supplies them with extra meats.

The hermits praise God, and pray for Raymondin.

He enters his cell, and begins to lead a holy life.

The news that a great prince has professed himself a hermit becomes known,

thrugh aH Aragon & Langgedok how that a g
prynce was made hermyte at Mounferrat / but t
knew not of what Countre he was. And [1]also
wold' neuer vttre it / And many noble men went

[1] fol. 199 *b*.

and many come to see Raymondin and ask him his name, but he will not tell it.

see hym / and in especial the king' of aragon was th
hym self, whicH asked hym of his estate & Count
but of hym he coude neuer wete it. And here rest
thystorye of them / and retourneth to shewe
Raymondyns men that departed fro Thoulouse. /

Raymondin's men return to Lusignan, and deliver the letters.

Thystory recounteth that so long rode the
of Raymondyn after they were departed
Thoulouse that they came in Poytou & so foorth
Lusynen, Where they fonde geffray and many of
barons of the land' / and after theire obeyssaunce d
they delyuered theire letres to geffray & to the ba
as they were commanded by Raymondyn theire l
Whan the baronye vnderstod' the tenour of th

The barons declare that they are ready to do Geffray homage in place of his father.

letres they said to geffray in this manere / 'My
syth it playseth not your fader vs more to gouer
and that he wyl that we doo our hommage to you,
are al redy thereto.' 'By god,' said geffray, 'grame

He accepts it.

Fayre lordes, and I am redy to receyue you to y
lygeauns.' And penne they dyde to hym homm
And anoone after was knowen thrugh al the Cou
how Raymondyn had exilled hymself for the g
sorow that he had for his wyf Melusyne that he

When the people know that Raymondin has exiled himself, and that Geffray is lord, they begin to be afraid.

lost. Who thenne had sene the doleur & lament
heuynes that men dide thrugh aH the Cou
wysshyng theire lord & theire lady, he shuld' haue
hertely pyte. For many one fered geffray for caus
his yre & fyersnes. But for nought they doubted,
he gouerned' hym rightously & wel. Here I sh

[2] fol. 200.

leue of pem [2]to speke / and shal shewe of geffray
was ryght dolaunt & sorowful of that he had lost
hys fader & his moder thrugh his owne mysded
synne. For they that were retourned fro hym co

not say where he was come. Thenne remorse of conscience toke geffray at herte & remembred how he fyred thabbaye of Maylleses, & brent hys brother Froymond and al the monkes per without hauyng ony lawfull cause so to doo / and that thrughe hys synne he angred bothe hys fader & moder, and by that cause he had lost his moder. Wherfore he toke suche sorowe that it was meruayll / and also he remembred the deth of the Erle of Forest hys vncle, which thrugh his faytte fell doun fro the hyest toure of the Castel Marcelly to the erthe. And thus remembred geffray all hys my[s]dedes and synnes, and sore wepyng bygan to say / that but yf god had pyte on hym he was lyke to be lost & dampned for euer. And thenne he hymself alone entred into a chambre / and there he bygan to make grete sorowe & lamentable wepynges prayeng god with herte contrite that he wold haue mercy on hym / and as god wold he toke there deuocion to goo to Romme for to confesse his synnes to our holy fader the pope. And thenne he sent for his broder theodoryke that he shuld come to speke with hym, For he loued hym aboue al oper. And assoone as Theodoryke vnderstood the mandement of hys brother geffray, he forthwith mounted on horsback & rode tyl he came to Lusynen where geffray was, that receyued hym with joye, & said to hym that he wold leue al hys land in his gouernaunce, For he [1]wold go to Romme to confesse his synnes tofore the pope / & that he wold neuer come ayen tyl he had found hys fader. Thenne Theoderyk prayed hym that he wold suffre hym to goo with hym. And geffray shewed to hym that it were not good for them bothe so to doo / And thenne geffray with noble companye departed and toke with hym grete goodes, and toke with hym one of hys faders seruaunts that was retourned fro Thoulouse for to conduyte hym all that way that hys fader yede /

Geffray is full of remorse when he thinks of the loss of his father and mother, and how it was caused by his misdeeds.

Geffray enters a chamber alone, and prays with a contrite heart for mercy.

He resolves to go to Rome to confess to the Pope.

Geffray sends for Theodoric

[1] fol. 200 b.

to tell him that he is going to Rome to confess to the Pope, and that he leaves his lands in Theodoric's charge.

Theodoric wants to go with him, but Geffray says it would not do.

Geffray takes plenty of goods, and sets out on his journey with one of his father's servants.

and he shuld euer take hys lodgys there as hys fader was lodged by the way. And the seruaunt hym answerd that gladly he shuld so doo.

Cap. LVIII. How Geffray went to Romme & confessed hys synnes tofore the Pope.

Thystorye sayth that whan geffray was departed fro Lusynen he rode so long by hys journeyes that he came to romme, and drew hym toward our holy fader the Pope, to whome he made humble reuerence and syn deuoutely confessed hym of hys synnes. And the Pope charged hym to make thabbay of Maylleses to be edyfyed agayn & therto ordeyne six score monkes, & many other penitences the pope charged hym doo, the whiche as now present I shal not shewe. And thenne geffray said to our holy fader the Pope how he wold goo to seke hys fader, and the pope told hym that he [1]shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat in Aragon. And thenne he toke leue of the pope & kyssed his feet / and the pope gaf hym hys benediction. And so geffray departed fro Romme & toke hys way toward toulouse where he cam & hys meyne with hym and was lodged where as his fader dede lodge tofore. And there the seruaunt asked of theire hoste yf he coude not telle which way hys lord Raymondyn toke / And thoste said to hym that hys lord had hold the way toward Nerbonne & that no ferther he knew of hys way. And the seruaunt told it to geffray. 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'that is not the next way for to goo to Mountferrat / but syth my fader went that way so shal we doo.' And thus on the morne geffray & hys meyne departed & hasted them toward Nerbonne, where they cam & were lodged there as Raymondyn had tofore lodged. For so moche enquered the seruaunt that he knewe þat hys lord dide

Geffray confesses to the Pope.

He is charged to rebuild the abbey of Maillesses.

Geffray learns that his father is at Mountserrat.

[1] fol. 201.

He kisses the Pope's feet, and receives the benediction.

Geffray goes to Toulouse, and finds that his father went from there to Narbonne.

He follows the same route, though it is not the direct way to Mountserrat.

lodge there, & how he dide do make there many habytes for an hermyte. And on the morne geffray toke hys way toward Parpynen, where he cam, & fro
4 þens he rode with hys meyne to Barselonc, & þenne to thabbey of mountferrat where he alyghted & sent hys horses to Culbaston / and syn he yede & entred in to the Chirch. And anoon the seruaunt beforsaid sawe
8 the Chappellayn of Raymondyn his lord within a Chapell And immedyatly he told of it to geffray. Wherof [1]he had grete joye and yede toward the Chappellayne, the whiche whan he sawe geffray he
12 kneeled tofore hym and said, 'My lord ye be ryght welcome' / and syn he recounted to geffray the good lyf that hys fader led / and how euery day he confessed hym & receyued his creatour / and that he ete nothing
16 that receyueth deth. And thenne geffray asked hym where he was. And the Chappellayn to hym said, 'he is in yonder hermytage / but my lord as for this day ye may not speke with hym, but to morne ye shall
20 see hym.' 'By my fayth,' said geffray, 'fayn I wold see hym today / but sith it is soo I must take it in patience ty[l] tomorowe.' 'My lord,' said thenne the Chappellayn, 'yf it playse you ye may here the hye
24 masse, and therwhiles I shal ordeyne and shew your meyne where your Chambre shal be dressed, and also I shal doo make your dyner redy at your retourne fro the masse.'

28 Thenne departed the Chappellayn fro geffray, that went to here masse accompanyed with x knyghtes and wel xx squyers. And thenne came the monkes of the place to Raymondins Chappellayn and demanded
32 of hym in this wyse. 'What is that grete deuell with that grete toth? he semeth wel to be a cruel man / wherof knowe you hym / is he of your Countre?' 'By my feyth,' said the Chappellayn, 'ye / It is
36 geffray with the grete toeth of Lusynen, one of the best

At last Geffray reaches Mountserrat.

His servant reports that he has seen his father's chaplain.

[1] fol. 201 b.

The chaplain welcomes Geffray, and tells him of the good life his father leads; how he confesses and communicates daily, and that he eats nothing that has had life.

The chaplain says Geffray cannot see his father till next day.

Geffray hears mass;

and when he is out of sight the monks ask the chaplain, 'Who is that great devil with that great tooth?'

He tells them,

& moost valyaunt knightes of the world & wete it he [1]holdeth grete possessions & grete landes.' And the monkes ansuerd, 'Wel we haue herd speke of hym / is it not he that sloughe the geaunt in garand and that other geaunt also of Northomberland / he is also he that brent thabbay of Maylleses with all the monkes þerinne bycause that hys brother was there shorne monke without hys leue.' 'By my feyth,' said the Chappellayn, 'certainly it is that same.' And þenne the monkes al abasshed and aferd sayd / he is come hither for to doo vs some myschief and dommage. Thenne said one of them, 'wete it wel that I shal hyd myself in suche place that he shal not fynd me.' 'Noo,' said the Chappellayn, 'Forsoothe I waraunt you he shal doo you no hurt nor dommage, but al ye shal soone be glad of hys commyng, For suche one is within this place that he loueth aboue al creatures of the world.' And whan they vnderstod the Chappellayn they were somwhat assured and went & hanged the chirche, and made al the place fayre & clene to theire power as god hymself had descended there / and sent word to the Pryour that was at Culbaston that he shuld come there, and that geffray with the grete toth was come in pelgrymage in to theire abbaye, and noble companye with hym. Thenne came there fourthwith the pryour that fond geffray in the Chirche, and honourably made hym reuerence and sayd that he hymself / the monkes & al the place was at his commandement. 'Sire,' said geffray, 'gramercy and wete it wel I loue this place / and yf god gyf me helthe it shal [2]not be the wers for my commyng.' 'My lord,' said the pryour, 'god yeld you.' Thenne cam the Chapellayn to geffray and hym said, 'My lord, your dyner is redy.' And therwith geffray toke the pryour by the hand and togidre went into the hall, where they wesshed theire handes & syn sette them at

[1] fol. 202.

and they ask if it is not the same one who killed the Northumberland giant, and burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks therein.

The chaplain answers that he is.

The monks are much afraid.

The chaplain tells them to be at ease, because the hermitage contains the person Geffray loves most of all in the world.

The monks clean and decorate the church,

and send word to the prior of the arrival of Geffray.

The prior finds Geffray in the church, and does him reverence.

Geffray thanks him, and promises that the place will be none the worse for his visit.

[2] fol. 202 b.

dyner; geffray and the pryour deuysed long space togidre of one thing & of oþer. And thus passed foorth that day. /

Geffray and the prior dine and converse a long time.

4 In this partye sayth thystorye that on þe morne geffray roos vp and fonde the priour and his faders Chapellayn waytyng after hym whiche ledˀ hym to here masse / and after the masse they ledˀ hym toward 8 the hermytages. And thenne the pryour toke his leue of geffray & retourned to Chirchward supposyng none other but that geffray went for to see thestate of the hermytes and for none other cause. For he had neuer 12 trowed that his fader had be þer. And thenne mounted geffray toward the first hermitage that was wel lxxx stepes highe vpon the mountayne. And wete it that the Clerc was at Raymondyns Celle doore waytyng for 16 the Chappelayn that shuld say masse tofore Raymondin. And as the Clerk loked dounward, he perceyuedˀ geffray that came upwardˀ & wel knew hym, and forthwith entred in the celle & said to Raymondin, 'My 20 lord, here commeth your sone geffray.' And whan Raymondin vnderstodˀ it he was ryght joyous and said, 'blessed be god / he is welcomme.' Thenne entred first the Chappellain in to the Celle & salued 24 Raymondyn / but he bade the Chappellayn to say geffray that he myght not speke with hym tyl þat hys masse were doon. And foorthwith the chaˡpellayn dyde as Raymondyn hym commanded. And geffray 28 ansuerdˀ, 'his playsire be doo.' This doon Raymondyn was confessed and herd his masse & receyued the holy sacrament. And in the meane sayson geffray beheldˀ vpward the great mountaynes whiche were high & 32 ryght vp and sawe thermytages that were aboue hym / and sawe the Capellˀ of Saynt Mychel whiche was the vᵗʰ hermytage, and after loked dounward / and in hym self had grete meruayllˀ how man durst there take 36 habytacyon / and to hym appered the Chirche and

Geffray hears mass in the morning, and

goes with the prior and the chaplain to the hermitages, where the prior takes his leave.

Geffray mounts to the first hermitage,

and is recognised by Raymondin's clerk.

He tells his master of Geffray's presence.

Raymondin says 'He is welcome.'

1 fol. 203.

Geffray has to wait till his father hears mass before he can see him.

He looks about while waiting, and wonders how anyone can live in such a place.

housyng of thabbey but as lytel Chapelles. Thenne

Geffray enters his father's cell, and salutes him.

cam the Chapellayn & called geffray and he entred within the Celle of his fader / and anoone kneeled or his knees & dyde to hys fader reuerent salutacion And Raymondyn toke hym vp in his armes and kysse hym / and thenne made hym to sette vpon a stool with hym tofore the awter. And there bygan geffra

Raymondin takes him in his arms and kisses him.

Geffray tells his father how he had been at Rome, and how he confessed, and was told by the Pope that his father was at Mountserrat.

to shewe to hys fader how he was at Romme, and how he was confessed of the pope / and the pope hym sai that he shuld fynd hym at Mountferrat. And in thi communycacion had they many materes togidre

Geffray asks his father to return to his country, but he answers that he cannot, as he intends to stay at Mountserrat, and pray for Geffray's mother, for himself, and for Geffray.

geffray alwayes prayeng hys fader that he wol retourne to his countre. 'Fayre sone,' said Raymondyn 'that may I not doo. For here I wyl spend my ly always prayeng god for thy moder & me, & for the that god wyl amende the, my sone geffray.' And so geffray was there al that day with his fader. And th next day in the morowe herd Raymondyn his mass & receyued our lord, as hys custome was to doo / an after, said to geffray, 'Fayre sone, it behoueth the t parte from hens, & to retourne in to thy Countre and grete wel al [1]my children & my barons.' An thenne geffray toke leue of hys fader al wepyng; an loth he was to departe from his fader. And afte came doun fro the mountayn vnto thabbaye, wher he was honourably receyued / and the monkes ha grete meruayll wherfore he was so long aboue.

[1] fol. 203 b.

Geffray takes his leave.
His father sends a greeting to his children and his barons.

Thystorye sheweth that geffray gaf grete ryches fayre jewelles to the Chirche, & after toke leue

Geffray gives presents to the Church;

the pryour & his monkes, but the pryour hym conueye vnto Culbaston, wher geffray dyned with the pryour and told hym in secret wyse that Raymondyn wa hys fader, whom geffray besoughte to take hede t hys fader, and that the Chirche shuld not lese nothin therby, For euery yere ones duryng hys lyf he wol come & vysyte hys fader. Thenne ansuerd the pryou

and at dinner tells the prior that Raymondin is his father, and asks him to take care of him, and the Church will lose nothing by it.

'doubte you not, my lord, there shal be no deffawte but I shal vysyte & remembre your fader.' And thenne toke geffray leue & went to Barselone to hys bed.

And on the morne he departed toward Lusynen wher as Theodoryk hys brother & the barons receyued hym with ryght grete joye, and were glad of his commyng. And whan they were at leyser, geffray shewed to hys brother theodoryk the very effect of euery thing touchyng theyre fader. Foorthwith Theodoryk that moche loued his fader bygan to wepe ful tenderly. And geffray seeyng his broper make suche sorowe to hym said thus, 'My ryght dere brother, yet must ye abyde here, For wete it wel that I wyl goo see our two bretheren in almayne, that is to vnderstand Regnauld king of behayne and the Duc Anthony of Lucembourgh / but I wyl not departe without aray of men of armes, For per be in thoo marches ryght euyl peple the which [1]gladly wold robbe them that passe by the way.' 'By my sowle, my brother, I hold wel withal that ye doo as ye say / but I beseche you ryght entierly brother that we leue our countre in the gouernaunce of our barons & take with vs v.C. men of armes, and that it may playse you I to go with you; For I haue herd say that there is grete werre betwix them of Anssay & them of Austeryche.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'Ye say wel, For perauenture our brother Anthony is in hand with them.' And whan they had made theire ordonnaunce, Odon the Erle of Marche came and spake with geffray, and brought in hys company thre score men of armes, For at that tyme he had warre ayenst the Earle of Vandosme / and also Raymond their brother Earle of Forestz cam there the same day. And there the foure bretheren made there moche one of other / and were joyfull for the tydynges that they herd of theire fader / and said / ones they hoped to see hym togidre.

Geffray returns to Lusignan, where he is joyfully received.

He tells Theodoric about their father.

Theodoric weeps at the story.

Geffray proposes to visit Reginald and Anthony.

[1] fol. 204.

Theodoric wishes to go with him,

because he has heard there is war between Anssay and Austria.

They are joined by Odo, Earl of March.

The brothers make much of each other, and are glad of the news of their father.

Cap. LIX. How Geffray reedyffyed the monastery of Maylleses.

Geffray arranges for the rebuilding of the abbey of Mailleses.

Geffray afore his departyng charged & ordeyned peuple for the reedyfyeng of the Abbaye of Maylleses, as hym was youen in Charge by the pope by way of penaunce / and to them assygned where they shuld take bothe gold & sylu*er* therw*ith* to paye the werkmen. And so lefte he a good gou*ernour* in hys countre / And in lyke wyse dyde his bro*ther* theodoryk in his Countre. And whan Odon & Raymond sawe that they wold departe to go [1]to see theire bretheren in Allemayne, they sayd in lyke wyse wold*e* they doo. And co*m*manded anoone theire peple to mete with them at Boneuall. And at that tyme were the bretheren acompanyed with two thousand men of armes & a thousand Crosbowes. And whan the Erle of Vandosme herd*e* tydyng*es* therof he supposed certaynly that they came to exille hym, and that Odon had co*m*playned hy*m* to hys bretheren of hym, and so moche he doubted geffray that he came to Boneuall and yelded hym to the grace of Odon erle of Marche. And he pardo*n*ned hym of al the mysdedes that he had doo to hym. And the erle of Vandosme made hym homage of the land*e* that was in debat atwix them. /

He and Theodoric appoint good governors for their countries.

[1] fol. 204 b.

Odo and Raymond propose to go with them to Allmain.

The Earl of Vendôme makes his peace with Odo.

Here sheweth thystorye that the foure bretheren departed fro Boneual & were in theire companye many grete lord*es*, and rode in fayre aray tyl they cam vpon an euen and lodged them nygh a ryuere called Meuze, by a Fortresse named the Castel Duras. But as now I shal cease of them to speke / and shal begynne to speke of the kyng of anssay, that had grete warre ayenst the Erle of Frebourgh & with the Duc of Austeryche, the which had besieged hym w*ith*in a Castel of hys that was called Pourrencru. Wherfor

The four brethren ride with their company to Castle Duras, near which they lodge.

The King of Anssay was at war with the Dukes of Freibourg and Austria. He was besieged by them at Pourrencru.

he sent word to Regnault kyng of Behayne that was maryed with his Cousyn / and lyke wyse to the Duc Anthony of Lucembourgh prayeng them of ayde & socour ayenst his enemyes, at the whiche instaunce & prayer / the two bretheren Regnald & Anthony made theire apparayll. [1]And Regnaulde departed out of his Royalme of Behayne and came to Lucembourgh with IIII. C men of armes for to haue hys brother Anthony with hym toward the siege of Porrencru, wher the kyng of ansay was besieged within. And þat meane sayson came two knightes to Lucembourgh from geffray and his thre bretheren þat were with hym, the which two knightes brought word bothe to regnauld & anthony of theire bretheren commyng, and that they were nygh the toun and cam for to see them. And whan kyng regnauld and the Duc Anthony knew that theire bretheren were commyng toward them, they were full glad & immedyatly commanded that al the stretes shuld be rychely hanged, and syn mounted on horsbak, and with noble companye they went to mete them; and rode tyl they mete with the vanwarde of theire armee & asked where theire bretheren were / and it was shewed to them where they were commyng vnder the standart. Geffray thenne, that wel vnderstod that anthony & regnauld his bretheren came to mete hem, he made euery man to stand apart / and soone after the six bretheren mete togidre and embraced & made moche one of other / and after rode foorth toward the toun / and aftir theire age they rode two & two togidre. Odon and Anthony were the formest, and after them rode Regnauld & Geffray / and them folowed theodoryk & Raymonnet / and al theire oost came after in fayre ordynaunce / and in this manere they entred in to the toune, where as the Cytezeyns were in theire best rayments al in a rowe on bothe [2]sydes of the stretes, that were rychely

He had sent for help to Anthony and Reginald.

[1] fol. 205.

Reginald with four hundred men goes to Anthony, to accompany him to the siege of Pourrencru.

Geffray sends word that he and his three brothers are on their way to Luxembourg.

Regnald and Anthony meet their brethren outside the town.

[2] fol. 205 b

hanged / and the ladyes & damoyselles loked out of th
wyndowes / and so grete & noble apparayll was ther
made for theire commyng that it was a fayre syght.

The citizens marvel at their appearance.

Trouth it is that whan the bretheren entred with
Lucembourgh, Anthony & Geffray rode thenn
the formest of al theire bretheren. And wete it tha
the notable Citeseyns, ladyes, & damoiselles meruaylle
moche of the fyersnes and grete height of theire lordi
bretheren, sayeng that they six togidre wer able
wel shapen to destroye a grete oost / And thus the
rode thrugh the toun into the Castel and there the
alighted. There were the six bretheren recountred
two noble ladyes, that is to vnderstand the quen
of Behayn and the Duches of Lucembourgh, th
honourably receyued theire lordes and brethern. An
aftir they went into the hall that was al hanged wit
ryche cloth of gold / and per were the tables rychel
couered & redy to dyner. And thenne after man
playsaunt deuyses and joyfull wordes, they wesshe
theire handes and sette them at dyner and were nobl
serued. And after dyner geffray shewed & recounte
all hys auentures & fayttes / and how he fonde
tombe of Elynas / & of the quene Pressyne of which
lynee they were yssued, wherof they were al joyfull
glad to meruayll / and how theire fader was departe
and where he was. For of all other thinges the
knew ynough. And thenne Anthony & regnaul
told to theire bretheren how the kyng of Anssay wa
besieged & that they wold help hym. Thenn
[1] ansuerd Geffray, 'My lordes, my bretheren, wete
wel we are not come hither to take our rest / but w
al are redy to goo with you whersomeuer ye wyl /
therfor lete vs not make long soiourne / but go we
vpon our enemyes to helpe & socoure our frendes
And foorthwith Geffray and hys bretheren that wer

The brethren are received at the castle by the Queen of Bohemia and the Duchess of Luxembourg.

Geffray tells of his adventures. How he had found the tomb of King Elinas and Queen Pressine, from whom they had all sprung, and how their father had become a hermit at Mountserrat. Anthony and Regnald tell their brethren that they are to help the King of Anssay.

[1] fol. 206.

Geffray answers that he and his brethren are ready to do so as well;

[2] 'we' repeated in MS.

comȝ there wiṫ hym toke theire leue of bothe the queene & duchesse theire sustirs & retournedꝫ to theire oost / and thenne Regnauld & Anthony woldꝫ haue conueyed them / but geffray said, 'Fayre lordes & bretheren, ye shal comȝ no ferther / but make al youꝛ apparayll & take leue of youꝛ wyues, and to mornȝ, god before, we wyl departe toward the said Castel wherin the king of Anssay ouꝛ frend is besieged.' And soo Anthony and regnauld retournedꝫ sayeng eche one to other, 'Certaynly this man may not long endure / but he be other take or slayn. For he fereth of nothing in the worldꝫ / & also to counseylle hym, it were but for nought, For he suffreth nothing, but as his wyt & mynde gyueth hym. For yf he had wiṫ hym but X. Mꝫ men, & that he sawe his enemyes tofore hym to the nombre of IIC. Mꝫ yet wold he fyght & medle wiṫ them, wherfore we muste take heede to hym that he vaunce not hym self so moche wiṫ the enemyes, but that we be nygh hym to socoure hym wiṫ ouꝛ peuple / but for this haste that he maketh we owe not to wete hym euyl gree For cause that assoone as oon may, he muste aduyse the wayes to hurt & dommage his enemys.' And thenne they lefte of geffray theire brother more to speke / but bothe they said that he was ryght hardy & valyaunt. And on the morne they [1]toke leue of theire wyues and left in the landꝫ a good gouernour. And also geffray on that other part ordeyned & purueyed of al thinges that were necessary to hys oost. /

he then returns to his host.

Geffray refuses Anthony and Regnald's company, and asks them to prepare to start to succour the King of Anssay in the morning.

They speak of Geffray's bravery.

[1] fol. 206 b.

In the morning they take leave of their wives and appoint a governor.

In the next day Geffray made blowe vp hys trompettes, that euer[y] man shuldꝫ be armed, and after herdꝫ his masse and syn marched forth wiṫ hys oost / And immedyatly Anthony & regnaldꝫ came out of the toun wiṫ theire peuple in fayre aray. And so they departed and rode togidre tyl they came into the landꝫ of Anssay / and on an euen lodged them thre leghes nygh

Geffray orders every man to arm, and after mass is said his host marches.

Anthony and Regnald join him with their people.

They arrive three leagues from Freibourg.

the toune of Frebourgh. Thenne called geffray al his bretheren and shewed to them that it behoued not them for theire honour to renne vpon no man but that they had defyed hym tofore / And they ansuerd that he said trouth. Wherfor they lete make a letre of

A letter of defiance is written to the Duke of Austria and the Earl of Freibourg.

deffyaunce of whiche the tenour foloweth. 'Regnauld by the grace of god kyng of Behayne, Anthony Duc of Lucembourgh, Odon Erle of Marche, Geffray lord of Lusynen, Raymond Erle of Forestz, and Theodoryk lord of Partenay. To the duc of Austeryche and to the Erle of Frebourgh, and to al theire alyaunces gretyng. And where we haue vnderstand that without ony lawfull quarell or raysonnable cause ye haue gretly hurt & dommaged bothe the land & peuple of our ryght welbeloued vncle the king of Anssay, the whiche as now ye haue besieged within his Castel of Pourreneru, And for as moch that we be therfor meued, & entende & purpose to entre in your land to dystroye you & al your peuple / consyderyng the noble ordre of knighthode that it shal not be by vs myunusshed. We perfor by our messager send you oure letres of deffyaunce, &c.' Thenne was delyuered the letre to a herault, which rode tyl he came to the siege of Pourreneru wher he presented the said letre to the Duc of Austrych, the whiche letres were redd in herying of al pe lordes there. Thenne said they of Allemayne the Deuell hath brought hem hyther, none other renoumme is now thrugh al the world but of them of Lusynen. Thenne retourned the herault toward the six bretheren, and to them shewed the manere how they of theire enemyes ost were mermylled. 'By my feyth they haue herd speke of vs from ferre, but now they shal see vs nere to them.' It is trouth that thenne geffray departed with fyue hundred men of armes from his ost & went and embusshed his people in a fyrst wod nygh the toun of Frebourgh. This

1 fol. 207.

and sent by a herald to the Duke of Austria at Pourreneru.

It is read in hearing of all the nobles there. They say that the devil has sent the devils from against them, and that only the three of the Lusignans is now spoken of. The herald returns to the brethren's camp.

Geffray takes five hundred men, and ambushes them in a wood near Freibourg.

doon he & ten knyghtes with hym, & a squyer of Lucembourgh that ryght wel coude speke Almayn tonge & knew al the Countre, went vpon a lytel mountayne to behold & see how he myght entre in the toun / but or he departed he said to them of his embusshe in this manere: 'Sires, I entende & purpose with the help of god to haue the toun of Frebourgh or to morne pryme at our playsire. Wherfore this nyght I shall departe with this X knyghtes and this esquyer, & at the spryng of the day I shal bygynne myn enterpryse / and but loke wel whan ye perceyue vs within the gate that fourthwith ye marche toward vs.' And thenne about thre of the clokk after mydnyght Geffray / his ten knyghtes and his guyde toke [1]eche of them a sack full of hey and bare it before them vpon tharsons of theire sadels. In this manere they went & came tofore the gate of Frebourgh, where as the said esquyer called the watche þat they myght entre, sayeng that they were frendes and that they had be all that nyght in fourrage. Thenne asked hym the porter what they had in thoo sackes, the squyer ansuerd there ben in gownes & suche thinges and suche ware / that we haue take vpon our enemyes and we bryng them hyther to selle them. The porter thenne supposyng they had be of Allemayne & theire frendes opend the gate & lete fall the bridge. Thenne entred geffray first of alle, and foorthwith drew his swerd and slew the porter / and in conclusyon they slough al them of the watche. Thenne was there the cry of them of the toun 'treson / treson' / And immedyatly marched thembusshe & came & entred in the toun. There was grete occisyon of them of the toun / but many of them escaped and fledd. And whan this was doon geffray lefte there foure hondred men of armes & retourned with the residue toward hys oost that he mete by the way toward the siege. Of this noble

He then takes ten knights and a squire, who speaks German, and knows the country, and goes to a hill to see how he could enter the town.

He tells his ambush that he hopes to have Freibourg in the morning,

and that when they see that he and his knights have entered the gate they are to march up to him.

[1] fol. 207 *b*.

Geffray and his knights take each a sack of hay, and ride to Freibourg.

The squire asks the watch to let them in, as they are friends.

The porter opens the gate, and lowers the bridge.

Geffray enters first, and slays the porter.

At length all the watch is slain.

The cry of treason is raised.

The ambush comes up, and many of the townspeople are killed.

Geffray leaves four hundred men-of-arms in charge of the town, and with those left marches back to his brethren,

who marvel at his valiant and subtle feat of arms.

enterpryse & valyaunt fayt the brethern of geffray and al theire peple were meruaylled / sayeng that geffray was the moost valyaunt knyght & subtyl in the faytte of armes that lyued at that day. And joyous & glad they marched courageously [1]toward theire enemyes. Anoon after came tydynges to the siege how Frebourgh was lost, wherof the Duc of Austeryche and in especial the Erle of Frebourgh were sorowful & wroth. 'By my feyth,' said thenne the Duc of Austerych, 'they be subtyl men of warre & moch to be doubted. Yf we loke not wel about vs they myght wel gyue vs a grete chak.' Wherfor they called theire Counseyll.

[1] fol. 208.

The Earl of Freibourg is sorrowful when he learns the news.

In this partye sayth thystorye that on the next day by the morowe the six bretheren herd masse, and after ordeyned þeire bataylles / geffray & his thre bretheren that were come *with* hym conduyted the first batayll, Anthony had the seconde, And regnauld the III^de^. And so marched forth in fayr ordyn*aunce*, and so wel renged that it was a fayre sight to beholde. And whan the sonne bygan to shewe bryght & clere they came vpon a lytel mountayn into the valey. Thenne were they percyued, and they of the siege bygan to cry alarme. Thenne armed hym euery man, And in theire best wyse came & renged them before the bataylles of the brethern. Thenne bygan the bataylles of bothe sydes to approche eche other / and *with* grete cryes of one part & of other medled & ranne *with* theire sperys vpon eche other. The grounde was there soone dyed rede *with* grete effusyon of blood. For Geffray with hys swerd smote at the lyfte syde & at the ryght syde vpon his enemyes & ouerthrew or sloughe all them that he recountred. And [2]the six baners of the bretheren rengid them togidre in fayre aray. There were the armes of Lusynen wel shewed and knowen in pycture, and also by pesaunt and horryble strokes, For the six bretheren perced the

After mass the brethren begin to march.

They are seen by the besiegers. The alarm is given, and they arm.

The hosts fight; the ground is soon red with blood.

[2] fol. 208 b.

prees & smote, cuttyng heedes, armes, & leghes of theire enemyes here & there, and made suche occysyon that it was meruaylle / Geffray recountred by aduenture the Duc of Austrych, on whom he descharged hys sword by such myght that he made hym to staker al astonyed, And thenne theodoryk that was nygh by, strak hym fourthwith and ouerthrew hym, and so incontynent he was take. And the noble and valyaunt Anthony dyde ryght valyauntly, For he toke the Erle Freburgh and made hym to delyuere his sword to hym, and after betoke hym to foure knightes. What shuld I make long compte . they of Allemayne were dyscomfyted and bygan to flee. Thenne came the kyng of Anssay out of the Fortres glad & joyous of the dyscomfyture of hys enemyes, and came to the brethern tentes where he thanked them moche of theire noble socour and gretly festyed them. And were brought there tofore hym the Duc of Austeryche & the Erle of Frebourgh with syx noble barons / and to hym said the bretheren, 'Sire, here ben your enemyes as prysonners, doo of them your playsyr.' And the kyng thanked them gretly & humbly. And this doon geffray and hys bretheren that were cōme [1]with hym toke leue of the kyng of Anssay, of theire brethern Anthony & Regnauld, and retourned in theire Countre. But thystory sayth that aftirward all the bretheren fonde eche other togidre at Mountferrat, where they held a noble feste for loue of Raymondyn theire fader, whiche was ryght glad and joyous to see there his children, but soone he toke leue of them and retourned in to hys hermytage. And thenne the six bretheren gaaf grette ryches & jewels to the chirche there, and after departed and toke leue eche one of other & retourned to theire Countrees, some by the see & other by land.

Here testyfyeth thistorye that as long as Raymondyn lyued, Geffray & theodoryk came there euery

The brethren slay many of their enemies.

Geffray encounters the Duke of Austria, and strikes him with his sword.

Theodoric, who was at hand, gives him another stroke, and overthrows him. The Duke is taken.

Anthony captures the Earl of Freibourg.

The Germans begin to flee.

The King of Anssay comes out of his fortress, and thanks the brethren,

and feasts them.

The Duke of Austria and the Earl of Freibourg are brought before him, and the brethren tell him to do what he pleases with them.

[1] fol. 209.

The brethren return home.

They afterwards meet at Mountserrat on a visit to their father, who is joyful at seeing them.

They give rich gifts to the church.

Geffray and Theodoric go to Raymondin every year;

but one day when they were about to journey to Mountserrat, a great serpent is seen on the battlements of Lusignan castle.

yere ones to see hym / but it befell on a day, as they were bothe at Lusynen redy for to go to Mountferrat, a meruaylloꝰ auenture, For there was seen vpon the batelments of the Castel a grete & horryble serpent the

It has a woman's voice.

which cryed with a femenyne voys, wherof all the peuple was abasshed / but wel they wyst that it was Melusyne / whan the two bretheren beheld it, teerys in habundaunce bygan to fall fro their eyen; For they

The people are abashed, and know it to be Melusine; the brothers weep.

knew wel that it was their moder. And whan the serpent sawe them wepe, she enclyned the heed toward them, casting suche an horryble cry & so doulorouꝰ that it semed them that herd it that the Fortres shuld

When the serpent sees them she inclines her head, and utters a dolorous cry.

Geffray and Theodoric go to Mountserrat and find their father dead.

haue fall. And anoone aftir the two brethern geffray & theodoryk departed toward Mountferrat where they came and fond their fader deed, whereof they

[1] fol. 209 b.

They mourn, and dress themselves and their men in black, and arrange their father's obsequies.

lamented & made grete sorow [1]and anoone clothed themself and al theire meyne in blak, and ordeyned for thobsequye of their fader. There came the kyng of aragon with many grete lordes that offred at the masse. And whan the seruyse was doon & the corps buryed honourably / geffray went & thanked the

The King of Aragon, and many lords, attend and hear mass.

After the burial Geffray thanks them.

kyng and his barons of thonour that they had doon to hys fader and to his brother & hym. /

A tomb is placed over Raymondin.

Thus as thystorye sheweth was thobsequye of Raymondyn deuoutly & nobly doon, and a ryche sepulture was made & sette vpon his graue, & trouth it is that Bernardon the neuew of Geffray was there that ryght wel coude behaue hym among the ladyes, in so moche that the quene of Aragon, that was there, desyred her lord to demande of Geffray what that yong gentylman was / and that / the kyng dide gladly. And thenne geffray ansuerd, 'Sire, he is my neuew, sone to the Erle of Marche my brother.' 'Certaynly, Geffray,' said the kyng, 'Wel I byleue that, For he is wel nourrytured and semeth wel to be of noble

extraction / and wete it wel that his contenaunce playseth vs ryght wel and so dooth lyke wyse to the quene / and veryly yf it playsed you to suffre hym abyde with vs in our Court we wold doo for hym that he & you bothe shuld be playsed therwith.' 'Sire,' said geffray, 'his fader hath another sone and two doughtirs, & syth it is your playsir to haue hym he is come hither with vs in a good heure & that playseth me wel.' And thenne the kyng thanked hym moche, and so dyde the quene. And wete it that Bernardon [1]Wedded aftirward, at thinstaunce & prayer of the kyng of Aragon, the doughtir of the lord Cabyeres that had none to hys heyre but her. And thenne the kyng and the quene, lordes & ladyes, toke theire leue of the two bretherne, the whiche after grete yeftes of ryches by them youen to the chirch toke leue of the pryour and hys monkes, and after departed and retourned to Lusynen, where as they called to them all the baronnye and there was thobsequye of Raymondyn honourably doon. And aftir Geffray shewed to his brother Odon, Erle of Marche, how & wherfore hys sone Bernardon was lefte with the kyng of Aragon, wherof he was glad. And thenne the bretheren and the barons toke leue of Geffray and retourned to theire countrees. And Geffray abode at Lusynen and dyde aftirward moche good; For he reedyfyed the noble Abay of Maylleses and dyde grete almesse to the poure peuple.

The Queen of Aragon takes Geffray's nephew to her court.

[1] fol. 210.

He afterwards marries the only child of the Lord of Cabyeres.

Geffray and Theodoric give great gifts to the church,

and return to Lusignan, where the obsequies of Raymondin are honourably done.

Geffray tells Odo that Bernardon had been left with the King of Aragon.

Geffray rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses.

Thystorye sayth that all the heyres of Raymondyn and Melusyne regned nobly, that is to wete Vryan in Cipre, Guyon in Armenye, Regnault in Behayne, Anthony in Lucembourgh, Odon in Marche, Raymonet in Forestz, Geffray in Lusynen, and Theodoryk in Partenay. And of theyre lynee are yssued them of Castel Regnault, They of Penbrough

The nine heirs of Raymondin and Melusine reign nobly,

and from them are issued the lords of Castle Regnault, of Pembroke,

of Cabyeres, and of Cardillac.

in Englandꝫ / they of Cabyeres in Aragon,[1] and they [2]Cardillak in Quercyn. /

Geffray governs his land well, and administers good justice.

Here after saith thistory that geffray ten yere af the decez of Raymondin his fader gouern ryght wel & kept goodꝫ justice in his landꝫ / but dury

For ten years he asks no accounts from his receivers, who

that long space of tym he asked of his receyuours no acomptes, but whan the [3]receyuours woldꝫ haue shew

[3] fol. 219 b.

theire acomptes he to them ansuerdꝫ in this maner

are told when they wish him to examine the accounts, that when justice is done, and his towns and castles are well provided for, and he has plenty of money, he is content.

'What acomptes woldꝫ ye shew to me? For as touchi myself I wyl none other acompte, but that justice wel and truly kept thrugh al my landꝫ, and my tour & Castels wel entreteyned, and goldꝫ & syluer to ho & kepe myn estate / trow ye that I wyl make a pale of goldꝫ / the stone that my lady my moder me g suffyseth me ryght wel.' And thenne hys stywardes

But his stewards ask, for their own safety, that he should give them quittance,

gouernours ansuerdꝫ, 'certaynly, my lord, it behoue wel to a prynce to here and see what he spendeth, lest ones in a yere / al were it but for the saluacy of hys receyuours in tyme to come and for to gy them quytaunce.'

Geffray looks at his accounts, and sees an item of ten sous that was paid yearly for the pommel of the highest tower of Lusignan Castle.

Here sayth thistory that geffray consentidꝫ to ho thacomptes of his receyuours. And it came an article where he vnderstodꝫ that [4]X. ß were pay euery yere only for the pommel of the hyest toure hys Fortresse of Lusynen / he anone rested there a asked why it was not made so strong that it myg

He is told that it is an annual rent.

laste many wynter. 'My lord,' ansuerd the receyuours 'it is rente annuell.' 'What say ye?' said geffray / hold not the fortresse but only of god my Creatour wel happy I were yf he held me quyte therfor of a my synnes / but telle me to whom ye paye.' 'Certaynly said they / 'we wot not' / 'How thenne,' said Geffray 'ye desyre of me quytaunce therof / so wyl I ha

Geffray declares he holds the castle direct from God, his Creator. His stewards tell Geffray that they do not know to whom they pay the ten sous.

[1] Fr. version gives in addition '*ceulx du Chassenage Dauphiné; ceulx de la Roche.*'

[2] Fr. *Candillat.*

[4] Fr. *dix soubz.*

quytaunce of hym that receyueth it of you / as rayson is / but by god ye shal not begyll me soo, for yf I may knowe who that taketh that annuel rente of me, he shal shew me good letres therof made / or he or ye shall yeld me ayen the said annuel rente fro the tyme that ye first alowed it in your acomptes [1]vnto now.' Thenne said the receyuours to Geffray in this manere: 'My lord, trouth it is / that six yere agoo after the doulorous departyng of my lady your moder from your fader / euery yere vpon the last day of August was sene a grete hand that toke the pommel of the said toure & pullyd it fro the toure by so grete strength that the rouf of the tour brak therwithal, and so it costed euery yere to make ayen xx[li] or xxx[2]li. thanne came a man to my lord your fader which he nor no man knew what he was, and counseylled hym that euery yere vpon the last day of August he shuld doo take a purse of hertis leeder and to be put in it xxx pieces of sylver, eche piece worth [3]foure penys, that made in summa ten sheling', And that this purse shuld be putte vpon the pommel of the said toure / and by that shuld the pommel abyde styl and not hurt nor dommaged / and euer syth tyl now it hath thus be doon.' And whan geffray vnderstood this meruayll he bygan to thinke, and long he was or he ansuerd or said ony word. /

Thystorye witnesseth that long thought Geffray vpon this faytte, and after he said in this manere: 'Sires, how wel that I byleue that it is as ye say, Neuertheles I charge you vpon peyne of deth that ye no more paye the said annuel, but at the last day of August bryng to me the purse and the money, For I wyl make the payement myself.' Thenne sent geffray for hys brother theodoryk in Partenay, and also for hys brother Raymond in Forestz, that they shuld be

Geffray says that he who takes the money must show letters patent proving his right,

or he will have to return it.

[1] fol. 211.

The receivers tell how six years after the departure of Melusine, and the last day of August every year,

a great hand pulled down the pommel of the tower, which cost twenty to thirty livres to repair.

Then an unknown man came and advised Raymondin to put thirty pieces of silver on the pommel the last of August each year,

and the tower would be uninjured.

Geffray marvels much at the story:

at length he forbids his steward to pay the rent again on pain of death;

but says on the day the money is to be given to him, and he will pay it himself.

Geffray sends for Raymondin and Theodoric,

[2] Fr. *livres.* [3] Fr. *quatre deniers.*

with hym at Lusynen the xxvi[th] day of August. And whan they were come he shewed [1]to them al the matere of the said annuel rente, and said that he neuer shuld suffre it to be payed; but that he first knew to whom and why the fortres of Lusynen was bound thus for to doo. And whan the last day of August came, Geffray herd hys masse and receyued ryght deuoutely the holy sacrement and immedyately armed hym, and bad the preste putte the stolle about his nek / and aftir toke the purse with the money therin. And þenne he bad his bretheren farwel, sayeng in this manere: 'I wyl departe and serche for hym that thus yerly taketh trybute of my fortresse / but I assure you yf he be no more of strength than I am I shall hastly byreue hym of hys trybute.' And so he yede vp to the vpermost stage of the donjon / and his bretheren and the barons taryed benethe in grete doubte and fere that geffray shuld be perysshed / but geffray was therof not agast / but loked long yf he coude see eny thing.

[1] fol. 211 b. and tells them the story, and that he is not going to pay again until he knows why the fortress is so bound.

On the last of August Geffray hears mass, and arms and takes the money.

He bids his brethren farewell,

and goes to the top of the donjon.

He waited from noon till three o'clock, but saw nothing.

All thus as thystory sheweth geffray rested there fro none to thre of the clok, that he ne herd nor sawe nothing. but anoone after he herd a grete noyse wherwith all the donjon shook / and as he loked toforo hym he perceyued a grete knyght armed of al poynts, that said to hym with a hye voys, 'Thou geffray, wilt thou denye my trybute that of ryght I ought to haue vpon the pommel of this toure of the which I was seasyd & enpocessid by thy fader?' 'Theune,' said Geffray, 'where are the letres? yf thou hast them, shew it how my fader was bound, and yf I see thou hast good ryght here is the money redy to paye the.' and theune the knyght answerd in this manere: 'I had neuer letres therof / but wel & truly haue I be payed and neuer denyed tyl now.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'al were it good debte and thy ryght to haue it yet shuldest thou haue grete peyne

Then he heard a great noise that shook the donjon, and he saw an armed knight who said, 'Geffray, wilt thou deny my trybute?'

Geffray asks for his letters, and says, 'If thou hast them, I will pay thee.' The knight answers he has none, but that he has always been paid regularly. Geffray tells the knight that even if it were a good debt he would find it difficult to get it.

to recouere it of me. And on the other part thou holdest me for thy subget & [1]woldest hold me in seruitude and thou hast therof nothing to shew. but what art thou that thus by the space of [2]XVI. yere hast thevely take this trybute? / I now deffye the by the myght of my sauyour and the I chalenge for myn herytage.' 'By my feyth,' said the knyght, 'doubte not therof but that I am a creature of god, and myn name shalt thou knowe tyme ynough.' And without eny more questyon eche of them recountred other with myghty & gret strokes. And what with that and with the stampyng of theire feet, the noyse was so grete that al þey that were benethe were abasshed, and supposed that the donjon shuld haue fall. Wherfor they wyst wel that geffray had somwhat to doo. And his bretheren shuld haue assysted hym, but geffray had them deffended so to do. And wete it wel whan the knyght of the tour fond Geffray so fyers & so strong, he putte his swerd vp in the shede and thrugh his paueys behind hym. And whan Geffray sawe hym that doo / he dyde lyke wyse with his sheld / but he with bothe his handes smote the knyght vpon the helmet with his swerd so myghtyly that he staker þerwith. And thenne the knight toke geffray in his armes / and with that geffray lete fall his swerd and wrestled with hym / and wete it wel ther was lytel fauour shewed on neyther part. And whan the knyght perceyued the purse about geffrays neck he supposed to haue had it from hym / but geffray kept hym therfro / sayeng / 'or thou haue purse or money it shal cost the the best blood in thy body / but for trouth I meruayll how thou mayst so long withstand me.' 'By my feyth,' said the knight, 'I haue more meruaylle how thou mayst withstand my strengthe / but to morowe shalt thou haue a new day with me,

[1] fol. 212.

but as he has nothing to show that it is due, he demands his name, and defies him.

The knight replies that he is a creature of God, and that Geffray will learn his name soon enough.

They fight, and make so great a noise that those below think the donjon will fall.

His brethren would have come to his help, but Geffray had forbidden them to do so.

The knight sheathes his sword, and puts his shield behind him.

Geffray strikes him on the helmet so that he staggers.

He wrestles with Geffray,

and tries to take the purse from him.

[2] Fr. *quatorze ou de xv. ans.*

[1] fol. 212 b. The knight appoints another struggle in a meadow by the river next morning on condition that Geffray comes alone. Geffray agrees, and the knight disappears.

For now the sonne is to his rest, [1]and thou shalt fynd me yonder vpon that medowe beyond the ryuere al redy armed to chalenge the and my ryght. But thou shalt assure me þat no personne shal passe the ryuere but thou.' 'By my feyth,' said geffray, 'I the assure no more ther shal not,' and with that he departed that geffray wyst not where he became. 'By my feyth,' sayd thenne geffray, 'here is apert messager, I haue grete meruaylle what this may be,' and so came he doun and brought with hym the knightes sheld that he had wonne.

Geffray comes down and brings the shield he had won in his right hand, and the purse in his left.

Thystorye witnesseth whan Geffray was come doun, hys sheld about his neck and the knyghtis paueys in his ryght hand that he had wonne / and in his other hand the purse with the money, hys bretheren and the baronnye þere were abasshed therwith, and asked hym whom he had fond. And thenne he said he had fond the moost valyaunt knyght that euer he dyde dedes of armes withal. And to them shewed al the maner of batayH & of theire couenaunt / and how he wold haue had the purse, and how he departed so sodaynly. and they bygan to lawhe, sayeng þat neuer tofore they herd of suche a thing. But whan they sawe geffrays helmet & al hys harneys so perysshed with strokes, they had no courage to lawhe, For they knew wel there was sore batayH. And on the next day erly geffray roos, and he & hys brethern herd masse & drank ones. And thenne armed hym at al pieces & mounted on horsbak / And his bretheren and þe barons yede to conueye hym to the ryuere, where he toke leue of them and passed ouer on the other syde of the ryuere. /

His brethren are abashed, and ask whom he had found.

He answers, the most valiant knight he had ever seen, and tells of his covenant, and of the sudden departure of the knight.

They laugh at the story, but when they look at Geffray's helmet they see there has been a great fight.

In the morning Geffray goes to the meadow.

Thystorye telleth that anoone Geffray fonde þe knyght and to hym said with a hye voys, 'Sire [2]knyght, be ye he that wyl take the trybute vpon my Fortresse?' And he ansuerde, 'ye by my feith.' And

He calls to the knight. 'Be ye he that will take tribute upon my fortress?'

[2] fol. 213. The knight says he is.

ryght forth said geffray, 'I chalenge the, wherfor deffende the.' And whan the knight vnderstod this, he sette the spere in the rest and geffray lyke wyse / and so eche of them recountred other / by force wherof they brak thaire speris to the hard fyst in many pieces. And whan they had thus manfully broken theire speris they drew out theire swerdes and smote eche other with grete & myghty strokes that the fyre sprang out of theire harneys, wherof the peple vpon the ryuere syde had grete meruayll & were al abasshed how that euer they might endure the grete strokes, For they left not one piece of harneys hool. And they faught fro the morow vnto thre of the Clok at aftirnone and neuer seaced. And so grete was the batayll that none [1][wist] which of them had the bettre. And thenne the knight bygan to say to geffray / 'here me now, I haue the wel assayd / and as touching the trybute I the quyte. And wete it wel that / that I haue doo, it hath be for the prouffyt of thy fader & of his sowle, For it is trouth that the pope enjoyned hym by way of penaunce for the forswerying that he had don to thy moder to founde a monastery, the whiche penaunce was not by hym obserued. but it is so yf thou wylt edyfye an hospital, and founde therin a preste to syng dayly for thy faders sowle / thy fortres fro this day fourthon shalbe quyte of ony trybute / how be it there shal be sene about the tour more meruaylles than in eny other place of þe world.' And geffray ansuerd, 'yf I knew for certayn that thou were of god I wold gladly [2]fullfull thy wyll in this byhalf.' / And he said he was. And thenne geffray said / 'be thou sure this shal be doon yf it playse god. but I pray the say me what thou art.' And the knyght ansuerd, 'Geffray, enquere no ferther, For as for this tyme thou mayst knowe no more / but only that I am

Geffray challenges him.

They break their spears,

and draw their swords, and give each other mighty strokes.

They fight till three o'clock, and no one can tell who has the better of the fight.

The knight tells Geffray that he forgives him the tribute.

What he had done was for the good of Geffray's father's soul, who was to have founded a monastery as penance, but had not done so.

If Geffray will build an hospital and endow a priest, he will quit him of his tribute altogether.

Geffray answers, that if he knew the knight were of God he would do his will.

He declares he is, and Geffray promises that his will shall be done.

[1] which *in MS.*

[2] fol. 213 *b.*

The knight disappears without telling his name.

[1]a Creature of god.' And therwith he vanysshed that geffray wyst not where he became / wherof meruaylled moche they that were by þe ryuere. And thenne came

Geffray crosses the river to his brethren. They ask where his enemy has gone. Geffray says that they came to an agreement, but he cannot tell where the knight has gone. Geffray hung the shield he wore in his hall. After Geffray had built the hospital the shield vanished. Here ends the history of the heirs of Lusignan.

geffray ouer the ryuer to his bretheren, whiche asked hym how he had doo and where hys party aduerse was become. And geffray to them sayd that they were acorded togidre, but where he was become he coude not telle. And thenne they retourned to Lusynen where geffray dide doo hange the paueys, that he had wonne vpon the knyght of the toure, in the myddes of his halle. Where as it heng tyl geffray had edyfyed the said hospytal, For thenn it vanysshed away that no man wyst where it became. And here fynyssheth the hystory of the heyres of Lusynen. but bycause that the kynges of Armanye ben yssued of that lynee, I wyl shewe herafter an auenture that befelle to a kyng of Armanye.

Long after the death of Guion of Armenia there was a wilful young king,

Thystorye sayth that long after the deces of kyng guyon of Armanye, Ther was a kinge of that lande yong and fayre, lecherous and folowyng his wyll.

who heard tell of a castle in Great Armenia, where dwelt the fairest lady in the world. She had a sparrowhawk, and to any noble knight who could watch it three days and nights without sleep, she gave whatever they asked, save herself.

The kyng vnderstode by the report of som knightes vyageours, that there was in the grete Armanye a Castel whereas was in the most fayre lady that men wyst at that tyme in al the world / the whiche lady had a [2]sperhauk / and to al knightes of noble extraction that thither went & coude watche the said sperhauk duryng the space of thre [3]dayes and thre nyghtes without slepe / the lady shuld appiere tofore them and gyue them suche worldly yeftes as they wold wysshe and were desyryng to haue, except only her self. This kyng thenne that was lusty and in his best age, and that vnderstode the renommee of thexcellent beaulte of the said lady / said he wold go thither / and that of the lady he shuld nothing take but herself. But wete it that in the said Castel might none entre but ones in

[3] fol. 214.

The young king resolved to go, and said he would take nothing but the lady's person.

[1] Fr. *de par Dieu.* [2] Fr. *espreuier.*

a yere / and that was the day tofore the vygille of saynt Johan / and the next day after saynt Johans day euery man must departe thens. Whan the said kyng was redy he departed & rode with noble company so long that he cam to the forsaid Castel at the day assygned, tofore the which he dide dresse vp a ryche pauyllon and there he souped, and aftir went to rest. And on the morne he roos and herd masse / and after that the masse was do, he drank ones, and syn armed hym and toke leue of them that were come with hym, which were sorowfull for his departing, For they trowed that neuer he shuld haue come ayen. And this doon the kyng yed toward the sperhauk in the Castel. /

People could only enter the castle on the vigil of St. John's, and the day after St. John's day all had to leave. The King with his company arrived on the right day, and set up a pavilion before the castle, where he supped and rested the night. In the morning he heard mass, drank, amused himself, and went to the castle.

Here saith thistory that whan the king was at thentree of the Castel, an old man al clothed in whyte cam ayenst hym, & asked hym who that had brought hym thither / and he ansuerd in this manere: 'I am come hither to seke thauenture and to haue the Custome of this Castel.' And the good old man said to hym / 'ye be ryght welcome, folow ye me, and I shal shew you the auenture that ye seke for.' Thenne yede the king aftir the old man / and gretly was he meruaylled of the grete & inestimable riches [1] that he sawe, within the place. And thene entred the old man into a noble hall rychely hanged, And aftir hym entred the kyng that perceyued in the myddes of the hall a long horne of a vnycorne that was fayre & whyte / and therupon was spred a grete cloth of gold wheron stod the sperhauk and a gloue of whyt sylk vnder his feet. Thenne said the old man to the kynge in this wyse: 'Sire, here ye may see thaduenture of this Castel / and with it sethen ye are so ferfoorth come ye must watche this sperhauk thre days and thre nyghtes without slep. And yf Fortune suffre you so to doo, wete it wel þat the noble lady of this ryall

An old man clothed in white asked at the entry why he had come.

The King said, 'To have the custom of the castle.' The old man welcomes him, and asks him to follow him into the castle. The King marvels at the riches he sees.

[1] fol. 214 *b*.

They come to a noble hall, and there the King sees the sparrow-hawk perched on a unicorn's horn.

The old man tells the King that if he watches the sparrow-hawk three days and three nights without sleep

the lady of the castle will appear on the fourth day, and grant what he desires most to have, except herself; if he asks to have her evil will befall him.

Castel shaH appiere tofore you on the foureth day, to whom ye shal aske that thing of the world whiche ye desyre moost to haue / except her body / and no doubte of but ye shal haue it / but wete it certaynly yf ye desire and aske to haue herself, euyl auenture shal faH to you therof.'

Cap. LX. How the king of Armanye watched the sperhauk.

[1] fol. 215.

[1] The forsaid old man aftir that he had declared and shewed to the kyng the manere of watching of the sperhauk, he departed fro the halle / and the kyng abode alone and had grete meruayH, what of the grete ryches þat he sawe there, as of a ryche table that was in the haH couered nobly with al maner deyntes of meetes. And that part he drew hym self & ete a lytel and drank of that lyked best & kept good dyete and made none exces, For wel he knewe that to moch meet & drynk causeth the body to be pesaunt & slepy. And to dryue fourth the tyme walked vp & doun the haH, taking grete playsyr of the grete noblesse that he sawe, [2] For there were ryche pictures where as were fygured many a noble hystory, and the wrytyng vndernethe that shewed the vnderstandyng of it. And emong other hystoryes was there fygured the noble hystory of kyng Elynas & queen Pressyne his wyf, and of their thre doughtirs, and how they closed their fader in the mountayne of Brombelyo in Northomberland / and how Pressyne theire moder punysshed them therfor / and al the circonstaunces of þeir faytes were there shewed in letres of gold fro þe bygynnyng vnto the ende.

The old man left the King alone in the hall.

There was a table covered with all manner of dainties,

but the King eat sparingly, so that he might be able to keep awake.

[2] fol. 215 b.

He spent his time looking at the pictures,

and among others, sees figured the history of King Elinas and Queen Pressine, and their three daughters, and how they were punished for shutting their father in Mount Brombelyo.

Grete playsir toke the king to rede & see the said hystoryes. And thus he watched lokyng here and there vnto the thirde day. And thene he per-

The King watches until the third day,

ceyued a right noble chambre, and sawe the doore al wyd open / and that part he went and entred in the chambre, and beheld þer many knyghtes armed fygured and rychely paynted on the walles, and vnder their feet were their names writon in letres of gold and of what lynee & countre they were / and aboue their heedes was writon in this manere: 'Vpon suche a tyme watched this knight in this Castel the noble sperhauk, but he slept / and therfore he most holde company with the lady of this place as long as he may lyue, and nothing worldly shal he wante of that his herto can desire saf only the departyng fro the place.' And there nygh were paynted thre sheldes in a rowe, and on them were fygured the armes of thre knyghtes and their names / their lynee & their Contre that they were of were writon vnderneth / and aboue the sheldes was shewed by wrytyng this that foloweth: 'In suche a yere watched our sperhauk this noble knight [1]wel and duely and departed with joye and had his yeft of vs with hym.' And so long beheld the king that he almost slept / but he anoon came out of the Chambre and sawe the sonne almost doun and passed fourth that nyght without slepe.

when he sees an open door. He enters the chamber, and sees the wall figured with many knights, and reads their names and the writing:

'This knight watched the sparrowhawk, but slept, and so must remain in the castle all his life.'

He also sees three shields painted with the arms of three knights,

and a writing: 'This knight watched our sparrowhawk, and departed joyfully with his gift.'

[1] fol. 216.

The King nearly fell asleep looking at the figures, but left the chamber, and kept awake all the night.

Thenne was he glad whan he perceyued þe day. And foorthwith at the rysyng of the sonne cam the lady of the Castel in so noble and so ryche aray that the kyng had grete meruayll therof / and what of her ryches as of her excellent beaute, he was gretly abasshed. And thenne the lady dide her obeyssaunce, sayeng in this manere: 'Noble kyng of Armanye, ye be ryght welcome. For certaynly ye haue wel & valyauntly endeuoired you. now aske of me what yefte that so euer playse you worldly and raysounable, and ye shal haue it without ony taryeng.' Thenne ansuerd the king that right sore was esprysed of the loue of her, 'By my feyth, gracyous & noble lady, I

At sunrise the lady of the castle comes to the King,

and welcomes him, and asks him to name what gift he would have.

The King answers,

'Neither silver nor gold, nor town nor castle, but you, my beloved lady, to be my wife.'

aske neyther gold nor sylu*er*, Cyte, toun, nor Castel, For thanked be god I haue of al worldly ryches ynough / but yf it playse you, my ryht dere & right entierly beloued lady, I wyl haue you to my wyf.' And whan

The lady is wroth at his request,

the lady vnderstod this she was wroth, and by grete yre she said to hym in this wyse: 'Ha, thou grete foole,

and replies that he cannot have her.

For nought hast thou asked my body, For thou mayst not by no wyse haue it.' Thenne said the king to the lady, 'Wel I haue, to myn aduys, endeuoired me.

The King presses his suit,

Wherfor, noble lady, be you fauourable to me and haue regard to the custome of this castel.' 'By my feyth,' ansuerd the lady, 'as touching thaduenture & custome

but she tells him to ask a reasonable gift,

of this Castel, I wyl that it be obs*er*ued & kept / but aske of me yeft raysounable / and no doubte [1]of but thou shalt haue it.' 'By my feyth, noble lady, I desyre

[1] fol. 216 b.

The King declares he will have nothing but herself.

none other thing erthly nor none other I shal not aske nor take of you, but only yo*ur* gracyous body.' 'Ha,

The Queen tells him that unless he changes his purpose evil hap will fall on him and his posterity;

fole, fole,' said the*nne* the lady, 'euyl myschea*un*ce shal faH on the, yf thou soone chaungest not thy purpos, and so it shal to al thin heyres & successours aftir þe / though they be not culpable therof.' And

but the King declares that his heart is ravished with her beauty, and that he will have nothing but her.

the kyng her ansuerd, 'It is for nought, For my herte is rauysshed of your beaute, and only fedde *with* your syght. And therfore your body wyl I haue and none other thing erthly.' /

Cap. LXI. How the kyng wold haue rauysshed by force the lady, but she vanysshed away.

The lady becomes right wroth,

Whan thenne the lady sawe that the kyng chaunged not his purpos, she was ryght wroth, and to hym said in this manyere: 'Thou folyssh kyng,

and tells him that he will lose his gest,

now shalt thou lese the syght of me, & shalt fayH of thy yefte, & hast putte thyself in aventure to abyde within for ev*er* in grete payne & tourment, bycause that

thou art yssued of the lynee of kyng guyon that was sone to Melusyne my sustir, and I am his ante / and thou art so nygh of my blood and kynred that though I wold̄ be consentyng to thy wyH holy Chirch̄ wold neuer suffre it.' And aftir she reherced & shewed to hym al that is tofore said in the [1]Chapter of Elynas and Pressyne, and also fro hed to heed̄ all the heyres of Lusynen and their fayttes. And after she said to hym / 'grete myschief shal happe to the & vpon thyn heyres successours [2]after the, and that shal endure vnto the ix lynee, For they shal faH in decaye, & exilled fro their contrees & fro their honour, wherfor departe lightly hens, For here mayst thou no lenger abyde.' The kyng thenne vnderstod̄ wel the lady. but neyper for her wordes, nor for fere that ought shuld hym myspaH, he neuer chaunged his folysh wyH & vnhappy purpos, but wold haue take the lady by manere of vyolens and by force. but soone Melyor vanysshed̄ away that he wyst neuer where she was become.

because she is the aunt of King Guion his ancestor, and that they are too near of kin to marry, and even if she consented, Holy Church would forbid their union.

Then she tells the history of Elinas and Pressine, and of the heirs of Lusignan,

and foretells of the decay of his

[2] fol. 217.

line, and of their exile from their lands.

She advises him to leave the castle.

The King persists and tries to take her by force, but Melior vanishes he knows not where.

Cap. LXII. How the king was bete & ouerthrawen and knew not of whom.

And immediatly after the departyng of Melyor there feH vpon the kyng gret & pesaunt strokes, as thykk as rayn falleth fro the skye. Wherof he was al to brusid̄ in euery part of his body, and was drawen by the feet fro the halle vnto the barrers without the Castel. And wete it that he neuer saw none of them that so cruelly seruyd hym. And as soone as he myght he stode vpon his feet, cursyng a thousand̄ tymes hym that first brought hym tydynges of this auenture, and the heure also that euer he cam thither. And thenne he went toward his meyne that saw his harneys al to broken and perysshed, and demanded of

The King is thrashed so hard that he is bruised in every part of his body, and is pulled by the feet out of the castle.

He cannot see who it is that serves him so.

He rises and curses the man that brought him the news of the adventure,

and returns to his men,

[1] Cap. I. page 6, *et seq.*

who ask if he has been fighting? He tells them he is hurt, but that he has had no fight because he could not see who struck him.

hym in this manere: 'My lord, vs semeth that ye be sore hurt, haue ye had batayH there as ye haue be?' And he answerd, 'I am somwhat hurt / but no batayH I haue not had / but so ferre I knowe that shrewedly I haue be festyed[1] [2]how wel I perceyued no body / but I assure you I felt wel the strokes, and wete it wel I reuenged me not / and thus haue I had no batayH / For he that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayH. but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect.' /

[2] fol. 217 b.

The King returns home,

Anoone aftir the king & his peuple departed and entred in the see and sailled toward his countre, euer thinking vpon this that Melyor had said to hym, and doubted moche to haue lost his good fortune as he had. For wete it wel that neuer aftir this faytte he had no hertly joye and regned long tyme, but fro day to day feH in decaye by dyuerse maners. And wete it wel that his heyres after his decesse were not fortunat, but vnhappe in al their actes. Here shal I leue to speke of the king of Armanye. For ynough it is knowen that they came of the noble lynee of the king Elynas of Albanye & of Lusynen. vnto this thursday vii day of August vpon the whiche was ended this present volume. The yere of our lord a thousand [ccc] [3]lxxx & foureteen./

but he had no joy after this adventure, though he reigned a long time. His heirs were unlucky.

This volume was ended on Thursday, Aug. 7th, 1394.

Now have I shewed to you after the very Cronykles and true history how the noble Fortresse of Lusynen in Poytou was edyfyed & made / and of the noble yssue & lynee of the foundatours therof, on whos sowles god haue mercy / the whiche fortresse of Lusynen is a now come but of late, by manere of Conqueste, into the handes of the ryght noble & myghty

I have told the story of Lusignan Castle, and of its builders, and of their issue, from the true chronicles.

It has lately been conquered by the Duke of Berry,

[1] Fr. *batu*.

[3] Note to C. Brunet's Fr. Ed., page 420. *Le texte porte: mil iiij vingz et xiiij. C'est évidemment une erreur puisque Jean d'Arras dit, dès les premières pages, qu'il a commencé cette histoire en* 1387. In the Harl. MS. of Melusine the date is given as '*le VIIe jour d'aoust l'an de grace Mil iiiC iiiiXX et XIII.*'

prynce my right redoubted lord Johan sone to the kyng of Fraunce, Duc of Berry, Auuergne, &c., by whos commandement I haue endeuoired me after my rude and symple entendement to collige & gadre emongt many gestes & true Cronykles the trouth of thystory [1] byfore specyfyed. And wete it for trouth that oftentymes I haue herd my said lord say that a knyght called Scrsuell that held the said Fortres as lieuftenaunt & Captayne there for the kyng of England / at that tyme that my said lord had besieged / said to hym after the reducyon of the Fortres / that thre dayes tofore, tofore that he gaf it vp / he lyeng in hys bed with a woman hys concubine named Alexaundryne / perceyued a grete & horryble serpent in the myddes of the Chambre, wherof he was gretly abasshed & sore agast / and wold haue take the swerd to haue descharged it vpon the serpent / but Alexaundryne said thenne to hym in this manyere: 'Ha, valyaunt Sersuel, how ofte haue I sene your mortal enemyes tofore your presence that neuer ye were aferd, and now for a serpent of femenyne nature ye shake for fere. Wete it for trouth that this serpent is the lady of this place & she that edyfyed it / she shal by no manere wyse hurt nor dommage you / but so ferre I vnderstand by her apparysshing that nedes ye shal hastly delyuere & gyue vp this Fortres to the Duc of Berry' / And morouer said the said Sersuell to my said lord that hys Concubyne fered nothing the serpent / but that he was neuer in his dayes so aferd. And that he sawe thenne the said serpent tourned in to a fourme of a woman clothed in a gowne of Cours cloth & gyrded with a grete corde vndernethe the pappes of her / and soone after tourned herself in the figure of a serpent and so vanysshed away.

son of the King of France, at whose command I have gathered this history.

[1] fol. 218.

I have often heard my lord tell a story of a knight named Sersuell, who was lieutenant of the castle for the King of England.

Three days before he gave it up he was in bed with his concubine, and saw a great serpent in his chamber, which frightened him.
He took his sword to slay it;

but his lady said that the serpent was the lady of the place, and her appearance proved that he would soon have to give up the castle.

The serpent then turned into a woman, clothed in a coarse gown, with a great cord round her. Then she became a serpent again and vanished.

Also there was a man named godart dwellyng at that tyme within the said Fortresse, whiche

Godart swore to my lord on the gospels that he had often seen

affermed for a trouth / and sware to my forsaid lord vpon the holy euaungilles that many tyme he had sene vpon the walles of the fortres [1]the said serpent, and that he had passed oftymes nygh her without receyuyng of ony harme.

[1] fol. 218 b.

the serpent on the walls of the fortress, and that he had passed her without harm.

Then another also called Yuon of Walles sware his feyth vnto my said lord that thre dayes tofore the reducyon of the said Fortresse made by the said SersueH into the handes of my said lord, þat he sawe an horryble grete serpent vpon the batelments of the donjon of the said Castel of Lusynen. And many other also had the vision and syght of her./[2]

Ivon of Wales swore that three days before the surrender of the castle by Servaill, he saw a great serpent on the donjon of the castle, and that many others saw her.

And where it is soo that at thinstaunce requeste and prayer of my said lord haue be examyned many prynces[3] and dyuerse oþer for the makyng & compilacion of this present hystorye vpon the said matere. And also I haue putte my self to myn vtermost power to rede & loke ouer the Cronykles & many bokes of auncyent hystoryes, to thende that I might knowe the trouth of the forsaid matere. Therfore yf I haue wryton or shewed ony thing that to som semeth neyther possible to be nor credible, I beseche them to pardonne me. For as I fele & vnderstand by the Auctours of gramaire & phylosophye they repute and hold this present hystorye for a true Cronykle & thinges of the fayry. And who that saith the contrary / I say the secret jugements of god and his punyssh-

I have done my utmost to know the truth of the matter,

and if I have written what appears to some incredible, I beg for pardon.

Some authors hold this to be a true chronicle of fairies.

To those who object, I say the judgments and

[2] Fr. adds: *Et encore plus avant y a ung chevalier poiterin, nommé messire Percheval de Coulongne, qui fut chambellain du bon roy de Chippre, avec le roy, la serpente s'estoit apparue à icelluy roy, comme celluy roy luy avoit dit en ceste manière parlant a luy: Percheval, je me doubte trop! Pour quoy, monseigneur? dist le chevalier. Par ma foy, dist le roy, pour ce que j'ay veu la serpente de Lusignen qui c'est apparue à moy: si me doubte qui ne me advienne aulcune perte dedens brief temps, ou à Perrin mon filz; car ainsi apparut-elle quant aulcuns des hoirs de Lusignen doibvent morir. Et jura messire Percheval que dedens le tiers jour aprez, la dure adventure que chascun scet bien advint.*

[3] Harl. MS. reads prouues = proofs.

ments are inuysible & impossible to be vnderstand or knowe by the humanyte of man./ For the vnderstanding of humayne Creature is to rude to vnderstande the spyce espirytuel, & may not wel comprehend what it is / but as ferre as the wylle [1]of god wyl suffre hym. For there is found in many hystoryes Fayries that haue be maryed & had many children / but how this may be the humayn creature may not conceyue. For these poynts and suche other god hath reteyned þem in his secrets. And the more that the personne is of rude entendement the ferther is he fro knowlege of it. And he that is replet of scyence naturel, the rather shall haue affection to byleue it. Notwithstandyng no creature humayn may not obteyne the secrets of god./ how be it saint paule saith in hys epystles to the Rommayns, 'that al thinges ben knowen by humayn Creature' / but the glose reserueth & excepteth the secrets of god. For the kynde of man is to vnderstand the ferther that he trauaylleth in reaumes and Countrees/ the greter knowleche hath he of euery thinge / than he that resteth in his owne Countre and neuer remevyth. And semblable wyse this historye is more credible for as moche as it is not auctorised by one man only / but also by many noble Clerkes. Now of this proces I wyl make no ferther mencion / but humbly I beseche you and alle them þat shall here or rede this hystorye / that yf there be ony thing that be nuyouse or displaysaunt to you / wyl pardonne me & hold me escusid. For yf a man dooth as wel as he can / he ought to be accepted. For in som cas the good wylle of a man is accepted for the dede./ And here I, Johan of Aras, ende the hystorye of Lusynen / [2]beseching god of his hygh mercy to gyue to þem that be passed fro this mortall world hys eternall glorye / and to them that be lyuyng, prosperous and blessidfull endyng./

[Here fynyssheth the noble hystorye of Melusyne.]

punishments of God are not to be understood by man.

[1] fol. 219.

There are many histories of Fairies that have married, and had children. No man can understand how this can be.

God has kept these things secret.

Ignorant people cannot believe such things.

Those who are learned can more readily do so, but no man can fathom the secrets of God.

The more men travel the more they learn.

This story is made more credible by the number of clerks who vouch for it.

I ask forgiveness of my readers for anything tiresome or displeasing I may have written.

If a man does as well as he can he ought to be accepted.

I, John of Arras, end the history of Lusignan,

[2] fol. 219 b. asking God to give those who have left this world His eternal glory, and to the living a blessed ending.

NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE 1, line 19. In the Catalogue of the Duke of Berry's Library, published in Le Labourer's *Histoire de Charles VI.*, there is a volume relating to the subject of this romance, 'Vn liure de l'Histoire de Lezignem, escrit en Latin, de lettre de fourme, bien historié & au commencement du second fueillet apres la premiere Histoire, a escrit, *sola sed tantum*, couuert de drap de damas rouge, formant à deux fermoirs de laiton, & tixus de soye.' Jean d'Arras declares in several places that the romance is founded on old Chronicles; see end of Cap. I.

p. 2, l. 11. Text should read: 'the Wednesday before St. Clement's Day.' The 'before' has been accidentally omitted by the translator or the transcriber. The French version reads: 'le mercredi devant la Saint Clement en yver.'

p. 2, l. 18. This heading seems out of place.

p. 3, l. 9. Is the reference to Romans, Cap. I, verse 20?:—'For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world, are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made: his eternal power also and divinity: so that they are inexcusable.'

p. 3, l. 33. He appears to refer to local traditions, of which he makes some use; see, for example, the description of Melusine's appearances in his own time, on pages 369 and 370.

p. 4, l. 17. Probably Gervaise of Tilbury (fl. 13th century), a nephew of King Henry II. of England; he was appointed Marshal of Arles by the Emperor Otto IV. He was a voluminous writer. Warton says, in the *History of English Poetry*, § XXIV, that his *Otia Imperialia* was translated into French by Jean de Guerre between 1412 and 1427. His treatise is full of the most extraordinary marvels. In the British Museum MS., leaf 85, he tells of men being born without heads, having their eyes and mouths in their breasts. He is very full on lamia and dragons, and all kinds of monstrosities. He says that there have been cases in Italy of men being turned into beasts by eating cheese given them in taverns by enchantresses. Gervaise dedicated his *Description of the World* to Otto IV.

p. 4, l. 32. French text reads: 'les ungz qu'ilz ne verroient jamais l'ung l'aultre; que le samedi ilz ne les enquerroient que elles seroient devenues en aulcunes manieres; les autres que se elles avoient enfans, que leurs maris ne les verroient jamais en leurs gessines.'

p. 5, l. 21. He may be referring to the tales of Marco Polo, a copy of whose travels Jean d'Arras had access to in the Duke of Berry's collection.

p. 5, l. 24. The following appears to be the passage in *Gervaise of Tilbury* referred to: 'Scio equidem jampridem relatum veridica narratione, quod in Aquensi provincia paucis ab Aquis milliaribus est castrum

Russetum, quod vallem Trezensem sub se missam respicit. Hujus castri Dominus, Raimundus nomine, cum uno aliquo die solus in equo vectaretur juxta decursum interluentis Laris fluvii, ex improviso occurrit domina nulli decore secunda, in palafredo phalerato, vestibus et apparatu pretiosis, eumque salutata a milite ipsum ex nomine resalutasset, ille ab ignota se nominatum audiens, miratur et nihilominus illam, ut moris est, coepit verbis lascivis interpellare, ut ei consentiat. Cui illa opponit, hoc praeter conjugalem copulam nulli licere verum si in ejus nuptias consentiat, ipsius possit optatis frui complexibus. Quid ultra? acquiescet conditionibus miles in nuptiis: at illa replicat, illum summa temporalium felicitate ex ejus commansione fruiturum, dum ipsam nudam non viderit; verum ut ipsam nudam conspexerit, omni felicitate spoliandum asserit et vix ei vitam miseram servandam esse praeponit. Pendet dubiusne timeret optaretne mori? tandem in nuptias consentit et conditionem admittit. Inflammatus et aestuans omnem conditionem facilem arbitratur, qua cupitum thorum possit obtinere. Consentiunt in matrimonium et contrahunt, et crescente militis felicitate, in breve favore et hominum gratia, temporalium copia et corporis strenuitate in tantum excrevit, quod pares excessit et paucis proceribus et illustribus secundus invenitur. Hominibus amabilis, apud omnes gratiosus, liberalitatem discreta largitate atque urbanitate condiebat, filiis et filiabus summae pulchritudinis procreatis. Cum post longa tempora uno die domina, ut assolent, in thalamo balnearet, Raimundus miles, a venatu rediens et aucupatu, perdicibus aliisque carnibus ferinis dominam exeniat, et dum parantur cibaria, necio quo motu vel spiritu militi venit in mentem, quod nudam videat dominam balneantem, constituens in animo siquidem, quod ex inhibita nuditatis conspectione potuit ex fatis esse periculum, temporis diturnitate tamque diuturnae commansionis longinquitate evanuisse. Affectum maritus exposuit uxori, quae diuturnam felicitatem ex conditione servata objicit et infelicitatem minatur secuturam, si contemnatur. Tandem praeceps in praecipitium miles, non temperatur interminatione poenae neque precibus flectitur, ut a stulto proposito desistens suae consulat utilitate:

"tangunt animum motusque metusque
et timet eventus indignaturque timere."

Quid moror? crepto linteo, quo balneum operitur, miles ut uxorem nudam videat, accedit, statimque domina in serpentem conversa, misso sub aqua balnei capite, disparuit, nunquam visa imposterum nec audita, nisi quandoque de nocte, cum ad infantulos suos visitandos venichat, nutricibus audientibus, sed ab ejus aspectu semper arctatis. Sane miles pro maxima parte felicitate ac gratia minoratus, filiam illius dominae cuidam nostro affini ex nobilibus Provinciae oriundo postea dedit in uxorem, quae inter coaetaneas et confines suas plurimum extitit gratiosa et cujus jam successio ad nos usque pervenit.' Prima Decisio XV Otia Imperialia.

The theories of Paracelsus people rivers, &c., with Melusinæ. They have no spiritual principle, but can obtain one by entering into a union with man: 'Melusinæ & meliorae filiæ regiæ quondam propter peccata desperabundæ, fuerunt a Sathana raptæ, & in spectra transmutatæ, spiritus malignos, lemures horribiles, & in immania monstra. Vivere putantur absque anima rationali & in brutali solum corpore phantastico, nutriri elementis, atque una cum istis in extremo die judicii transiturae, nisi cum aliquo homine forte fortuna matrimonium contrahant, tum demum, ut ipse, naturali morte interire posse, ut matrimonio naturaliter vivere virtute hujus unionis. Ejusdem status atque generis plura spectra haberi creditur

in desertis, in sylvis, ruinis, monumentis, arcibus vacuis, & in extremis littoribus maris. Vulgo maledicti vacantur homines, sed proprio nomine spectra vocantur, atque diabolorum sancti, cum quibus versantur cacodæmones, suas illusiones & portenta perficiunt.'—W. Johnson's *Lexicon Chymicum* [to the writings of Paracelsus], London 1652.

p. 5, l. 24. The name of Regnald does not occur in the list of the kings of Bohemia.

p. 5, l. 25. The Lusignans do not appear to have had any connection with Luxembourg.

p. 5, l. 28. The name Theodoric does not occur on the roll of the lords of Partenay-l'archevêque. The house was founded, according to French genealogists, by William, the son of Gilles Lusignan (fl. 1100—1130). Valence, daughter of Geoffray with the Great Tooth, married Hugh III. of Partenay-l'archevêque.

p. 7, l. 15. couered, Fr. *couvertement.*

p. 11, l. 3. Fr. 'je ne pense en nul cas deshoneste.'

p. 12, l. 26. There is a romance entitled 'L'Histoire du noble & vaillant Roy, Florimont fils du noble Mataquas duc d'Albanie.' Florimont is the son of Mataquas, sire of Duras and Duke of Albany. His mother was Edozie or Flory, daughter of Fragus, King of Persia. It is bound up with a Rouen edition of Melusine. Warton notices a romance of 'Florimont et Passeroze,' *History of English Poetry*, § XII, note.

p. 12, l. 32. In Coudrette's version of Melusine, Aualon is called fairy land.

p. 13, l. 7. In some editions of the French version Ybernie is substituted for Albany, others have Albany as here.

p. 14, l. 8. Fr. ver. adds 'filles' after 'lawfull.'

p. 15, l. 11. They should be allowed to leave Aualon.

p. 15, l. 32. One of Melior's adventures is described at page 362.

p. 16, l. 4. The eve of St. John's Day comes on June 23. Many curious customs used to be observed on the vigil of St. John. In London the Watch was paraded through the city. In Paris a number of cats and a fox were burnt in the Place de Grève. In Ireland the people used to light fires on the hill tops, and according to Rev. Donald McQueen, they danced round them, and then made their children and cattle walk through the fires. McQueen thinks the custom a relic of sun-worship.—Brand's *Antiquities.*

p. 16, l. 13. There is a mountain named Guygo in Lesser Armenia. No account of Palatine is given in this romance. In Coudrette's versification of the romance there is briefly narrated her story, l. 5704, *et seq.* Palatine's place of abode is there given as Arragon.

p. 17, l. 3. Geoffray with the Great Tooth discovers the tomb, see page 327.

p. 17, l. 24. The Castle of Lusignan was founded in the tenth century by Hugues II., known as the *Bien Aimé.* It had many masters, and was a formidable stronghold. It was razed in 1569, after its capture from the Hugenôts. Little trace of it now remains.

p. 17, l. 27. 'fell at debate'; translates *eut riot.*

p. 17, l. 32. Fountains are usually made the scenes of the fairy love-making. Elinas meets Pressine at 'a moche fayre fontayne'; Henry of

Leon, father of Raymondin, meets the 'fayr lady to whom he told all his Fortune,' 'nighe by a fontain,' &c.

p. 18, l. 7. Jean d'Arras was fond of etymology; this appears a reasonable guess.

p. 19, l. 14. The 1478 edition makes the third chapter begin here. The edition published at Rouen by Pierre Mulot begins Cap. III at the same place as our text.

p. 21, l. 7. 'h. . . . s.'], in Fr. *sur le col.*

p. 31, l. 35. Melusine protests throughout that 'she is of god.' See pages 316 and 320.

p. 32, l. 32. Compare the promise exacted by Pressine, Melusine's mother, page 11.

p. 33, l. 12. 'hys doughtir,' *i. e.* Earl Emery's daughter.

p. 33, l. 25. Melusine has a store of magic rings:

1. Makes the holder proof against death from wounds.
2. Gives victory in war, in law, &c., to the holder.
3. Gives victory, and protects against enchantments and poison, p. 110, l. 20.
4. Gives victory so long as the wearer fights in a good cause, p. 191, l. 11; p. 319, l. 10.

Magic rings appear to have come from the East. They figure in many Arabian tales. In classical literature we have several Magic ring stories, which probably have been taken from Semitic sources. Plato's story of the ring of Gyges, that made the bearer invisible, is well known. Solomon had a ring that gave him command over the genii. It was made of copper and iron, and had the sacred name of the deity engraved on it. Solomon sealed his orders to the refractory genii with the iron part, those to the good genii were sealed with the copper portion. Once when Solomon was bathing, and had taken the ring from his finger, it was stolen by a wicked genie. Solomon was so concerned about the loss that he was unable to attend to affairs of state. It was afterwards recovered from the stomach of a fish that was caught for the king's table.

Petrarch relates that Charlemagne became infatuated with a woman of low degree to such an extent that he neglected the affairs of state, and even the care of his person. She fell ill and died, but her death did not break the charm: Charlemagne would not allow her corpse to be buried. One day Archbishop Turpin examined the body, and found a ring in her mouth, which he took possession of; Charlemagne then came under the influence of the Archbishop. The prelate, tired of the king's special attentions, and afraid that the ring might fall into the hands of some unworthy person, so he threw it into a lake near the town. From that time Charlemagne refused to quit Aix-la-Chapelle He built a palace and a monastery there, and in his will directed his successors to be crowned at Aix.—*Epistolæ familiares*, Lib. I, Cap. 3.

p. 35, l. 33. Jean d'Arras was evidently of the opinion of Rabelais, that

'Mieulx est de ris que de larmes escrire,
Pour ce que rire est le propre de l'homme.'

p. 42, l. 4. Note that the Earl is unable to give land without the consent of his barons.

p. 42, l. 19. Brunet reads 'Montiers'; the Rouen edition has 'l'abbaye demonstiers.'

p. 45, l. 13. There is an 'onde limpide' near the Forest of Coulom-

byers, known as the 'Fontaine-des-Fees.'—*Annales de la Société Royal Academique de Nantes*, 1831, p. 405.

p. 48, l. 26. The power of love is a favourite theme of John of Arras. See 122, 135, 164, &c. The book was written for the amusement of the Duchess of Bar. This may account for the elaborate treatment of love affairs, dress, &c., in the book.

p. 54, l. 14. Coudrette makes the wine-list an extensive affair. See *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., p. 39:

'With wine of Angoy, and als of Rochel tho,
Which would eschawfe the braines appetite,
Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,
Which iawne [yellow] colour applied noght vnto;
Clarre Romain, with doucet Ypocras
Thorught al the hal rynnynge hye and bas.
Wine of Tourisnz, and also of Digon,
Wine of Aucerre, of seint Jougon also;
Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;
Wine of Estables, of Uiart also;
After thaim cam the wyne,
Wine of Seint Pursain, and of Ris hys brood.
Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise,
The nouel osey of Dingenon.'

p. 55, l. 3. The magic ring that Melusine gave Raymondin has made him invincible. See p. 33.

p. 59, l. 9. The custom of the newly-wedded couple making presents to the wedding guests, instead of receiving them, resembles what takes place in India in our time, where the parents of the bride make gifts to those who attend the marriage ceremony.

p. 63, l. 3. Fr. reads: 'Et avec tout ce il y a forte braies entaillées de mesmes la roche.'

p. 64. l. 13. There are a number of suggested etymologies of the name Melusine, none of them satisfactory.

Jean Bouchet says it is a combination of Melle and Lusignan. She was lady of Melle, and her husband was lord of Lusignan. Bouchet says that this was the accepted etymology in his time (16th century). Baron Dupin adopts this etymology. It appears, however, that women did not add to their name the name of their husband's seignory, nor was it usual for women to bear the name of their own manors.

Bouchet thought the tail signified that Melusine was an adultress. N. Chorier imagined that it symbolized her prudence!

Salverte says that the name is a combination of Mere and Lusignan. He makes its signification to be 'Mother of the Lusignans.' The name is spelt Merlusine by Brantôme, and the popular pronunciation is Merlusine.

Grimm derives it from Meri menni, a syren, or scylla.

Littré derives it from Melus, a Celtic word meaning agreeable.

Bullet says it is made up of Me = half, Ilysowen (pronounced lusen) = serpent: the name thus signifies half serpent.

A writer in the *Nouvelle Biographie Générale*, thinks that Melusigne is an Anagram of Leusignem. I have not observed any case in which the family name is spelt in this manner, and I am not aware that the fashion of Anagram-making was much practised in the 14th century

M. de Freminville, in *Antiq. de la Bretagne, Côtes du-Nord*, p. 23, derives Melusine from morlusein = vapour or sea fog.

In Quaritch's catalogue, 1887 (vol. I, p. 90) it is stated that the name comes from a Breton word signifying 'the woman with a tail,' mer' hlostek, which the writer believes was at one time pronounced something like Merlusec.

Mascurat surmises that Melusine was a lady who used a seal engraved with a syren, and from that was at last imagined to be a mermaid herself.

p. 65, l. 3. The following list of Melusine's children shows the blemishes that each of them bore:

1. Urian: A broad face, ears like the handles of a vannus, and one eye red and the other blue.
2. Odon: One ear greater, without comparison, than the other.
3. Guion: One eye higher than the other.
4. Anthony: Had on the cheek a lion's foot (grif de lyon).
5. Regnald: Had only one eye.
6. Geoffray: Had a great tooth, which protruded more than an inch out of his mouth.
7. Froimond: Had a mole (tache velue) or tuft of hair on his nose.
8. Horrible: Had three eyes—one in his forehead.
9. Raymond: Blemish not recorded.
10. Theodoryk: Blemish not recorded.

p. 65, l. 3. 'handlyng of a fan' translates 'manilles d'ung van.'

p. 65, l. 11. Fr. reads: 'Guerende et Penicense.'

p. 66, l. 17. Fr.: 'mal enformé.'

p. 65, l. 12. Hugues IV. of Lusignan had a dispute with Joscelin, lord of Parthenay, about some lands that the latter had usurped. The dispute descended to the heirs of Joscelin. Hugues appealed to his suzerain William, Count of Poitiers. The count sided with the lord of Parthenay, and Hugues' stronghold, the Castle of Lusignan, was burnt down. *B. Ledain* in *La Gatine.*

The Lusignans possessed the domain of Porhoët, in Brittany, from the 13th century. Phillipe le Bel took it from Guy, Count of Marche and Angoulême, in the 14th century.

Perhaps these historical events may have suggested the story in the romance.

p. 79, l. 24. 'the cranes flighing' translates 'les grues en vollant.' The cranes are said to be the earliest birds to migrate.

'E come i gru van cantando lor lai,
Facendo in aere di se lunga riga.'

Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 84, l. 15. The Rouen Fr. ed.: 'Raimondin le frappa de la lance au coste.'

p. 91, l. 30. There is an omission here in the translation. The French text reads: 'Il avoit entendu par aulcuns des varlés d'icelluy chastelain que ilz actendoient gens à qui ilz ne vouloient point de bien.'—Brunet's ed., p. 104.

p. 92, l. 15. Fr. reads: 'que ilz ne nous trouvent à descouvert.'

p. 94, l. 24. 'high' seems to be a mistake for 'his.' 'traist l'espee' is the French reading.

p. 97, l. 28. There is a legend current that the convent of the Trini-

ta'res of Sarzeau was founded by Melusine. John III., Duke of Brittany, founded it in 1341, forty-six years before John of Arras wrote this account of its origin. Jehan de la Haye, in *Memoires et recherches* (1581), says that Melusine and Raymondin were buried in this convent.

p. 104, l. 10. Such excresences apparently do appear, as can be seen from the following statement, made by a man of recognized accuracy of observation:—

'On the 29th [of Feb. 1839], being requested by some friends of the town, I visited a wonderful man there. It appears that nature, deviating from the usual course, gave this man a small trunk, like an elephant, on the right side of his face, beginning from the forehead to his chin. With his left eye only could he see, the other being covered with this superfluous part of the body. He was a young man of about twenty, sound in mind, as he gave rational answers to the several questions I put to him in the Sindhi language.'—*Autobiography of Lutfullah*, p. 311, edited by E. B. Eastwick, 1858.

p. 112, l. 35. This advice to kings reads as if it had been specially written for the Duke of Berry's edification.

p. 116, l. 23. The Knights Hospitallers of St. John captured Rhodes after a siege of three years, in 1309, and made the island their headquarters.

p. 117, l. 32. In the Apocryphal Book, known as the Gospel of Nicodemus, the names of the two thieves are given as Dimas and Gestas. In the 'Narration of Joseph of Arimathæa' it is related that Demas was born in Galilee. He was an innkeeper, and was kind to the poor. He followed the example of Tobias in secretly burying those who died in poverty. He robbed Jews, even in Jerusalem. He plundered the daughter of Caiaphas. It was for this crime that he suffered death.

p. 120, l. 2. Fr. reads: 'Urian n'avoit mie encores, à compter les gens du maistre de Rodes, plus de quatre mille combatans.'

p. 128, l. 25. Alexander is said to have had 30,000 foot soldiers and 4,500 horsemen when he crossed the Hellespont. (Plutarch.)

p. 136, l. 26. 'he cast at hym the dart [with great] yre.' The Fr. 'par grant' is omitted by mistake.

p. 141, l. 21. Fr. text reads: 'Adonques le maistre de Rhodes et les capitaines de Lymasson se mirent tous ensamble.'

p. 142, l. 9. The 'paueys,' according to Viollet-le-Duc, were large oval or square shields, chiefly carried by the crossbowmen. They did not come into use until the fourteenth century.

p. 155, l. 20. For the true version of the story of how Cyprus passed into the hands of Guy of Lusignan (not Urian, as the Romance says), see the Introduction. The *Itinerary of Richard Cœur de Lion*, by Vinsauf, is the authority relied on.

p. 159, l. 24. The 'for to wete & know, for to here & know,' is a double translation of the French phrase, 'pour aller sçavoir.'

p. 159, l. 22. 'fortres' is plural here and on p. 160, l. 6.

p. 169, l. 13. 'they . . . . . ancres' translates 'ilz desancrèrent.'

p. 169, l. 32. 'them,' *i. e.* their ships.

p. 171, l. 1. See page 129, *et seq.*

p. 176, foot of page. In John Stow's *Survey of London* (W. J. Thom's ed., 1842, p. 119), the cost of writing out the works of D. Nicholas de

Lira in two volumes is given at 100 marks = £66 13*s.* 4*d.* W. Stevenson, in his *Life of William Caxton* (p. 12), says that this sum most likely included the cost of the illuminations. The volumes may have been sumptuously bound, in which case comparatively little would be left for the copyist's work.

It is quite probable that the 17/8, written on the margin of the Melusine MS., may be a memorandum having no relation to the copyist's pay.

p. 178, l. 10. Modern economists would not approve of this summary way of treating forestallers. Adam Smith believed that the dread of witches and of forestallers were on a par.

p. 179, l. 28. The Fr. ver. has the following sentences after 'armanye':—'Et se il vous samble qu'elle n'en soit digne, si luy aidez à assener à quelque noble homme qui bien sache le pays gouverner et deffendre des ennemis de Jhesucrist. Or y vueillez pourvoir de remède convenable car à tout dire, se il vous plait, en la fin je vous fais mon heritier du royaulme d'Armanie; mais pour l'amour de Dieu prenez en garde et ayez pitié de mon povre enfant, qui est orpheline desolée de tout conseil et de tout confort, se vous lui faillez.' The nine succeeding lines of the English version, 28 to 36, are not represented in the French version published by Brunet.

p. 180, l. 8. After Guyon's address the Armenian lords reply in the French version: 'nostre seigneur le vous vueille meriter, qui vous doinct bonne vie et longue.'

p. 180, l. 31. The following paragraph is omitted in the English version:

'En ceste partie nous dist l'histoire que ceux de Caliz furent moult joyeulx quant ilz virent approucher la navire, car jà sçavoient les nouvelles que leur seigneur venoit, pour ce que les barons qui estoient allez en Chippre pour porter les lettres dont je vous ay fait mention par avant, leur avoient mandé toute la verité, affin de ordonner et pourveoir de le recepvoir honnourablement; et y estoient tous les haultz barons du pays et les dames et damoiselles venues pour le festoier et honnourer. A celle heure la pucelle Florie estoit à la maistresse tour, qui regretoit moult la mort de son père, et si avoit moult grant paour que le roy Urian ne le voulsist pas accorder à son frère, et estoit une cause qui moult luy angoissoit sa douleur. Mais adoncques une damoiselle luy vint dire en ceste manière: Madamoiselle, on dist que ceulx qui estoient allez en Chippre arriveront bien brief au port. De ces nouvelles fut Florie moult joyeuse, et vint à la fenestre, et regarda en la mer, et vit navires, gallées, et aultres grans vaisseaulx qui arrivoient au port, et oyt trompettes sonner, et pluiseurs aultres instruments de divers sons. Adonc fut la pucelle moult lie, et vindrent les barons du pays au port, et recepvoient moult honnourablement Guion et sa compaignie, et le menèrent à mont vers la pucelle, laquelle luy vint à l'encontre de luy. Et Guion la salua moult honnourablement en ceste manière: Ma damoiselle, comment a-il esté à vostre personne depuis que me partis d'icy? Et elle luy respondist moult amoureusement et dist: Sire, il ne peut estre gaires bien, car monseigneur mon père est nouvellement trespassé de ce mortel monde, dont je prie à nostre Seigneur Jhesucrist, par sa saincte grace et misericorde, qui luy face vray pardon à l'ame, et à tous aultres; mais, sire, comme povre orpheline je vous remercie et gracie tant humblement comme je puys des vaisseaulx que vous m'envoiastes, et aussi de la grant richesse et avoir qui estoit dedans.'

p. 183, l. 25. Afterwards (p. 217) called Metydee.

p. 190, l. 11. This passage should be compared with that beginning on page 110, where Melusine gives parting advice to her two elder children, Urian and Guion.

p. 190, l. 34. Passages like this (see also p. 112) show that John of Arras pleaded for a more humane treatment of conquered provinces. He shows that even from selfish considerations a ruler should treat his people well (p. 112). It is true he does not directly condemn the marauding expeditions, which were the curse of the Middle Ages; but it should be noted that the sons of his heroine were always called to assist the oppressed. They never started out as mere plunderers. John of Arras was a forerunner of Rabelais in his condemnation of the barbarities of feudal warfare. He resembled Rabelais in character. It required considerable boldness for an officer of the Duke of Berry—one of the most rapacious plunderers of France—to make a stand against injustice.

p. 192, l. 20. Did the author of *Melusine* intend Anthony and Reginald's system of warfare to be an example to be followed by the Duke of Berry?

p. 202, l. 33. Fr. reads: 'le jeta si roidement encontre la terre que peu faillist que il ne lui crevast son cœur ou son ventre.'

p. 211, l. 2. It is interesting to note that all the kings in the Romance are constitutional kings. They are obliged to consult their barons before they enter into treaties or alienate land. (See pages 42, 211, 263.)

p. 214, l. 18. 'pryuy meyne,'—a private or select company or following.

p. 222, l. 29. Fr. reads: 'paiez pour huyt moys.'

p. 228, l. 13. 'Catell & goodes' translates 'biens.'

p. 229, l. 14, there is an omission after 'city.' The Fr. text reads: 'mais le roy Zelodus avoit fait armer ses gens et faisoit fort assaillir la cité, car grand desir avoit de la prendre, et ceulx de dedens se deffendoient lachement, et bien le appercevoient les Sarrazins; et pour ce ilz assailloient tant plus vigoureusement. Et fut la besoigne mal allée quant l'ancien chevalier vint qui bien apperceut la besoinge et la faible deffense de ceulx de dedens' (Brunet's ed., p. 254). The Fr. text then continues: 'A doncques acheoa l'assault,' &c., as in the English version.

p. 233, l. 31. 'the moost vytupere' translates 'pour plus vituperer.'

p. 246, l. 6. Fr. 'Thierry.'

p. 246, l. 12. Fr. 'ung chevalier faye au maulvais esperit.'

p. 246, l. 13. The belief in Incubi and Succubi (demons who consort with men and women and engender children) was current in the time of John of Arras, and for long after. The fathers of the Church taught the doctrine, as can be seen from Augustine: 'It is so general a report, & so many auerre it either from their owne tryall or from others, that are of indubitable honesty & credit, that the Syluans and Fawnes, commonly called Incubi, haue often iniured women, desiring & acting carnally with them: and that certaine diuells whom the Frenchmen [Gauls] call Dusies, do continually practise this vncleannesse, & tempt others to it; which is affirmed by such persons & with such confidence that it were impudence to deny it.'—*City of God*, Bk. XV, Cap. XXIII, ed. 1620, translated by J. H.

Lodovico Vives, in commenting upon this passage, says: 'There are a people at this day that glory that their descent is from the devils, who

visited women in the guise of men, and men in the guise of women. This in my conceit is viler than to draw a man's pedigree from pirates, thieves, or famous bullies, as many do. The Egyptians say that the devils can only accompany carnally with women and not with men.'

The following quotation from Michæl Psellus, a Byzantine savant of the eleventh century, explains the mediæval ideas on this subject. The text is from a translation by Pierre Moreau Touranio, published in 1576: 'Or me suis-ie trouué quelque-fois auec vn moine, en la Cherronese de Mesopotamie, lequel apres auoir esté spectateur & cõiurateur des phãtosmes diaboliques, autant ou plus expert en cela, que nul autre, depuis il les a mesprisez & abiurez, comme vains & friuoles, & en ayant fait amende honorable, s'est retiré au gyron de l'Eglise, & a fait professiõ de nostre foy seule vraye, & Catholique: laquelle il a soigneusemẽt appris de moy. Ce moine donc me dit alors & declara plusieurs choses absurdes & diaboliques. Et de fait, m'estant quelque-fois enquis de luy, s'il y a quelques diables patibles: ouy vrayement, dit-il, comme on dit aussi, qu'aucuns d'iceux iettent semence, & engendrent d'icelle des verms. Si est-ce chose incroyable, luy dis-ie lors, que les diables ayent aucuns excremẽs, ny membres spermatiques, ny vitaulx. Vray est, respondit-il, qu'ils n'ont tels, membres, si est-ce toutefois qu'ils iettent hors ie ne scay quel excrement & superfluité, croyez hardiment ce que ie vous en dis. Dea, luy dis-ie lors, il y auroit danger qu'ils fussent alimentez & nourriz de mesme nous. Ils sont nourriz, respondit frere Marc, les vns d'inspiration, comme l'esprit qui est aux arteres & nerfs, les autres d'humidité: mais non par la bouche, comme nous, ains comme esponges & huistres attirent à soy l'humidité adiacente exterieurement. Puis iettent hors ceste latente & secrete semence. A quoy ils ne sont tous subiects, ains seulement les diables qui sont enclins à quelque matiere, sçauoir est, ou celuy qui hait la lumiere, le tenebreux, l'aquatique, & tous soubsterrains.'—Psellus, *De l'energie ov operation des diables* (leaf 19 *b*, *et seq.*), ed. 1576.

In Ambroise Paré's collection (died 1590), livre xix, ch. 30, we read: 'Or quant à moy ie croy que ceste pretendue cohabitation est imaginaire procedante d'une impression illusoire de Satan . . . . car à l'execution de cet acte, la chair et le sang sont requis, ce que les esprits n'ont pas.'

Fuller accounts of the ancient opinions on Incubi and Succubi will be found in Iohn Wierus, *De Prestigiis dæmonum*, 1569 and 1579, and in Jean Bodin's *Refutation of Wierus*, 1593.

Modern thought ascribes the belief in Incubi & Succubi to Dreams, see E. B. Tylor: 'From dreams are avowedly formed the notions of incubi and succubi, those nocturnal demons who consort with women and men in their sleep. From the apparent distinctness of their evidence these beings are of course well known in savage demonology, and in connection with them there already arises among uncultured races the idea that children may be engendered between spirits and human mothers. (See Martin, *Mariner's Tonga Islands.*) For an ancient example of the general belief in this class of demons, no better could be chosen than that of the early Assyrians, whose name for a succubus, "lilit," evidently gave rise to the Rabbinical tale of Adam's demon wife Lilith. (See Lenormant, *La magie chez les Chaldéens.*) The literature of mediæval sorcery abounds in mentions of this belief, of which the absurd pseudo-philosophical side comes well into view in the chapter of Delrio (Lib. II, quæsto 15): "An sint unquam dæmones incubi et succubæ, et an ex tali congressu proles nasci queat?" But its serious side is shown by the accusation of consorting with such demons being one of the main charges in the infamous bull

of Innocent VIII., which brought judicial torture and death upon so many thousands of wretched so-called witches. (See Roskoff, *Geschichte des Teufels.*) It further throws light on demonology, that the frightful spectres seen in such affections as delirium tremens have of course been interpreted as real demons.'

p. 253, l. 19. 'hym,' *i. e.* Claude of Syon.

p. 264, l. 16. 'concernyng' here means 'compared with.' Fr. phrase is 'envers la puissance.'

p. 273, l. 31. Jaffa changed hands several times in the 4th Crusade, 1196.

p. 279, l. 34. 'ye shal not haue them for so good chep,' *i. e.* 'You will not overcome them as easily as you think.' Fr. reads: 'Vous n'aurez pas si bon marché.'

p. 281, l. 33. Fr. 'tout le couert.'

p. 282, l. 18. Fr. 'tout couertement.'

p. 287, l. 11: 'Si cum li cerfs s'en vait devant les chiens,
Devant Rollant si s'en fuient Païen.'
La Chanson de Roland, ll. 1874-5.

p. 290, l. 7. 'cours' translates 'se reculèrent.' 'There reforced the batayll [*et souffrirent cristiens moult grant affaire*], and with that cours [retires] the cristen,' &c.

p. 291, l. 3. 'sarasyns' in Fr. text is 'Turcs.'

p. 295, l. 9, page 32.

p. 296, l. 6. 'esperit fae.'

p. 297, l. 5. 'quaque à harenc' = a herring barrel.

p. 303, l. 3. 'ung flayal de plomp à trois chainnes.' The flail was rarely used in France. The MSS. of the 12th and 14th centuries show it very seldom (*Viollet-le-Duc*).

p. 309, l. 19. The date of the ravaging of the Abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232.

p. 312, l. 8. Coudrette makes the Castle of Vouvant the scene of the catastrophe. *The Romans of Partenay*, E. E. T. S. ed., line 3453.

p. 314, l. 26. 'Si quelqu'un aussi se fondoit sur la non vérisimilitude de tant d'aventures, enchantements, de la flûte d'un roi Oberon, tant de somptueux palais soudainement se perdant et évanouissant, et du cheval de Pacolet, qui est encore plus en çà, d'une Mélusine, de Merlin; je lui répondrai que le christianisme étant pour lors bien peu avancé aux contrées de par deçà, le diable avoit beau jeu à faire ses besognes, essayant, en tant qu'est en lui, nous empêcher et divertir du vrai service de Dieu, par ses moqueries et illusions; et, gagnant toujours pays, allant de pied en pied, a si bien fait cet esprit calomniateur, que d'eteindre, en ce qu'il a pu, le nom de notre Seigneur Jésus-Christ, et icelui obscurcir et cacher aux hommes.'—*Contes d'Eutrapel*, by Noel du Fail, 1548.

p. 315, l. 2. The theory that anger is the work of demons is hinted at by the Byzantine Psellus. This writer declares that there are six varieties of demons: Leliurium, or fiery, haunting the upper atmosphere, Aërial the lower atmosphere, Earthy, Aqueous, Subterranean, and Lucifugus, the lowest class of all. The aërial and earthy enter into the soul of man, and urge him to all kinds of lawless thoughts and deeds. If a Lucifugus obtain an entrance into man it makes him ungovernable. The

Lucifugus is devoid of intellect, is ruled by whim, and is regardless of reproof. The possessed person can only be saved by divine assistance.

There is an old saying: 'via furor brevis est.'

p. 318, l. 12. 'Vernon'; Fr. 'Warnont.'

p. 318, l. 23. French text adds: 'car certainement il destruiroit tout ce que j'ay edifiie, ne jamais guerres ne fauldroient au pays de Poetou ne Guienne.'

p. 319, l. 27: 'nessun maggior dolore,
Che ricordarsi del tempo felice
Nella miseria.'—Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V.

p. 321, l. 19. There is a legend that Melusine flew to the caves of Sassenage in Dauphiny, natural hollows in the mountain which lie at the back of Grenoble, and made her abode there. N. Chorier, in his *Histoire Générale de Dauphiné*, describes these caverns: 'Les grotte de Sassenage ne font pas moins digne d'estre contemplée. L'vne est d'vne grandeur incroyable, & elle gette de l'horreur dans les ames les plus ferme. En l'autre ces cuves si célèbres, & dans la troisième est vne table de pierre, que l'on appelle communement la table de Melusine. C'est l'opinion d'vn grand personnage que les nymphes y estoient reverées autrefois d'vn culte particulier.' 'Estienne Barlet fait passer pour vne verité ce qu'il raconte d'vne autre. Il dit qu'apres que l'on y est entré par vn long & difficile chemin, on y voit distinctement des choses estranges. Vn roy y paroist assis dans vn thrône, la couronne à la teste & des thresors infinis a ses pieds. Il adjoûte que l'on croit que les fées, ou ces nymphes que les Grecs nomment les Oreades, y ont habité, & qu'ayant eu longtemps de la peine à le croire, il en a esté à fin persuadé. Cette caverne n'est pas fort éloignée de Montcluz, mais ce que l'on en dit l'est beaucoup de la vérité.'—Lib. I, Cap X.

p. 336, l. 8. Montserrat (mons serratus) rises abruptly from the plain of Catalonia. The ridge of peaks makes it look from a distance like an enormous saw. There are a number of natural caverns in the rock. A monastery was founded at Montserrat in the tenth century. The legend tells that one evening the shepherds of Olea heard celestial music as they tended their sheep. While they listened they saw a bright light among the rocks. The Bishop of Manresa hearing of their vision, resolved to ascend the mountain. He found there an image of the Virgin, made of black wood. It was recognized as the statue that had been sculptured by St. Luke, and brought to Spain by St. Peter. He erected a chapel near where he found the image. A few years afterwards the Count of Barcelona built a convent on the spot, and appointed his daughter Abbess. Later the building passed into the hands of the Benedictines. The Virgin's image worked miracles, and an immense number of pilgrims were drawn to the shrine. The ascent to the chapel was very difficult, and it was regarded as a very meritorious task. The kings of Aragon, Castile, and Navarre enriched the foundation. New buildings were added from time to time. At the wars at the end of last century the Spaniards turned the monastery into a fortress. The French captured it, and when they blew up the fortifications much damage was done to ancient portions of the buildings.

The hermitages are now in ruins, and the ascent to them is very difficult. They were all built on the same plan. Each had an antechamber, a cell with a recess, a study, a kitchen, and a plot of garden with a chapel. The hermits took a vow to die on the mountain. They followed an austere rule, and lived on vegetables and a little salt fish.

Their only amusement was carving little wooden crosses for the pilgrims who visited their cells.

It was at Montserrat, in the Church of the Virgin, that Ignatius Loyola vowed constant obedience to God and the Church, on the Vigil of the Annunciation, 1522.—*Visite au Montserrat*, by G. de Lavigne.

p. 337, l. 9. Fr. 'Culbaton.' The village of Collbató is the starting-point now-a-days for Montserrat.

p. 340, l. 8. Geoffray visited Pope Gregory IX. in 1233. Before he left France he made restitution to some of those he had wronged, as the letter dated 1232, still extant, proves: 'To all who shall see these letters. Geoffroi de Leziniem, Vicomte of Châtellerault, lord of Voluent and Mayreuent, salut éternel.

'You know that I am about to journey to the court of Rome, to put an end to my differences with the church of Maillezais. I wished to satisfy to the best of my ability, before my departure, all who have claims against me, especially such as are in holy orders.

'Geoffroi, Abbot of Absie, having heard of my will, has demanded restitution for damages done, and losses and injuries that I and my father have caused to the Abbey of Absie.

'I have learnt, from the testimony of men worthy of belief, that these claims are just; and for the salvation of my soul, and of my father's soul, I have satisfied the said abbot, 1232.'—From Thibaudeau's *Histoire de Poitou*.

p. 368, l. 18. Coudrette's versification of the Romance carries the fortunes of the Armenian kings to Leo VI., the last of the line, who died at Paris in 1393. This king was driven from his throne by the successful arms of the Egyptians. He was taken prisoner, and obtained his release through the good offices of John of Castile. Leo VI. visited Spain, where he was received as a champion of the Christian faith, and the King of Castile allowed him a pension of 150,000 maravedis. He afterwards travelled to France, where he was kindly received by Charles VI. A pension of 6,000 francs was granted to him there. Leo came over to England, where his reception was as warm as in Spain and Portugal. He obtained an English pension in addition to those from Spain and France. Leo VI. was a far-sighted man. He wanted to bring about a permanent peace between France and England, and he told the rulers of both countries that the only way that the Mahomedan arms could be checked in the East was by the aid of a united West. Unfortunately, his wise policy was rejected, and the rivalries of the kings of Christendom lost some of the fairest lands of Europe to the followers of Mahomet. Leo VI. told the King of France that Amurath aimed at being crowned at Rome, and that he had sent an expedition out with that purpose, which was annihilated by a stratagem of the King of Hungary.

'Thay lost ther lande and all ther honour,
Inclinyng and comyng vnto mischaunce.
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce þat houre,
So fro hermeny chaced into Fraunce.
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance.
At Parys died as happned the cas,
At the Celestines entered he was.'—l. 5685.

After the death (29th Nov. 1393) of Leo VI. the title of King of Armenia was assumed by James I. of Cyprus. Neither James I. nor any of his successors ever reconquered the country.

p. 370, l. 5. Yuon, Yvain, Owen, or Evan of Wales claimed to be the rightful heir of the kingdom of Wales, and the French king treated him as such. Yuon was a favourite of John the Good, King of France, and took a part along with the French in the battle of Poitiers. When peace was made between England and France, Yuon went to Lombardy, where he remained until the war was renewed. In the reign of Charles V. he held a number of commands. He led an expedition of Welsh knights against Guernsey. His hope was that he would be able to reconquer Wales. Charles V. assisted him with money and supplies, but he was unable to land in Wales. He took part in the expedition of Bertand du Guesclin in Spain. On his return to France he won some victories over the English. Froissart says that he was greatly hated in England on account of his claims to the Welsh crown, and for his treatment of his English prisoners, some of whom he would not allow to be ransomed. Yuon fell a victim to treason. He took into his service a James Lambe, a knight who represented himself to be a Welsh exile. He appointed this man his chamberlain. When Yuon was before Mortagne (1378), directing the siege against the English garrison, he was assassinated by James Lambe, who fled to the English camp, where he received protection. Yuon was buried at the church of St. Leger with great pomp.

LIST OF PROVERBS IN THE ROMANCE OF *MELUSINE.*

The loue of ladyes causeth peyne & traueyll to the amerous louers, and deth to horses, 56.

Old synne reneweth shame, 79.

Such weneth to auenge his shame that encreassith it, 93.

It is euyl companye of a traytour, 97.

Good it is to shette the stable before the hors be lost, 97 and 184.

Wel fole is he that fighteth ayenst the wynd wenyng to make hym be styll, 107.

Long taryeng quenchith moch the vertu of the yefte, 111.

Yf the peple is pouere, the lord shall be vnhappy, 112.

A flyes of a yere is more prouffytable than a flyes that is shorne twyes or thryes a yere, 112.

In long treatee lyeth sometyme grete falshed, 113.

Wyse men goo abacke for to lepe the ferther, 113.

One grayne of peper alone smertith more on mans tonge, than doth a sacke full of whete, 128.

Victorye also lyeth not in grette multitude of peuple, but in good rule & ordynaunce, 128.

Goodnes & bounte is betre than fayrenes & beaulte, 138.

All is not yet lost that lyeth in parell, 147.

Who lerneth not his crafte in his yougthe, with grete peyne & hard it shal be for him to be a good werkeman in his old age, 193.

That God doth, he done anone, 203.

Whan the yron is hoot it moste be wrought & forged, 211.

Of two euylles men ought to choose the lasse, whan nedes muste one be had, 237.

Bettre is to haue more of prouffyt & lasse honour, 238.

A lytel rayne leyeth doun grete wynd, 247.

That the fole thinketh oftymes cometh to foly, 255.

The fole proposeth & god dysposeth, 265.

He that menaceth is sometyme in grete fer & dredo hymself, & aftirward ouerthrawen, 279.

Bettre it is to flee, than to abyde a folyssh enterpryse, 288.

Thing neuer bygonne hath neuer ende, 304.

In euery thing most be bygynnyng tofore the ende cometh, 304.

He that gyueth the first strokes dooth not the batayll, but he that reuengeth hym bryngeth it to effect, 368.

GLOSSARY.

Words in Italics are the corresponding words of the French version, Ch. Brunet's Edition 1854. *Cot. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary.*

Abhomyned, page 311, abominated.
aborde, 71, waited.
absteyn, 16, abstain.
abused, 7, beguiled.
abysmes, 5, abysses.
accorded, 213, agreed.
acompte, 356, account.
acoyntaunce, 71, acquaintance.
acoynte, 190, become familiar; acoynted, 205.
adiouste, 16, adjust.
admounested, 228, warned; admounestyng, 287.
adommage, 32, harm; adommaged, 182.
adrecyd, 226, directed.
aduyronned, 123, surrounded.
aduys, 71 (*avis*), opinion.
affeblysshid, 241, became depressed, lost spirit.
affectuelly, 148 (*humblement*), earnestly.
affettuously, 159, affectionately.
affyaunce, 324 (*fiance*), assurance, trust.
affyns, 89 (*proesmes*), near relatives.
affrayenge, 10, fearing.
afrayed, 28, frightened.
agree, 259, accept.
aigre, 298, harsh.
albaster, 328, alabaster.
alez, 218, allies; alyed, 92.
algaf, 300, although (lit. al if).
allegeaunce, 335, relief.
almese, 106; almesses, 321, charity.
alowed, 200, lowered.
altogidre, 41, altogether.
ambaxade, 183, embassy.
amerous, 56, amorous.
amongis, 27, amongst.
amyable, 275, friendly.
an, 90, one.
ancres, 114, anchors.
anenst, 21, against.
ansuerde, 10, answered.
ante, 367, aunt.
antecessours, 330 (*antecesseurs*), predecessors.
aourned, 51, 53 (*aourne*), attired.
aparteyned, 20, belonged.
apas, 27, apace.
apayed, 111, 192, pleased.
appareylled, 118, made ready.
apparysshing, 369, appearing.
apperceyued, 230, 324, observed.
appert, 125, expert.
appertly, 131, promptly (Cot.).
appertyse, 83, deeds.
appiere, 15; appyeren, 4, appear.
arblaster, 289, men who worked the arblastes, machines for throwing missiles.
archegaye, 226 (*archegaie*), dart.
ardaunt, 142, burning.
argued, 150 (*argue*), perplexed.
arregarde, 132, rearguard.
arsouns, 286, saddle-bows.
aspre, 145, fierce.
asprely, 132, fiercely.
aspye, 117, spy.
aspyracion, 315, respiration.
assayed, 171, attested.
assoted, 12, infatuated.
assurest, 171, boldest.
astonyed, 202, astonished.
astromy, 20, astronomy.

astronomyens, 323, astronomers.
asuryd, 156 (*fiance*), betrothed.
auantgarde, 174, vanguard.
auauntynge, 11, boasting.
auctoures, 3, authors.
auncyent, 4, ancient.
auoultyre, 296, adultery.
awondred, 50, wondered.
awter, 344, alter.
axe, 41, ask.
axez, 299, attack of fever.
ayen, 180, again.

Bake, 9, back.
bare, 351, bore.
barers, 124; barreres, 63 (*braies*), defences.
bassade, 308, embassy.
bassecourt, 300, inner court of a castle.
basyn, 8, mug.
basynets, 123, helmetted men.
batayll, 289, battalion.
batayllous, 246 (*bataillereux*), given to fighting.
beaulte, 7, beauty.
beed, 148, bed.
begonne, 12, begun.
behauf, 17, use.
behel, 282, beheld.
behighte, 111, 190, promise, promised.
beryng, 8, bearing.
besily, 3, busily.
betoke, 110, committed.
bewte, 7, beauty.
bigge, 86, build.
bigynne, 17, begin.
bilded, 17; bylded, 6, builded.
bode, 18, bid.
bourgeys, 206; burgeys, 151, burghers.
braunche, 23, branch.
braundysshed, 145, brandished.
brede, 41, breadth.
brenne, 17; brenne, 4; brennyng, 184, to burn.
brigh, 266, bright.
broche, 21, pierce.
broched, 130, spurred.
broded, 53; browded, 81, embroidered.
bruled, 234, burnt.
bruyt, 251, noise.
brygandyners, 128, men wearing brigandines, canvas coats covered with iron plates or iron rings.
buffet, 303, blow.
busshe, 284, ambush.
butyn, 146, booty.
bycomme, 4, gone to.
bye, 39, buy.
bygoten, 6, begotten.
bynethe, 22, beneath.

Caas, 128, cause.
candelstykes, 17, candlesticks.
carrykes, 109, cargo ships.
caruell, 117, a light ship.
cas, 11, case.
castel, 15, castle.
castellayne, 92, castellan.
catholicall, 215, catholic.
causer, 89, originator.
cepter, 179, scepter.
cerched, 330, searched.
certyfyen, 3, to certify.
cesse, 155, cease.
chaffed, 22, excited, vexed.
champaynes, 100, open fields.
chanoyne, 40, canon.
chappen, 193, shapen.
charyte, 12, charity.
chasse, 20, chace.
chaunfreyn, 84 (*gauffrain d'acier*), the headpiece of a barbed horse (Halliwell).
chayere, 82, chair.
cheryed, 98, treated.
cheuaunce, 155 (*chevance*), achievement.
cheuysaunce, 264, promise.
cheyned, 177, chained.
childed, 104, gave birth to.
chirch, chirche, 36, church.
cleme, 142, climb.
clemme, 25, climb.
clepen, 187, called; clepid, 245, named.
cleue, 26, cleave.
clos, 118 (*clos*), enclosure, 267.
cluble, 303, club.
cohortacion, 97, company.
cohorte, 97, company.
coler, 53, collar.
collige, 369, collect.
commevyd, 123; commouyd, 154, excited.

communyked, 291, talked.
commynalte, 184 (*communes*), commons.
comparacion, 17, comparison.
compleyned, 12, complained.
complices, 96, accomplices.
condampned, 68, condemned.
condycion, 14, condition.
congie, 301, leave.
conne, 12, to be able.
connyng, 2, cunning, knowledge.
conspiracion, 75, conspiracy.
constreyned, 7, constrained.
contrefaytte, 135, deformed.
contynue, 299 (*continue*), prolonged attack.
conuenable, 40, convenient.
convers, 100, menials.
convyne, 133, 142, 172 (*commune*)? assembly, militia, soldiery.
conyns, 261, rabbits.
corset, 84, a cloth coat worn over the cuirass.
coste, 134, disbursement.
costes, 268, coasts, shores.
cotidiane, 100, daily.
cotte, 129, coat.
coude, 7, could, was able; 20, knew.
couenaunce, 5, covenant.
couert, 254, 257, 281, 282, covert, concealed way.
couertly, 262, obscurely, secretly.
couetyse, 87, covetous.
coule, 168, cool.
couloure, 4, colour.
courcer, 9, courser.
cours, 15, course; cours, 290, rush.
courteyns, 57, curtains.
coyffe, 250 (*coeffe*), head-dress.
coynted, 315, comely.
cradelles, 4, cradles.
cramesyn, 205, crimson.
cronykle, 6, chronicle.
cryded, 82, cried, shouted.
curee, 99, entrails, quarry.
curtoysye, curtoisye, 9, courtesy.
cyrurgyens, 288, surgeons.

Dalt, 177, divided.
damoyseau, 163; damoyseaulx (pl.), 125, youth.
dampned, 339, damned.
daw fole (*damp musart*). French text means Sir Fool or Sir Thoughtless, "damp" being equivalent to the O.E. Dan, as: "Dan" Chaucer. *daw fole* may mean "melancholy" fool; see Bradley's Stratmann's M. E. Dictionary, under "dau."
debonnaire, 190, gentle.
deceneryd, 169, ? unfurled their sails.
decez, 356, decease.
dede, 321, caused; dede, 323, deed; dede, 12, did.
deele, 190, divide.
deeling, 111, bearing.
def, 29, deaf.
deffawte, 345, default.
delyt, 333, misdemeanour.
demanded, 20, related.
demened, 80, 125, 136, depressed; demeneth, 147, conducted.
demesurably, 132, greatly, immeasurably.
demysed, 87 (*s'en est deffait*), got rid of.
denounced, 188, declared.
departed, 116, divided.
departement, 98, departure.
despyt, 234, contempt.
desray, 123, disorder.
destraytte, 336 (*le vellon et le pertuys*), ? district, or territory.
destrier, 81; destrer, 82, horse.
detrenched, 146, hacked.
deuel, 234 (*doeul*); dueyll, 237, mourning.
deuoyre, 82, duty.
deuysed, 67, told.
deuyses, 348, talks.
dey, 15, die.
diches, 88, ditches.
distourned, 55, turned aside.
do, 321; doo, 239; doon, 13, 26, cause to.
dogge, 21, dog.
dolaunt, 312, doleful.
doleur, 305, dolor.
dombe, 29, dumb.
dome, 13, doom.
dommage, 145 (*dommaige*), harm.
don, 118 (*donne*), given.
dongeon, 300, main tower of a castle, donjon.
doubtid, 1, feared.
doubtous, 193, fearful.

doughtir, 11, daughter.
doun, 13, down.
dowbed, 18, dubbed.
dresse, 30; dressed, 21, direct, turned.
dressyng, 155 (*adressant*), addressing.
duc, 6, duke.
duchery, 214, duchy.
dueil, 138; dueyl, 216, mourning.
dysempare, 215, dethrone.
dyspens, 148, outlay.
dysployed, 119, 230, unfurled, displayed.
dysporte, 77, 98, sport; dysported, 304, enjoyed.
dyspoylle, 136, pillage.
dyspreyse, 113, contemn.
dyspytous, 29 (*despiteux*), angry, spiteful.
dyssymyle, 113, dissimulate.
dystourne, 26 (*destourneray*), turn away; distourned, 83.

Eche, 17, each.
effoundred, 286, ent into.
egaly, 146, equally.
emonge, 118, among.
empeche, 39, prevent.
empechement, 279, hindrance.
empossesse, 99; enpocesse, 333, put in possession.
emprysed, 81, undertaken.
ench, 83, inch.
encheson, 65, motive.
encres, 337; encresse, 32, increase.
encysed, 62, cut.
endeuoyre, 152, endeavour; endeuoyred, 157.
endoctryne, 55, instruct.
enfourmed, 308, informed.
enharnashed, 9, accoutred.
enjurous, 66, injurious.
enlyberte, 99, liberate.
ensiew, 184, follow.
ensured, 68 (*asseuroit*), assured.
entamed, 211, 299, broached.
entaylled, 50, carved.
entende, 1, to give heed.
entendement, 369, understanding.
entent, 91, intent, purpose.
ententyfly, 70, attentively.
enterprenaunt, 122, enterprising.
enterprysed, 12, undertaken.
entremete, 63 (*se meslera*), intermeddle.
entreteyne, 239, keep up.
enuahisshing, 138 (*envaye*); enuahysshed, 147; enuahye, 201, assault.
envertued, 200 (*se envertuoit*), strengthened.
eny, 16, any.
erable, 99, arable.
erle, 6, earl.
eschiewed, 145, avoided; 170, rescued.
escryed, 77, 115, p.p. of escrien, to call to.
escuse, 258, excuse; 10, excused.
eslongyd, 133 (*se eslongèrent*), separated.
espirytuel, 371, spiritual.
esprised, 11, 34 (*surpris*), overtaken.
esprouued, 224 (*esprouvoient*), tried.
esprysed, 77 (*espris*), smitten.
espyes, 193, spies.
esquyer, 248, squire.
essaye, 192, try.
estimed, 117, estimated.
estraungers, 178, strangers.
estymacion, 266, estimate.
euerche, 320; euerych, 154, every.
euerychon, 38, every one.
ewrous, 244 (*eureux*), lucky, happy.
excusacion, 107, excuse.
exercyted, 224, exercised.
exployted, 123 (*exploita*), worked; 81, fought; 289, acted.
eyled, 299, ailed.

Facion, 225, build, make.
fader, 7, father.
faicte, 13; faitt, 71; faytte, 119; fayt, 312, deed.
falshed, 13; falsed, 315, falsehood; fals, 12.
fan, 65 (Latin *vannus*), a corn winnowing fan or sieve.
fantosme, 311, phantom.
fasted, 44, fastened.
fauntesye, 4, 31, fantasy.
fawte, 57 (verb), fail; 196, wrong; 58 (noun), failure.
feith, 24, faith.
fel, 134, 200, fierce, cruel.
felawship, 8, fellowship.
fer, 60, far; ferre, 327.

ferder, 332, further.
ferfourth, 106, widely.
fest, 19, feast; festyed, 98, feasted; feste, 8, rejoicing.
festyed, 368 (*batu*), thrashed.
fette, 251; fete, 213, fetch.
feynted, 66, faint.
feynyngly, 28, pretending.
flayel, 303 (*flayel*), a baton carrying a lump of iron attached by a chain.
flawgh, 321, flew; floughe, 321.
flemed, 112, fled.
florysshed, 13 (*florie*), flowered.
flote, 268, fleet.
flyes, 112, fleece.
fole, 24, fool.
fore, 184, early.
foreby, 251, past.
forfaytte, 315 (*fourfait*), crime.
forgate, 7, forgot.
forwayed, 101, wandered, lost.
foundatours, 368, founders.
foundement, 62 (*fondament*), foundation.
founs, 172 (*font*), bed.
fourme, 17, form.
foursenyd, 315 (*enforcenez*), furious, enraged.
fourueyeth, 76, wanders.
fowel, 206, foul.
fownd, 103, founded.
foynyng, 67, thrusting.
foyson, 21 (*foison*), abundance.
fro, 3, from.
fuldoo, 1, accomplish.
fullyssh, 149, 208, fully.
fumyer, 278, smoke.
fust, 85, fist.
fuste, 116, a rowing and sailing ship.
fyaunce, 257, trust.
fyers, 17, fierce.
fyerste, 118, boldness.
fyl, 321, fell.
fyn, 331, end.
fynaunce, 17 (*finance*), ready money.
fyreyron, 23, flint and steel.

Gadre. 266, gather.
gaf, 19, gave.
galyote, 167, little galley; galyotte, 118.
gan, 22, began.
garnysons, 135, garrisons.
garnysshed, 184, 230, furnished, adorned.
gate, 203, got, obtained.
gaynstode, 137, withstood.
geaunt, 17, giant.
gendred, 246, begotten.
gent, 8, gentle.
gerdell, 53, girdle.
gerland, 59, garland, wreath.
gestes, 369, histories.
glanched, 77, glanced.
gobelyns, 4, goblins.
gonnes, 115, guns.
good chep, 279, 282 (*bon marche*), easy mastery.
gorgeret, 175, a piece of armour to protect the throat.
gramaire, 370, grammar.
gramercy, 9, great thanks.
grauntfader, 19, grandfather.
gree, 109, 121, favour, will, pleasure.
gree, take in, 2, agree to.
greef, 13, grief.
gret, grett, 7, great.
greve, 130, injure.
guerdon, 204, reward.
gyfte, 15, gift.

Haake, 20, hawk.
haboundonne, 99, give up.
habundauntly, 228, abundantly.
halid, 161, hauled.
halowed, 158, blessed.
handlyng, 65 (*manilles*), handles.
hap, 15; happ, 5, 12 (noun), luck, chance.
happe, 4; happed, 5; haped, 118 (verb), to happen.
hardyly, 10; hardyfly, 231, boldly.
harneys, 115, armour.
hauen, 118 (*clos*), haven.
haunce, 112; enhance, 325, raised.
haunted, 113, practised.
hauoyr, 67, goods.
haused, 166 (*getter*), lowered overboard.
hawtepyece, 145; haulte piece, 325, helmet.
heest, 21,
helge, 21, hang.
helmets, 199, 251 (*bassines*), fighting men.
henne, 211, hen.
hens fourthon, 17, henceforth.

herberowed, 70, harboured.
herde, 7, heard.
here, 2, hear.
herke, 317, harken.
herte, 9, hart; hert, 39.
heued vp, 24, raised.
heure, 146, hour.
heuyer, 35, heavier.
heyer, 66, heir.
hit, 7, it.
hold, 190, keep.
holt, 302, whole.
holped, 46, helped.
honestly, 73, worthily.
hontous, 238, ashamed.
hool, 361, whole.
hoop, 36, hope.
hores, 177, ours.
hors, 10, horse.
hourys son, 300, whore's son.
hurted, 25, p.p. of hurten, to rush against.
hurtelyd, 95 (*hurta*), pushed.
hydouse, 315, hideous.
hye, 76 (*hault*), aloud; 94, high.
hyerid, 134, hired.
hyndre, 24, hynder.

Impetred, 14, procured (Cot.).
importable, 153, unbearable.
incontynent, 276, immediately.
indigned, 262, made indignant.
infortunate, 16, unfortunate.
iugge, 15, judge.
iuggement, 3; jugement, 15, judgment.
Iung, 16, June.

Jacke, 205 (*Jaques*), coat.
jape, 79, jest.
journey, iourney, 291, a fixed date.
jugge, 317, judge.
justiser, 97, justiciary.

Kennyng, 104 (*Veues*), far sight, extent of vision. Cotgrave translates "kenne": *veoir de loin*. Motteux (*Rabelais*, Bk. IV, cap. 22) translates "ne sommes pas loing de port" by "within a kenning."
kepe, 112, guard.
kerle, 28, churl.
kerued, 17, carved.
keruyng, 43, carving, cutting; kerued, 50.
knowleche, 2, knowledge; knowleched, 96.
konne, 108, show.
kychons, 50, kitchens.
kymbyng, 297, combing.
kynge, 6, king.
kynne, 90, kin.
kynrede, 24, kindred.
kyst, 78 (*jetta*), cast.

Langing, 136, longing.
large, 111, liberal.
largenes, 111, liberality.
launche, 123, hurl; launchid, 94, rushed.
lawghe, 272; lawhe, 101, laugh.
lawmentyng, 147, lamenting.
lectuary, 247 (*electuaire*), electuary.
leder, 39; leeder, 357, leather.
lefte, 286, lifted.
legge, 99; leghe, 129; leghis (pl.), 194, league.
leghe, 294 (*lieue*), place.
leghes, 353, legs.
lepe, 10, leap.
les, 22, lest.
leser, 144 (*loisir*), leisure.
lette, 10, delay; late (imp.) let, 20; letted, 196.
leued, 23, left; leve, 33, leave.
leuyed, 135, levied.
leyd, 34, laid.
leyser, 277, leisure.
locucion, 20, circumlocution.
lodgis, 119, lodgings.
lost, 147, faith.
lustis, 320, pleasures.
lyf, 7, life.
lyflod, 108; lyuelod, 31 (*terrien*), landholding.
lygeauns, 338, allegiance.
lyghtly, 300, quickly.
lykwyse, 15, likewise.
lynee, 6, line.
lyuere, 275, give.

Machecolyd, 63, 103, parapetted, holes are left in the parapets to pour out molten lead, &c.
machined, 96; machyned, 68, machinated.
maculate, 299, blemished.

mageste, 1, majesty.
magre, 142, maugre.
maister, 1, master.
manded, 73 (*manda*), sent for.
mandement, 153, 183, mandate, commandment.
manoyr, 100, mansion.
marches, 183, districts.
maronner, 268, mariner.
maryage, 16, marriage.
mate, 147, dull (*mat*), dejected; mated, 216.
mayllet, 329, mallet.
maynten, 126, bearing.
medled, 132, mingled.
medowe, 5, meadow.
meney, 9, retinue.
mercy, 71, thank; mercyed, 90.
meruaylle, 11, marvel.
meryte, 15, merit.
meschaunt, 302, wicked.
mesprysed, 79, calumniated.
messagery, 69, corps of messengers, embassy.
messe, 54, dish.
metes, 38, meats.
meued, 122; mevyd, 8; meuyd, 21 (*mue*), stirred up.
meure, 160, mature.
meyne, 23, men; meney, 9, 280, company.
moche, 6, much.
moder, 14, mother.
mone shyn, 22, moonshine.
moneth, 208, month.
morow, 361, morning.
most, 29, must.
moustre, 165, muster.
mowe, 23, be able.
musarde, 29 (*musart* from *muser*, to loiter), dawdler.
myddes, 54, midst.
mynnsshed, 350, lessened; mynussshe, 820.
myscheaunce, 366, ill luck, mischance.
mysdon, 261, done amiss.
mysdymed, 265, mistook.
mysericordious, 313, forgiving.
myserye, 13, misery.
mysknewe, 102, mistook.
myster, 219, need; mystier, 222.

Nat, 2, not.
naturell, 15, natural.
nauye, 109, navy.
nauyll, 15, navel.
nayle, 81, hoof.
ne, 1, nor.
nedermost, 336, nethermost.
ner, 212, nor.
nevew, 17, nephew.
none, 358, noon.
nones, 63, nonce.
nothre, 39, neither.
nourrytured, 354, nurtured.
nouryces, 103, nurses.
nuyouse, 371, tiresome.
nyghte, 179, niece; nyghtis (pl.), 162.
nys, 8, is not.

Obscurte, 22, obscurity.
obsequye, 235, funeral ceremony.
obtempering, 9, submitting.
occysyon, 132, slaughter.
on, 131, 233, in.
ones, 360, once.
oo, 79; oon, 4, one.
oost, 193, host.
ootys, 91, oats.
ordonne, 14, order; ordonned, 79.
orgueyll, 293, haughtiness.
orgueyllous, 249, haughty.
orphanite, 147, state of orphanage.
orphelym, 241; orphenyme, 213; orphenyns (pl.), 187, orphan.
ouch, 126; owche, 59, jewel.
ouergrowen, 65, full grown.
ouerredde, 1, read over.
ouertredde, 112, overstep.
ought, 134, owes.
oultrage, 196, outrage.
oultrageous, 89, outrageous.
outhre, 95, either.

Paas, 21, pace.
pais, 257, peace.
palfrener, 52 (*varlet*), page.
palfroy, 9, palfrey.
palleys, 147, palace.
palyard, 294 (*ribault*), rascal.
pannes, 4, pans.
panser, 84, a steel plate covering that part of the body between the breast and the waist. *Viollet-le-Duc*, the front part of the cuirass.
pappes, 311, breasts.

parels, 31, perils.
parement, 37, ornament.
parfounde, 167, deepest.
parfytt, 3, perfect.
partrych, 175, partridge.
pas, 136, pass, passage.
patron, 115, master.
patyse, 304, 324, tribute; patiz, 301; patise (verb), 304, tax, exact tribute.
paueys, 142, 359, shield.
paueysed, 167, shielded.
paynemys, 106, pagans.
peas, 12, peace; peased, 100, pacified.
pensefull, 28 (*pensif*), thoughtful.
perfightly, 22; perfyttly, 5, perfectly.
peris, 39; peers.
perpetred, 76, perpetrated.
perske, 126 (*pers.*), blue, sky coloured (Cot.).
pert, 105, expert.
pesaunnt, 142, weight.
pesaunt, 145, heavy.
peupled, 118, peopled.
peyne, 12, 322, pain, painstaking.
plaisir, 10, pleasure.
playntes, 12, plaints.
playsaunce, 14, pleasure.
playsaunt, 7, pleasant.
plee, 53 (*plait*), story.
plee, 319 (*plet*), play.
pletyng, 33, pr. part. of plete, to plead.
portable, 209, bearable.
portecollys, 253, portcullis.
potence, 117, cross, gibbet.
pouere, 6, poor.
pouldre, 115, powder.
poursiewe, 155, seek.
poynted, 149, appointed.
prately, 9 (*doulcement*), prettily.
prechement, 196, preaching.
prees, 137 (*presse*), throng.
prest, 265, 275, ready, now.
preste, 358, priest.
preu, 21 (*preus*), valiant.
preyse, 23, praise.
preysed, 302, apprised.
prodytour, 310 (*proditeur*), traitor.
proesse, 15, prowess.
promyssion, 16, promise.
promytte, 15, promise.
promyttyng, 292, promising.
propice, 168; propyce, 108, propitious.
propos, 261, proposal.
propre, 196, own.
propriete, 133, property.
proufytte, 3, profit.
proy, 132, prey.
prymat, 40, primate.
pryme, 148, six A.M.
pryuy, 214, select, intimate.
publyed, 64, published.
pucelle, 179, maid.
punysshe, 13, punish.
purchasse, 257, procure.
purfeld, 53; purfylled, 240, trimmed.
puruey, 19, purvey.
purveyaunce, 109, provender.
purueyed, 109, purveyed, provided.
pytaunce, 336, allowance.
pyte, 14, pity.

Quarell, 287, a kind of arrow.

Radeur, 329 (*radeur*), swiftness; 386, violence.
raisonably, 18, reasonably; raisson, 260, justice.
rampyn, 117 (*rampin*), a light ship.
rannyng, 8, running.
raser, 283, razor.
rauysshed, 7, ravished.
realyed, 145, rallied.
reaume, 238; reame, 240, realm.
rebuckyd, 252, struck, attacked.
rechaced, 126, chased back.
reche, 325, reach.
recomforte, 107, comfort again.
recorded, 263, related.
recountred, 168, encountered.
recule, 124, 231, fall back, retreat.
rede, 2, read.
redeuaunce, 4 (*redevance*), rent, service.
redressid, 193, rearranged.
reforced, 176 (*se renforcha*), 290 (*reforcha*), increased, reinforced.
regarde, 209, desert.
regenered, 140, regenerated.
regne, 6, reign.
regracy, 23; regracye, 124, thank.
rejoye, 157, gladden.
relacion, 42, reference.
relessed, 322, relaxed, diminished.

releuyd, 95 (*se remit*), 103, 131, rose.
relygyon, 181, order.
remenant, 44, remnant.
remevyth, 371, removeth.
remyse, 207, 210, restore; remysed, 137.
renommee, 108; renoumee, 74 (*renommée*), renown.
resoyngne, 140 (*ressongner*), to fear (Cot.).
respection, 319, outlook.
restablysshe, 196, establish again.
retche, 14 (*challoir*), reck, regard.
reuertid, 319, turned.
reueste, 97, endow.
reuested, 40, clothed.
reueyll, 241, revelry.
rewled, 68, ruled.
rightwyse, 69, righteous.
roche, 248, rock.
roos, 22, rose.
roste, 4, roast.
rote, 60, root.
rotyn, 286, rotten.
rought, 67, recked.
route, 136, squadron (Cot.).
royalme, 118; royame, 245, realm.
rudesse, 28, rudeness.
ryall, 363, royal.
ryalte, 214, royalty.
ryuage, 2, 114 (*ripve*), shore, landing.

Saaf, 3, except.
sac, 39, sack.
salades, 130, helmets.
saluacyon, 356, safety.
salue, 126, salute; salued, 8; salewed, 10.
Satirday, 15, Saturday.
saudant, 291, sultan.
sauegarde, 17, safeguard.
sauf, 177, except.
sawdees, 148, soldiers' pay.
sawdoyers, 208; sawdyours, 149, soldiers.
sawdan, 105, sultan.
sawte, 229; sawtyng, 291, assault, assaulting.
saynct, 3, saint.
scafoldes, 241 (*eschafauds*), grandstands.
scaped, 34, escaped.
scarmusshing, 131, skirmishing.
schall, 2, shall.
scourers, 224 (*coureus*), runners.
seaced, 311, ceased.
seale, 39, seal.
seased, 75, seasyd, 358 (*saisir*, connected with *seisin*), seized from.
sechyng, 10, seeking.
see, 7, sea.
semblable, 210, similar.
semblaunt, 33, 150, show.
semynge, 7, seeming.
sene, 153 (cf. syn) since.
senester, 84; senyster, 137, left.
separed, 302, separated.
sepulture, 354, tomb.
serche, 1, search.
seruytude, 249, feudal dues.
sethen, 163, since.
sette, 17, set, placed; 272 (noun), sect.
seuene nyght, 91, week.
shadd, 22, shed.
shede, 359, sheath.
shelynges, 43, shillings.
shett, 14, shut.
shul, 16, shall.
siege, 133, seat, camp.
siew, 123, follow; siewed, 219; siewyng, 73.
sith, 10, since.
sitte, 23, set.
slee, 24, slay.
slough, 306, slew.
sodan, 128, sultan.
soden, 279, boiled.
solas, 306, amusement.
solemply, 323, solemnly.
sommage, 143, baggage.
sommed, 65, summoned.
songe, 7, sang.
sonne, 174, sun.
sorow, 13, sorrow.
sonne, 360, sun.
sort, 110, spell, sorcery.
souped, 363, supped.
sourdred, 46 (*est sours*), 50 (*sourdit*), sprung forth.
sowle, 41, soul.
sowne, 101, sound.
sparpylled, 165 (*esgarez*), scattered.
spek, 6, 19, speak.
sperhaak, 16; sperohak, sparrow hawk.
speryd, 294, asked.
spoused, 11, espoused.

spyce, 371 (*espèce*), element.
stablysshed, 17, stablished.
stalage, 54, stands.
stert vp, 302 (*saillist*), jumped up.
straunged of, 48, estranged from.
stake, 234, a pile of wood.
stakered, 82; staker, 353, staggered.
staung, 98, pool.
stere, 185, stir, move.
sterop, 27; sterope, 83, stirrup.
stode, 7, stood.
stoure, 132, 146, tumult, battle.
straunge, 183, foreign.
straunger, 10, stranger.
strengest, 33, strongest.
streyte, 118, street.
styed, 94, mounted.
styl, 7, still.
subget, 24, subject.
subgection, 17, subjection.
suposen, 3, suppose.
supposest, 30, intendest.
surprysed, 10, overcome by.
surquydous, 96, arrogant.
suscited, 151 (*resuciter*), raised from.
sustir, 118, sister.
swette, 7, sweet.
syke, 147, sick.
sylenceth, 48, becomes silent.
symplenes, 194, ignorance.
syn, 17, 71, 116, since, then.
synester, 258, evil.
synewes, 138 (*vaines*), veins.
synnar, 313, sinner.
synne, 339, sin.
syth, 26, since.
sythe, 301, scyth.

Tache, 22 (*tache*), spot; tache, 232, buckle, clasp.
tambours, 110, drums, a kind of tambourine.
targe, 175, shield.
termyned, 149, terminated.
terryen, 60, landholder.
thaketh, 294 (*pris*), taketh.
the, 284, they.
thenne, 7, then.
thevely, 359, thieflike.
thikk, 18, thick.
thoo, 16, those.
thrested, 77, thrusted.
thrugh, 359, threw.
thurst, 7, thirst.
thye, 232, thigh.
tierce, 157, In summer eight of the clock, in winter ten (Cot.).
toard, 96, towards.
to fore, 20; to forne, 178, before.
togidre, 11, together.
toke, 4, took.
top, 105, tuft.
tourment, 15, torment.
tourned, 9, turned.
tranchis, 43 (*trenchée*); trenchis, 50, carvings, hewings.
trasse, 278, trace.
trauerse, 126, across.
trayH, 320 (*traillis*); traylles (pl.), 329, cage.
trayttee, 182, treaty.
trenchaunt, 145, sharp.
trew, 1, true.
trews, 276, truce.
tronchoned, 286, truncheoned.
troussage, 132 (*troussages*), goods, bundles.
troussed, 141, prepared to leave.
trouth, 17, truth.
trucheman, 274, interpreter.
trusse, 335, pack.
trychery, 110, treachery.
trystefull, 305, sad.
tyres, 53, attire.

Valew, valewe, 41, value.
valiauntis, 122, valiantness.
vasselage, 145 (*vaisselage*), fealty; 200 (*vaisselages*), feats of arms (Cot.).
vergoyne, 285 (*vergoingne*), shame.
vergoynouse, 21, ashamed.
vertu, 291; vertue, 200, strength.
very, 1, 25, veracious.
vitupere, 89 (*blasme*), reproach.
vmbrel, 83 (*maisselle*), the shade for the eyes placed immediately over the sight of a helmet, and sometimes attached to the vizor (Halliwell).
vnfortune, 209, misfortune.
vnnethe, 202, 249, scarcely, nearly.
vnpurveyed, 121 (*despourveu*), unprovided.
vnyed, 131, united.
volente, 207, will.
voyded, 209 (*ostées*), removed.
vpso-dounne, 25, upside down.

vyageours, 362, travellers.
vylayne, 28, bondman.
vylonnye, 251, disgrace.
vynaigre, 114, vinegar.
vyreton, 269, arrow or bolt.
vysyted, 288, examined.
vytupere, 233 (*vituperer*), shame.

Wakked, 7, was awake.
waloped, 130; waloping, 21, galloped.
warauntyse, 200; waraunt, 136, protect.
warde, 62, wall of defence.
wardes, 170, guards.
wareyne, 99, preserve, enclosure.
wast, 18, waste.
waymentyng, 13, lamenting.
wedryng, 206, weather.
wele, 11, weal.
wend, 72; weneth, 2; wenyng, 29, weened, thought.
wende, 137, turned.
wepen, 25, weapon.
wered, 21, fought, warred, worried.
were, 129, wear.
werre, 65, war.
wers, 216, worse.
wery, 145, weary.
wete, 115; wot, 12; wote, 120, know.
whom, 52, home.
wodd, 272, mad.
wode, 285, wood.
woo, 85, woful.
wood wroth, 247, madly angry.
worship, 111, respect.
worshipfully, 10, honorably.
wounderly, 5, wonderfully.
wraunt, 158, guarantee.
writon, 17, written.
wrorthy, 68, worthy.
wysshyng, 177, wish.
wytted, 310, blamed.

Yaf, 181, gave.
yede, 7, 21, went.
yeft, 16, gift.
yl wyller, 211, ill-wisher.
ymage, 17, image.
ynough, 13, enough.
yonde, 70, yonder.
yonge, 4, young.
ypocras, 54, a spiced and sweetened wine.
yrous, 246 (*fier*), angry, fierce.
ytaken, 9, taken.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES.

PART I.—PERSONS.

Adam, page 3.

Alayn of Quyngant, 68, Raymondin's uncle.

Alexaundryne, 369, concubine of Sersuell.

Anthenor, King of Antioch, 264; helps to form a league to fight Urian of Cyprus; is defeated, makes a treaty with Urian, and agrees to pay tribute, 292.

Anthony, 6, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; leaves home to succour Christine of Luxembourg, 190; conquers the King of Anssay, 308; marries Christine, 214; goes to the siege of Pourrencru, 347; captures the Duke of Freiburg, 353.

Appolyn, 283.

Aragon, King of, visits Raymondin at Montserrat, 338; is present at Raymondin's burial, 355.

Argemount, Lord of, 218, a baron of Poitou, appointed by the Duke Anthony as captain of Luxembourg in his absence at the siege of Prague.

Aristote, 3; Aristotles, 20, quoted.

Asselyn, 183, Earl of Luxembourg, father of Christine.

Austeryche, Duke of, fights against the King of Anssay, is defeated, 245.

Bandas, Caliph of, goes against Cyprus with the King of Brandimount, 164; attacks Lymasson, 167; he retreats on hearing of the damage to the fleet by the storm, 168; his fleet captured, 170; fights Urian, 175; makes his escape, 176; defeated at sea by the Master of Rhodes, 177; escapes in a small boat, 177; forms a league against the kings of Cyprus and Armenia, 264; defeated by the Christian forces, and is compelled to make a treaty, 292.

Bar, Duchesse of, Marie, 1, daughter of John le Bon, King of France; born Sept. 12, 1344; married 1364 to Robert, Duke of Bar; died 1404.

Barbary, Sultan of, nephew of King Brandimount, one of the league against Urian, King of Cyprus, 264; believes the league will be successful against the Lusignans on land, 272; loses his arm in a fight with Urian, 290; makes a treaty, 292.

Benedictus, Pope, 334; Benedicte; visited by Raymondin.

Bernadon, 354, son of Odon, Earl of Marche, marries the heiress of the lord of Cabyeres.

Berry, Duke of, John, 1, son of John le Bon, King of France; born Nov. 30, 1340; died June 15, 1416; commands John of Arras to compile the history of Melusine, 2; captures Lusignan Castle, 369.

Bertrand, 18, 102, son of Emery, Earl of Poitiers; succeeds to the

earldom, 40: grants Raymondin a piece of land, 41; goes to Raymondin's wedding, 49.
Bertrand, 214, son of Anthony and Cristine of Luxembourg.
Blanche, 18, daughter of Emery, Earl of Poitiers, goes to Raymondin's marriage, 52.
Brandimount in Tharse, King of, uncle of the Sultan of Damascus, 164; goes against Cyprus to avenge his nephew's death, 164; his fleet damaged by a storm, 165; swears to obtain victory or death, 170; fights Urian, 175; slain, 175.

Claude of Syon, 247, refuses to pay Raymondin his tribute, 246; is attacked by Geffray with the great Tooth, 247; captured, 254; is hung before Valbruyant Castle by Geffray's orders, 256.
Clerevauld, 252, third brother of Guyon of Syon Castle; rebels against Raymondin, 246; is captured by Geffray's squire, 253, and is hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.
Cordes, Admiral of, 268; Querdes, 246; joins the Caliph of Bandas to fight the King of Cyprus, 264; defeated at sea by Geffray, 270; slain by Geffray, 290.
Crystyne, 183, daughter and heiress of the Duke of Luxembourg; the King of Anssay sues for her hand, 183; she refuses because he is a widower, 183; her land attacked, 185; Anthony rescues her, 203; marries Anthony, 214.

Damascus, Sultan of, wants to marry the daughter of the King of Cyprus, 121; is refused because he will not be baptised, 121; goes to fight the king, 115; besieges Famagosse, 121; hears of the arrival of the Lusignans, 124; defeated by Urian, 133; throws a poisoned dart at the King of Cyprus, 136; slain by Urian, 145.
Damascus, Sultan of, jeers at the Christians' power, 277; gets frightened at Geffray, 280; attacks Geffray, 283; has to fly, 285; makes a treaty, 292.
Dauid, King of Israel, 2, quoted.
Dupont, Josselyn, makes the heir of the King of Bretayne jealous of Henry of Leon, 66; is denounced by Raymondin, 72; summoned to appear before the King of Bretayne, 73; his treachery exposed, 75; confesses, 85; ordered to make restitution, 88; hung, 86.
Dysmas, 117, the good thief who was crucified with Jesus.

Earle of Vandosme at war with the Erle of Marche, 345; he has to make peace, and do homage for some of his land, 346.
Eglantyne, daughter and heiress of Frederick, King of Bohemia, 215; left an orphan, 227; marries Regnauld, fourth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 240; becomes the mother of Olyphart, 242.
Elynas, King of Albany, a widower; when hunting he meets Pressine, a beautiful lady, 7; becomes enamoured of her, 9; proposes to marry her, 10; is accepted on condition that he promises to abstain from seeing her while in childbed, 11; has three daughters by her, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; breaks his promise, 11; his wife and daughters disappear, 12; his daughters shut him up in Brombelyoys, a Northumbrian mountain, 14; his death, burial, and tomb, 17.
Emery, Earl of Poitiers, 18, slain by accident at a boar hunt by his nephew Raymondin, 25.

Florye, daughter and heiress of the King of Little Armenia, falls in love with Guyon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, 162; left an orphan, 178; her father's dying wish is that she should marry Guyon, 179; Guyon marries her, 181.
Florymond, son of Nathas, King of Albany, 7; he has much trouble, 12.

Forests, Erle of, jokes his brother Raymondin about his marriage to Melusine, 56; makes him jealous of Melusine, 295; is slain by Geffray, 332.
Frederyk, King of Behayne, brother of the King of Anssay, 215; besieged by the Saracens at Prague, 215; slain by the King of Craco, 226.
Froymond, 245; Froymonde, 6; Froymont, 308, seventh son of Raymondin and Melusine, 104; the only perfectly formed child Melusine bears, 314; shorn, a monk at Mailleses, 305; burnt in the Abbey of Mailleses by Geffray with the great Tooth, 309.

Gallafryn, King of Danette (Damietta) has his head cut open by Geffray, 283.
Geffray with the great Tooth, sixth son of Raymondin and Melusine; birth, 104; goes against Claud of Syon and his brethren, 247; hangs them before Valbruyant Castle, 256; pardons Guerin and Gerrard, 263; resolves to fight the Saracens, 264; arrives at Lymasson, 267; defeats the Saracens at sea, 270; plunders Jaffa, 277; captures Beyrout, 278; kills Gallafryn of Damietta before Damascus, 283; fights the Sultan of Damascus, 287; kills the Admiral of Cordes, 290; the Saracens agree to pay tribute, 292; fights the giant Guedon, 302; slays him, 304; enraged at his brother Froymond becoming a monk, 307; burns the Abbey of Mailleses, his brother Froymond and all the monks, 304; repents, 310; goes to Brombelyo, 323; fights the giant Grimold, 324; follows him into a cave, 327; sees there the tomb of Elynas his grandfather, 326; slays Grimold, 329; learns his mother's fate, 331; slays the Earl of Forest, 332; becomes lord of Lusignan, 338; repents his many misdeeds, 329; goes to Rome and confesses to the Pope, 340; visits his father, 343; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; rebuilds the Abbey of Mailleses, 346; captures Freiburg, 351; fights the Duke of Austria, 353; attends his father's burial, 353; fights with a mysterious knight, 359; promises to build an hospital, 361.
Geruayse, 4 (? Gervaise of Tilbury) quoted.
Godart, 369, declares he has often seen a serpent on the walls of Lusignan Castle.
Great Carmen, 263.
Great Prior of Rhodes invites Urian and Guion to Rhodes, 116; goes to search for the Saracens, 117; cuts off the Saracen retreat, 174; defeats the Calaph of Bandas at sea, 177; sails to the Saracen fleet at Jaffa, 266.
Grymault, 306; Grymauld, 323, a Northumbrian giant; Geffray with the great Tooth fights him, 324; and on the second day slays him, 329.
Guedon, 293, a giant in Garende; fights Geffray, 301; is slain, 304.
Guerard of Mountfrayn, nephew of Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 256; makes peace with Geffray, 263.
Gueryn of Valbruyant Castle, 255; submits to Geffray, 261, and is forgiven, 263.
Guion, third son of Raymondin and Melusine, 103; goes with his brother Urian to help the King of Cyprus against the Saracens, 109; receives a ring from Ermin, 126; visits the King of Cyprus, 150; goes once more against the Saracens, 160; driven on the coast of Armenia, 161; falls in love with Flory, the heiress of the King of Armenia, 163; defeats the Saracens, 166; is offered the crown of Armenia, 179; marries Flory, 180; has to defend himself against a Saracen league, 265.
Guyon, brother of Claud of Syon Castle, fights Geffray with the great Tooth, 249; is overcome

and bound to a tree, 251; hung before Valbruyant Castle, 256.

Henry of Leon, father of Raymondin, seneschal of the King of Bretayn, 65; slain by Josselin Dupont, 67.
Henry, son of Alayn of Quyngan, and cousin of Raymondin, 70; obtains from Raymondin the Barony of Henry of Leon, 87.
Henry, 178, 257, son of Urian and Hermin of Cyprus.
Horrible, eighth son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 105; has three eyes, and is of a brutal disposition, 105; suffocated, 322.

Locher, 245, son of Anthony and Christine of Luxembourg.
Lymas, Captain of, visits the wounded King of Cyprus, 146; takes a message from him to Urian, 148.

Machomid, 277; Mahon, 275, Mahomet.
Melidee, 183; Metydee, 217, daughter of the King of Anssay; betrothed to Bertrand, Anthony's son, 245.
Melior, second daughter of Elinas and Pressine, 11; helps Melusine to shut her father up in the Mountain of Brombelyoys, 14; as punishment is sent by her mother to keep a Sperohak in a castle in Armenia until the day of judgment, 15; she gives gifts to knights who can watch the Sperohak three days and nights without sleep, 362; has an adventure with a King of Armenia, 365; tells her history, 366.
Melusyne, 6; Melusigne, 11; Melusine of Albany, 52; eldest daughter of Elinas, King of Albany, and Pressine, 11; taken to Aualon, 12; told of her father's broken promise, 13; shuts up her father in Brombelyoys Mountain, 14; condemned to turn into a serpent every Saturday till she finds a man who will marry her and who promises to keep away from her on those days, 15; meets Raymondin at the Fountain of Soif, 27; wakens him, 29; tells his history, 31; asks him to marry her, 31; obtains a promise that he will not try to see her on Saturdays, 32; gives Raymondin advice, 33; her wedding, 53; thanks Raymondin for his friends' presence and urges him to keep his promise, 57; she presents rich jewels to her guests, 59; builds Lusignan Castle, 62; gives birth to Urian, 65; advises Raymondin to go to Bretayn to obtain justice from Josselin Dupont, 65; prepares a welcome for her lord, 101; gives birth to Odon and Guyon, 103; builds Partenay and many towns and castles in Poitou and Guyenne, 103; gives birth to Anthony, Geffray, Froymond, 104, 245, and Horrible, 105; gives permission to Urian and Guion to seek their fortunes abroad, 107; organizes their forces, 109; gives them parting advice, 110; raises an army for Anthony and Regnald, 188; gives them advice, 190; gives birth to Theodoric, 245; Raymondin is made jealous of her by his brother, 295; breaks his promise and visits her on a Saturday, 296; sees her bathing in the form of a serpent woman, 297; she forgives him and consoles him, 299; she hears of the burning of the Abbey of Mailleses by her son Geffray, 312; her sorrow, 312; she goes to Raymondin and chides him for his over great grief, 313; he upbraids her, and calls her a false serpent, 314; she faints, and on reviving laments her fate, 316; she makes her testament, 318; bids Raymondin farewell, 319; is transformed into a serpent and disappears, 321; her obsequies, 321; visits her infant children, 322; her voice is heard lamenting Raymondin's death, 354; is seen by Sersuell, Godart, 369, and Yuon of Wales, 370.

Nathas, 11, Mathas, 17, son of Elynas, King of Albany, by his first wife; he persuades Elynas to break his promise to Pressine, 11; succeeds his father, 12; marries Ycrys, 12.

Ode, Duke of Bavaria, 223; goes with Regnald and Anthony to the siege of Prague, 225.
Odon, Edon, second son of Raymondin and Melusine, birth, 102; marries the daughter of the Earl of Marche, 182; visits Regnald and Anthony, 345; the Earl of Vandosme does homage to him, 346.
Olyphart, 242, son of Regnald and Eglantine of Bohemia.
Olyuyer, son of Josselin Dupont, 72; fights Raymondin, 79; yields, 84; condemned to be hanged, 86.

Palatyne, youngest daughter of Elynas and Pressine, sent to the Mountain of Guygo to watch the treasure of Elinas until she was released by a knight of her own lineage, 6.
Philibert de Mommoret assists Geffray in his fight against the rebel Guion, 248, 252.
Pressine, meets Elynas, King of Albany, 7; he is struck with her beauty and declares his love, 10; she consents to marry him on condition that he promises not to look at her when she is in childbed, 11; her marriage, 11; hated by her step-son Nathas, 11; has triplets, Melusine, Melior, and Palatine, 11; King Elynas breaks his promise, 11; she leaves him, taking her daughters with her to Aualon, 12; she shows them the land of their birth from Mount Elyneos, 13; she tells them of their father's broken promise, 13; she punishes her daughters for ill-treating their father, 15; she buries Elynas, and builds him a noble tomb, 17.

Raymondin, son of Henry of Leon, 67, and nephew of the Earl of Poyters, 19; goes on a boar-hunt with his uncle, 21, whom he accidentally kills, 25; he laments his fortune and resolves to fly, 27; at the Fountain of Soif he meets three fairies, 27, and becomes enamoured of the eldest, Melusine, 29; he is surprised that she knows his history, 30; she asks him to marry her, and promises to make him a great lord, 31, on condition that he will never ask to see her on a Saturday, 32; she counsels him to return to Poitiers, and advises him what to do there, 34; he follows her advice, and all goes well, 36; she sends him back to Poitiers to demand of the new Earl a gift of as much land as he can encircle with a hart's hide, 39; he obtains his land grant, 41; he invites his friends to his wedding, 48; they are surprised at the riches of his wife, 59; Lusignan Castle built, 62; named, 64; Melusine bears him a son named Urian, 65; he goes to Brut Britain to avenge an injury to his father, Henry of Leon, 69; he fights Oliver, son of Josselin Dupont, 83; conquers, 84; obtains a decision in his favour from the King of Brut Britain, 88; on his return home he is attacked by the friends of Josselin Dupont, 94; he repels the attack, and sends his enemies to the King of Brut Britain, who hangs them, 97; he finds a grand castle on his return home, 100; is met by Melusine, 101; she bears him more sons, Odon, Guion, 104, Anthony, Regnald, Geffray, 104, Froimond, Horrible, 104, Theodoric, 246; a rebellion in Garaude, 246; he is made jealous by his brother the Earl of Forest, and breaks his promise to Melusine by looking at her in her bath on a Saturday, 296; he sees her to be half woman and half serpent, 297, and laments that he has betrayed her, 297; he drives his brother away for tempting

him, 297, and keeps secret what he has seen, 298; he is forgiven by Melusine, as he has been discreet, 299; he hears that Geffray has burnt the Abbey of Mailleses and all the monks, 310; he visits the Abbey, where he is overcome with anger and denounces Melusine as a spirit, 311; he upbraids her and calls her "a false serpent," 314; he repents and is forgiven, 315; Melusine changes into a serpent and disappears from him, 321; he has his son Horrible burnt, 321; he is full of sorrow at the loss of his wife, 321; he gives his lands to Geffray, 333, and goes on a pilgrimage to Rome, 334, where he confesses to the Pope and visits the Holy Places, 334; he then journeys to Montserrat in Aragon, 336, where he becomes a hermit, 337; his death, 354, and burial, 355.

Raymond, Earl of Forest, ninth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; suckled by Melusine after her disappearance from Raymondin, 322; is made Earl of Forest by Geffray, 332.

Regnald, fifth son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 104; goes with Anthony to the siege of Luxembourg, 111; goes to the siege of Prague, 219; slays King Zelodyus; marries Eglantine of Bohemia, 240; Oliphart, his son, 242; goes to the siege of Pourrencru, 347.

St. Iohan Baptiste, 16.

St. Paul. 3, 371, quoted.

Saint William, Erle of Poitiers, grandson of Erle Emery of Poitiers, 20; becomes a monk of the Order of the White Mauntelles, 20.

Sersuell, Lieutenant, in charge of Lusignan Castle on behalf of the King of England, 369.

Sir Robert du Chastel Roussel in Asy, marries a fairy, to whom he gives a promise that he will never look at her when she is naked, 5; he breaks his promise, 5; his wife plunges her head into water, and changes into a serpent and disappears, 5.

Theodoryk, youngest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 246; nursed by his mother after she had left Raymondin, 322; becomes lord of Partenay, 333; left in charge of Geffray's lands, 339; marches against Freiburg, 347, 353; visits his father at Montserrat, 353.

Urian, eldest son of Raymondin and Melusine, 6; birth, 65; wishes to assist the King of Cyprus against the Sultan of Damascus, 109; Melusine provides an army transport and victuals, 109; sails from Rochelle, 115; fights the Sultan of Damascus at sea, 115; lands his army at Cyprus, 119; receives a jewel from Ermine, the heiress of the King of Cyprus, 126; defeats the Saracens, 132, 138; kills the Sultan of Damascus at Famagosse, 146; knighted by the King of Cyprus, 153; is offered the heiress of Cyprus to wife, 155; accepts her, 156; his marriage, 157; becomes king, 158; kills King Brandemount, 175; defeats the Saracen invaders, 176; his son Henry born, 178; defends himself against a new Saracen League.

Yeris, 12, wife of Nathas, King of Albany, and mother of Florymond.

Yuon of Wales, 370, sees Melusine in the form of a serpent.

Zelodyus, Zodyus, King of Craco, 227; besieges Frederick of Bohemia at Prague, 216; kills Frederick, 226, and ill-treats and burns his body, 227; Regnauld slays him, 233; the King of Anssay burns his body, 234.

PART II.—PLACES.

Acon, page 219, Aix-la-Chapelle.
Aisne, River, 193.
Albany, 6, 12.
Allemayne, 183; Almayn, 351.
Anssay, 183, may be read Aussay; Alsace.
Aragon, 336.
Ardane, 245, Ardennes.
Armanye, Grete, 362, Armenia.
Armanye, 161; Armenye, 6, Little Armenia.
Aruall, 89.
Asy, 5, ? Aisy in dept. of Aisne.
Aualon, 12.
Austeryche, 345.
Auuergne, 1.

Bandas, 163, may be read Baudas, Baghdad.
Bar, Duchy of, 1.
Barselone, 336.
Baruth, 160, ? Beyrout.
Behayne, 6, 214, Bohemia.
Berry, 1.
Boneuall, 346, ? Bonneval, dept. Eure et Loire.
Bretons, 17, 97, Brittany.
Brombelyoys, 14; Brombelyo, Mount, 32.
Brut Brytayne, 17, Brittany.

Cabyeres, 355.
Cardillak, 356.
Coles, 122.
Coloyne, 219.
Coulombyers, Forest of, 19, 37, 59, in dept. of Vienne.
Craco, 216.
Cruly, 161, Little Armenia.
Culbaston, 337, Colbató.
Cypre, 105, Cyprus.

Damaske, 164.
Danette, 276, Damietta.
Denmark, 242.
Duras, Castel, 346, on the Meuse.

Eglon, Castle, 103.
Elyneos, Mount, 13.
England, 356.

Famagoce, 105, 146; Famagousta, Cyprus.
Fontayne of Soyf, 2, or Fontayne of Fayerye, 27.
Forest, 6; Forestz, 18, earldom.
Fraunce, 1.
Frebourgh, 350, Freiburg.

Garande, 246; garende, 287; guerrende, 89, country of the River Garonde.
Gascoynne, 104.
Guyenne, 104.
Guygo, Mount, 16, a mountain in Armenia.

Holland, The low march of, 242.
Hongery, 225.
Hospytal of Rodes, 122.

Jalensy, 331.
Japhe, 265, Jaffa.
Jherusalem, 292.

Langgedok, 338, Languedoc.
Leffe, 217.
Leon, Castel, 67.
Lorayne, 183.
Lucembourgh, 6, 183.
Lusygnen, 6; Lusignen, 17.
Lymas, 146; Limasson, 117, Limassol, Cyprus.
Lynges, 103.

Mailleses, Abbey of, 6; Maillezes, 246.
Malegres, 162.
Marcelly, Castel, 331.
Masyeres, Bridge of, 245, ? Mézières.
Maxence, 103, Abbey of ? Maxent.
Melle, 103.
Merment, 292; Mernant, 103.
Mermount, 300, Tower of the giant Guedon.
Meuse, River, 194; Meuze, 245, 346.
Montferrat, 335, Montserrat in Aragon.
Montiers, Abbey of, 42.
Mouchyne, 243 (*Muchin*), ? Munich.
Mountfrayn, 257.

Mountyoued, 331; Mountyouet, 306.
Murmych, 225.
Myrabel, 192.

Nantes, 73.
Nerbonne, 335.
Neufmoustier, Abbey of, 322.
Northomberland, 14, 306.
Northweghe, 242, Norway.
Nuenmarghe, 223 (? Nurenburg).
Nyort, 299.

Parpynen, 336, Perpignan.
Partenay, 6, 103.
Penbrough, 355, Pembroke.
Penycence, 65.
Poiters, 118; Poyters, 19; Poytiers.
Pons, 103.
Poterne Tower, 321.
Pourrencru, 346, (?) Porentruy, near Freiburg.
Poytow, 4; Poitow, 17; Poytwo, 41; Pouthieu, 293 (*Ponthiëne*).
Praghe, 215, Prague.

Quercyn, 356.
Quyngant, 68, ? Guingamp.

Regnault, Castel, 355.
Rochelle, 103.
Roussel, Chastel, in Asy, 5.
Ryne, River, 219, Rhine.

Saint Hylary of Poyters, church,
Salesbury, 1.
Saynt Andrew, Port of, 168.
Saynt Mychel, Capell of, 343.
St. John of Rhodes, 269.
Sassymon, 98.
Soyf, Fontayne of, 37.
Sperhaak Castle, 16; Sperohak,
Storyon, 73.
Surye, 160, ? Syria.
Syon Castle, 247.

Tallemondois, 104.
Tallemounte, 104.
Tharse, 164, in Asia Minor.
Thoulouse, 335.
Tryple, 278, ? Tripoli in Syria.
Tupple, 160 (*Tupple*), ? Trip
Syria.
Turcke, 145; Turckye, 265.

Valbruyant Castle, 255.
Vannes, 98.
Vernon, 318.
Vertone, 195.
Vouant, 103.
Vtreyght, 242, Utrecht.

Xaintes, 103.

Yerys, 12.

Zeland, 242, Zealand.

R. CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON & BUNGAY.